This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Eng 2698.99

Harvard College Library

FROM THE LIBRARY OF

CHARLES SANDERS PEIRCE
(Class of 1859)
OF MILFORD, PENNSYLVANIA

GIFT OF
MRS. CHARLES S. PEIRCE
June 28, 1915

STEAM-ENGINE THEORY AND PRACTICE

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

LONGMANS' ELEMENTARY SCIENCE MANUALS

STEAM

With 142 Illustrations

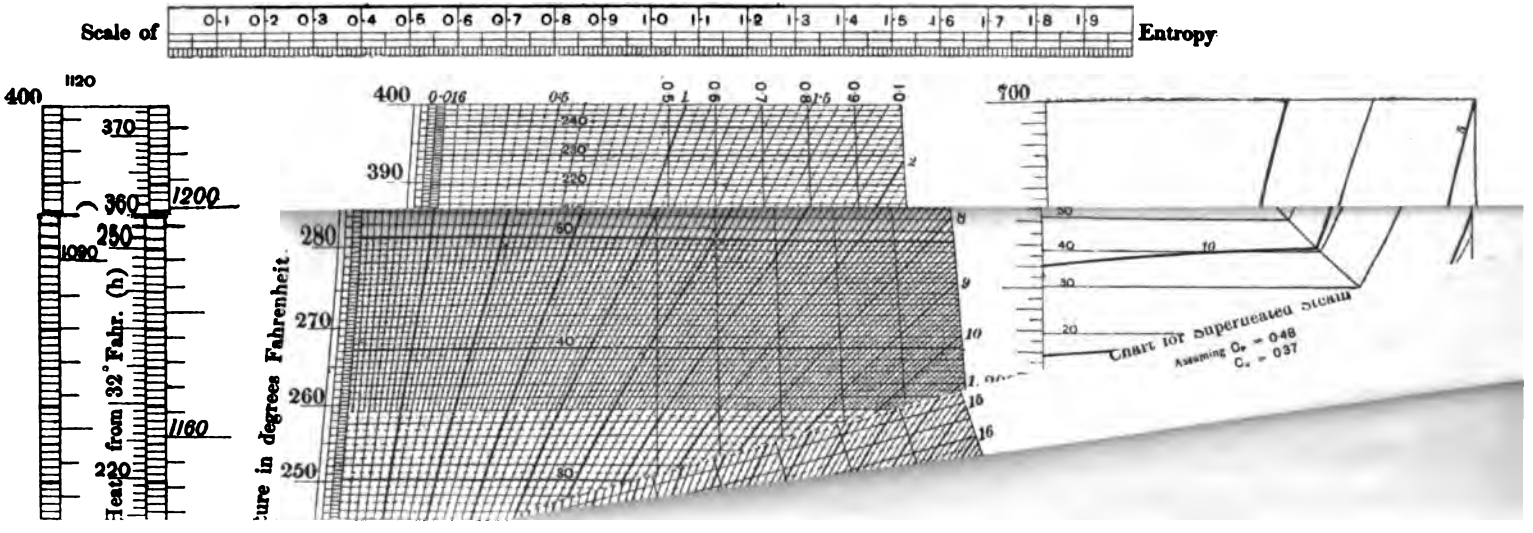
Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

LONDON, NEW YORK, AND BOMBAY

Temperature Entropy or $\Theta\phi$ Chart for 1 lb. of H_2O

giving also volumes, absolute pressures and dryness fractions, internal energy water heat, and total heat in British Thermal units.



STEAM-ENGINE

THEORY AND PRACTICE

BY

WILLIAM RIPPER

MEMBER OF THE INSTITUTION OF CIVIL ENGINEERS
MEMBER OF THE INSTITUTION OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS
PROFESSOR OF ENGINEERING IN THE UNIVERSITY
COLLEGE OF SHEFFIELD

WITH 438 ILLUSTRATIONS

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON
NEW YORK AND BOMBAY
1899

All rights reserved

Eng 2698.99

GIFT OF
MRS. CHARLES S. PEIRCE
JUNE 28, 1915

TO

SIR FREDERICK MAPPIN, BART., M.P.

CHAIRMAN OF THE TECHNICAL DEPARTMENT OF THE

UNIVERSITY COLLEGE OF SHEFFIELD

AS A

TRIBUTE TO HIS LONG AND VALUED SERVICES

IN PROMOTING THE STUDY OF SCIENCE

AS APPLIED TO INDUSTRY

THIS BOOK

IS INSCRIBED BY THE AUTHOR

PREFACE

THIS book is written as a sequel to the author's elementary book on "Steam." It was prepared in the first instance as notes for the second-year engineering students in this college, and deals, in as simple a form as possible, with those branches of the subject which are of fundamental importance to a sound knowledge of steam-engine design and management.

Modern students of steam engineering have a great advantage over their predecessors, in possessing such a wealth of recorded practical experience as appears in the *Proceedings* of the Engineering Institutions, as well as in the Technical Journals, and the writer has to express his personal indebtedness to all these sources of information in the preparation of this book. The assistance received is acknowledged, as far as possible, throughout.

Special attention has been given to the subject of the heat quantities involved in the generation and use of steam. For this purpose the temperature-entropy diagram has been used, and its applications in the solution of a number of ordinary everyday problems exemplified.

In this connection, as well as for many beautiful graphical methods of illustration now employed by engineers, students and teachers of the subject are greatly indebted to the work of Mr. J. Macfarlane Gray, Capt. H. Riall Sankey, the late P. W. Willans, and many others. The writer desires to express his personal indebtedness to Capt. Sankey for his kindness in supplying him with copies of his temperature-entropy chart, which appears for the first time, as Plate I. of this book. This chart has gone through an interesting process of evolution since the occasion when Mr. J. Macfarlane Gray read his paper at the Paris meeting of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers in July, 1889,

"On the Rationalization of Regnault's Steam Experiments," describing and explaining the use of the steam and water lines of the temperature-entropy chart. Since that time Capt. Sankey has added lines of constant pressure, and constant volume in 1892; and more recently also the scales of total heat and internal energy, as well as the chart for the superheated-steam field. All these additions now appear upon the chart as shown in Plate I. of this book.

Other subjects dealt with include the compound engine, superheated steam, and superheaters, the use of high steam-pressures, valve gears, steam-engine governors, flywheels, and other engine details. There are also chapters on the balancing of engines, and steam-engine performance, embodying the most recent results obtained from all classes of engines; and on modern steam-engine design, including the Corliss mill engine, the modern quick-revolution engine, the marine engine, and the locomotive.

The author here desires to express his acknowledgments to Mr. T. Scott King for the valuable original designs, both of engine details and complete engines, which he has prepared for the author specially for this book; also to Mr. J. W. Kershaw, M.Sc., for much valuable help, and to Mr. F. Boulden for kindly reading the proof-sheets.

W. RIPPER.

UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, SHEFFIELD,
November, 1899

CONTENTS

		PAGE
INTRODUCTORY		1
CHAPTER		
I.	THERMODYNAMICS OF GASES	5
II.	PROPERTIES OF STEAM	25
III.	TEMPERATURE-ENTROPY DIAGRAMS	41
IV.	THE SLIDE-VALVE	60
V.	THE INDICATOR	90
VI.	QUALITY OF THE STEAM IN THE CYLINDER	110
VII.	COMPOUND ENGINES	125
VIII.	SUPERHEATED STEAM	146
IX.	INTERNAL SURFACE OF ENGINE CYLINDERS	164
X.	THE STEAM-JACKET	166
XI.	THE INJECTOR	172
XII.	CONDENSERS	179
XIII.	FEED-WATER HEATERS	191
XIV.	GOVERNORS	200
XV.	TURNING EFFORT IN THE CRANK-SHAFT	227
XVI.	FLYWHEELS	245
XVII.	ENGINE DETAILS	252
XVIII.	FRICTION OF ENGINES	275
XIX.	BALANCING THE ENGINE	277
XX.	STEAM-ENGINE PERFORMANCE	300
XXI.	TYPES OF STEAM-ENGINES—THE MILL ENGINE	320
XXII.	THE CORLISS ENGINE	331

CHAPTER PAGE
XXIII. Quick-revolution Engines 348
XXIV. The Marine Engine 363
XXV. The Locomotive 368

APPENDIX

I. Ripper's Mean-pressure Indicator 385
II. To draw a Curve of the Form PV^n = Constant . . . 388
III. Saturated-steam Tables 389
IV. Table of Hyperbolic Logarithms 391
V. Table of Mean-pressure Ratios. 392
VI. Table of Entropy 393

INDEX 395

STEAM-ENGINE THEORY AND PRACTICE

INTRODUCTORY.

DEFINITIONS AND UNITS.

Work is defined as the overcoming of a resistance through a space by the application of a force, and the amount of work (U) done is measured by the resistance (R) or the force (F) in pounds, multiplied by the distance (S) in feet through which the resistance is overcome or through which the force acts; and the product is given in foot-pounds, thus:

$$U = RS = FS \text{ foot-lbs.}$$

The **unit of work** is the foot-pound, or the work done by a force of one pound acting through the space of one foot.

The unit of work in metric units is the work done by the force of one kilogramme acting through the space of one metre = one kilogrammetre;

$$1 \text{ kilogrammetre} = 7{\cdot}233 \text{ foot-lbs.}$$

When the motion takes place round a fixed axis, as in the case of a crank, then the mean resistance (R) multiplied by the space traversed ($2\pi r$ feet per revolution) gives the work done, and—

$$U = 2\pi r R \text{ foot-lbs. per revolution.}$$

When work is done by pressure upon a moving piston, as in steam-engines, it is measured by the product of the mean pressure p per square inch, the area of the piston A in square inches, and the length of stroke of the piston S in feet; then—

$$U = pAS \text{ foot-lbs. per stroke}$$

or, if A be expressed in square feet, then the pressure per square foot $P = p \times 144$. and—

$$U = p \times 144 \times A \times S$$

But $A \times S = V$ = volume of piston displacement in cubic feet;

$$\therefore U = p \times 144 \times V = PV$$

and if area of piston be 1 sq. ft., then V in cubic feet will be numerically equal to the length of stroke of the piston in feet.

Work represented by an Area.—Since work is expressed as a product of two numbers, it may therefore be represented by the area of a plane figure; thus the work done on the piston of the steam-engine is represented by an area drawn by an "indicator," the length of the diagram corresponding with the length of stroke of the piston to a reduced scale, and the mean height of the diagram giving the mean pressure on the piston throughout the stroke.

Efficiency.—The total amount of energy received by an engine or machine of any kind is either used in the doing of *useful work* or is wasted, and—

$$\text{energy received} = \text{useful work} + \text{lost work}$$

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{useful work done}}{\text{total energy received}}$$

Power is defined as the "rate of expenditure of energy," or the amount of work performed in a unit of time—

$$\text{power} = \text{pounds} \times \text{feet} \div \text{minutes}$$

The Horse-power.—The unit of power used by British engineers is the "horse-power," which is equivalent to the performance of 33,000 foot lbs. of work per minute; or $33{,}000 \div 60 = 550$ foot-lbs. per second; or $33{,}000 \times 60 = 1{,}980{,}000$ foot-lbs. per hour. In heat-units the horse-power $= 33{,}000 \div 778 = 42{\cdot}42$ B.T.U. (British thermal units) per minute, or $= 42{\cdot}42 \times 60 = 2545$ B.T.U. per hour.

The French horse-power (cheval) is 75 kilogrammetres per second $= 75 \times 7{\cdot}233$ foot-lbs. $= 542\,5$ foot-lbs. per second, or rather less than the British horse-power.

1 horse-power	= 1·0139 cheval
1 lb. per horse-power	= 0·447 kilogramme per cheval
1 kilogramme per cheval	= 2·235 lbs. per horse-power.

Indicated Horse-power is the work done by the steam in the cylinder as obtained by the aid of the indicator, and expressed in horse-power units. This power includes, of course, that necessary to drive the engine against external resistance, and that used to overcome the frictional resistance of the engine itself.

$$\text{I.H.P.} = \frac{\text{units of work done per minute}}{33{,}000} = \frac{\text{PLAN}}{33{,}000}$$

where P = mean effective pressure in pounds per square inch on piston.

A = effective area of piston in square inches.
= (diameter of cylinder in inches)$^2 \times 0{\cdot}7854$ less area of piston-rod.

L = length of stroke in feet, or distance travelled by piston from end to end of cylinder.

N = number of strokes per minute, or } for double-acting
= number of revolutions $\times$ 2 } engines.
= number of revolutions, for single-acting engines.
= number of *impulses* per minute, for gas-engines.

EXAMPLE 1.—Find the indicated horse-power of an engine with

a cylinder 12 in. diameter, length of stroke 18 in., number of revolutions per minute 90, mean effective pressure per square inch on piston 40 lbs.

$$\text{Then I.H.P.} = \frac{\text{PLAN}}{33{,}000}$$

$$= \frac{(\text{P} \times \text{A})\text{ lbs.} \times (\text{L} \times \text{N})\text{ ft. per min.}}{33{,}000}$$

$$= \frac{(40 \times 12 \times 12 \times 0{\cdot}7854)\text{ lbs.} \times (1{\cdot}5 \times 90 \times 2)\text{ ft. per min.}}{33{,}000}$$

$$= \frac{4520\text{ lbs.} \times 270\text{ ft. per min.}}{33{,}000}$$

$$= 37 \text{ nearly}$$

EXAMPLE 2.—An engine is required to indicate 37 horse-power with a mean effective pressure on piston of 40 lbs. per square inch, length of stroke 18 in., number of revolutions per minute 90: find the diameter of the cylinder.

First find the *area* from the formula—

$$\text{I.H.P.} = \frac{\text{PLAN}}{33{,}000}$$

$$\text{A} = \frac{33{,}000\text{ I.H.P.}}{\text{P} \times \text{L} \times \text{N}}$$

$$= \frac{33{,}000 \times 37}{40 \times 1{\cdot}5 \times 90 \times 2}$$

A, or area of piston, = 113 sq. in.

From which the diameter may be obtained thus:

$$\text{Diameter} = \sqrt{\frac{\text{area}}{0{\cdot}7854}} = \sqrt{\frac{113}{0{\cdot}7854}} = \sqrt{144} = 12\text{ in.}$$

Brake Horse-power (B.H.P.) represents the power which the engine is capable of transmitting for the purposes of useful work, that is, the total power exerted by the steam in the cylinder less the power absorbed in driving the engine itself.

This power is measured—except where the engines are too large—by means of a brake dynamometer.

$$\frac{\text{I.H.P.} - \text{B.H.P.}}{\text{I.H.P.}} = \text{coefficient of friction of engine}$$

$$\frac{\text{B.H.P.}}{\text{I.H.P.}} = \text{mechanical efficiency of engine}$$

The efficiency of a whole machine is the product of the efficiency of its several parts.

Practical Electrical Units—

Ampère = the unit of strength of current, or rate of flow.
Volt = the unit of electro-motive force.
Ohm = the unit of resistance.
Colomb = (ampère-second) = the unit of quantity.

1 watt = 1 ampère × 1 volt = the unit of power.
1 watt = 0·7373 foot-lbs. per second
= 0·0009477 heat-units per second (Fahr.)
= $\frac{1}{746}$ horse-power.
1 kilowatt, or 1000 watts, = 0·9477 heat-units per second
= 1·3405 horse-power.
1 horse-power = 746 watts = 746 volt ampères.
$\frac{\text{volts} \times \text{ampères}}{746}$ = electrical horse-power.

CHAPTER I.

THERMODYNAMICS OF GASES.

Heat.—Heat is a form of molecular energy, and it may be converted into mechanical work by means of the change of volume which it produces in bodies acted upon by it. The medium through which work is done by the action of heat may be either solid, liquid, or gaseous, and the nature of the substance used is a question of relative convenience or suitability. Thus, if an iron bar be heated, the bar expands, and if some form of resistance be interposed to its expansion, then the work done in overcoming the resistance = U = R × S, where R may represent an enormous force, and S a very small space.

On the other hand, if a gas be used as the "working fluid," and be heated in a closed cylinder behind a movable piston, then the work done by the heat through the expanding gas = U = R × S, as before, where the resistance is comparatively small, and the space S moved through by the piston is comparatively large.

Engineers generally utilize the smaller forces acting through large distances, rather than unmanageably large forces acting through small distances.

If a quantity of heat (Q) be applied to unit weight of any substance, it increases the energy contained in the substance, and its effects may in general be divided as follows: (1) It raises the temperature of the body; that is, it increases the rate of molecular vibration. The heat-units involved in raising the temperature = S. (2) It causes the body to expand against its own internal resistances; that is, it increases the range of molecular vibration. The heat so expended in doing internal work is written ρ (rho). And (3) it does external work, E, by overcoming external resistance to expansion.

$$\text{Then } Q = S + \rho + E$$

In the case of the generation of steam from water, the internal work ρ is large and the external work E is small. In the case of a perfect gas, the internal work is indefinitely small.

Unit of Heat.—The British thermal unit (B.T.U.) is the heat required to raise 1 lb. of pure water one degree Fahrenheit, measured at a standard temperature, usually given as 39° Fahr., but more recently as 62° Fahr.

$$1 \text{ B.T.U.} = 0{\cdot}252 \text{ calorie}$$
$$1 \text{ French calorie} = 3{\cdot}968 \text{ B.T.U.}$$

Specific Heat.—When equal weights of different substances are raised

through an equal range of temperature, the quantities of heat involved are not the same in each case, but vary in accordance with the thermal capacity of the substances. Thus, if an iron vessel weighing 62·5 lbs. contain a cubic foot of water also weighing 62·5 lbs., then, though both iron and water are at the same temperature, and are equal in weight, they do not contain the same quantity of heat. As a matter of fact, the water contains about eight times the heat contained by the iron.

The relative thermal capacity, or the "specific heat," of substances is defined as the amount of heat necessary to raise unit weight of the substance one degree measured at the standard temperature. A more correct term than "specific heat" would be "coefficient of thermal capacity."

TABLE OF SPECIFIC HEATS.

			Constant p.		Constant v
Water	1·000	Air	0·237	...	0·168
Glass	0·194	Oxygen	0·217	..	0·155
Cast iron	0·130	Hydrogen ...	3·410	...	2·412
Wrought iron	0·114	Nitrogen	0·244	...	0·173
Steel (hard)	0·117	Superheated steam	0·480	...	0·346
Copper	0·100	Carbonic acid ...	0·217	...	0·153
Mercury	0·033				

The specific heat of gases increases as the temperature increases.

Temperature.—Temperature is that quality of bodies which determines the intensity of the heat-energy contained by them. If two bodies of different temperature be placed near each other, heat tends to pass from the hotter to the colder till they both reach the same temperature.

Temperature difference is that which determines the transfer of heat from body to body, and the greater the difference of temperature the more rapidly the heat flows.

Difference of temperature is what renders heat-energy available for the performance of mechanical work, and the greater the difference or range of temperature the greater the possible efficiency of the heat. The heat contained by a body at the ordinary temperature of the surrounding bodies is not available for the performance of mechanical work.

The potential energy of high temperature may be compared to the potential energy due to a head of water. Thus, water falling from a height h and acting on a turbine, loses potential energy, which is converted into mechanical work at the turbine. The water loses potential energy, but not weight, for the same weight of water passes away as entered the turbine. So also, in the case of a steam-engine, the steam supplied to the engine loses heat-energy, but not weight. The same weight of steam passes away as entered the engine, but the heat-energy which leaves the engine is less than that which entered it by the amount which has disappeared by transmutation of heat into work.

$$\text{Heat supplied} = \text{useful work} + \text{heat rejected}$$

First Law of Thermodynamics.—The following statement is known as the *First Law of Thermodynamics:* "Heat and mechanical energy

are mutually convertible, and heat requires for its production, and produces by its disappearance, a definite number of units of work for each thermal unit."

The value of the mechanical equivalent of the thermal unit as determined by Joule was 772 foot-lbs., sometimes called Joule's equivalent, and written J.

Recent investigations, by Rowland and many others, as to the exact value of J have led to the conclusion that 778 is a more nearly correct value for the mechanical equivalent, and this value will be used throughout.

Thus 1 B.T.U. = 778 foot-lbs. = J

Second Law of Thermodynamics.—"Heat cannot pass from a cold body to a hot one by a purely self-acting process" (Clausius). That is to say, heat flows from hot to cold, but not in the reverse direction, and it is impossible, having once permitted a fall of temperature, as from the boiler furnace to the water in the boiler, or from the boiler to the condenser, to render the heat available for work by an attempt to return the heat by a self-acting process in the opposite direction.

It follows from this law that no heat-engine can convert the whole of the heat supplied to it into work, but that, as soon as the temperature of the added heat has fallen to that of the surrounding atmosphere, the heat remaining is no longer available for doing useful work. Also that if T_1 be the highest absolute temperature available, and T_2 the lowest absolute temperature available, it is impossible to obtain a greater efficiency than is represented by the fraction $\frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1}$, whatever the nature of the working fluid. The truth of these statements will be illustrated later.

Effect of Heat upon Gases.—In order to understand more clearly the principles involved in the transformation of heat into work by steam, it will be helpful to consider first the simpler case of the action of heat upon air, which is subject approximately to very simple laws, and which laws, it is assumed, would be absolutely obeyed by a perfect gas.

Boyle's Law.—The product of the pressure P and the volume V of a perfect gas is a constant quantity when the temperature remains constant.

PV = constant (at const. temp.) where P = pressure per square foot, and V = volume in cubic feet.

The constants for various gases have been determined with great accuracy by Regnault.

The value of P_0V_0 may be calculated thus: if the volume V_0 of 1 lb. of air at 32° Fahr. and at atmospheric pressure (760 mm.) be 12·387 cub. ft. per pound—

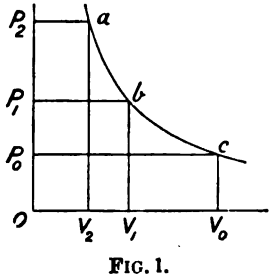


FIG. 1.

$$P_0V_0 = \text{constant}$$

$$14{\cdot}7 \times 144 \times 12{\cdot}387 = 26{,}220 \text{ foot-lbs.}$$

If a number of rectangles, P_0V_0, P_1V_1, P_2V_2, be drawn, then the line joining the points *a*, *b*, *c* is an isothermal line, or line of constant temperature. Here P varies inversely as V, thus—

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= \text{constant} \\ 2P \times \tfrac{1}{2}V &= \quad,, \\ 3P \times \tfrac{1}{3}V &= \quad,, \qquad \text{etc.} \end{aligned}$$

Law of Charles.—Under constant pressure, equal volumes of different gases expand equally for the same increment of temperature, and the volume changes proportionally to the absolute temperature.

The product P_0V_0 being given for a gas at T_0, or 32° Fahr., then the value of the constant for any new PV due to change of temperature, being proportional to the absolute temperature, may be found thus:

$$P_1V_1 = P_0V_0\frac{T_1}{T_0}$$

But $P_0V_0 = 26{,}220$, and $T_0 = 32 + 461 = 493$

$$\therefore P_1V_1 = 26{,}220\frac{T_1}{T_0} = \frac{26220}{493}T_1 = 53{\cdot}2T_1 \text{ nearly}$$

This equation for a perfect gas is written $PV = RT$, where R is a constant depending on the density of the gas. For air the constant $R = 53{\cdot}2$.

Absolute Temperature.—It is found by experiment that when air is heated or cooled under constant pressure, its volume increases or decreases in such a way that if the volume of the gas at freezing-point of water be 1 cub. ft., then its volume, when heated to the boiling-point of water, will have expanded to 1·3654 cub. ft.

Or, inversely, if the volume remain constant, and the pressure exerted by the gas at freezing-point = 1 atmosphere, then the pressure at boiling-point of water = 1·3654 atmospheres.

These results may be set out in the form of a diagram (Fig. 2). Thus, draw a vertical line to represent temperatures to any scale, and mark on it points representing the freezing-point and boiling-point of water—marked 32° and 212° respectively. From 32° set out, at right angles to the line of temperature, a line of pressure *ab* = 1 atmosphere to any scale, and at 212° a line *cd* = 1·3654 atmospheres to the same scale. Join the extremities *db* of these lines, and continue the line to intersect the line of temperatures.

It is assumed by physicists that, since the pressures vary regularly per degree of change of temperature between certain limits within the range of experiment, they vary also at the same rate beyond that range, and, therefore, that the point of intersection of the straight line *db* produced gives the point at which the pressure is reduced to zero.

So long as the gas exerts any pressure, it is presumed to exert that pressure by virtue of the heat-energy contained in it; the point, therefore, of zero pressure is reckoned as the point of zero temperature on the absolute scale. Then—

$$oa + 180 : oa :: 1{\cdot}3654 : 1$$
$$\text{or } oa = 492{\cdot}6$$

that is, the zero of absolute temperature is 492·6 below the freezing-point of water, or 492·6 − 32 = 460·6 below zero Fahrenheit. Calling this 461, and writing T for temperature absolute, and t for temperature by ordinary scale, then—

$$T = 461 + t \text{ Fahrenheit}$$
$$\text{or, } T = 273 + t \text{ Centigrade}$$

Also, if P_1 and V_1 be the pressure and volume of a gas at absolute temperature T_1, then at constant volume and change of absolute temperature to T_2 its pressure $= P_1 \times \frac{T_2}{T_1}$; or its volume at constant pressure at temperature $T_2 = V_1 \times \frac{T_2}{T_1}$.

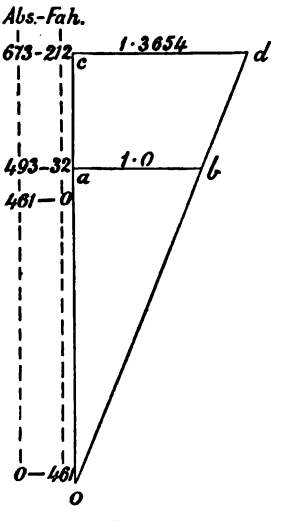


FIG. 2.

Internal or Intrinsic Energy (Joule's Law).—When a gas expands without doing external work, its temperature remains unchanged.

This law was arrived at by Joule in the following way :—

Two copper vessels, A and B, were connected by a tube as shown. One vessel was exhausted by an air-pump so as to produce as nearly as possible a perfect vacuum, and the other was filled with compressed air, at a pressure of 22 atmospheres. The vessels were then immersed in water.

When the stopcock was turned, the compressed air in A rushed into the empty vessel B. The temperature of the water surrounding the vessels was taken, before and after, with a very delicate thermometer, but no appreciable change was noted. When the vessels were immersed in *separate* vessels of water, it was found that when the stopcock was opened and the gas rushed from A, the water surrounding it fell in temperature, while the water surrounding B at the same time increased in temperature and by the same amount. The setting the mass of air in motion absorbed heat from the one vessel, which was restored again in the other vessel when the motion was destroyed. The net result was that there was no change in the temperature of the gas. The temperature of a gas is a measure of its internal or intrinsic energy, and in the above experiment, since there was no loss of temperature there was no loss of internal energy.

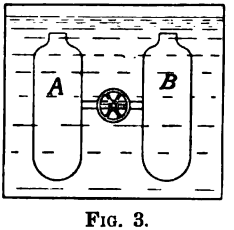


FIG. 3.

From this may be deduced also—

1. That the heat or intrinsic energy of a gas may be converted into the kinetic energy of molecules in motion, with corresponding loss of temperature, as when the gas cooled on rushing from A.

2. That the kinetic energy in the moving molecules of a gas will reappear as heat if the moving mass is brought to rest, as when the temperature increased in the vessel B.

Specific Heat of Gases (Regnault's Law).—The specific heat is the amount of heat in thermal units required to raise unit weight of the gas through 1° Fahr. The specific heat of a substance varies according to the conditions under which the substance is heated. Thus, if heat be applied to 1 lb. of gas in a closed vessel, the gas is said to be heated at *constant volume*, and the heat required to raise its temperature one degree is written C_v, which stands for specific heat of gas at constant volume in thermal units; $C_v \times 778 = K_v$, or the specific heat at constant volume expressed in foot-pounds.

When the same weight of gas is heated in a cylinder having a movable piston under a constant external pressure, if the temperature be raised one degree as before, the volume increases, and therefore *work* is done in pushing the piston out against the external pressure, as, for example, that of the atmosphere.

This is heating under *constant pressure*. The heat-units required to raise the temperature one degree under constant pressure is written C_p, and it is greater than C_v, owing to the extra heat required to do the work of moving the piston against external resistance, in addition to raising the temperature of the gas; and $C_p \times 778 = K_p$ = specific heat at constant pressure in foot-pounds. By the measurements of Regnault, the value of C_v for air = 0·1691 thermal unit = 131·6 foot-lbs. = K_v. The value of C_p for air = 0·2375 thermal unit = 184·8 foot-lbs. = K_p.

The effects of heating a gas under constant volume or constant pressure may be represented by diagrams as follows:—

Take a point *a* between the axes of pressure and volume, so that OP is its pressure and OV its volume for 1 lb. of gas. Apply heat to

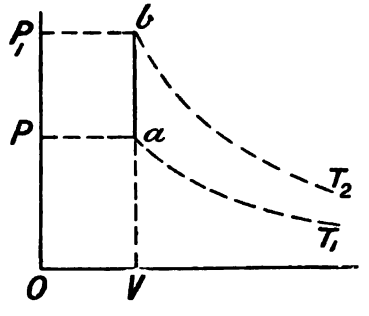


FIG. 4.

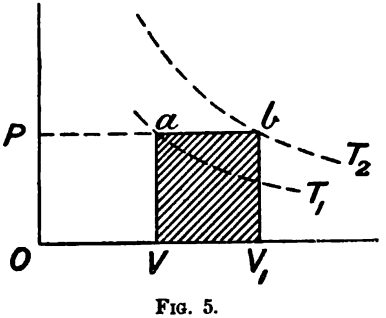


FIG. 5.

it when the piston is prevented from moving; then the pressure will rise, as shown by the vertical line *ab* (Fig. 4), and its temperature

will rise, as shown by the intersection of the line *ab* with isothermals of higher temperature.

Here the whole of the heat-energy applied has been absorbed in raising the temperature of the 1 lb. of gas. No external work has been done, work being measured by the product $P(V - V_1)$, and here $(V - V_1) = 0$.

The heat absorbed $= K_v(T_2 - T_1)$ foot-lbs. per pound, and this represents the increase of internal energy per pound.

If now the heat be applied to the gas enclosed in a cylinder under a movable piston, the external pressure being constant, the heat absorbed will not only raise the temperature of the gas from T_1 to T_2 as before, but will do work in moving the piston from V to V_1 against external resistance P (Fig. 5).

Then the line *ab* will represent the line of constant pressure, and the cross-lined area = work done $= P(OV_1 - OV)$. The heat absorbed $= K_v(T_2 - T_1) + P(OV_1 - OV)$ foot-lbs. per pound.

The total heat expended per pound under these conditions is equal to the number of degrees rise of temperature multiplied by the specific heat at constant pressure $= K_p(T_2 - T_1)$. And (the total heat expended) − (heat expended in external work) = heat expended in internal work; or since $P(OV_1 - OV) = R(T_2 - T_1)$—

$$K_p(T_2 - T_1) - R(T_2 - T_1) = (K_p - R)(T_2 - T_1)$$

But heat expended in internal work per pound and per degree rise of temperature is equal to the specific heat at constant volume—

$$\therefore (K_p - R)(T_2 - T_1) = K_v(T_2 - T_1)$$
$$(K_p - R) = K_v$$
$$R = K_p - K_v$$

that is, R = the difference between the two specific heats expressed in foot-pounds.

The ratio of the specific heat at constant pressure K_p to the specific heat at constant volume K_v is much used in thermodynamic problems, and is expressed by the Greek letter *gamma*, thus—

$$\frac{K_p}{K_v} = \gamma$$

It has been shown that—

$$K_p - K_v = R, \text{ and } K_p \div K_v = \gamma$$
$$\therefore K_v(\gamma - 1) = R$$
$$K_v = \frac{R}{\gamma - 1}$$
$$\gamma = \frac{C_p}{C_v} = \frac{0{\cdot}238}{0{\cdot}169} = 1{\cdot}408$$

Work done during Expansion.—When a gas expands in a cylinder under a movable piston, if the piston were moved by some external force, then the volume and pressure of the enclosed gas would change, but the temperature would remain constant (providing there were

no losses by radiation, etc.).[1] Therefore the curve indicating the varying condition of the gas as to pressure and volume would be an isothermal curve. If, however, the piston were moved at the expense of the heat-energy stored in the enclosed gas, or, in other words, at the expense of its intrinsic energy, then external work would be done by it and heat-energy expended; hence the pressure of the gas would fall below the isothermal, and if no other heat influences have been introduced, such as loss of heat by conduction through cylinder walls, or gain of heat from some external source or internal chemical action, then the curve described would be what is known as the *adiabatic* curve (*adiabatic* meaning literally *no passage* of heat to or from the expanding gas).

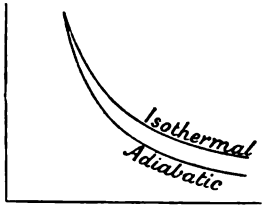


FIG. 6.

These two curves—the isothermal and the adiabatic—are of great importance in the theory of heat-engines, but they both represent ideal conditions which are only approximately realized in practice.

If, during the expansion of a given weight of gas, heat is added so as to keep the temperature constant, then the intrinsic energy of the gas is also constant (see Joule's Law), and the heat expended in doing external work during expansion is exactly balanced by the heat supplied to retain the gas at constant temperature.

The work done during isothermal expansion is given by the area *abdc* enclosed between the hyperbolic curve, the two vertical ordinates, and the zero line of pressure.

This area may be supposed to be made up of a number of indefinitely narrow strips, the area of each being equal to $p \times dv$, where p = pressure, and dv the indefinitely small width of the strip.

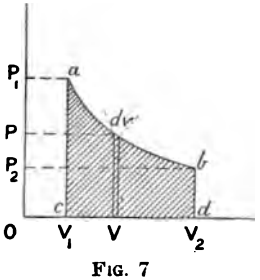


FIG. 7

Then, since $PV = P_1V_1 =$ constant, pressure at $V = P = \frac{P_1V_1}{V}$, where V = volume OV (Fig. 7), and area of strip $dv = \frac{P_1V_1}{V}dV$. Integrating between the limits V_1 and V_2

$$\text{area} = \int_{V_1}^{V_2} \frac{P_1V_1}{V} dV$$

$$= P_1V_1 \int_{V_1}^{V_2} \frac{dV}{V}$$

$$= P_1V_1 \log_e \frac{V_2}{V_1} = P_1V_1 \log_e r$$

where r = ratio of expansion; or, since $P_1V_1 = PV = RT$, $P_1V_1 \log_e r = RT \log_e r$.

The expression $RT \log_e r$ measures not only the work done during isothermal expansion, and therefore the heat expended, but also the

[1] This would not be true for *steam*, as the temperature of saturated steam varies with the pressure under all circumstances.

heat supplied to balance the loss and to retain the constant temperature, or constant intrinsic energy of the gas.

Work done during Adiabatic Expansion.—During adiabatic expansion the work done is less than that done during isothermal expansion, owing to the fact that during adiabatic expansion the work is done at the expense of its own intrinsic energy alone, and the amount of heat in the gas as the expansion proceeds becomes less and less. In any case the change of internal energy and the amount of work done per pound of gas $= K_v(T_1 - T_2)$.

The adiabatic expansion curve for a gas is a particular case of the general formula $PV^n = \text{constant}$, and is written $PV^\gamma = \text{constant}$, where γ = the ratio of the specific heats $= \frac{K_p}{K_v} = 1{\cdot}4$ for air.

The area enclosed by a curve of this form is obtained thus:

$$\text{area} = \int_{V_1}^{V_2} P dV$$

$$\text{but } PV^n = P_1V_1^n$$

$$\therefore P = \frac{P_1V_1^n}{V^n}$$

$$\text{area} = \int_{V_1}^{V_2} \frac{P_1V_1^n}{V^n} dV$$

$$= P_1V_1^n \int_{V_1}^{V_2} \frac{dV}{V^n}$$

$$= P_1V_1^n \int_{V_1}^{V_2} V^{-n} dV$$

$$= P_1V_1^n \left[\frac{V^{-n+1}}{-n+1}\right]_{V_1}^{V_2}$$

$$= P_1V_1^n \left(\frac{V_2^{1-n} - V_1^{1-n}}{1-n}\right)$$

$$= \frac{P_1V_1^n(V_1^{1-n} - V_2^{1-n})}{n-1}$$

$$= \frac{P_1V_1^nV_1^{1-n} - P_1V_1^nV_2^{1-n}}{n-1}$$

$$= \frac{P_1V_1 - P_2V_2}{n-1} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots (1)$$

This may also be written—

$$\text{area} = \frac{P_1V_1^n(V_1^{1-n} - V_2^{1-n})}{n-1}$$

$$= \frac{P_1V_1^nV_1^{1-n}\left(\frac{V_1^{1-n} - V_2^{1-n}}{V_1^{1-n}}\right)}{n-1}$$

$$= \frac{P_1V_1\left(1 - \frac{V_2^{1-n}}{V_1^{1-n}}\right)}{n-1}$$

$$= \frac{P_1V_1\left\{1 - \left(\frac{V_1}{V_2}\right)^{n-1}\right\}}{n-1} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots (2)$$

Then, dealing with a cubic foot of gas, since $144p$ = pressure per square foot = P, work done during expansion from V_1 to V_2

$$= \frac{144 \times p_1 v_1 \left\{1 - \left(\frac{v_1}{v_2}\right)^{n-1}\right\}}{n-1}$$

Also $P_1V_1^n = P_2V_2^n$ = constant; $\left(\frac{V_1}{V_2}\right)^n = \frac{P_2}{P_1}$;

$$\therefore \frac{V_1}{V_2} = \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{n}}; \text{ and } \left(\frac{V_1}{V_2}\right)^{n-1} = \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)^{\frac{n-1}{n}}$$

Therefore work done during expansion between pressures P_1 and P_2

$$= \frac{144 \times p_1 v_1 \left\{1 - \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)^{\frac{n-1}{n}}\right\}}{n-1} \quad \ldots\ldots (3)$$

The above equations (1), (2), and (3) give the work done per cubic foot of gas during expansion only. To find the total work done, including that done during admission, $p \times 144 \times V_1$ must be added to that done during expansion.

Relation between Volume, Pressure, and Temperature for a Perfect Gas.

$$P_1V_1 = RT_1; \; P_2V_2 = RT_2$$
$$\therefore \frac{P_2V_2}{P_1V_1} = \frac{T_2}{T_1}$$

For adiabatic expansion—

$$\text{also } P_1V_1^{\gamma} = P_2V_2^{\gamma}$$

therefore multiplying—

$$\frac{T_2}{T_1} = \frac{P_1V_1^{\gamma}P_2V_2}{P_2V_2^{\gamma}P_1V_1} = \left(\frac{V_1}{V_2}\right)^{\gamma-1}$$
$$\text{also } \frac{T_2}{T_1} = \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)^{\frac{\gamma-1}{\gamma}}$$
$$\therefore T_1 : T_2 :: V_2^{\gamma-1} : V_1^{\gamma-1}$$
$$\text{and } T_1 : T_2 :: P_1^{\frac{\gamma-1}{\gamma}} : P_2^{\frac{\gamma-1}{\gamma}}$$
$$V_2 : V_1 :: P_1^{\frac{1}{\gamma}} : P_2^{\frac{1}{\gamma}}$$
$$V_2^{\gamma} : V_1^{\gamma} :: P_1 : P_2$$

EXAMPLE.—Air is drawn into an air-compressor at 60° Fahr., or 521° absolute, and at atmospheric pressure: find the temperature when the pressure is raised to four atmospheres without loss of heat by cooling.

Then from equation—

$$T_2 = T_1\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)^{\frac{\gamma-1}{\gamma}}$$

$$= 521(4)^{\frac{1\cdot4-1}{1\cdot4}}$$

$$\log T_2 = \log 521 + \tfrac{0\cdot4}{1\cdot4}\log 4$$

$$= 2\cdot7168 + (0\cdot29 \times 0\cdot602)$$

$$= 2\cdot8914$$

$T_2 = 779°$ absolute, or 318° Fahr.

To find the value of n in the equation PV^n = constant.

1. Let *ab* be a portion of the curve of the form PV^n constant. Take any point *p* in the curve, and draw a tangent to the curve from *p*, intersecting OY and OX in *c* and *d*; then $\frac{ce}{eo} = \frac{of}{fd} = n$, which may be obtained by measurement. This method may be applied to indicator diagrams when *ep* = total volume of gas (including clearance), and OX = zero line of pressure (absolute).

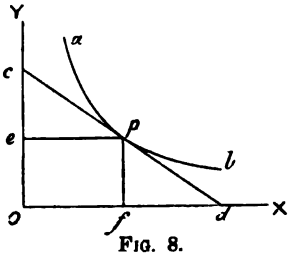


FIG. 8.

2. The value of *n* may also be obtained by taking any two points on the curve; then using the equation—

$$\text{area} = \frac{P_1V_1 - P_2V_2}{n-1}$$

(except when $n = 1$, when the formula fails).

3. Since $PV^n = P_1V_1^n$ = constant—

$$\log P + n \log V = \log P_1 + n \log V_1$$

$$\therefore n = \frac{\log P_1 - \log P}{\log V - \log V_1}$$

Heat-Energy represented by Areas.[1]—When heat is applied to a perfect gas—that is, a gas in which none of the heat added is absorbed in doing work to overcome internal resistance, but all the heat goes either to increase the temperature or to do external work—then the quantities of heat involved may be represented by areas as follows:

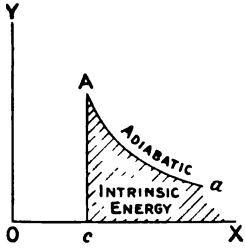


FIG. 9.

1. Let A represent the condition as to pressure and volume of 1 lb. of gas at a given temperature; and let the gas expand, doing work by virtue of the heat-energy contained in the gas, but without loss or gain of heat externally. Then, when the gas has expanded indefinitely until

[1] See Papers by Dr. Oliver Lodge, *Engineer*, January, 1894.

the whole of the intrinsic energy has been expended by conversion into work, the temperature will have reached absolute zero. The work done, and therefore also the intrinsic energy of the gas at the beginning—in condition represented by point A—will be represented by the area enclosed by the lines Ac, cX, and the adiabatic curve Aa prolonged to meet OX (Fig. 9).

If expansion continue to zero temperature and pressure, then—

$$\text{area} = \frac{P_1V_1 - P_2V_2}{\gamma - 1}$$

But $P_2 = 0$,

$$\therefore \text{area} = \frac{P_1V_1}{\gamma - 1} = \frac{RT_1}{\gamma - 1} = K_vT_1$$

either of which expressions represents the intrinsic energy of the gas in state A.[1]

2. If heat be added to the gas in state A at constant volume till its temperature rises to B, then, if adiabatics be drawn through A and B (Fig. 10), area $XcAa$ represents the intrinsic heat-energy in the gas in state A, $XcBb$ the intrinsic energy in state B, and the area $aABb$ represents the additional heat required to change the state of the gas from A to B.

Since the internal energy in a given weight of gas depends on the temperature, then, if temperature at $A = T_1$ and that at $B = T_2$, considering unit weight of gas—

$$\text{area } aABb = K_v(T_2 - T_1)$$
$$= \frac{R}{\gamma - 1}(T_2 - T_1)$$

3. For any change of state from A to B accompanied by addition of heat, if adiabatics be drawn through A and B, area $aABb$ gives the heat received by the gas during the change from state A to state B.

But during expansion from A to B work has been done represented by area $cABd$ (Fig. 11), and therefore the total heat applied = in-

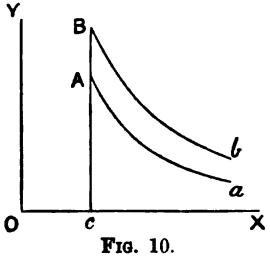


FIG. 10.

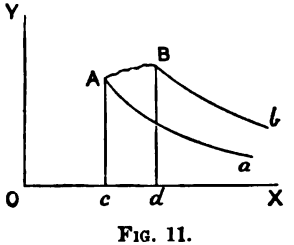


FIG. 11.

trinsic energy in B + work done in passing from state A to state B − intrinsic energy in A;

that is, $XdBb + cABd - XcAa = aABb$ = heat supplied

If the temperature of the gas at B is greater than that at A, then

[1] To draw an adiabatic curve, see Appendix.

the intrinsic energy at B is greater than at A, and the heat added to the gas at A is more than that required merely to do the work *cABd*

4. Let now the path A to B be situated as in Fig. 12, where B falls below the adiabatic through A. Here no heat has been received

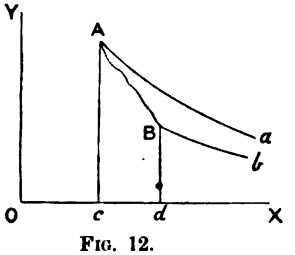


FIG. 12.

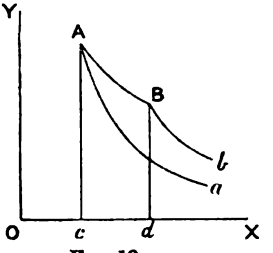


FIG. 13.

from external sources; on the contrary, loss of heat has taken place represented by area *b*BA*a*. And intrinsic energy of gas in state A = work done during expansion A to B + intrinsic energy remaining in gas in state B + loss of heat during expansion; or—

$$\text{area } XcAa = cABd + XdBb + bBAa$$

5. An important case is the one in which the heat added to a perfect gas during expansion is the exact equivalent of the work done, and therefore the temperature at the end of the operation remains the same as at the beginning. This is the case of isothermal expansion.

Here, since AB (Fig. 13) is an isothermal, or line of constant temperature, the intrinsic energy of the gas is constant at any point in this line independently of pressure or volume. Intrinsic energy in A = $XcAa$. Heat added during expansion A to B = $aABb$. But energy at A + heat added = energy remaining at B + work done; or

$$XcAa + aABb = XdBb + cABd$$
$$\text{But } XcAa = XdBb$$
$$\therefore aABb = cABd$$

that is, the heat added to a perfect gas during isothermal expansion is the exact equivalent of the work done.

The relation of the four areas marked W, X, Y, Z (Fig. 14), to the quantities of heat involved in the change from A to B when AB is an isothermal line is as follows:—

W + X = work done
X + Y = heat received equivalent to work done
W + Z = intrinsic energy in gas at A
Y + Z = intrinsic energy in gas at B
W = work done at expense of intrinsic energy originally present at A
X = additional work done by heat received during operation AB

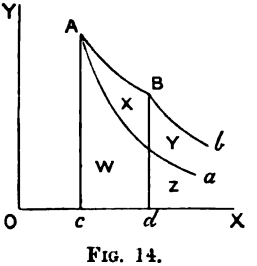


FIG. 14.

Z = residual energy remaining of original energy at A
Y = additional heat-energy to maintain constant intrinsic energy of gas during expansion along the isothermal line AB

Work done during Compression.—If a quantity of gas, in state A as to pressure and volume, be compressed in a cylinder under a movable piston, then, if the compression take place slowly, the heat due to the work done upon the gas, instead of increasing its temperature, may be supposed to be dissipated through the sides of the containing vessel. In this case the temperature would remain constant, and the pressure would increase in accordance with Boyle's Law, and the curve of compression would be given by the isothermal curve AB. If, however, the compression of the gas is supposed to take place quickly, then the heat due to the work done upon the gas will increase the temperature of the gas, and the pressure will also rise, in consequence of the increased temperature, above that during isothermal compression, and the curve of compression will be given by a curve AC above AB.

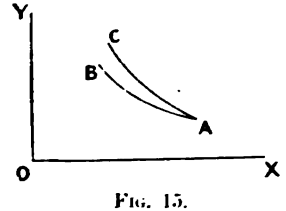


FIG. 15.

The work done upon the gas during isothermal compression is the same as the work done by the gas during isothermal expansion, and is given by the expression $P_1V_1 \log_e \frac{V_1}{V_2}$; or $= RT_1 \log_e r$ where V_1 is the original and V_2 the final volumes, and $V_1 \div V_2 = r$.

Similarly, the work done upon the gas during adiabatic compression is the same as the work done by it during adiabatic expansion —

$$= \frac{P_1V_1 - P_2V_2}{\gamma - 1}$$

These principles may be illustrated by taking the work done in an air-compressor (Fig. 16) on 1 lb. of air. During the suction stroke from O to M, the volume V_1 at pressure P_1 is drawn into the cylinder. On the return stroke the air is confined, and as the volume decreases the pressure increases finally to P_2, at which pressure the air is forced into the mains. If, during the operation of compressing the air, the heat due to compression is all removed by some method of cooling, the temperature of the air will remain constant, and the line of pressures will follow the isothermal curve NE. If, however, the air is not cooled during compression, but all the heat due to compression be retained, then the line of pressures will follow the adiabatic curve NF. In practice the actual curve takes some position, NG, between the isothermal and adiabatic lines.

During the suction stroke BN the work done $= p_1v_1$.

During compression NF up to pressure $p_2 = p_3$, the work done

$$= \frac{p_3v_3 - p_1v_1}{n - 1}$$

During the delivery of the air FA against constant pressure p_3 the work done $= p_3v_3$. The net work (U) of compression from p_1 to p_3 and delivery at p_3 per lb. of air = area BAFN.

$$U = \frac{p_3v_3 - p_1v_1}{n-1} + p_3v_3 - p_1v_1$$

$$= \frac{n}{n-1}(p_3v_3 - p_1v_1)$$

$$= \frac{n}{n-1}p_1v_1\left(\frac{p_3v_3}{p_1v_1} - 1\right)$$

But $\frac{v_3}{v_1} = \left(\frac{p_1}{p_3}\right)^{\frac{1}{n}}$

$$\therefore U = \frac{n}{n-1}RT_1\left\{\left(\frac{p_3}{p_1}\right)^{\frac{n-1}{n}} - 1\right\}$$

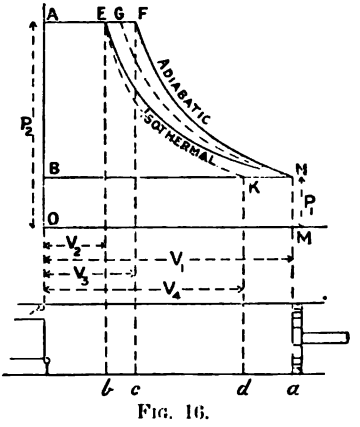


FIG. 16.

The work done upon the gas by compression from p_1 to p_3 is converted into heat and increases the temperature of the gas, thus—

$$T_3 = \left(\frac{p_3}{p_1}\right)^{\frac{n-1}{n}} T_1$$

The mean effective pressure during compression and delivery = $U \div v_1$—

$$= \frac{n}{n-1}p_1\left\{\left(\frac{p_3}{p_1}\right)^{\frac{n-1}{n}} - 1\right\}$$

When the compression is adiabatic, $n = \gamma = 1{\cdot}4$.

Carnot's Cycle.—A cycle is defined as a series of operations through which a substance is passed, the substance being brought back finally to the same state in all respects as that from which it started. The area enclosed by the cycle is a measure of the net or useful work done.

The cycle of operations known as Carnot's cycle for a perfect or ideal heat-engine consists of four stages, illustrated as follows:—

Let a cylinder contain unit weight of gas enclosed under a movable piston, and let there be an indefinite supply of heat at constant temperature, T_1; also a lower limit of temperature, T_2. Then, assuming no losses due to radiation, conduction, and friction—

1. Let the temperature of the gas in the cylinder to start with be the same as that of the source of heat, namely T_1, and let the cylinder be in contact with the source of heat. Then, if the gas at state point A (Fig. 17) in the cylinder expands, doing work on the piston, and at the same time a supply of heat from the source passes into the gas, maintaining the temperature constant at T_1, the change of pressure and volume will be represented by the isothermal line AB. During this

process the work done = aABb. At the same time a quantity of heat, Q_1, has been given to the expanding gas—

$$Q_1 = a\text{AB}b = \text{XABY}$$

2. Let the supply of heat be cut off at B, and let the gas continue to expand without any further communication of heat. Then the pressure will fall more rapidly, and the temperature will no longer be maintained at T_1, owing to the loss of heat in the performance of external work, which has been done at the expense of the intrinsic energy of the gas; and let the temperature fall to the lowest temperature, T_2, during which the expansion curve BC is described. The work done during BC = bBCc. This completes the forward stroke.

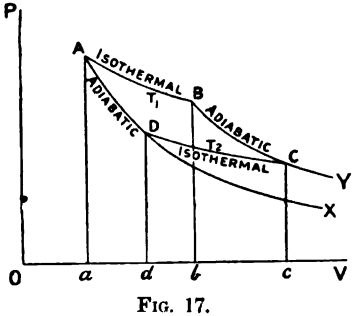


FIG. 17.

3. By the aid of a flywheel or other means, let the return stroke now be made; but let the cylinder be now placed in contact with an indefinitely large cooling arrangement, represented by the lower limit of temperature, T_2, the temperature of the gas at C being also T_2. There is at first no transfer of heat. But, as the gas is compressed behind the piston while it returns, the immediate effect is to increase the temperature of the gas; but, being in contact with the cooler at temperature T_2, the temperature remains at T_2 during the time the compression is going on. Let the compression continue till the piston reaches point D, when communication with the cooler is closed.

The point is so chosen that the adiabatic through D passes through A.

During this third operation the piston does work on the substance, the amount of which is negative and is equal to the area cCDd. At the same time a quantity of heat, $-Q_2$, has been rejected to the cooler—

$$Q_2 = c\text{CD}d = \text{XDCY}$$

4. Continuing the compression, no heat can now escape, and the pressure and temperature rapidly rise; the compression line DA is described, and the substance is restored to A at T_1, where its condition is now in every respect the same as at the beginning of the series of operations. The work done during the compression DA is negative, and is = aADd.

The net work (W) done is the algebraic sum of the work done during each of the separate operations; thus, using the symbol W_1 to represent work done during the first operation, namely, expansion AB—

$$W = W_1 + W_2 - W_3 - W_4$$
$$= \text{area ABCD}$$

These quantities may be stated in detail thus, using p_a for pressure at a, and v_a for volume at a; then—

(1) $$W_1 = p_a v_a \log_e \frac{V_b}{V_a}$$

since AB is an isothermal line. This also represents heat taken in by gas during expansion AB = $Q_1 = a\text{AB}b = \text{XABY}$.

(2) No heat taken in or rejected. Work done by gas during adiabatic expansion BC = W_2—

$$W_2 = \frac{p_c v_b}{\gamma - 1}\left\{1 - \left(\frac{V_b}{V_c}\right)^{\gamma-1}\right\}$$

loss of internal energy = $K_v(T_1 - T_2)$

(3) Heat rejected during operation CD = W_3—

$$W_3 = p_d v_d \log_e \frac{V_c}{V_d}$$
$$= Q_2 = c\text{CD}d = \text{XDCY}$$

(4) No heat taken in or rejected. Work done on gas during adiabatic compression DA = W_4—

$$W_4 = \frac{p_a v_a}{\gamma - 1}\left\{1 - \left(\frac{V_a}{V_d}\right)^{\gamma-1}\right\}$$

gain of internal energy = $K_v(T_1 - T_2)$

In operations (2) and (4) the loss and gain of heat are equal and balance each other; also comparing the work done in the two cases W_2 and W_4, it will be seen that the equations are equal, for $p_a v_a = p_b v_b$, since a and b are on the same hyperbolic curve. It has also been shown (p. 14) that, since AD and BC are adiabatic curves—

$$\left(\frac{V_a}{V_d}\right)^{\gamma-1} = \frac{T_2}{T_1}; \quad \left(\frac{V_b}{V_c}\right)^{\gamma-1} = \frac{T_2}{T_1}; \quad \therefore \frac{V_a}{V_d} = \frac{V_b}{V_c}:$$

Comparing stages (1) and (3)—

$$\text{we have } \frac{V_b}{V_a} = \frac{V_c}{V_d} = r$$

$$\text{therefore from (1) } W_1 = p_a v_a \log_e \frac{V_b}{V_a} = RT_1 \log_e r$$

$$\text{and from (3) } W_3 = p_d v_d \log_e \frac{V_c}{V_d} = RT_2 \log_e r$$

Then the difference between heat absorbed in (1) and heat rejected in (3) = heat converted into work = $R(T_1 - T_2)\log_e r$.

But total heat received = $RT_1 \log_e r$

$$\text{therefore efficiency} = \frac{R(T_1 - T_2)\log_e r}{RT_1 \log_e r} = \frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1}$$

From a study of the statement of the Carnot efficiency, it will be evident that "between given limits of temperature the efficiency of an engine is the greatest possible when the whole reception of heat takes

place at the highest limit, and the whole rejection of heat at the lowest."

The greater the range of temperature available, the nearer the fraction $\frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1}$ approaches unity, and therefore the greater the value of the efficiency of the engine, other things being equal.

The range may be increased by increasing the value of T_1, or decreasing the value of T_2.

Suppose an engine to work between the temperatures 300° Fahr. and 60° Fahr. Then its maximum efficiency

$$= \frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1} = \frac{761 - 521}{761} = 0{\cdot}315 = 31{\cdot}5 \text{ per cent.}$$

It will therefore be seen that the quantity of heat which is rejected at T_2 is necessarily large even under the best conditions, and that the efficiency is of necessity far removed from unity.

The value of the fraction increases as T_1 increases, and this is the direction in which improvement continues to be made from time to time in the steam-engine, and it has been carried to a still greater extent in the gas and oil engine.

The lowest practical limit, T_2, is the temperature of the surrounding atmosphere.

It may assist the student if the action of heat-engines, working between given limits of temperature, be compared with the action of the water-wheel working between two different water-levels. The water-wheel is a device for using the difference of water-level, while the heat-engine is a device for using difference of temperature, in both cases for the purpose of doing useful work.

In the case of the water-wheel, it is evidently essential to maximum efficiency that full use should be made of the difference of level; that no part of the height is wasted before the water reaches the wheel or after it leaves it. In other words, to take full advantage of the height, the wheel should receive its water from the highest level and release it at the lowest.

We might push the analogy a step further to illustrate the principle that *reversibility* is a condition of maximum efficiency. For suppose some external mechanical power to work the water-wheel; then, if the direction of rotation of the wheel be reversed, the wheel might be made to transfer water from the lower level to the higher level, providing that the wheel, when working normally, received water at the highest level and rejected it at the lowest; any fall at either side of the wheel would prevent it from being reversible. This analogy is due to Carnot.

If the reversible water-wheel just described were turned in the reverse direction by a second water-wheel (made somewhat wider, so as to make it, say, 20 per cent. more powerful), then the first wheel might be made to lift the water back again from the bottom level to the top.

If, however, the water-wheel were reversed by means of a heat-engine instead of by another water-wheel, then, with the ordinary commercial engine, the heat expended will be from five to ten times as great as that actually converted into work, 80 to 90 per cent. of the heat being rejected at the exhaust of the engine.

From this we see that when work is done by gravity, or transferred as work in any way, the loss is merely that due to the friction of the machinery of transmission, and need not be more than perhaps 20 per cent.; whereas when work is done by transmutation of *heat* into work, there is always a necessary and unavoidable loss of at least 70 per cent. of the heat, when working between the limits of temperature at present used in steam-engines, and a further loss of from 10 to 20 per cent. from causes which are more or less preventible.

It appears, therefore, that work obtained by means of heat-engines is a somewhat costly commodity, and it is therefore important to strive to obtain as high a percentage as possible of the heat actually available as work.

From what has been said, it will be evident that though, by the first law of Thermodynamics, heat and work are mutually convertible, all the work which can be obtained by the conversion of the heat will not be available as useful work. Thus, when speaking of the heat value of 1 lb. of coal as 14,000 heat units, and expressing the same as units of work, we write—

$$14{,}000 \times 778 = 10{,}892{,}000 \text{ foot-lbs.}$$

But it is a mistake to suppose that this number of foot-pounds of useful work can be obtained from 1 lb. of coal, as only about 30 per cent. of it is available for the performance of useful work under the most perfect conditions within present limits of temperature.

By a consideration of the areas, Figs. 10, 11, 13, and 17, it will be seen why it is not possible in any case to convert into useful work the whole of the heat added to a working fluid. Thus, suppose 1 lb. of air at atmospheric temperature, say 60°, is heated to 500° Fahr., and the gas is expanded behind a piston, doing work until the temperature has again fallen to 60°. It might be thought that the whole of the heat in this case had been converted into useful work; but it is not so, because during the expansion of the gas—in addition to the useful work done—it has been doing work against the back pressure on the other side of the moving piston; and it would only be possible to convert the *whole* of the heat into useful work provided the gas was expanded against absolute zero of pressure and temperature behind the piston; also that the expansion of the gas itself was continued down to this limit, namely, the absolute zero of temperature and pressure. The loss due to incomplete expansion and to work done against back pressure accounts for the large loss of heat rejected at the exhaust in all heat-engines (see Temperature-entropy diagrams, Chap. III.).

By the second law of Thermodynamics, it is not possible to expand, to any useful purpose, below the temperature of the surrounding

atmosphere, and there are many practical objections to expanding as far as this, especially that of excessive dimensions of the engine. Increase of practical efficiencies must therefore be obtained in the direction of increased initial temperatures, as very little improvement can be expected at the lower end of the scale.

These statements may be summarized as follows :—

1. *Work* transmitted as *work*, as from one machine to another. The possible efficiency may reach nearly 100 per cent., depending only on the loss of friction.

2. *Heat* transmitted as *heat*, measured as heat units and independently of temperature ; as from the furnace to the water in a heating apparatus. The possible efficiency may reach perhaps 90 per cent., depending only upon the difference between the quantity of heat, Q_1, generated by the products of combustion and the quantity, Q_2, rejected. The efficiency $= (Q_1 - Q_2) \div Q_1$, where Q = quantity of heat as distinguished from temperature.

3. *Work* converted into *heat*, as in the case of the friction brake. Here the efficiency will be 100 per cent.

4. *Heat* converted into *work*. Here the efficiency always equals $(Q_1 - Q_2) \div Q_1$, where Q_1 = heat received, and Q_2 = heat rejected. But this practical efficiency, $\frac{Q_1 - Q_2}{Q_1}$, always falls short of the efficiency, $\frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1}$, of a perfect engine.

Within the present limits of temperature used in steam engines, the efficiency of the perfect engine cannot exceed about 30 per cent. The actual efficiency of steam-engines varies from $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 20 per cent.

CHAPTER II.

PROPERTIES OF STEAM.

THE volume of 1 lb. of water at its temperature of maximum density = 0·016 cub. ft. At higher temperatures its volume per pound increases, and is obtained by multiplying 0·016 by a factor, the value of which, as determined by Hirn, is as follows :—

Temperature.	Factor.
212° Fahr.	1·0431
284° „	1·0795
356° „	1·127
392° „	1·159

Let heat be applied to 1 lb. of water at 32° Fahr., enclosed in a cylinder under a movable frictionless piston exposed to atmospheric pressure externally, and suppose the area of the piston to be 1 sq. ft. Then, neglecting the weight of the piston, the pressure on the piston = the pressure of the atmosphere = p lbs. per square inch = $p \times 144$ lbs. per square foot = P.

The effects of heat upon the water are—

1. The temperature rises, but the piston remains stationary, except for the small expansion of the water, till a certain temperature is reached depending on the pressure on the piston. This temperature is called the *boiling-point*, and it varies as the pressure on the water varies, thus :

Pressure on water.	Boiling-point.
1 lb. per square inch	102° Fahr.
5 „ „	162° „
10 „ „	194° „
14·7 (atmospheric pressure)	212° „
20 lbs. per square inch	228° „
100 „ „	328° „
350 „ „	432° „

2. As soon as the water has reached the boiling-point, though the application of heat is still continued, there is no further rise in temperature, but steam begins to form and the piston to rise against external pressure. Meantime the water gradually disappears, the weight of steam formed corresponding to the weight of water which

disappears, till the whole of the 1 lb. of water has been converted into 1 lb. of steam. The steam during formation remains at the same temperature as the water from which it is produced. The heat added all the while evaporation is taking place is termed "latent heat," so called because the continued application of heat during evaporation does not raise the temperature, and it was not clear to the early experimenters what became of this heat.

3. The water having been completely evaporated, if the heat be still further continued, the temperature, instead of remaining constant as before, will again begin to rise, now that the steam is no longer in contact with water; and the piston will also continue to rise higher; and the result will be the formation of *superheated* steam at constant pressure, but increasing volume and increasing temperature. Steam is said to be "superheated" when it is heated above the temperature of the boiling-point of the water corresponding to the pressure at which it is generated.

Saturated Steam is steam at the greatest possible density for its pressure. It is invisible, and also, of course, "dry," as, if it were not, it must contain moisture or water in suspension, and this would then not be steam only, but a mixture of steam and water, or wet steam, which is no longer invisible.

If 1 lb. of water is gradually converted into steam in a cylinder under a movable piston, the steam is saturated all the time of its formation until the last drop of water is evaporated. Beyond that point, if the heat is continued, the steam becomes superheated, increases in volume, and the vessel no longer contains steam at the greatest possible density.

Pressure and Temperature of Saturated Steam.—The temperature of saturated steam in the presence of water is the same as that of the water with which it is in contact, and there is one temperature only for steam at any given pressure. At any other pressure the temperature has some other value, but always fixed for that particular pressure. If the temperature falls, then the pressure falls, and a portion of the steam is at the same time condensed; or if the temperature increases, then the pressure also increases, and more of the water present is converted into steam.

It may here be noted that, in practice, the water in a boiler, when the circulation is bad, is not all of the same temperature throughout. The temperature of the upper portion of the water is the same as that of the steam, but the temperature of the water below the fire is not necessarily the same, and where this occurs, the effect is to produce unequal expansion in the boiler, which is the cause of many serious boiler troubles.

Our knowledge of the relation between the pressure, temperature, and volume of saturated steam is chiefly due to the experiments of Regnault. The results of these experiments were stated in the form of equations, from which the tables now in use have been calculated.

Regnault's experiments were conducted with great care and

accuracy, and the results plotted, and curves drawn on copper, from which the formulæ were then deduced.

The general relationship between pressure and temperature is set forth in the following diagram (Fig. 18), from which it will be seen that the pressure not only varies with the temperature, but that the rate of change of pressure is more rapid as the temperatures increase. Thus at 212° Fahr., and at atmospheric pressure, a rise of 1° in temperature is followed by a rise of pressure of hardly $\frac{1}{3}$ lb. per square inch, while at 400° Fahr., or 250 lbs. pressure, a rise of temperature of 1° is accompanied by an increase of pressure of 3 lbs. per square inch; and the pressure rapidly increases; thus steam at 546° Fahr. has a pressure of 1000 lbs. per square inch.

It has been proposed to use high-pressure steam in pipes of small bore to act as a means of superheating steam brought in contact with the external surface of the pipes, but it will be seen how enormously high the pressure must become before a temperature can be reached which shall be of much use for superheating.

It should also be pointed out that though the working pressures of steam will undoubtedly continue to rise in many departments of engineering, yet the efficiency of the steam is proportional to the *range of temperature* through which it works, and hence the rate of gain of efficiency will not keep pace with the rate of increase of pressure.

Rankine gives the following equation connecting the pressure and temperature of saturated steam:—

$$\log p = A - \frac{B}{T} - \frac{C}{T^2}$$

in which $T = t + 461{\cdot}2$ Fahr.

For pounds per square inch the values A, B, and C are, $A = 6{\cdot}1007$, $\log B = 3{\cdot}43642$, $\log C = 5{\cdot}59873$. This equation gives very accurate results. It is most convenient to obtain temperatures from the tables in practice, but the tables usually do not give values at very high pressures.

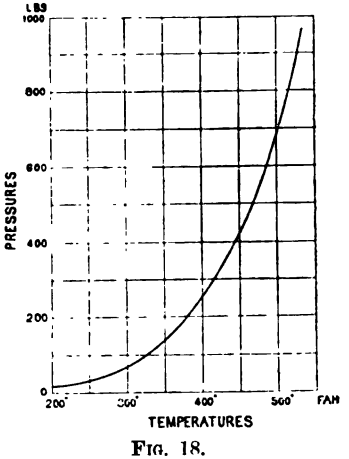


FIG. 18.

Specific Heat of Water and Steam.—For practical purposes, the specific heat of water is reckoned as unity at all ordinary temperatures. In other words, if t be the temperature of the water, then the units of heat required to raise 1 lb. of the water from 32° to $t° = t - 32$. This, however, though sufficiently accurate for practical purposes, is not strictly true.

The specific heat of steam, according to Regnault, is 0·4805 at constant pressure, and 0·346 at constant volume.

Total Heat of Steam.—The total heat of evaporation (H) is defined to be the number of units of heat required to raise a pound of water at 32° Fahr. to a given temperature, and to convert it all into steam at that temperature. The equation by which the value of H may be calculated for any temperature, $t°$, of the steam in Fahrenheit units is—

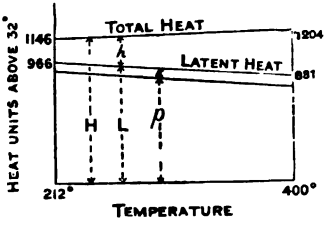


FIG. 19.

$$\text{total heat} = 1082 + 0{\cdot}305t$$

From which it will be seen that the total heat slowly increases as the temperature of evaporation increases, namely, by 0 305 thermal unit per degree of rise in temperature (see Fig. 19).

Heat to raise the temperature of the water (h) during evaporation, reckoned from 32°, is the number of thermal units per lb. to raise the water from 32° Fahr. to the temperature of evaporation t. In practice it is usual to obtain the value of h, thus:

$$h = t - 32$$

The true value of h is, however, somewhat greater than this, and is given in the Tables in the Appendix; it includes the heat used in expanding the water as well as in increasing its temperature.

If the feed water supplied to a boiler is at some temperature, t_f higher than 32°, the total heat of evaporation is then reduced by $t_f - 32$; thus, if the temperature of the water to begin with is, say, 50° Fahr., then the total number of thermal units per pound required to convert it into steam at 212° will be less than that given by the tables by 50 − 32, or = 1146·6 − (50 − 32) = 1128·6.

Latent Heat.—The latent heat of evaporation (L) is defined as the heat required to convert 1 lb. of water at a given temperature into steam at the same temperature, and under constant pressure.

$$H = L + h$$
$$\text{or } L = H - h$$

Or L may be obtained approximately by the following formula:—

$$L = 1114 - 0{\cdot}7t$$

From this equation it will be seen that the latent heat decreases as the temperature increases (see Fig. 19).

During the evaporation of 1 lb. of water, for every additional unit of heat, $\frac{1}{L}$ part of the 1 lb. of water is converted into steam, till the last drop of water is evaporated. The heat L supplied during this process of evaporation has been expended in two ways: (1) In overcoming the internal molecular resistances during the change of state from water at boiling temperature to steam. The heat so used is termed the *internal* latent heat, and is usually written

with the Greek letter ρ. (2) In doing external work by overcoming the external resistance or pressure, P, per square foot through a space equivalent to the volume occupied by the 1 lb. of steam at the given pressure, less the original volume of the 1 lb. of water. This heat is called the *external* latent heat, and is written E.

Latent heat.

Internal heat. External heat.

Then, during formation of steam—

$$\text{total heat } H = h + L$$
$$= h + \rho + E$$
$$\text{also } E = \frac{PV}{J} = \frac{PV}{778} \text{ heat-units}$$

PV is the work done in foot-pounds, omitting the volume occupied by the water from which the steam was generated.

If s = volume of the water in cubic feet before evaporation begins, and V = volume of the steam when the last drop of water has been evaporated, and P = external pressure in pounds per square foot, then change of volume = $V - s = u$, and the external work done = $E = P(V - s) = P(V - 0{\cdot}016) = Pu$.

The value of V is very large compared with s, and the more so the lower the pressure. Thus at atmospheric pressure, V = 1644 times s, while at 200 lbs. absolute pressure, V = 141 times s.

The internal latent heat of steam (ρ) may be written in work-units, thus:

$$\rho = J(L) - P(V - s)$$

The "internal latent heat" (ρ) must be distinguished from the "internal energy" ($\rho + h$) of steam.

In the short Table on p. 30, particulars are given of the quantities of heat involved for a few cases of varying pressure from 1 lb. to 200 lbs. absolute pressure, and a careful study of this table will be helpful.

Taking the items in the order given—

(1) The temperature of 32° Fahr. is taken as the arbitrary starting-point from which all quantities of heat are measured.

(2) The temperature of the boiling-point increases with the pressure; but the temperatures increase more slowly as the pressures increase (see also Fig. 18, p. 27).

(3) As the pressure under which the steam is formed increases, the steam becomes more dense, and thus the volume occupied per pound becomes smaller.

If the steam be formed at atmospheric pressure, then its volume per pound is 26·6 cub. ft., but if the pressure is increased to 200 lbs. per square inch absolute, then the volume per pound is 2·29 cub. ft., or only about $\frac{1}{12}$ of the volume at atmospheric pressure.

(4) The total heat required to generate 1 lb. of steam increases as the pressure increases, but the difference is very small. Hence the cost, or heat expenditure, per pound of high-pressure steam is very little greater than the cost per pound of low-pressure steam. Thus the total heat of steam at 200 lbs. absolute pressure is 1198, while that of steam at 100 lbs. is 1182, or a difference of 16 units of heat per pound, or 1·4 per cent. But the possible work due to expansion from the higher pressure is much greater than from the lower. Thus, expanding down to 10 lbs. from 200 lbs. initial pressure, the mean pressure is 40 lbs.; and from 100 lbs. initial pressure, the mean pressure is 33 lbs., or a gain of mean pressure of 21·2 per cent., neglecting back pressure.

(5) The value of h, or the number of units of heat per pound contained in the water itself measured from 32° to temperature of the boiling-point, increases with the pressure. It will thus be evident that boilers having a large water space, as the Lancashire and Scotch or marine boiler, carry a large store of heat in the water itself. Thus the heat contained in the water of a boiler at 200 lbs. pressure = 354·6 − 180·7 = 173·9 units per pound more than if the pressure in the boiler were at that of the atmosphere. When the pressure in the boiler falls from some high pressure to a lower pressure, the heat liberated from the water itself is capable of evaporating a certain portion of its own weight at the reduced pressure. Thus, if $t_1 - t_2 =$ the difference of temperature due to fall of pressure, and L = the latent heat of steam at the lower pressure, then weight of water evaporated by heat contained within itself = $(t_1 - t_2) \div$ L lbs. per pound of water present.

Pressure per square inch (absolute) on water during evaporation	1	14·7	50	100	200
Temperature of water supplied Fahr.	32°	32°	32°	32°	32°
Temperature of water at boiling-point Fahr.	102°	212°	280·8°	327·6°	381·7°
Volume of 1 lb. of steam (cubic feet)	334·6	26·64	8·414	4·403	2·29
Total heat to generate 1 lb. of steam from water at 32° Fahr. = H	1113·1	1146·6	1167·6	1181·9	1198·4
Units of heat to raise 1 lb. of water from 32° Fahr. to boiling-point = $h = t - 32$ nearly	70·0	180·7	250·2	297·9	354·6
Latent heat = E + ρ	1043·0	965·8	917·4	884·0	843·8
External work = E	61·9	72·3	77·7	81·2	84·3
Internal work = ρ	981·1	893·5	839·7	802·8	759·5
Percentage of H converted into work, E	5·56	6·30	6·65	6·87	7·02
Heat in the steam, counting from 32° Fahr.	1051·2	1074·2	1089·9	1100·7	1114·1

If, in a boiler, steam is raised to some pressure above the atmosphere

ready for starting, but with the stop-valve and all outlets closed, the surface of the water, if it could be seen, is comparatively quiescent; but on opening the stop-valve and starting the engine, or on lifting the safety-valve by hand, or in any other way relieving the pressure, however slightly, then more or less violent ebullition immediately takes place, due to the fact that the heat stored in the water is in excess of that required at the reduced pressure, and this liberated heat goes to evaporate water.

A similar effect occurs in the case of water in steam-cylinders when the pressure is reduced by expansion, or during exhaust; the heat present in the water at the initial pressure and temperature exceeds that which the water can retain at lower pressures, hence a portion of the water is evaporated from this cause as soon as the pressure falls (see "Cylinder Condensation," p. 112).

(6) It will be noticed that the latent heat decreases as the pressure and temperature increase. Considering the component parts of latent heat separately—

First, the heat (E) transformed into external work. The boiler, the steam-pipe, and the cylinder up to the face of the piston may be looked upon as one vessel, having a movable side, represented by the piston, by which the volume may be increased. During the formation of steam in the boiler, each successive portion of the steam generated expands from its volume as water to its volume as steam, against the resistance of the surrounding pressure; and thus, in addition to the heat contained *in* the steam, heat has been expended at the moment of formation in the boiler in doing the work of finding room for the steam, which is found by the movement of the piston. The heat thus expended in the performance of external work is the quantity E, the value of which in the table, though not quite constant at all pressures, is nearly so, increasing slowly as the pressure increases.

The heat expended in external work during formation of steam at 200 lbs. and 14·7 lbs. pressure respectively is as follows:—

$$200 \times 144 \times 2{\cdot}29 \div 778 = 84{\cdot}3 \text{ heat-units}$$
$$14{\cdot}7 \times 144 \times 26{\cdot}64 \div 778 = 72{\cdot}3 \quad ,,$$
$$12{\cdot}0 \quad ,,$$

or a difference of 16·8 per cent., showing the extent of the increase in the value of E between the limits of pressure given.

This heat, it should be remembered, having been expended during the process of formation of the steam, is not, and never has been, present in the steam, but was supplied as required from the original source of heat. Condensation in the cylinder of a steam-engine, therefore, so long as the cylinder is in communication with the boiler, is not due to the performance of work.

As soon, however, as cut-off takes place, the steam is no longer in communication with the original source of heat, and all the work to

be done, during the expansion of the steam from the point of cut-off till it leaves the engine, must be done at the expense of the intrinsic energy of the working fluid in the cylinder, which includes the internal latent heat of the steam ρ, and that portion of the heat of the water h which it gives up during expansion.

When steam is used in the cylinder without expansion, it is the external latent heat E which is used, and the small proportion which this bears to the total heat will be seen from the Table. Thus, for 1 lb. of steam at 100 lbs. per square inch absolute, the external latent heat E is 81·2, and the total heat from 32° Fahr. is 1181·9, or the proportion of the useful work done to the heat expended is only 6·9 per cent., and this is the maximum efficiency possible when no further attempt is made to utilize the heat still contained in the steam by making use of its expansive properties.

When steam is formed under pressure, work is done against the pressure (= PV, the product of the pressure and the volume of the steam formed), and steam condensed under pressure has work done upon it by the pressure (also = PV, or the product of the pressure and the volume of the steam condensed).

Density and Volume of Steam.—Various formulæ have been devised to show the relation between the pressure and volume of steam, and to draw the curve known as the curve of constant steam weight. This relation has not yet been determined by experiment except for a limited range of pressures. From the experiments of Messrs. Tate and Unwin, the following formula has been deduced :—

$$v = 0{\cdot}41 + \frac{389}{p + 0{\cdot}35}$$

$$\text{or } (v - 0{\cdot}41)(p + 0{\cdot}35) = \text{constant} = 389$$

where p = pounds per square inch absolute, and v = volume of 1 lb. of steam in cubic feet at pressure p.

A formula of the following form gives very accurate results :—

$$pv^n = \text{constant}$$

For dry steam the value of the index n is, according to Zeuner, 1·0646, and the constant is 479 for pressures in pounds per square inch and volumes in cubic feet, thus—

$$pv^{1{\cdot}0646} = 479$$

Rankine gave $n = \frac{17}{16}$; thus—

$$pv^{\frac{17}{16}} = \text{constant} = 482$$

or, as given by Mr. Brownlee—

$$p^{0{\cdot}941}v = 330{\cdot}36$$

$$\text{then } \log v = 2{\cdot}519 - 0{\cdot}941 \log p$$

equals the logarithm of the volume of 1 lb. saturated steam in cubic

feet. The density of steam, D (or its weight per cubic foot), is the reciprocal of the volume.

$$D = \frac{1}{V} = \frac{p^{0\cdot941}}{330\cdot36}$$

$$\text{or } \log D = 0\cdot941 \log p - 2\cdot519$$

Equivalent Evaporation from and at 212° Fahr.—It is usual, in expressing evaporation results in steam-boiler trials, to reduce them all to one common standard, namely, that of the number of pounds of water which would be evaporated with the same number of heat-units from a feed temperature of 212° into steam at 212°. If the feed water be at a temperature of 32°, then the total number of heat-units required to evaporate the water at a given pressure may be found from the table of total heat of evaporation; but if the feed water be at some higher temperature, t_f, then the heat-units required per pound are less than the total heat H from the Tables by $t_f - 32$.

$$H - (t_f - 32) = H + 32 - t = \text{heat-units per pound}$$

But the heat-units required to convert 1 lb. of water at 212° into steam at 212° = 966 units. Therefore the equivalent weight of water, W_1, evaporated "from and at 212° Fahr."—

$$W_1 = W \times \frac{H + 32 - t_f}{966} \text{ lbs.}$$

EXAMPLE.—A boiler evaporates 9 lbs. of water per pound of coal, working at a pressure of 90 lbs. absolute, feed temperature 60°: find the equivalent evaporation from and at 212° Fahr.

$$W \times \frac{H + 32 - t_f}{966} = 9 \times \frac{1179\cdot6 + 32 - 60}{966} = 10\cdot728 \text{ lbs.}$$

where W = weight evaporated from actual feed temperature.

Incomplete Evaporation. Wet Steam.—It has been assumed so far that, during the evaporation of the 1 lb. of water, the whole of the water is completely evaporated to dry steam. But, in practice, the steam from steam-boilers always contains more or less moisture in suspension. Sometimes the moisture present is considerable. The total heat required to produce wet steam is, of course, less than that to produce the same weight of dry steam, by the latent heat which would be necessary to convert the proportion of moisture present into steam. This is an important point to bear in mind in estimating the evaporative efficiency of steam-boilers, and many impossible results have been claimed for boilers through neglect to estimate the quality of the steam obtained as to dryness. Thus, suppose a boiler to supply perfectly dry steam at a pressure of 90 lbs. absolute, corresponding to a temperature of 320° Fahr.; temperature t of feed-water = 60° Fahr. Then the total heat of evaporation—

$$= H - (t - 32)$$
$$= 1179\cdot6 - (60 - 32)$$
$$= 1151\cdot6$$

Or the total heat of evaporation might be written—

$$Q = xL + h_1 - h_f$$

where x = the dryness fraction of the steam. Then, if $x = 1$, which is the case for perfectly dry steam—

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= 889{\cdot}6 + 290 - 28 \\ &= 1151{\cdot}6 \end{aligned}$$

The values of h and L are obtained from the steam tables, or may be calculated.

If the steam supplied by the boiler, instead of being perfectly dry, contains say 10 per cent. of suspended moisture, then the heat expended per pound of wet steam—

$$\begin{aligned} &= Q = xL + h_1 - h_f \\ &= (0{\cdot}9 \times 889{\cdot}6) + 290 - 28 \\ &= 1062{\cdot}64 \end{aligned}$$

If the steam from the boiler is assumed to be dry, and the 10 per cent. of moisture present is neglected, the evaporative efficiency of the boiler will be exaggerated. For 1151·6 units of heat from the coal will evaporate 1 lb. of water from feed-water at 60° Fahr. into dry steam at 320° Fahr. But the steam containing 10 per cent. of moisture only actually requires 1062·6 units of heat, and therefore the weight of water which will appear to be evaporated under the latter conditions $= \frac{1151{\cdot}6}{1062{\cdot}6} = 1{\cdot}086$ lb., or 8·6 per cent. more than the maximum quantity possible had the steam been dry.

It is equally important, in determining the economy of steam-engines, to be aware of the quality as to dryness of the steam supplied to the engine, otherwise the engine may be debited with using a weight of steam a portion of which it has not received as steam, but as water.

Dryness Tests for Steam.—The methods adopted to determine the condition of the steam supplied by a boiler as to dryness are various.

1. The Barrel Calorimeter.—A common though somewhat rough method, unless done with great care, is that of the barrel or tank calorimeter. It consists, in its simplest form, of a barrel placed on a weighing-machine and partly filled with a certain weight of cold water, into which steam is carried by a pipe reaching nearly to the bottom of the barrel, and having a perforated end. An arrangement is also fitted for stirring and properly mixing the hot and cold water. The increase of temperature after the addition of a certain weight of steam to the cold water is carefully taken. If—

W = original weight of cold water,

w = weight of steam (wet or dry) blown in,

t_1 = temperature of cold water,
t_2 = temperature of water after addition of steam,
t_3 = temperature of the steam,
L = latent heat of the steam at given pressure,
x = pounds of dry steam supplied,
Then—

$$\underbrace{xL + w(t_3 - t_2)}_{\text{Heat lost by steam.}} = \underbrace{W(t_2 - t_1)}_{\text{Heat gained by water.}}$$

or—

$$x = \frac{W(t_2 - t_1) - w(t_3 - t_2)}{L}$$

Or, in words, if the heat gained by the water, namely, $W(t_2 - t_1)$, is reduced by the portion of heat given up by the water added which entered as steam and with the steam, namely, $w(t_3 - t_2)$, the remainder of the heat must be due solely to the latent heat of the dry steam supplied. If, therefore, this remainder be divided by the latent heat L of dry steam at the given pressure, the quotient gives the weight of dry steam supplied.

EXAMPLE.—If a barrel or tank contains 200 lbs. of water at a temperature of 60° Fahr., and 10 lbs. of moist steam be added at a pressure of 85 lbs. absolute, thus raising the temperature of the water to 110° Fahr., find the percentage of moisture in the steam. (Latent heat of steam at 85 lbs. pressure absolute = 892. Temperature 316°.)

Then—

$$x = \frac{W(t_2 - t_1) - w(t_3 - t_2)}{L}$$
$$= \frac{200(110 - 60) - 10(316 - 110)}{892}$$
$$= 8{\cdot}9 \text{ lbs. of dry steam}$$

or—

$$\frac{10 - 8{\cdot}9}{10} \times 100 = 11 \text{ per cent. of moisture}$$

2. The Separating Calorimeter, shown in Fig. 20, is designed by Prof. R. C. Carpenter. It consists of a vessel about 12 in. long by 3 in. diameter, into which steam is passed from the steam-pipe, and is so constructed that the moisture contained in the steam is precipitated in an interior chamber, E, while the dry steam passes forward through a narrow passage into the chamber F surrounding E. The steam, while in the inner chamber, is thus protected from loss of heat by radiation, and the water deposited is water already contained in the steam. This water as formed is passed off at P and weighed, while the dry steam passes away through R to a condensing-vessel containing water, and its weight determined from the increase of weight of the water in the

condensing-vessel. Then, if W = weight of condensed steam from R, and w = weight of moisture separated at P—

$$\text{The quality of the steam } x = \frac{W}{W + w}$$

$$\text{the amount of moisture} = (1 - x) = \frac{w}{W + w}$$

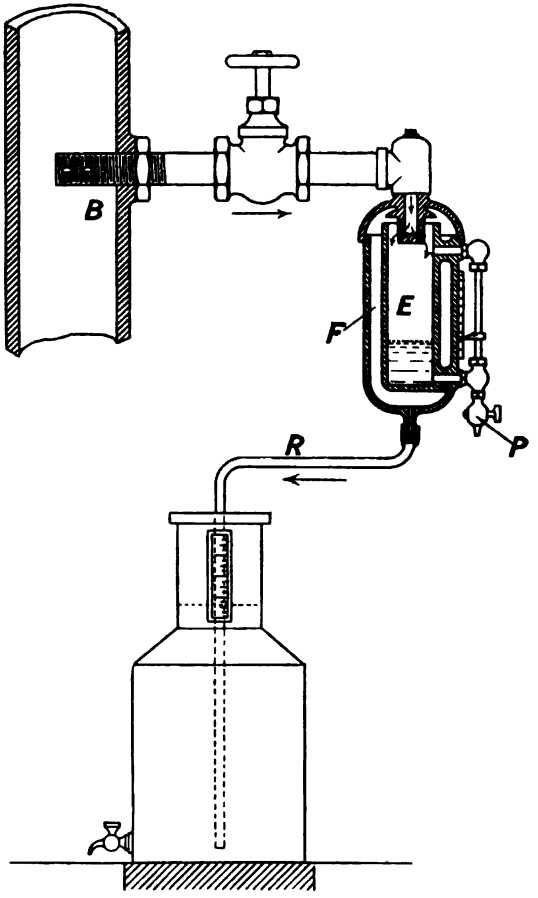


FIG. 20.

The Throttling Calorimeter was invented by Prof. C. H. Peabody. The form described here is a modification of it by Prof. R. C. Carpenter. The action of this calorimeter depends upon the fact that the total heat of steam at high pressure is greater than that

at low pressure, and on falling in pressure the excess of heat is liberated, and goes first to evaporate any moisture present, and then to superheat the steam at lower pressure, if the excess of heat is sufficient.

In the figure (21), the steam passes from the main steam-pipe at boiler pressure into the vessel C, where it falls nearly to atmospheric pressure, and passes away by the exhaust opening at bottom of vessel.

The temperature of the steam in vessel C is taken by the thermometer as shown, and this temperature is then compared with the normal temperature of the steam due to its pressure.

FIG. 21.

The pressure of the steam in the calorimeter, above the atmosphere, is read from the manometer or U-tube shown in the figure. This reading, added to that of the barometer, gives the absolute pressure in the calorimeter.

EXAMPLE.—The total heat in 1 lb. of steam at 100 lbs. pressure absolute is 1182, and that in 1 lb. of steam at 20 lbs. absolute is 1151, and if the steam were allowed to expand from 100 lbs. in the steam-pipe to 20 lbs. pressure in vessel C without doing external work, the units of heat liberated per pound = (1182 − 1151) = 31. If the steam in vessel C is at 20 lbs. absolute pressure, its latent heat is 954 units. The weight of moisture which the excess heat will evaporate will therefore be $34 \div 954 = 0{\cdot}032$ lb.

If, however, the amount of moisture present was less than this, then the balance of the excess heat would superheat the remaining steam above its normal temperature, and the excess would be shown by the thermometer. In such a case the percentage of moisture may be computed from the formula given below. If the moisture present is greater than the excess heat can evaporate, then no superheating takes place, and this calorimeter would not be applicable. It is, however, very accurate within the limits of its action, namely, with steam containing not more than from 2 to 3 per cent. of moisture.

If t_1 = temperature of steam in main steam-pipe, t_2 = temperature in vessel C into which the steam has been expanded to a lower pressure, and t_3 = normal temperature of steam in C due to its pressure; then total heat per pound of steam carried into calorimeter = $h_1 + xL_1$. In the calorimeter, the heat in the steam due to its reduced pressure

except the loss of the heat which is transformed into work during the expansion. Such conditions are, of course, ideal, but they serve as a useful standard with which to compare the actual results obtained in practice.

While the expansion proceeds, the weight of steam present *as steam* is continually being reduced owing to partial condensation due to the performance of work at the expense of the heat contained in the expanding steam. It will therefore be evident that the pressure will fall continuously below that of the "curve of saturation," which is the curve which would be obtained if no condensation took place.

An approximate expression for the form of the adiabatic curve is given by Rankine, namely, $pv^{\frac{10}{9}} = \text{constant}$.

CHAPTER III.

TEMPERATURE-ENTROPY DIAGRAMS.

THE indicator diagram represents by an area the work done per stroke in foot-pounds, the area consisting of pressure and volume for its rectangular co-ordinates.

The temperature-entropy diagram, as applied to engineering purposes, represents the head-units converted into work per pound of the working fluid. In this diagram the vertical ordinates represent temperature reckoned from absolute zero, and the area of the figure is quantity of heat, Q, in heat-units. The horizontal dimension is obtained by dividing the heat-units supplied during any given change by the mean absolute temperature during the change. To this horizontal dimension Clausius gave the name of " entropy."

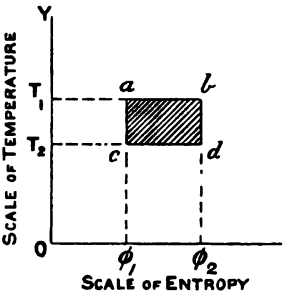


FIG. 24.

Entropy is length on a diagram whose height is absolute temperature, and whose area is energy, Q, in heat-units.

Any change of heat received or rejected results in a change of entropy, the amount of the change being equal to the sum of the heat elements added or subtracted, each being divided by the absolute temperature of the substance at the time of the change; then—

$$\text{Entropy} = \Sigma \frac{\delta Q}{T}$$

The Greek letter θ (*theta*) was used by Maxwell to stand for absolute temperature, and ϕ (*phi*) was used by Rankine and by Maxwell to denote entropy. Mr. Macfarlane Gray, therefore, gave the name $\theta\phi$ (*theta-phi*) to this heat diagram, just as *pv* is a name for the work diagram of pressure and volume as co-ordinates.

If, in Fig. 24, *ab* represent a line of constant temperature T_1, and *cd* the line of constant temperature T_2, also *ac* and *bd* lines of constant entropy ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 respectively, then the area *abcd* represents to scale the heat-units involved in the change of temperature of unit weight of the substance heated from temperature T_2 to T_1, or cooled from T_1 to T_2.

Change of temperature is here represented by change of vertical height of the temperature lines, and change of entropy by a change of horizontal length measured along the scale of entropy. Then the

quantity of heat, Q, involved in any cycle of operations, *abcd*, is given thus:

$$Q = (T_1 - T_2)(\phi_2 - \phi_1)$$

Isothermal lines are lines of constant temperature; adiabatic lines are lines of constant entropy.

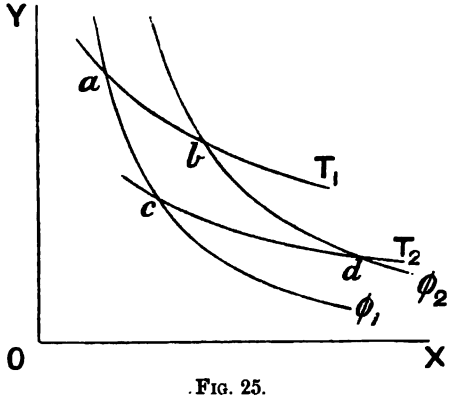


FIG. 25.

Entropy may also be expressed on the pressure-volume diagram by the intersection of adiabatics and isothermals, thus (Fig. 25) the isothermals *ab* and *cd* represent lines of constant temperature, T_1 and T_2 respectively, and *ac*, *bd* are adiabatics, or lines of constant entropy, ϕ_1 and ϕ_2. During the expansion from *a* to *b* heat has been added, though the temperature has remained constant at T_1; the change is represented by a change of entropy $= \phi_2 - \phi_1$.

During expansion from *b* to *d* the entropy is constant, and the change is represented by a change of temperature, $T_1 - T_2$.

The Temperature-Entropy Diagram for Steam.—This diagram, first proposed by Willard Gibbs, and afterwards independently by J. Macfarlane Gray, illustrates very clearly many points connected with the thermodynamics of steam, which can only be otherwise solved by more or less difficult calculation.

The construction of the diagram will be best understood by taking an actual case; thus--

(1) *Heat to raise Temperature of Water.*—Taking the case of 1 lb. of water at 32°, which it is desired to convert into steam at some temperature T_1, then the heat quantities involved in the various changes are represented as follows:—

Referring to Fig. 26, let OX and OY represent the axes of temperature and entropy; and on the vertical ordinate OX draw a scale of absolute temperature from the base line, which is the zero of temperature.

Let T_0 be the absolute temperature 493, or 32° Fahr. Then O may be taken as the zero of entropy. And entropy of water heated from T_0 to T_1

$$= \int_{T_0}^{T_1} \frac{dh}{T} = \int_{T_0}^{T_1} \frac{dt}{T} = \log_e T_1 - \log_e T_0$$

If now heat be added to the 1 lb. of water at 32°, the temperature gradually rises and the entropy also gradually increases, hence the condition of the water as to heat will be represented by the tracing

of the curve $T_0T_2T_1$, etc. The quantity of heat in heat-units supplied to the water during the change from T_0 to T_2 is represented by the enclosed area OT_0T_2a. Again, suppose T_2 to be the temperature of a boiler feed-water, and the water is heated to temperature of boiling-point, T_1, then the quantity of heat supplied to the water between temperatures T_2 and T_1 is represented by enclosed area $aT_2T_1b = A + B$ on the figure.

The horizontal dimension, or entropy, for water raised from temperature T_0 to $T_2 = oa = \log_\epsilon T_2 - \log_\epsilon T_0$, and from T_2 to $T_1 = ab = \log_\epsilon T_1 - \log_\epsilon T_2$. The curve $T_0T_1T_2$, etc., is called the "water-line."

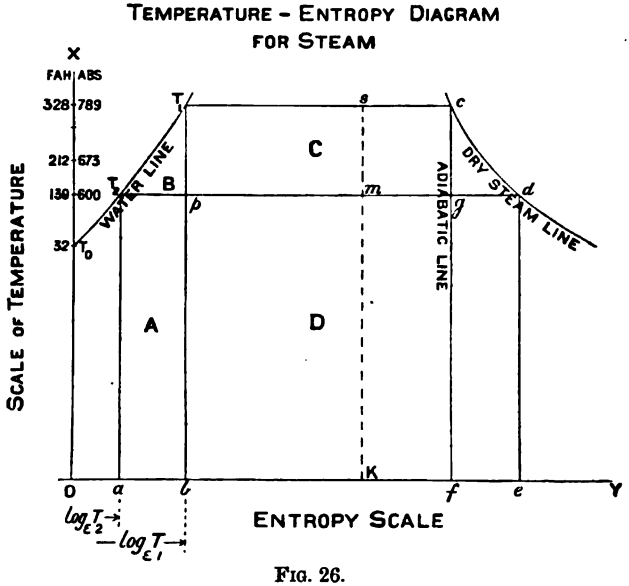


FIG. 26.

The "water-line" is practically very nearly a straight line, hence the following approximate method may be adopted, which dispenses with the use of logarithms :—

$$\text{Entropy} = \frac{\text{quantity of heat added}}{\text{mean temperature during addition}}$$

$$\text{Entropy} = \frac{(T_1 - T_2)}{\frac{1}{2}(T_1 + T_2)} \text{ approximately}$$

(2) *Heat to evaporate Water into Steam.*—When the boiling-point of water is reached, the addition of heat no longer raises the temperature, but during the formation of steam the heat is added at constant temperature; the change is an isothermal one, hence the line T_1c is horizontal, and it is extended further and further to the right as more and more heat is added. When the whole of the 1 lb. of water

has been converted into steam, the length of the line T_1c for steam at temperature T_1

$$= \frac{\text{latent heat of steam at } T_1}{\text{absolute temperature } T_1} = \frac{L_1}{T_1}$$

or total entropy of 1 lb. of steam at T_1, measured from entropy at T_0 as zero,

$$= \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_0} + \frac{L_1}{T_1}$$

The heat-units required to convert the 1 lb. of water at T_1 into steam at T_1 is represented by the area $bT_1cf = C + D$.

For steam generated from water at some temperature T_2, the entropy of the steam, or the length of the line T_2d,

$$= L_2 \div T_2$$

or total entropy of 1 lb. of steam at T_2, measured from entropy at T_0 as zero,

$$= \log_e \frac{T_2}{T_0} + \frac{L_2}{T_2}$$

The curved line cd to the right of the diagram is obtained by determining points, as explained above, for various temperatures and pressures, and drawing a free curve through the several points, c, d, etc., thus obtained. This curve is called the "dry-steam line," or the "saturation curve."

If the 1 lb. of steam at T_1 be expanded adiabatically to T_2, then the fall of temperature during expansion is represented by the fall of the horizontal line T_1c to position T_2g, so that the "state point" c moves along the adiabatic or (constant entropy) line cg, while T_1 moves downward along the water-curve to T_2.

The heat converted into work during admission at constant temperature T_1 and expansion down to $T_2 = T_2T_1cgT_2 = B + C$.

At the end of adiabatic expansion the proportion of the 1 lb. of steam which is now present as steam $= x = \frac{T_2g}{T_2d}$.

$$x = \left(\log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} + \frac{L_1}{T_1} \right) \div \frac{L_2}{T_2}$$
$$= (ab + bf) \div ae$$

The proportion of steam condensed by performance of work during expansion $= 1 - x = \frac{gd}{T_2d}$.

The heat rejected to the condenser = area $aT_2gfa = D + A$.

If heat be added by a steam-jacket or other means to the expanding steam, just sufficient in quantity to prevent any condensation of the steam due to work done, the heat so added = area *fcde*.

The "state point" c of the steam travels during expansion, while the steam is maintained in a dry condition, along the dry-steam line

cd. The additional work done due to the jacket heat = area *cdg*. The heat rejected to condenser = T_2dea.

If the steam is wet to begin with, then a vertical line may be drawn through some point *s*, making $\frac{T_1s}{T_1c} = x_1$ = proportion of dry steam present; also $T_1s = x_1L_1 \div T_1$, and if the steam expands, then the proportion of dry steam present at end of adiabatic expansion from T_1 to $T_2 = x_2 = T_2m \div T_2d$; or—

$$x_2 = \left(\log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} + \frac{x_1L_1}{T_1} \right) \div \frac{L_2}{T_2}$$

EXAMPLE.—If dry steam at 150 lbs. absolute and temperature 358° Fahr. expand to atmospheric pressure, find the value of x_2 when the expansion is adiabatic.

$$\begin{aligned} x_2 &= \left(\frac{x_1L_1}{T_1} + \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} \right) \frac{T_2}{L_2} \\ &= \left(\frac{861{\cdot}2}{819} + 0{\cdot}199 \right) \frac{673}{966} \\ &= 0{\cdot}87 \end{aligned}$$

To draw Constant-volume Curves on the Temperature-entropy Chart.—On an independent base-line XY, shown above the temperature-entropy diagram (Fig. 27), raise a scale of volumes of cubic feet

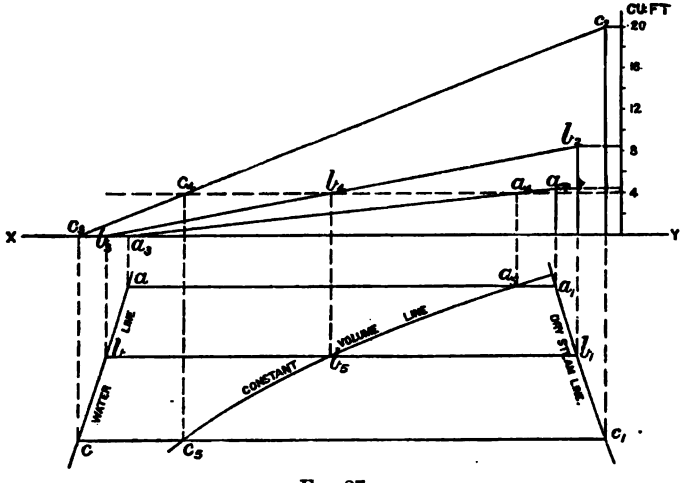


FIG. 27.

to the right of Fig. 27. From this scale of volumes set off the number of cubic feet occupied per pound of steam at the various

pressures included within the range of pressures to be represented on the diagram.

From any points, a_1, b_1, c_1, on the saturation curve raise projectors to XY, and produce them above XY, making them equal in height to the volume occupied by 1 lb. of steam at temperature a_1, b_1, c_1, etc., as shown at a_2, b_2, c_2. From a, b, and c draw perpendiculars to meet XY in a_3, b_3, c_3, and join these points to a_2, b_2, c_2 respectively.

Then, if any horizontal be drawn from the scale of volumes intersecting the lines a_2a_3, b_2b_3, etc., as at $a_4b_4c_4$, the horizontal may be considered a line of constant volume in elevation, and corresponding points may be obtained in plan by projecting from a_4, b_4, c_4, etc., to cut aa_1, bb_1 respectively in points a_5, b_5, c_5, etc. A free curve drawn through the points so obtained gives the constant-volume line $a_5b_5c_5$. Any number of further lines may be added, as shown in Plate I., which is the temperature-entropy chart as used for ordinary drawing office purposes, and containing all the lines necessary for plotting any case occurring in ordinary practice. This chart was prepared originally in this form by Captain H. Riall Sankey, to whom is due the application of the constant-volume line to the chart.

The constant-volume lines may be drawn by direct measurement; thus, if bb_1 is equal to any number of cubic feet (depending on the temperature of the steam), say 10, then bb_1 may be divided into ten equal parts, which may be numbered from left to right 1, 2, 3, etc., respectively. As each horizontal line represents in cubic feet the volume of the steam at this particular pressure, similar subdivisions may be made on other horizontal lines, and if the corresponding numbers be respectively joined, the required constant-volume lines may be drawn.

The chart Plate I. is the portion B + C of the temperature-entropy diagram Fig. 26, but the vertical scale of temperatures and pressures has been greatly enlarged, which gives the chart considerable extension vertically.

The various temperature-entropy diagrams given throughout this book have been drawn to various scales. Thus, when it was necessary to include the exhaust-waste area, a much smaller vertical scale of temperatures has been used; but where only the upper or "useful-work" portion of the diagram was required, a much-extended temperature scale is employed.

Applications of the Temperature-Entropy Diagram.—Of the total heat supplied to steam-engines, from 2 to 10 per cent. may be converted into useful work in non-condensing engines, and in multiple expansion condensing engines this percentage may be raised as high as 20 per cent. or more.

The remainder of the heat is lost by condensation in the cylinder, by radiation, and, lastly, and greater than all the rest, by the amount carried away to exhaust.

This loss of heat to exhaust may be best understood by a careful study of the temperature-entropy chart, from which it will be seen how the proportion of exhaust waste may be most effectively

reduced, namely, by using steam of the highest possible initial pressure, expanding as far as practicable, maintaining the steam in the cylinder in the driest possible condition, and finally exhausting against a back pressure reduced to the lowest possible limit.

Every unit of work obtained from the steam during expansion after cut-off is obtained by recovering a portion of the internal energy of the steam, the whole of which would otherwise pass away to exhaust unutilized. Therefore the greater the range of temperature and pressure through which the working fluid acts while doing useful work, the greater the possibility of gain by expansion, and the greater the proportion of the total heat supplied which is converted into useful work. And since the cost in heat-units per pound of steam at high pressures is very little more than for steam at low pressures, the advantage of using high pressures and large expansions will be obvious.

Several cases will now be considered, illustrating the relation between the total heat added and the heat rejected to exhaust.

Case I. *Steam generated at atmospheric pressure and exhausted into the atmosphere* at 32° Fahr.

This corresponds to the case of the generation of steam in a boiler open to the atmosphere. The heat quantities involved in this case have been already given (p. 30). The heat rejected may be considered in connection with the condensation of 1 lb. of steam in a cylinder under a movable weightless piston, the weight shown upon the piston being intended to represent atmospheric pressure (Fig. 28). If the cylinder be placed in communication externally with a cold body, the steam will be condensed, the piston will gradually fall, and, if the cooling action be continued, the whole of the steam will be reduced to its original 1 lb. of water at 32°.

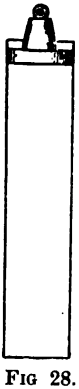


FIG 28.

Here the heat rejected or carried away by the cooling body includes—

(1) The internal latent heat	893·6
(2) The heat of external work or work done *upon* the steam by the pressure of the air during condensation	72·3
(3) The heat lost by the water	180·7
	1146·6

And this is the same as the total heat supplied. The total heat supplied and rejected is given by the whole area of the diagram S + L (Fig. 29), and no useful work has been done.

Case II. *Steam generated at atmospheric pressure, doing work on a piston, and exhausted into a condenser at* 32° *Fahr., representing a pressure of* 0·085 *lb. per square inch.*

Here the total heat supplied per pound of steam is the same as in Case I., but the heat rejected is less, as will be understood by reference to the cylinder and piston in Fig. 28. For suppose that, when the

cooling commenced, the piston had been secured so that it could not fall as the pressure of the steam decreased, and that the whole of the steam is condensed to water at 32° Fahr. Then evidently the heat rejected is *less* than in the previous case by the amount of work done upon the steam by the falling piston under atmospheric pressure; or—

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Heat rejected} &= \text{total heat} - \text{external work}\\ &= 1146{\cdot}6 - 72{\cdot}3\\ &= 1074{\cdot}3\end{aligned}$$

for this particular case.

The result is given by the areas Fig. 30. The area *abcde* is the total heat supplied. The curved line *bd* enclosing the external-work area is the "constant-volume line," drawn as explained on p. 45, and it

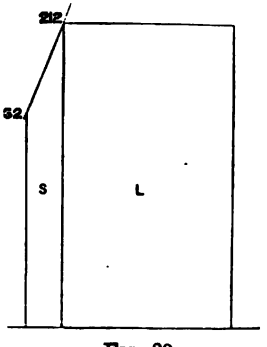


Fig. 29.

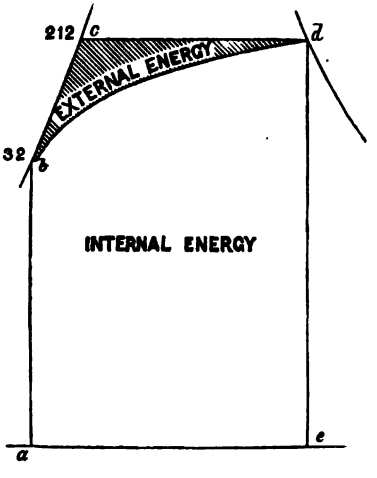


Fig. 30.

represents the gradual fall of temperature and loss of entropy of the steam during condensation at constant volume, that is, with the piston rigidly secured at the top of the cylinder while condensation takes place, till a temperature of 32° is reached. Then the heat below this line is the heat rejected;

and total heat − heat rejected = external latent heat

Thus, the constant-volume line serves the purpose also of enclosing an area representing the external latent heat, and of separating the external energy from the internal energy of the steam.

The indicator diagram for such a case is a rectangular parallelogram.

Case III. *Steam at atmospheric pressure exhausted into a condenser against a back pressure of* 5 *lbs. absolute.*

The effect is the same as though, when the piston had arrived

at the extreme height due to the volume of 1 lb. of steam at 212°, the piston is secured, the weight representing the atmospheric pressure removed, and a weight one-third its size placed on the piston (Fig. 31).

Here the steam will condense at constant volume till the pressure falls to 5 lbs. on the square inch, when the piston will begin to fall and the volume to decrease, and, if the cooling be continued, the whole of the steam may be reduced to 1 lb. of water at 32° Fahr.

Heat lost by water = (212° − 32°)	180·0
Internal heat	893·5
$\frac{1}{13}$ external work = $\frac{1}{3}$ of 72·3	24·1
	1097·6

The indicator or *pv* diagram for this case is represented by Fig. 32. The areas A + B represent the total work done; area A = useful work, and area B = work against back pressure.

The heat quantities involved are illustrated by the temperature-entropy diagram, Fig. 33, where area A coincides with A, Fig. 32, area B with

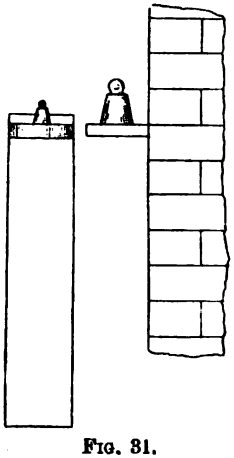


Fig. 31.

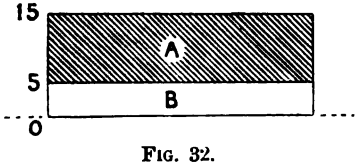


Fig. 32.

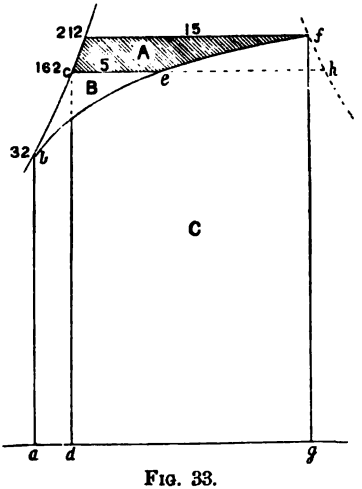


Fig. 33.

B, Fig. 32. When 1 lb. of steam condenses at constant volume from 15 lbs. to 5 lbs. pressure per square inch, the condition of the steam during the process, or the path of the state point, is traced by the constant-volume line *fe*. At *e* the weight of steam now remaining, namely, *ce* ÷ *ch* lb., continues to be condensed, but no longer at constant *volume*, but under constant pressure of 5 lbs. per square inch, during which the line *ec* is traced by the state point

till the steam has become water at temperature due to pressure of 5 lbs., namely, 162° Fahr. The temperature of the 1 lb. of water falls still further to 32° Fahr., and the heat thus given up by the water is represented by the area *abcd*. The total heat rejected in this case is given by the whole area below the cross-lined portion of the figure, namely, the area *abcefg*.

Case IV. *Showing the work done by steam at various initial pressures without expansion* (Fig. 34).

For steam of 50 lbs. pressure, admitted through the whole length of stroke and exhausted against atmospheric pressure, the work done

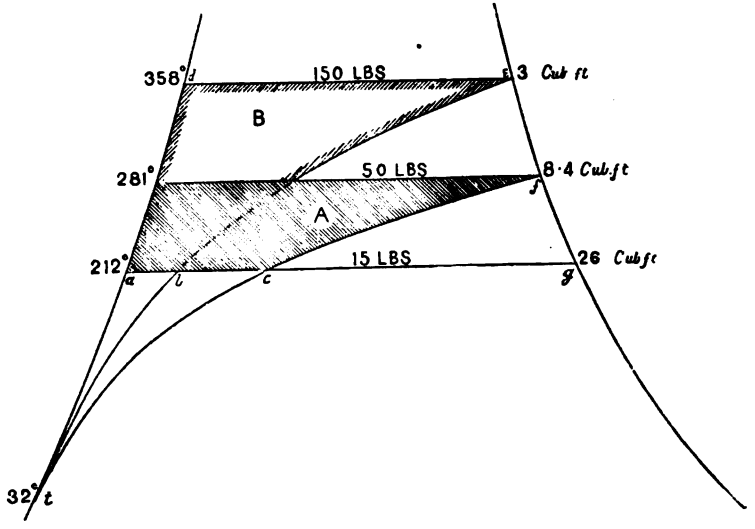


FIG. 34.

per pound is shown by the shaded area A. The value of this area in heat-units may be obtained by direct measurement with the planimeter, or it may be obtained from the steam Tables, thus: the external latent heat of steam at 50 lbs. pressure is 77·7 ; the external latent heat of ($ac \div ag$) lb. of steam at 212° = area *tac* = 72·3 × 8·4 ÷ 26 = 23·4, 72·3 being the external latent heat of steam at 212° Fahr., *fc* the constant-volume line for 8·4 cub. ft., and 26 the volume in cubic feet of 1 lb. of steam at 212°.

Then the shaded area A = 77·7 − 23·4 = 54·3 heat units, and the efficiency of the steam = 54·3 ÷ total heat of steam at 50 = 54·3 ÷ 1167·6 = 4·65 per cent., reckoning feed-water at 32°. The remainder passes away to exhaust; namely, 1167·6 − 54·3 = 1113·3 heat-units.

If, now, the pressure were raised to 150 lbs., and still worked without expansion, then the work done per pound of this steam, exhausted against atmospheric pressure, is represented by the area B

enclosed by the figure *adeb*. This area = 83 − (72·3 × 3 ÷ 26) = 74·7, and the efficiency of the steam = $\frac{74·7}{1191·2}$ = 6·3 per cent.

This is not a much larger efficiency than with steam of 50 lbs. pressure. The loss per pound of steam, due to the back pressure of the atmosphere, with the higher pressure of 150 lbs., namely, the triangular area *abt*, is less than the area *act*, which is the loss due to atmospheric back pressure per pound of steam at 50 lbs. pressure. The loss to exhaust is 1191·2 − 74·7 = 1116·5 heat-units, or nearly the same as before.

If steam at 150 lbs. pressure—occupying 3 cub. ft. per pound—had been used without expansion in the same cylinder which previously contained 1 lb. of steam at 50 lbs. pressure, and having a volume of 8·4 cub. ft., then the actual work done in the cylinder *per stroke* in the two cases, as distinguished from the work done *per pound* of steam will be—for 1 lb. of steam at 50 lbs. pressure = 54·3 × 778 = 42,245·4 foot-lbs., and for (8·4 ÷ 3 = 2·8) lbs. of steam at 150 lbs. pressure = 2·8 × 74·7 × 778 = 162,726·5 foot-lbs., or 3·85 times the amount with the higher pressure, and chiefly because a greater *weight* of steam has been employed.

It will be remembered that the weight of coal consumed depends, roughly speaking, upon the *weight* of water evaporated.

Case V. *Showing the effect of using the steam expansively on the extension of the useful-work area, and on the reduction of the proportion of the total heat rejected to exhaust.*

The case has been chosen of steam at 60 lbs. absolute pressure, expanded adiabatically 2, 3, 4, . . . 10 times, and working down to a back pressure of 3 lbs. Area A (Fig. 35) represents the work done during admission, all the areas being measured down to the 3-lbs. pressure line; area B represents the gain by two expansions; area C the gain by three expansions, and so on. These areas are traced off the temperature-entropy chart, Plate I. The values of the respective areas are given approximately in the following table, measured from the chart by the planimeter:—

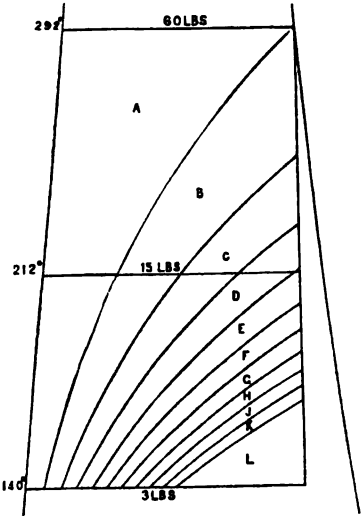


FIG. 35.

A.	B.	C.	D.	E.	F.	G.	H.	J.	K.	Total.
75	44	22	14·5	10·2	7·6	5·9	4·7	3·8	3·1	190·8

From which it will be seen that the total work done, expanding ten times, is $190{\cdot}8 \div 75 = 2{\cdot}54$ times the work done without expansion.

If a line be drawn (Fig. 35) through the 15-lbs. line of pressure, then all the area below this line down to the 3-lbs. pressure line represents the gain by working condensing, otherwise lost to exhaust.

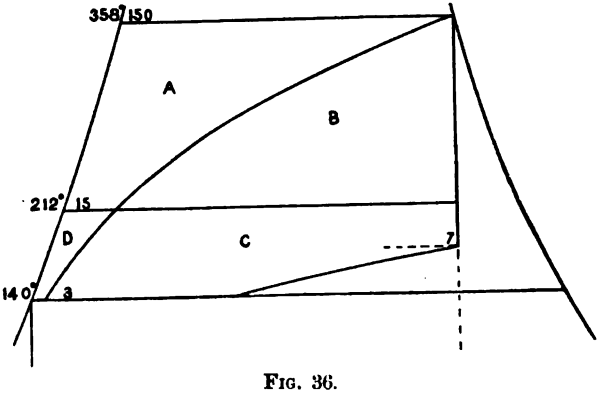


FIG. 36.

It shows, also, that with steam at 60 lbs. pressure not more than about $3\frac{1}{2}$ expansions could be used if the engine were non-condensing, and worked against a back pressure of 15 lbs.

Case VI. *Showing the effect of adding a condenser when steam of high initial pressure is used, with and without expansion.*

When the steam is used without expansion from 150 lbs. initial pressure, exhausting against a back pressure of 15 lbs., the heat converted into work is represented by area A, Fig. 36. If this steam is exhausted into a condenser, the additional work done by the steam is represented by the area D, which is only a very small proportion of the total work done. If, however, the steam is worked expansively, expanding from 150 lbs. down to 15 lbs. without condensing, then the useful-work area is increased to A + B; but, to permit of such expansion, if the weight of steam used is exactly 1 lb., the cylinder must have a capacity of about 22·5 cub. ft., instead of 3 cub. ft. as when used without expansion. Further, if a condenser be added, and expansion be carried down to, say 7 lbs., and exhausted against a back pressure of 3 lbs., the additional work done is represented by the area C. To expand the steam down to so

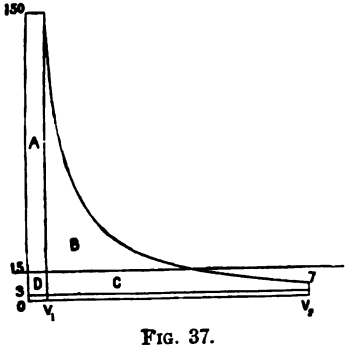


FIG. 37.

low a pressure as 7 lbs., the capacity of the cylinder must be increased to about 44 cub. ft. (see Plate I.).

From this it will be seen how the useful work obtained per pound of steam has been increased by raising the initial pressure and expanding as much as possible; but the greater the expansion, the larger the capacity of cylinder required to contain the same weight of steam at the low terminal pressure before it is finally exhausted.

The indicator or *pv* diagram for such a case is represented by Fig. 37, and the reference letters correspond in the two diagrams (Figs. 36 and 37).

The "State Point" of the Steam.—If any point be taken, as *p*, Fig. 38, on the temperature-entropy chart, then this point determines the condition of the steam as to temperature, pressure, dryness, volume, and internal energy. Thus, the horizontal line *ab* through *p* gives the temperature and pressure; also $ap \div ab$ = the dryness fraction per pound. The constant-volume line through *p* gives the volume of the steam present as steam. This volume is also equal to the volume per pound $\times ap \div ab$ at the pressure given by the horizontal through *p*.

The constant-volume line also separates the external energy E from the internal energy I, the area shaded below the constant-volume line and between the verticals drawn from *p* and 32° representing the internal energy *in* the steam at *p* reckoned from 32°.

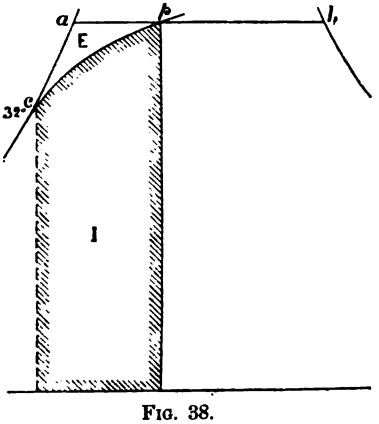


FIG. 38.

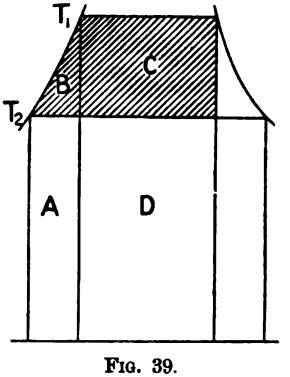


FIG. 39.

The area *apc* = E is the heat converted into work during formation of $(ap \div ab)$ lb.

$$\text{The area I} = \text{H} - \left(\text{L} \times \frac{pb}{ab}\right) - \left(\text{E}_1 \times \frac{ap}{ab}\right)$$

where H = total heat of 1 lb. of steam at temperature *a*.
L = latent ,, ,, ,,
E_1 = external latent heat ,, ,,
I = internal energy of steam at state point *p*.

Work done per Pound of Steam during Admission and Expansion.—1. Referring to Fig. 39, it will be seen that the work done (U) in heat-units per pound of steam during admission at temperature T_1, with adiabatic expansion to temperature T_2, and exhausted at that temperature, = areas B + C; or—

$$\begin{aligned} U &= \text{area } (C + B) \\ &= \text{area } C + \text{area } (B + A) - \text{area } A \\ &= L_1 \frac{(T_1 - T_2)}{T_1} + (T_1 - T_2) - T_2 \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} \quad . \quad . \quad (1) \end{aligned}$$

assuming the specific heat of water in all temperatures = 1, and $h_1 - h_2 = T_1 - T_2$; or approximately—

$$U = L_1 \frac{(T_1 - T_2)}{T_1} + (T_1 - T_2) - T_2 \frac{T_1 - T_2}{\frac{1}{2}(T_1 + T_2)} \quad . \quad (2)$$

The formula given for the latent heat, L, of steam is $1114 - 0{\cdot}7t$; or if t be expressed in degrees absolute temperature, then—

$$\begin{aligned} 1114 - 0{\cdot}7t &= x - 0{\cdot}7(t + 461) \\ x &= 1437 \\ \text{or } L &= 1437 - 0{\cdot}7\,T \end{aligned}$$

The formula (1) then becomes—

$$U = (1437 - 0{\cdot}7T_1)\left(\frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1}\right) + (T_1 - T_2) - T_2 \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} \quad (3)$$

2. To find the value of U for a case where the steam expands adiabatically from T_1 to T_2 and exhausts against a back pressure T_3, as in Fig. 40.

$$\begin{aligned} U = (1437 - 0{\cdot}7T_1)\left(\frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1}\right) + (T_1 - T_2) - T_2 \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} \\ + \frac{144(p_2 - p_3)V_2}{778} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (4) \end{aligned}$$

The whole of the expression, except the last fraction, represents area A, Fig. 40, and the last fraction represents area B. The full area $p_1T_1T_2p_3 = A + B + C$ may be obtained by substituting T_3 for T_2 in equation (3). The difference (A + B + C) − (A + B) = area C, which is usually rejected, because it does not pay to expand so far.

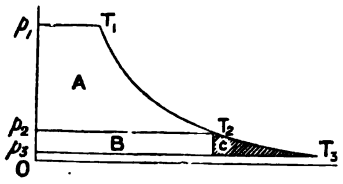


FIG. 40.

In equation (4) all the terms are known at once except V_2. In order to find the value of V_2, or, in other words, the volume of steam remaining as dry steam after adiabatic expansion from T_1 to T_2, it will be necessary to find the value of x, or the dryness fraction, at T_2, and to multiply by x the volume of 1 lb. of saturated steam at T_2 (taken from the steam Tables).

$$x = \left(\log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} + \frac{L_1}{T_1}\right) \div \frac{L_2}{T_2} \text{ (see p. 44)}$$

3. The work done per pound of *wet* steam expanding adiabatically from T_1 to T_2 and exhausting at T_2, when the proportion of dry steam to begin with $= x$; then—

$$U = xL_1\frac{(T_1 - T_2)}{T_1} + (T_1 - T_2) - T_2 \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} \quad . \quad . \quad (5)$$

4. The following formula, similar in form to that given by Rankine, gives the work done by 1 lb. of steam, expanding from T_1 to T_2, the steam remaining *saturated* or at constant steam weight during expansion. This result might be produced by jacketing.

$$U = \underbrace{1437 \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} - 0{\cdot}7(T_1 - T_2)}_{\text{Area A.}} + \underbrace{\frac{V(p_2 - p_3)144}{778}}_{\text{Area B.}}$$

(Fig. 41) where V = volume of 1 lb. of saturated steam at pressure p_2. If the steam expands down to p_2 and exhausts at p_3, then the last fraction disappears from the equation.

5. The same results, as already given, may be stated in a somewhat different form; thus, the work done during adiabatic expansion per pound of steam is done at the expense of the internal energy of the steam, and the expressions for the internal energy are as follows :—

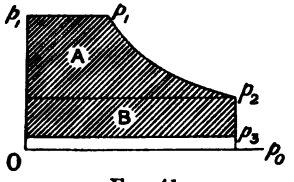


FIG. 41.

At beginning of expansion $= h_1 + x_1\rho_1$
at end of expansion $= h_2 + x_2\rho_2$
hence work done during expansion is equal to the difference of these two quantities $= J(h_1 - h_2 + x_1\rho_1 - x_2\rho_2)$ foot-lbs.

where J = 778.

Then, to find the net work U done per pound of steam during admission and adiabatic expansion down to back-pressure line, and exhausting against back pressure where $x_1 = 1$—

work done during admission $= p_1v_1$;
work done during expansion $= J(\rho_1 - x_2\rho_2 + h_1 - h_2)$
work done during exhaust $= p_2x_2v_2$

$$U = J(\rho_1 + \frac{1}{J}p_1v_1 - x_2\rho_2 - \frac{1}{J}p_2x_2v_2 + h_1 - h_2) \quad . \quad (1)$$

NOTE.—$\rho_1 + \frac{1}{J}p_1v_1 = L_1$, where ρ_1 = internal latent heat, $\frac{1}{J}p_1v_1$ = external work in heat-units, and L_1 = latent heat per pound of steam at pressure p_1; then—

$$U = J(L_1 - x_2L_2 + h_1 - h_2) \text{ foot-lbs.} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

But by equation, p. 45—

$$x_2 L_2 = \left(\frac{L_1}{T_1} + \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2}\right) T_2$$

Substituting in equation (2), and expressing in heat-units—

$$U = L_1 \frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1} - T_2 \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} + h_1 - h_2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (3)$$

Flow of Steam.—When steam flows from a vessel A (Fig. 42) under pressure p_1 into vessel B against back pressure p_2, then the total internal energy of the steam at p_1 before expansion $= h_1 + x_1\rho_1$; and after expansion adiabatically to some less pressure p_2, the internal energy $= h_2 + x_2\rho_2$. The work done upon the steam in AB $= x_1 P_1 V_1$, where V_1 = volume per pound at P_1. The work done by the steam in AB against $P_2 = x_2 P_2 V_2$, where V_2 = volume per pound at p_2.

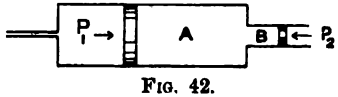


FIG. 42.

If v_1 = velocity of the steam at beginning of expansion, and v_2 = velocity at end of expansion, then $\frac{v_2^2 - v_1^2}{2g}$ = the gain of kinetic energy of the steam; and energy supplied = energy remaining + energy expended; therefore—

$$J(h_1 + x_1\rho_1) + x_1 P_1 V_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = J(h_2 + x_2\rho_2) + x_2 P_2 V_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g}$$

If the initial velocity v_1 is zero, then the final velocity is obtained from the following equation:—

$$\frac{v_2^2}{2g} = J(h_1 - h_2 + x_1\rho_1 - x_2\rho_2) + x_1 P_1 V_1 - x_2 P_2 V_2$$
$$= J(h_1 - h_2 + x_1 L_1 - x_2 L_2)$$

Thermal Efficiency.—Steam-engine efficiency may be expressed in various ways;[1] thus—

1. The proportion of the total heat supplied which is converted into useful work is called the *absolute thermal efficiency.*

2. The ratio between the heat converted into work in the actual engine, and that which an ideal engine would convert into work when working between the same limits of temperature, is called the *standard thermal efficiency.*

The standard thermal efficiency will evidently depend upon the particular kind of ideal engine cycle chosen with which to compare the actual engine, and this is a matter about which there is much variety of opinion.

The efficiency of the **Carnot cycle** ideal engine will be made clear for the case of steam by referring to Fig. 43. Considering the case of 1 lb. of water raised to the maximum temperature T_1 and

[1] See paper by Captain H. Riall Sankey, *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vol. cxxv. p. 182.

converted into steam at that temperature. During evaporation the steam is supplied throughout at the constant temperature T_1, represented by the movement of the vertical line through p towards the right of the figure till p coincides with k, and corresponding with admission line ab in Fig. 44. Areas C + D represent the heat-units added = the latent heat of evaporation at T_1. The steam is then expanded adiabatically down to the lower limit of temperature T_2 represented by the line km (Fig. 43), and bc (Fig. 44). During the return stroke of the piston, suppose that the

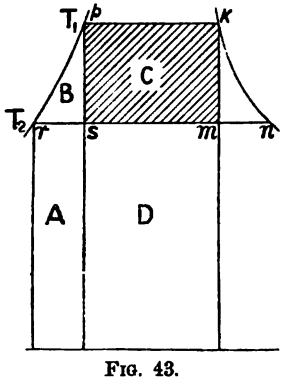


FIG. 43.

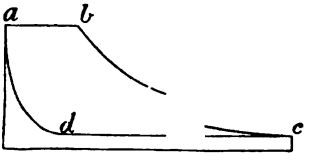


FIG. 44.

steam is now condensed within the cylinder itself by cooling, so that, when the piston has returned along the line cd to d, the volume has been reduced to $rs \div rn$ of the volume of 1 lb. of steam at T_2; then the heat abstracted by cooling is equal to area D.

The last step is now to compress, if possible, the mixture of steam and water enclosed as represented by da (Fig. 44), and along the adiabatic line sp (Fig. 43), so that it may become 1 lb. of water raised from temperature T_2 to T_1 by the work of compression; the heat supplied by the compression being equal to the areas A + B. Then the heat supplied during the cycle = areas C + D; the heat rejected = area D; the heat converted into work by a perfect engine working according to this cycle = C. Therefore the efficiency of the Carnot cycle

$$= E = \frac{C}{C + D} = \frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1}$$

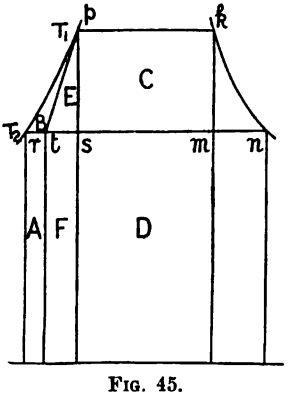


FIG. 45.

It will be noticed, however, that in the steam-engine the portion of the cycle represented by the fourth step, namely, adiabatic compression, is very imperfectly performed, because in the actual engine only the steam retained in the cylinder at beginning of compression, namely, $rs \div rn$ of 1 lb., is actually compressed; the remainder, having been exhausted and condensed at temperature T_2, must be heated to T_1 by addition of heat from the boiler. The efficiency of such an arrangement is shown by Fig. 45.

If the ideal engine expels the proportion $sn \div rn$ of its steam (by weight), heat has to be supplied to the boiler to raise the temperature of this portion of condensed steam from T_2 to T_1, and this heat is represented by the areas E + F, where $st = \frac{sn}{rn} \times sr$. The absolute efficiency of such a steam-engine working with compression of a portion only of the steam supplied

$$= \frac{C + E}{C + E + F + D}$$

which is less than that of the Carnot cycle, though greater than if there had been *no* compression.

The arrangement of heating the feed-water by doing work upon it is known as the "dynamic feed-water heater."

The **Clausius Cycle**[1] is described in four stages as follows :—

1. Feed-water raised from temperature of exhaust to temperature of admission steam.
2. Evaporation at constant admission temperature.
3. Adiabatic expansion down to back pressure.
4. Rejection at the constant temperature corresponding with the back pressure.

These stages are represented in Fig. 46, thus: T_2 is the temperature of the feed-water and of the exhaust steam; area A + B is the heat added to the feed-water to raise it to steam-admission temperature, T_1. During evaporation in the boiler, C + D is the latent heat added per pound. The expansion being adiabatic, and being continued to the back-pressure line, the corner *m* in Fig. 46 is sharp, and coincides with *c* (Fig. 47). Compare with Fig. 49,

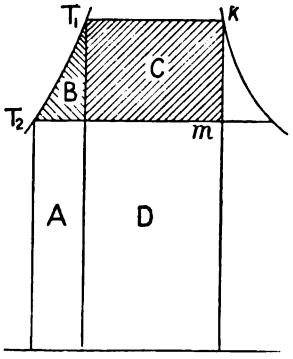


FIG. 46.

FIG. 47.

where the expansion is not carried down to back pressure. The last stage is to condense this steam at constant temperature T_2 by abstraction of heat D + A during the return stroke of the piston, till the 1 lb. of water is returned at the original feed-temperature, T_2.

The heat converted into work by a perfect engine working under these conditions is represented by the area C + B; and for the Clausius cycle—

[1] This cycle has now been adopted by the Inst. C.E. as the standard of comparison for steam-engines, and is called by them the "Rankine cycle," it having been published simultaneously and independently by these two investigators.

$$\text{Absolute thermal efficiency} = \frac{B + C}{A + B + C + D}$$

This cycle is evidently less efficient than the Carnot cycle, $\frac{C}{C + D}$.

The **Rankine dry steam cycle** differs from the Clausius cycle—

(1) By addition of heat to the cylinder to maintain the steam dry throughout the period of expansion;

(2) By not carrying the expansion so far as to the back pressure, but ceasing the expansion at some pressure p_2 higher than the back pressure p_3.

These effects are illustrated in Fig. 48, where during expansion heat has been added, making K*n* the expansion line instead of K*m*, the additional heat from a jacket or other source being represented by the area *hkng*. This added heat has been sufficient to render the steam dry during expansion, and to cause the expansion line to coincide with the saturated-steam line; but it will be seen that the efficiency of this heat is very low, being *mkn* ÷ *hkng*.

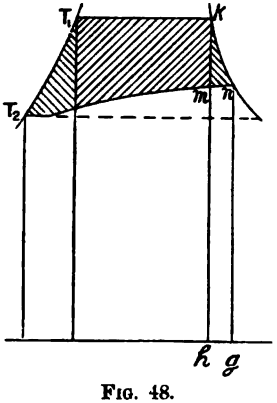


FIG. 48.

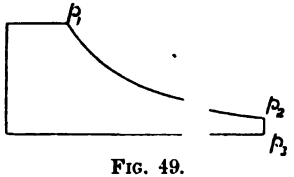


FIG. 49.

The effect of incomplete expansion is seen by the area lost between the shaded area and the back-pressure temperature line through T_2, shown dotted.

Weight of Steam required per Hour per I.H.P. by the Ideal Engine.—The number of foot-pounds of work performed per hour per horse-power = 33,000 × 60 = 1,980,000; or in heat-units, 1,980,000 ÷ 778 = 2545. Then, if U = the number of units of heat converted into work per pound of steam, and S = the pounds of steam required per horse-power per hour—

$$S = \frac{2545}{U} \text{ lbs.}$$

from which the weight of steam per I.H.P. per hour for the ideal engine can be calculated.

In practice, owing to various losses, some weight of steam, W, greater than S is always required. Then efficiency of the engine = E = S ÷ W.

CHAPTER IV.

THE SLIDE-VALVE.

THE slide-valve, as its name implies, is a valve which slides to and fro, opening and closing ports or passages for the flow of steam to or from the cylinder.

The functions to be performed by the valve include (1) admission of the steam to the cylinder to give an impulse to the piston; (2) to cut off the supply of steam when the piston has travelled a certain portion of the stroke; (3) to open a passage just before the completion of the stroke, for the escape or exhaust of the steam from the cylinder; (4) to close the exhaust passage before the piston reaches the end of the return stroke, to secure a certain amount of "cushioning."

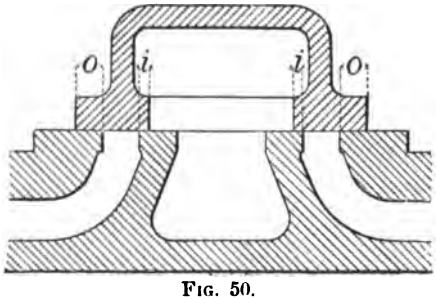


FIG. 50.

Lap of a Valve. — The amount by which the valve overlaps the outside edge of the port when the valve is in the middle of its stroke, is called the *outside lap* (see parts *o*, *o*, Fig. 50). Similarly, the amount by which the valve overlaps the inside edge of the port when the valve is in the middle of its stroke, is called the ***inside lap*** (see *i*, *i*, Fig. 50).

Lead of the Valve.—"Lead" is the amount by which the valve uncovers the port when the piston is at the beginning of its stroke (see Fig. 52). The lead to exhaust is always greater than the lead to steam admission (Fig. 52).

The way in which these various functions are fulfilled for both the forward and backward strokes of a double-acting engine may be seen from the Figs. 51–54.

Fig. 51 shows the valve in its middle position and closing both ports, in which position the amount of lap, or overlap, of the valve may be measured.

Fig. 52 shows the piston at the end of the stroke, and the valve

just opening the steam-port to admission of steam. This port opening is the *lead.*

Fig. 53 shows the slide-valve at the end of its stroke. It does not necessarily open the steam-port fully for admission, but it

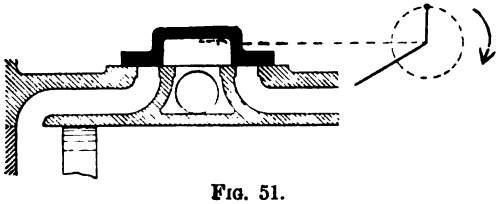


FIG. 51.

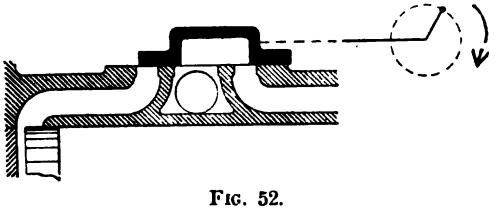


FIG. 52.

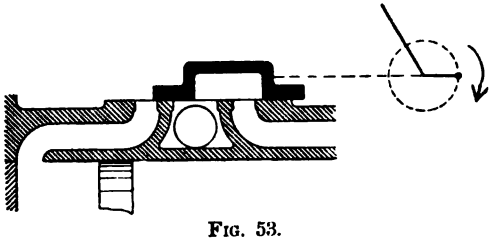


FIG. 53.

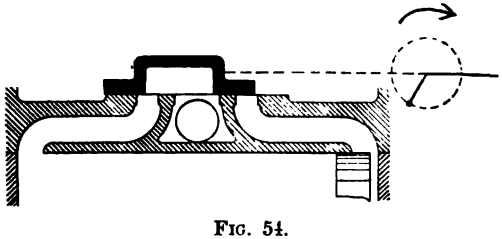


FIG. 54.

always opens fully to exhaust when the valve is at the end of its travel.

Fig. 54. Here the piston is at the other end of its stroke, and the valve has opened the opposite port by an amount equal to the lead.

Double-ported Slide-valve.—For large cylinders, such as the low-

pressure cylinder of compound engines, the travel of the valve in order to open the port to supply sufficient steam would be inconveniently great. To reduce the travel, and thereby also to reduce the work to be done by the eccentric in moving the valve, the double-ported slide-valve is used, as shown in Fig. 55.

The steam-passage P of the cylinder terminates in two ports instead of one, and the steam-ports are each made one-half the width which would be necessary for a single port, and the travel of the double-ported valve is therefore only half that of the common valve for the same total area of port-opening.

The valve is so constructed that, when in the middle of its stroke, each of the four steam-ports is covered by an equal inside and outside lap, though some modification of this is made in short-stroke engines.

The steam-admission and exhaust arrangements are equivalent to that of two separate simple slide-valves. The steam is supplied to

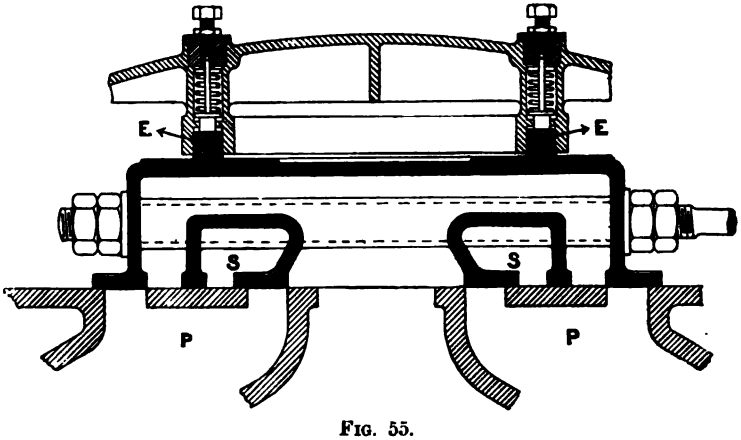


FIG. 55.

the inner admission edges of the valve by passage S, S, cast in the sides of the valve, passing through from side to side, and communicating with the cylinder when the valve uncovers the ports.

In large engines with a single flat valve the total pressure of the steam on the back of the valve would be so excessive, unless reduced by some means, that the load thrown on the eccentrics and working parts of the valve gear owing to the friction between the valve and cylinder faces would be a serious drawback to the efficiency of the engine.

To reduce this effect, an equilibrium ring, E, is fitted to the back of the valve, as shown in the figure. The ring is fitted in a circular groove, and fits steam-tight against a circular planed surface on the back of the valve. It is set up to its work against the valve by set

screws passing through the cover, which act against a spring, and can be adjusted from the outside.

The internal space between the ring and the cover is connected with the exhaust pipe or condenser, and hence a considerable portion of the total pressure on the valve is removed.

A similar arrangement of equilibrium ring at the back of the valve as used in some locomotives is shown in Fig. 56.

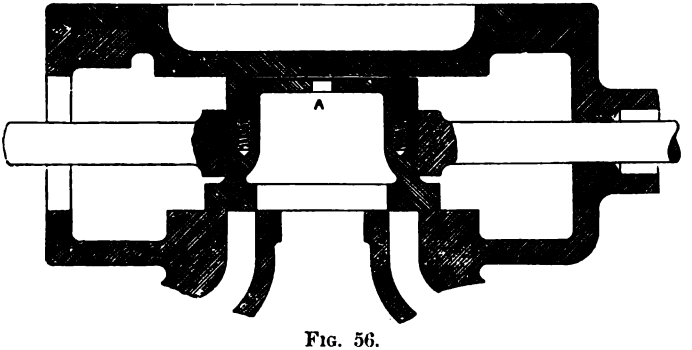


FIG. 56.

The Piston Slide-valve is a form of slide-valve which is used for high-pressure steam, to avoid the loss due to the friction of the ordinary flat valve. The piston-valve as in perfect equilibrium as

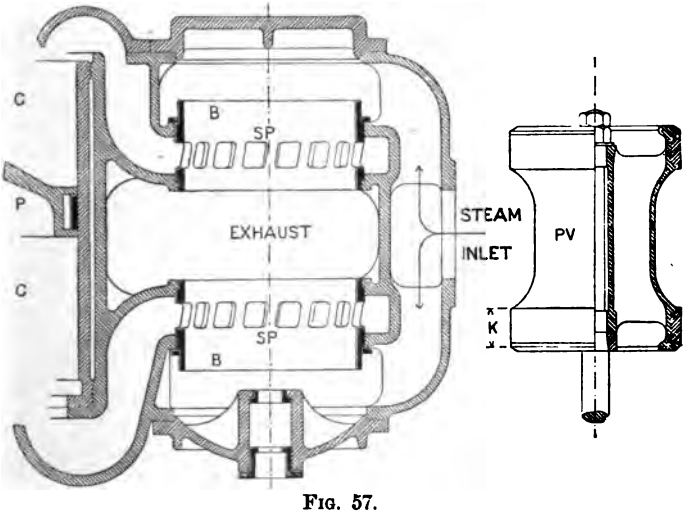


FIG. 57.

regards the steam pressure, and is much used for the high-pressure cylinder of triple-expansion engines.

It is not used for the lower-pressure cylinders, because the dimensions of the valve to give the required port-opening is large relatively to the dimensions of the cylinder itself.

The chief disadvantages with this type of valve are (1) the loss due to leakage of steam past the circumference of the valve into the exhaust passage; and (2) the large *clearance* space, owing to the volume of the steam-passages being necessarily great with the piston-valve.

The example given in Fig. 57 shows the valve removed from the valve chamber. The valve itself, PV, consists of a double piston, the width of the pistons being the same as the width of face in an ordinary flat slide-valve, and being sufficient to cover the port when in mid-position, and to provide the necessary lap.

The valve works in two short bushes or barrels, B, in which passages, SP, are made all round the bush, which form the steam-port for admission and exhaust of steam to and from the cylinder according to the position of the valve. The steam-port, being in the form of a

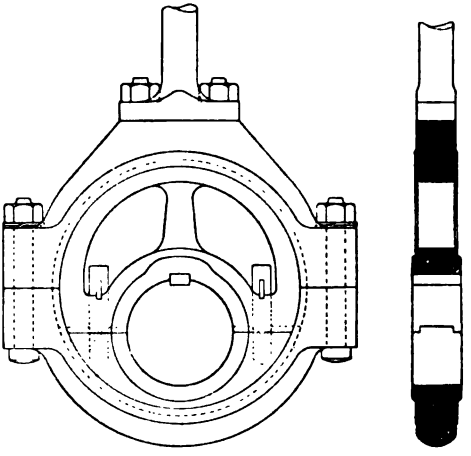


FIG. 58.

series of openings separated by bars instead of a continuous circular port, enables the spring rings, with which the larger types of piston-valves are fitted, to work to and fro over the port without catching on the edge. The steam enters as shown; it passes to either end of the piston-valve, and, the valve being hollow, the admission steam can pass right through it from end to end. The exhaust escapes by the internal edges of the valve, and passes away by the chamber surrounding the body of the valve, the reduced diameter of this part corresponding to the exhaust chamber of the simple slide-valve.

Sometimes this arrangement of the steam is reversed, the steam being admitted at the inner edges of the pistons from the chamber

around the middle of the valve, and exhausted from the outer ends and through the interior of the valve. The latter arrangement is adopted in some cases with superheated steam.

The Eccentric, Fig. 58, is a disc fixed on the crank-shaft in such a way that the centre of the disc is eccentric, or "out of centre," with the centre of the shaft. Fig. 59 shows that the motion transmitted by an eccentric with an eccentricity CE is equivalent to that obtained from a small crank where radius is r = CE. The disc is

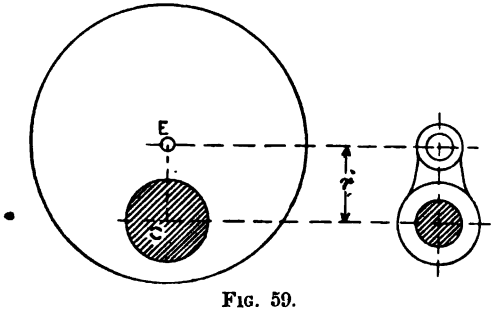


FIG. 59.

termed the *sheave* of the eccentric, and is made in halves, the halves being secured by bolts and split cotters as shown. The band surrounding the sheave is called the *strap*. The sheave rotates inside the strap in the same way as the crank-pin rotates in the connecting-rod head. The eccentric rod is attached to the strap, and the slide-valve receives a reciprocating motion from it, similar to that received by the piston from the crank-pin, but on a reduced scale.

The *angle of advance* of the eccentric is the angle in excess of 90° which the centre line of the eccentric is in advance of the centre line of the crank.

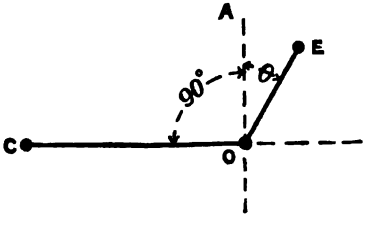


FIG. 60.

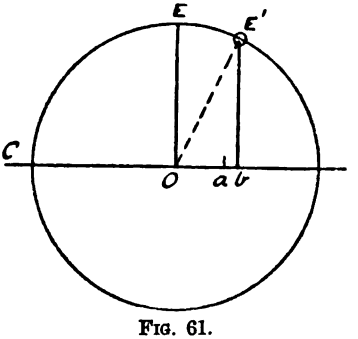


FIG. 61.

Thus, in Fig. 60, OC is the crank-arm, and OE the line passing through the centre E of the eccentric.

Then the angle AOE = θ = the angle of advance

To find the angle of advance of the eccentric, having given the travel and the lap and lead of the valve: With radius OE (Fig. 61) = radius of eccentric, or half travel of valve, describe a circle about O. Produce the centre line CO of the crank through O. Set off Oa = the lap of the valve, and ab = the lead, and from b raise a perpendicular to cut the circle in E'. Join OE'. Then EOE' is the angle of advance of the eccentric.

Let o = outside lap;
i = inside lap;
l_1 = outside lead;
l_2 = inside lead, or lead to exhaust;
ρ = radius of eccentric;
θ = angular advance;
a = any angle passed through by crank;
D = valve displacement from mid-position;
$o + l_1 = i + l_2$.

From Fig. 61 $\sin\theta = \dfrac{\text{lap} + \text{lead}}{\text{radius of eccentric}} = \dfrac{o + l_1}{\rho} = \dfrac{i + l_2}{\rho}$; $l_1 = \rho \sin\theta - o$; $l_2 = \rho \sin\theta - i$.

Valve Displacement for Given Angular Travel of Crank.—Let crank C (Fig. 62) travel through angle a from its dead centre; then the valve displacement—

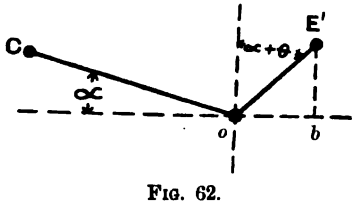


FIG. 62.

Ob = OE' $\cos$ E'Ob = $\rho \sin(a + \theta)$

Opening of port to steam = $\rho \sin(a + \theta) - o$

To find the Position of the Piston for any Position of the Crank.—1. When the length of the connecting-rod is very great compared with the length of the crank-arm.

Then, if ab (Fig. 63) represent stroke of piston, and r = radius of crank, a perpendicular let fall on ab from crank position c gives a point m as the corresponding position of the piston.

$$Om = r \cos\theta \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$
$$am = r(1 - \cos\theta) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

But if the connecting-rod be comparatively short compared with r, as is the case in practice, then, in Fig. 64, let ab be the path of the piston to any scale, and aCb the crank-pin circle.

With radius equal to the length of the connecting-rod, and from a centre on ba produced towards a, draw an arc, st, touching the centre o. This may be termed the mid-travel arc; and the displacement of the piston from mid-stroke for any position, C, of the crank-pin = Cv drawn parallel to the line of stroke, ab. Take also some other position of the crank, C'. Then the displacement of the piston

from its mid-position = C′*v*. Arcs C*f* and C′*g*, drawn with radius of connecting-rod from centre on *ba* produced, also give the piston displacements O*f* and O*g* = C*v* and C′*v* respectively. The distance *vn* measures the *deviation* of the piston for positions C or C′ of the crank due to the obliquity of the connecting-rod.

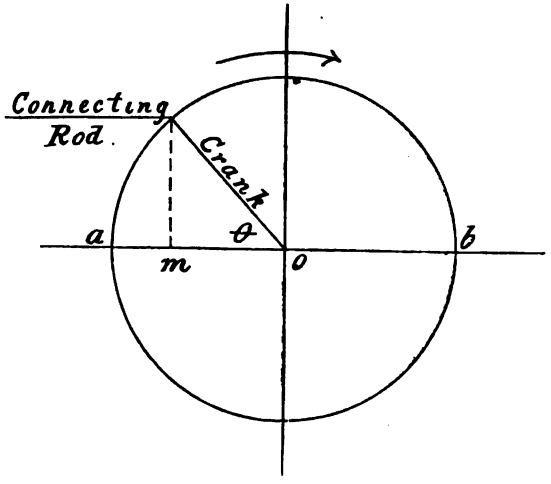


Fig. 63.

Zeuner Valve Diagram.—This diagram was first proposed by Dr. Zeuner of Dresden, and, owing to its great convenience and simplicity, is very much used.

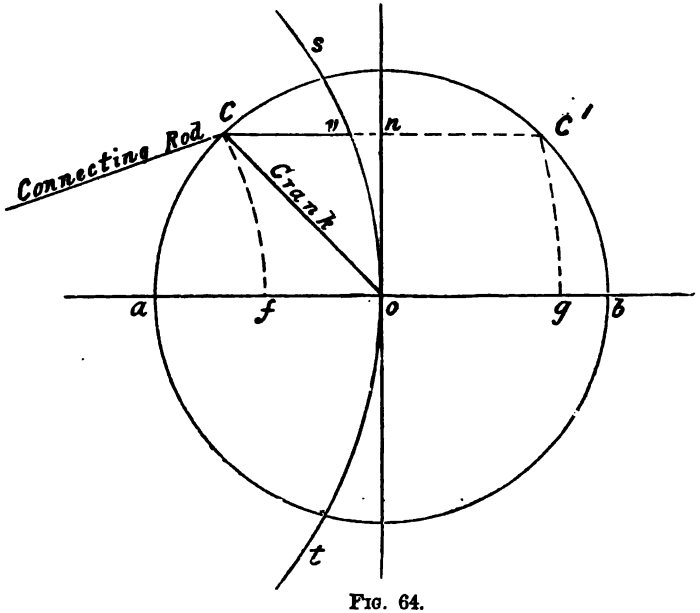


Fig. 64.

It will be best understood by reference to the following figures:—

In Fig. 65, let *ab* be the travel of the slide-valve, O*a* the crank position, and OE the position of the centre line of the eccentric, having angular advance θ. Then a perpendicular, E*c*, on *ab* gives O*c*, the distance of the valve from its mid-position. If the crank-shaft move round on its centre so that *a* passes to a_1 and E to E_1, and O*c*′ is the distance of the valve from its mid-position for eccentric position OE_1.

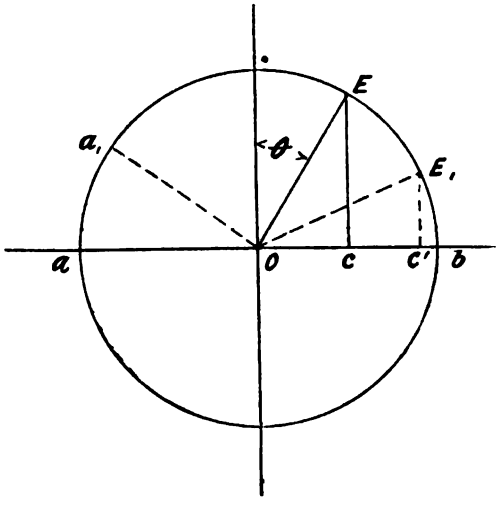


Fig. 65.

Instead of the crank O*a* and eccentric OE moving round the circular path, the result will be the same if the line O*b* be supposed to move in the reverse direction as at b_1, b_2, etc. (Fig. 66), and perpendiculars Ec_1, Ec_2 be drawn as shown. Then all the angles Oc_1E, Oc_2E, etc., are right angles, and therefore a circle drawn upon OE as diameter will pass through the points C_1, C_2, etc. (Fig. 67), and the portion Oc_1, Oc_2, etc., of the lines intercepted by this fixed circle gives the distance of the valve from its central position for any position *b*, b_1, b_2, etc., of the crank.

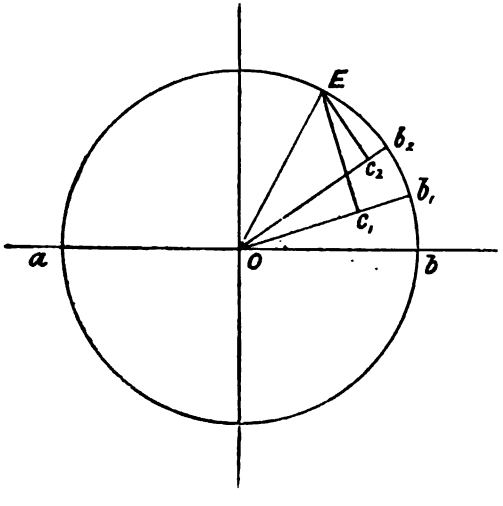


Fig. 66.

The Zeuner diagram is here given with the particulars usually required marked thereon. The connection between the valve diagram and the indicator diagram is also shown. In Fig. 68, the circle R_1, R_2, etc., is drawn with radius OR_1, equal to half the travel of the valve. The outside "lap circle" is drawn with

radius OV = the outside lap. Distance VP is set off = the lead, and the perpendicular PP_2 is raised to cut the travel circle in P_2. Then P_2OR_3 is the angular advance of the eccentric, position of crank being at OA. On P_2OR_7 draw the primary and secondary valve circles on the diameters OP_2 and OR_7 respectively, as shown. From centre O, with radius OW = the inside lap, draw the inside lap circle.

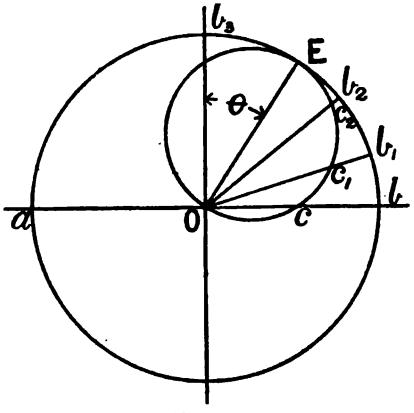


FIG. 67.

Then the real position of the crank is OA for position OP_2 of the eccentric, and for rotation in a clockwise direction. If these positions remain fixed while the radius OR_1 rotates in the opposite direction, the result will be the same as though OA and OP_2 rotated in the true direction, as already explained (Fig. 66).

Then, if OR_1 be assumed to be the position of the crank at the commencement of the stroke, the length OP, the part of OR_1 intercepted by the primary valve circle, is the distance which the valve has moved from its mid-position; and this includes OV, the lap, and VP, the port opening, shown shaded, and which is, in fact, the lead of the valve. The opening of the other port to exhaust at the same instant is given by the length DW_3.

If a radius be drawn through B, the intersection of the valve circle with the outside lap circle, OR is the position of the crank when admission of steam begins—namely, just before the crank reaches its dead centre, R_1. Continuing the rotation of the crank, on reaching the dead centre the port is open by an amount VP equal to the lead, as already stated. The valve now continues to open the port wider, until at the position OP_2 of the crank the valve is at its maximum distance from its mid-position. The valve now commences to return towards its mid-position, and the port is gradually becoming more and more throttled till the crank reaches OR_4, where the outside lap circle intersects the valve circle. The port is then closed, and cut-off has taken place, the expansion of the steam in the cylinder commencing from this point. Expansion continues till the crank reaches OR_6, where the inside lap circle cuts the secondary valve circle when the port opens to exhaust. R_5 drawn at right angles to OP_2, or tangent to the valve circles, is the position of the crank when the valve is in mid-position.

If the valve had no inside lap, then R_5 would be the position of the crank when the exhaust port opens, and R_5 continued across the diagram would give the position of the crank at exhaust closure; but

when the valve has inside lap, a circle is drawn from centre O with radius equal to the inside lap, cutting the secondary valve circle. Then crank positions obtained by drawing lines from centre O through the intersections of the inside lap circle and the secondary valve circle give the positions of the crank at exhaust opening and

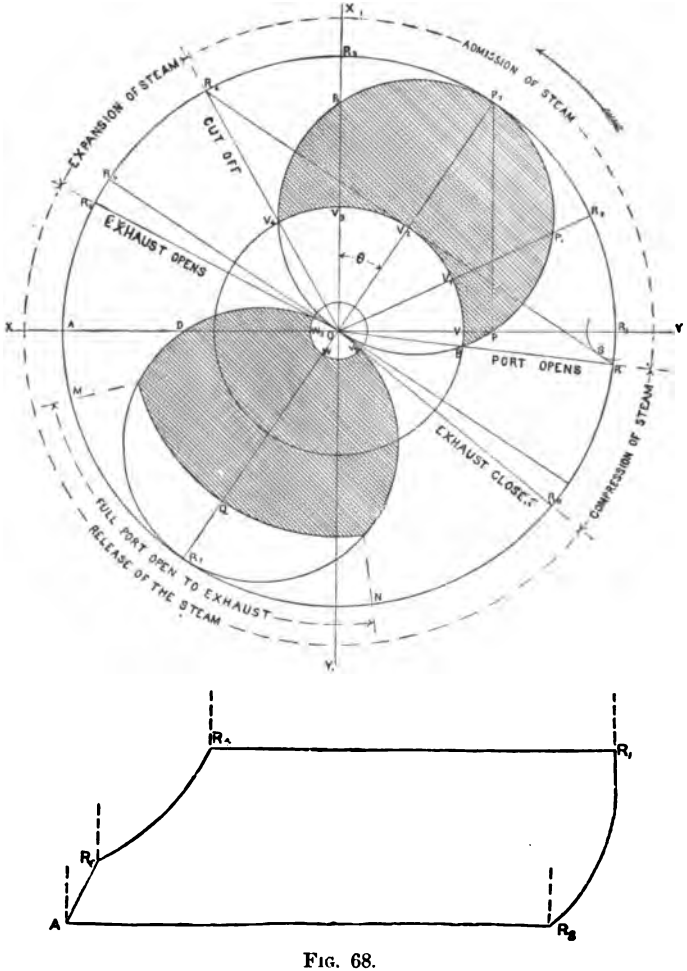


FIG. 68.

closing respectively. At M the port is fully open to exhaust; at R_7 the valve has moved a distance QR_7 past the edge of the port, thus leaving the port wide open to exhaust till the crank reaches ON, when the port begins to close till R_8 is reached, when compression of the steam remaining in the cylinder takes place, till the port opens again

for re-admission of steam. The arc through Q is drawn so that WQ = width of port.

Reuleaux or Reech Diagram.—The following diagram is known as Reuleaux's diagram in Germany, and Reech's in France.

Referring to Fig. 60, if the eccentric radius be turned back through an angle θ, then the valve would be in mid-position, and the crank would be at an angle θ behind its dead centre. In Fig. 69, let the same circle represent the path both of the crank-pin and of the eccentric centre, each to different scales. Through the centre of the circle draw DD_1,

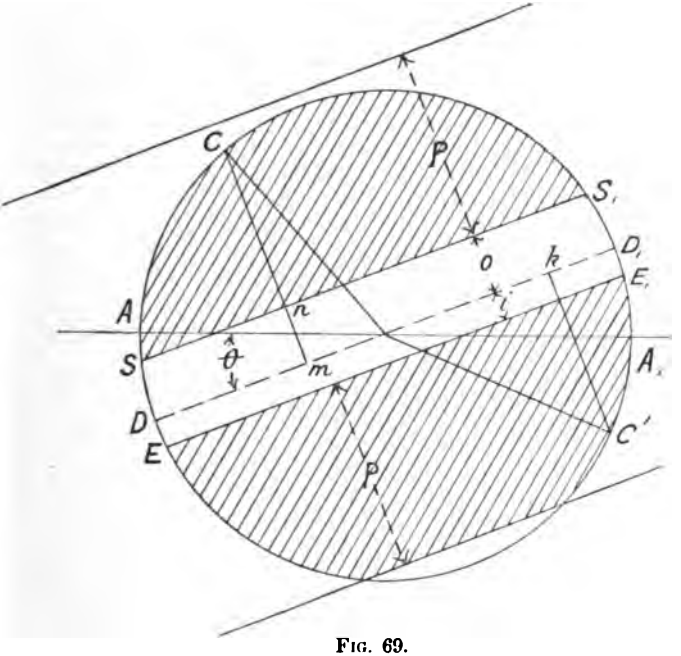


FIG. 69.

making an angle θ = the angular advance of the eccentric. Then, as explained above, D is the position of the crank when the valve is in mid-position, and DD_1 is called the mid-position line. For any position C or C′ of the crank, the displacement of the valve from its mid-position = Cm or C′k drawn perpendicular to DD_1. Draw SS_1 parallel to DD′, and at a distance from it = outside lap = o, and draw EE_1 parallel to DD_1, and at a distance from it = inside lap = i.

Then for crank position C, the length Cn = the port opening to steam when the valve has travelled a distance Cm from the centre. For crank position C′ the exhaust port is open, C′k − i, and the valve has travelled a distance C′k from its mid-position.

The diagram refers to one side of the piston only, and neglects the obliquity of the eccentric rod.

The lines drawn at a distance P from the lap lines represent the width of the steam port, showing on the steam side the port is not fully opened, while on the exhaust side, in this case, the valve travels beyond the edge of the port.

When the crank turns clockwise, S is the admission point, S_1 = the point of cut-off, E_1 = opening of exhaust port; E = compression. The perpendicular let fall from A on SS_1 = the steam lead, and the perpendicular let fall from A_1 on EE_1 = the exhaust lead.

This diagram teaches most clearly a number of facts of importance in practice. For example, suppose, on a given engine, the lap of the valve was decreased by removing a portion from the outside edges of the valve; then the effect would evidently be to cut off later in the stroke, which would no doubt be the object of reducing the lap, but it would also increase the lead, which would probably be an objectionable feature, and this could only be prevented by altering the angular advance of the eccentric, in other words, by making the angle θ less, until the lead was the amount required. The effect of this on S_1, E_1, and E would be to make them all later.

Again, it might be desired to increase the lead of the valve, altering nothing except increasing the angle of advance θ of the eccentric. The effect of this, it would be at once seen, would be to make all the operations of the valve at S_1, E_1, and E earlier.

PROBLEM.—Given travel, cut-off, and lead, to find the lap and the angular advance of the eccentric.

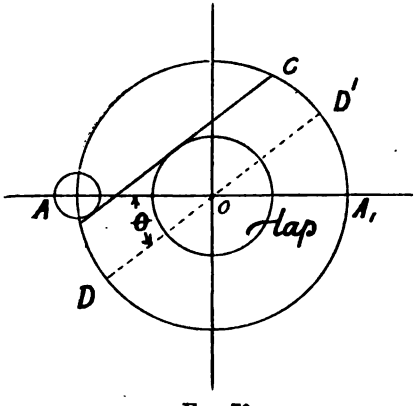


FIG. 70.

Draw circle from O with radius OC = half travel (Fig. 70), and draw the lead circle at A with radius = lead. Draw a line from point of cut-off C tangent to lead circle. Then a circle drawn from centre O touching this line is the lap circle, its radius being equal to the lap required. A line, DD', drawn through the centre O parallel to the lap line, makes an angle θ with AA_1 equal to the angular advance required.

Effect of Obliquity of Connecting-rod.—Taking the case of a vertical engine, and drawing the crank circle (Fig. 71) to an enlarged scale with diameter AA_1 (Fig. 72), then the effect of a short connecting-rod on the distribution of the steam on the opposite sides of the piston may be seen by the aid of the diagram. Thus (Fig. 72), DD_1 is the position of the crank when the eccentric is 90° ahead of the vertical centre line, and *st* is the mid-travel arc of the piston. Also lap-lines are drawn parallel to DD_1, and at a distance from it equal to the outside lap *o* at the top end and *o'* at the bottom

end. If o and o' are equal, then it will be seen that crank position C is the point of cut-off for the top side of the piston, and crank position c' is the point of cut-off for the bottom side. But Cm is greater than $c'n$, or, in other words, the piston is further past mid-position on the downstroke at C than on the upstroke at c', and therefore cut-off takes place later on the down-stroke than on the upstroke.

This inequality of cut-off may be reduced by altering the lap on the bottom side, making lap o' less than the top lap o. Then cut-off will take place at c_2 later than before, but the lead on the bottom will be increased (see perpendicular from A_1 on lap line through $c_2 = A_1a_2$, which is greater than the lead Aa'). In practice it is usual to have less lap and more lead on the bottom end of the cylinder than at the top.

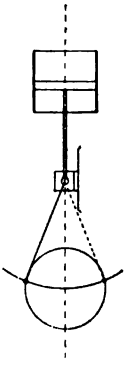


FIG. 71.

Valve Ellipse.—This is a method which has been in use for many years, especially among locomotive engineers, for representing the relative positions of the slide-valve and piston.

The process is to draw two lines at right angles to one another, the one to represent the line of direction of motion of the slide-valve, and the other that of the piston.

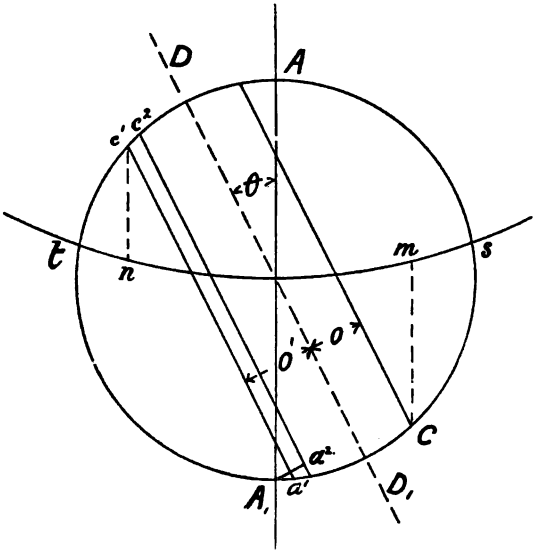


FIG. 72.

Thus, in Fig. 73, let CP represent the stroke of the piston, and let the circle through C drawn with radius OC = crank-pin path. If

this circle be divided into any number of equal parts, as shown, then, neglecting the obliquity of the connecting-rod, if a perpendicular 1*a* be let fall on CP from any position 1 of the crank-pin, *a* is the corresponding position of the piston. From centre O draw a circle with radius OE = radius of eccentric. If now the direction of motion of the slide-valve be assumed, for the purpose of the diagram, to be at right angles to that of the piston, the eccentric position OD must be set back 90°, and therefore OD is drawn making an angle θ with CO.

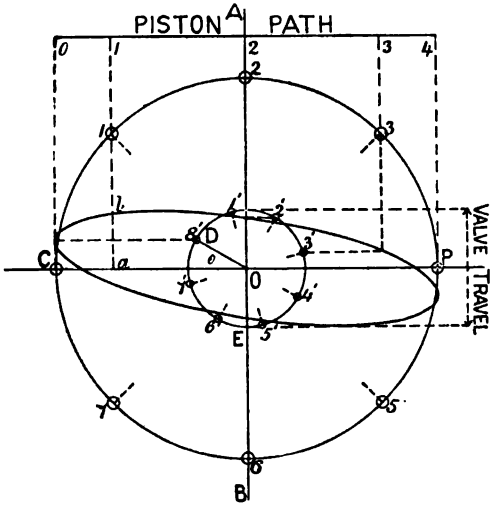


FIG. 73.

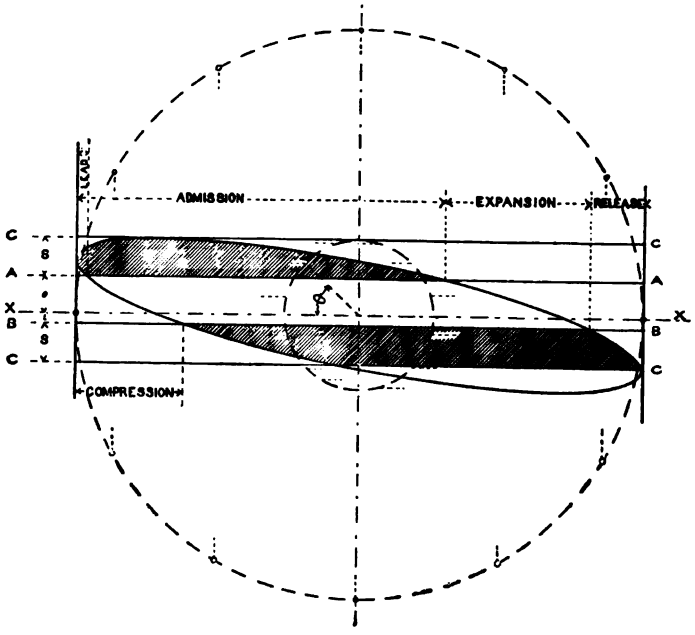


FIG. 74.

Then for crank-pin position C, eccentric position is at D. Starting from D, divide the eccentric circle into the same number of equal parts, 1′, 2′, etc., as on the crank-pin circle. Draw horizontals from the eccentric positions to intersect verticals from the crank positions, and join the intersections. The closed figure is called the "valve ellipse."

To allow for obliquity of the connecting-rod, instead of dropping perpendiculars as at 1*a*, draw arcs through points 1, 2, etc., of the crank-pin path with radius equal to length of connecting-rod from a centre on line PC produced. Similarly, to allow for the obliquity of the eccentric rod, draw arcs through 1′, 2′, etc., on the eccentric path with radius equal to length of eccentric rod from a centre on line OE produced.

In Fig. 74, if AA be set off from XX on one side of it equal to *o*, the outside lap; BB = *i* = inside lap, and CC = S = width of steam port. Then, if the valve ellipse be drawn as explained (Fig. 73), the points of admission, cut-off, release, and compression are determined by the intersection of the valve ellipse with the respective edges of the port lines AA and BB. Perpendiculars on to the centre line XX will give the piston positions at each of these points respectively.

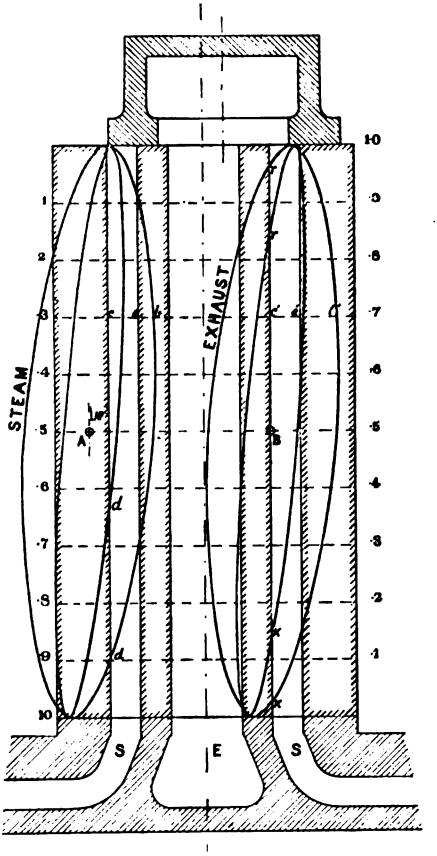


FIG. 75.

Fig. 75 shows an application of the valve ellipse to an actual case from practice. From the face of the ports S, E, S, in the sectional drawing at the bottom of the figure, lines are drawn perpendicularly to any convenient length from each edge of the respective ports, and this length is subdivided to represent equal portions of the piston-stroke. A valve ellipse is then drawn from centre A on the half-stroke line of the piston for steam at a distance = outside lap of valve from edge of port, and from centre B for exhaust on the port line, as there is no exhaust lap. The centres A and B are the positions

of the respective steam and exhaust edges of the valve in mid-position.

Several ellipses are usually drawn for different amounts of travel of the valve as the link is notched up (see Fig. 87).

Two ellipses are drawn in this case, and, referring to the larger ellipse, it shows for any position, say 0·3 of the piston stroke, that the steam port is not only freely open = *ce*, but the valve has moved a distance *eb* past the edge of the port; and on the other side of the piston the exhaust port is not only wide open, but the valve has moved past the edge a distance *e'b'*. The cut-off points for different amounts of travel of the valve are given at *d*, *d*; the points of release are *r*, *r*, and of compression *k*, *k*.

Expansion Valve Gears.—The importance of working steam expansively has been already explained, and a certain amount of expansion may be obtained with the common slide-valve by the addition of lap, but a cut-off not earlier than about 0·7 of the stroke can be obtained in this way, and this is usually not sufficient for economical working. The amount of additional lap necessary to cut off at any earlier point causes difficulties of other kinds, and other means have therefore been employed to obtain an early cut off of the steam-supply to the cylinder. Locomotive and marine engineers generally employ the link motion both for reversing and for regulating the degree of expansion; but for stationary engines, especially when not requiring to be reversed, a separate expansion valve is used, or some form of Corliss or drop-valve gear.

The Link Motion.—There are various kinds of link motion, but the arrangement known as the Stephenson link motion is the one almost

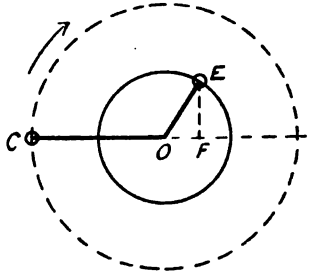


FIG. 76.

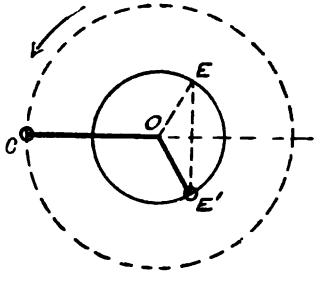


FIG. 77.

universally adopted in this country, and it is the type which will here be described.

The object of the link motion was originally to provide a ready means of reversing an engine; but it was found to be also a convenient means of regulating the expansion of the steam in the cylinder, cutting off the steam earlier or later in the stroke as desired.

As a *reversing gear* its action is as follows—

It has been shown that when the crank is in some position OC (Fig. 76), the centre line of the eccentric is in a direction OE

ahead of the crank, the direction of rotation being shown by the arrow.

But to reverse the engine, the eccentric centre must by some means be moved from E to some position E′ (Fig. 77), having a suitable angle COE′ ahead of the crank.

This is accomplished in the link motion by having two separate eccentrics, one keyed with its centre at E, and the other at E′, the ends of the respective eccentric rods being joined together by a link, as shown in Fig. 78. Then by means of a lever attached to the link, L, either eccentric, as desired, may be made to communicate its motion to the slide-valve by moving the link so as to bring one or other of the eccentric rods into line with the slide-valve rod.

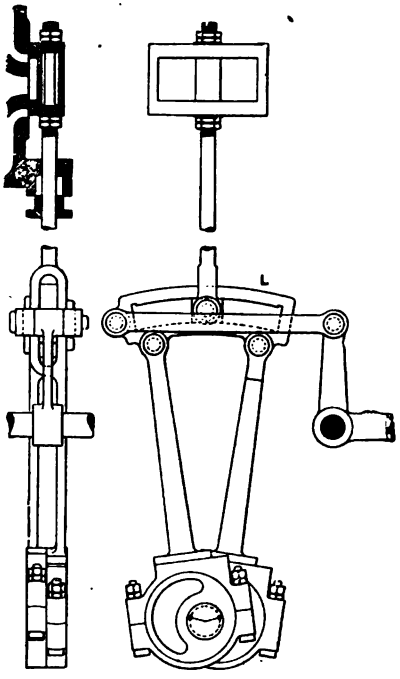


FIG. 78.

The slide-valve is connected by the valve rod to a little block which fits in the slot of the link, so that any movement of the link in the direction of the axis of the valve rod affects the position of the valve.

When the block is in the middle of the link, the valve is influenced equally by both eccentrics, with the result that the engine will not run in either direction. The nearer the block is to its mid-position in the slot, the less is the travel of the valve and the earlier the steam is cut off in the cylinder.

The Stephenson Link Motion, illustrated in Fig. 78, and shown in skeleton in Fig. 79, is made with the link concave towards the crank shaft. The centre line of the link is drawn with a radius equal to the distance between the centre of the eccentric measured along the rod to the centre line of the link. When the crank is on the centre away from the link, and the rods are attached to the nearest end of the link, as shown in Fig. 79, the rods are said to be "open." This is the usual way of connecting the eccentric rods to the link. When the crank is in the same position as before, and the rods are connected to the end of the link on the opposite side of the main centre line, as shown in Fig. 80, the rods are said to be "crossed." In the latter case, the result is not quite the same as when the rods are open. With open rods the lead increases as the

link approaches its mid-position; with crossed rods the reverse is the case. This is illustrated more fully in Figs. 86 and 88.

The paths of the moving parts of the link motion during a revolution of the crank are compounded of the movement due to the connection of the link with the eccentrics, and of that due to the connection of the link with the radius bar or drag link, SR (Fig. 79), which is free to move at the link end, but is fixed at the reversing lever end, S. The end of the link connected to the radius bar will, of course, move in an arc of a circle about this fixed centre.

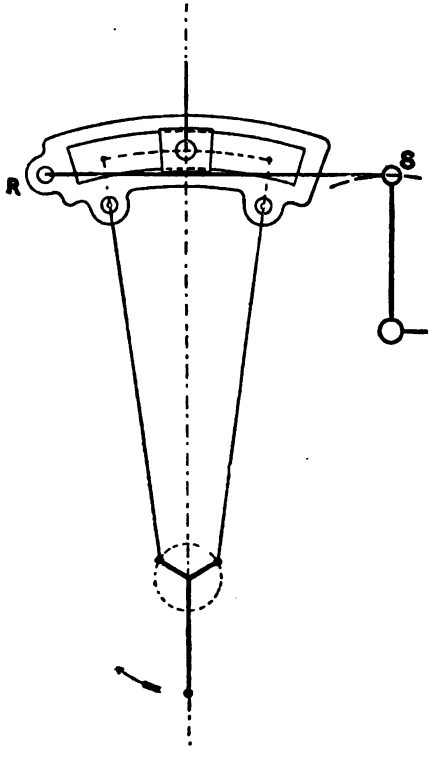


FIG. 79.

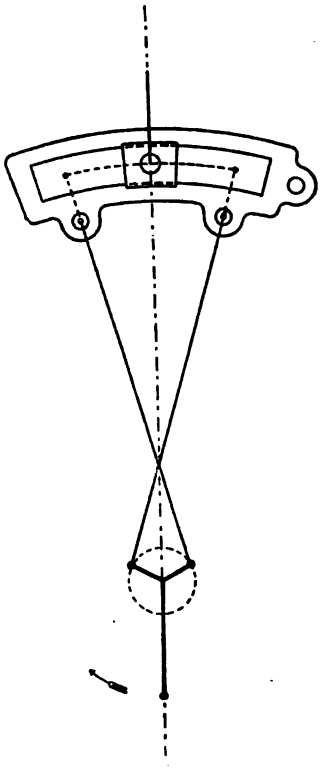


FIG. 80.

When the link is pulled right over, so that the eccentric rod is as nearly as possible in line with the valve rod, the link is said to be in "full forward gear" or in "full backward gear," as the case may be, depending on which eccentric is thrown into gear.

To stop an engine with a link motion, the link must be placed so that the block attached to the slide-valve rod is in the middle of the link.

To start an engine with a link motion having open rods for a

given direction of turning of the crank shaft, the link must be moved in the same direction as it would move if it were connected rigidly to the crank shaft and turned round with it.

When the link is in "mid-gear," the travel of the slide-valve on each side of its middle position is equal to the lap of the valve plus the somewhat increased lead which the valve has in mid-gear with the open-arm link motion. The shorter the eccentric rods relatively to the valve-travel, the greater the increase in the lead as the link approaches mid-gear.

In consequence of the somewhat complex motion of the link, there is always more or less "slotting" or rubbing of the link upon the block. The nearer the block is to the point of suspension of the link, the less the slotting motion. Hence the link is usually suspended from the end nearest the forward eccentric rod, so as to reduce the wear and tear due to the slotting motion to a minimum for the most common working position of the link.

In this case, in backward gear the slotting motion is more or less considerable, but this disadvantage is conceded for the sake of the more perfect action in forward gear. When equal efficiency of the link is required in both forward and backward gear, the link is suspended from the centre.

The position of the centre, S, of the suspension rod, SR, Fig. 79, is chosen thus: Trace the path of the point R on the link to which the suspension rod is to be attached when the link is in full forward gear, for a complete revolution of the crank shaft, and without the restraint of any suspension link. Again trace the path of the same point when the link is in full backward gear.

Now, with a radius equal to the proposed length of the suspension rod, draw an arc from some centre which shall as nearly as possible bisect the irregular curved figure for full forward gear. The centre of this arc is chosen for the centre of the suspension rod in full forward gear. Similarly, with the same radius as before, bisect the irregular curve for full backward gear. The two centres thus obtained fix as nearly as possible the path of the end of the reversing lever to which the suspension rod is attached. Usually some compromise is made in favour of full forward gear.

Expansion Regulator Arm.—In compound and triple-expansion engines with link motions all connected with one reversing shaft, it is often desirable, for the sake of regulating the distribution of the power between the respective cylinders, to adjust somewhat the position of the link of the low-pressure cylinder relatively to that of the high-pressure cylinder, and to give it an earlier or later cut-off as required. This is sometimes done by the method illustrated in Fig. 81, namely, by connecting the outer end of the suspension rod S to a block, the position of which is capable of adjustment by the screw as shown. The position of the slot in the arm A is so arranged that, if the engines required to be suddenly reversed, the link may be thrown into full backward gear without the necessity for any re-adjustment of this supplementary expansion gear; for the position

of the outer centre of the suspension rod may be anywhere in the slot of the lever without its affecting to any extent the action of the link in full backward gear, as the centre line of the slot is perpendicular, or nearly so, to that of the suspension rod.

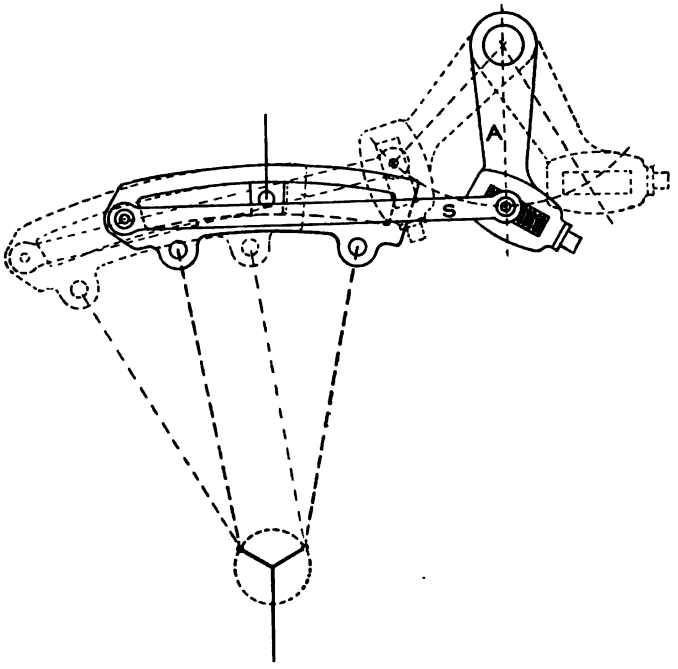


FIG. 81.

Valve Diagrams for Link Motion.—It will be convenient to consider here the case of a single movable disc, the eccentricity of which can be varied, and a variable cut-off thus obtained with a single eccentric. This arrangement is important, especially because of its application in connection with shaft governors as an automatic cut-off gear for high-speed engines.

The disc D, Fig. 82, is keyed to the crank shaft, and the adjustable disc E, with centre P, is the eccentric disc to which the eccentric rod and strap are secured. It will be seen that the disc E is secured to D, but that it may be so adjusted that the centre P may be held in any position between P and P_3. The effect of this on the distribution of the steam is well shown by the Zeuner diagram, Fig. 83. Thus C is the centre of the shaft, and CP_1P_3 in Fig. 82 is drawn to an enlarged scale in Fig. 83. Take positions P_1, P_2, P_0, and draw circles on the diameters CP_1, CP_2, CP_0; then, for position CP_1 in full forward gear, cut-off takes place at C_1, drawn through the intersection of the

lap circle with the valve circle on CP_1, and as P_1 approaches P_0, cut-off takes place earlier. When P_0 is reached the engine will be stopped, and as P_0 approaches P_3 the engine is reversed. All other points,

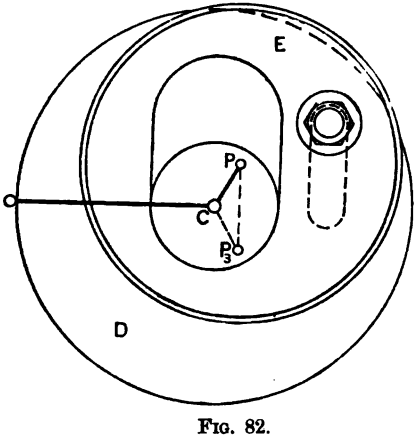


FIG. 82.

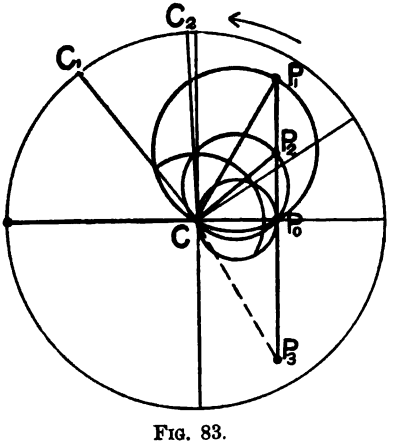


FIG. 83.

as of release, compression, and admission, may be traced in the same way.

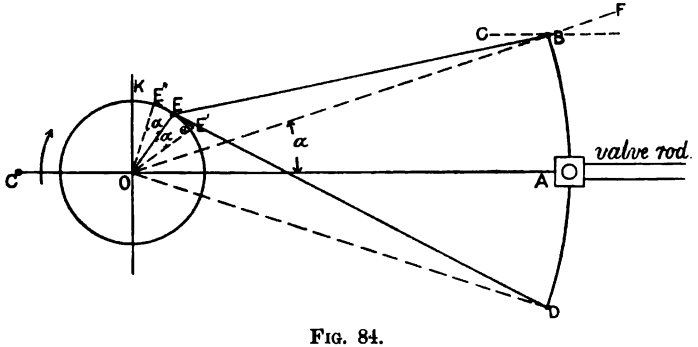


FIG. 84.

"Equivalent Eccentric," with Oblique Connecting-rods.—In Fig. 84, let OC represent the crank, and OE the eccentric with angular advance KOE, and BD a link through which motion is to be transmitted to the slide-valve. Then, if the position of the eccentric rod EB is changed to position EA, the valve receives the motion directly from the eccentric E, and the link does not affect the result. But when the eccentric rod is in position EB, it is clear that if a line be drawn through OB, the motion of B on the line OB, or OB produced, would be the same as that of A on the line OA, except that, if the valve were connected with B either directly or indirectly, the crank being as before, the respective movements of the valve

would take place earlier, because the moving backwards of the line OA through the angle a to OB is equivalent to moving the eccentric OE forward, or crossing the angular advance by the same angle. If, therefore, Oe be drawn equal to OE, and making the angle EOe = a, then Oe is the equivalent eccentric, which will produce the same result, if e be coupled direct to the valve moving in the line OA, as would be produced if the valve were coupled to B, driven by OE, and moving in the direction OF.

If the motion communicated at B were in the line BG, as is approximately the case in practice, the length of the

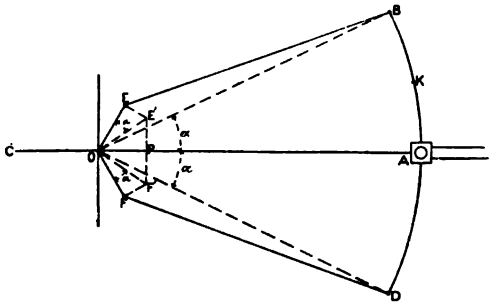


FIG. 85.

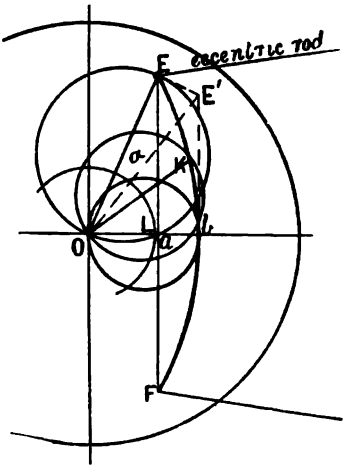


FIG. 86.

radius Oe of the equivalent eccentric is a little increased by drawing EE' at right angles to OE; then the line joining O to E' and making an angle a with OE is the equivalent eccentric required.

Referring to Fig. 85, OF' is the resultant eccentric for the end D of the link. If the rods were "crossed" as at ED (Fig. 84), instead of "open" as at EB, then the motion communicated from the point D in the line OD will be the same as from A in the line OA, except that the respective movements of the valve will be later, because the moving of the eccentric rod from OA to OD through the angle a would have the same result as reducing the angular advance of the eccentric by the same angle. Hence, if EE'' be drawn backwards from OE, at right angles to OE, and OE'' making an angle a with OE, then OE'' is the "equivalent eccentric" for the crossed rod ED.

To find the movement of the valve when the block A is situated in the middle of the link, if E' and F' (Fig. 85) be joined, and the point P be taken midway between E' and F', then OP is the resultant eccentric; and for the movement of the valve when the block is at any intermediate position K, the resultant or equivalent eccentric may be approximately found by drawing a circular arc through the points E, P, F, as shown enlarged at EbF (Fig. 86), and dividing this arc in the same ratio as BK : KD (Fig. 85), as explained below.

An application of this method, with the addition of the Zeuner

valve diagram drawn upon the equivalent eccentric radius, is useful in finding the travel, the lead, points of admission, cut-off, compression, and release for any position of the block in the link. Thus, let OE (Fig. 86) equal the eccentricity of the eccentric, and draw the angle EOE′ equal to the angle *a* (Fig. 85), and make EE′ at right angles to OE. Let fall perpendiculars from E and E′ on the horizontal through O, cutting it in *a* and *b*. Draw the lap circle OL. Then, if the extreme end of the link B (Fig. 85) is moved till it coincides with A, OE is the half-travel of the valve, and L*a* is the lead. When the link is moved so that the block is in mid-gear, then O*b* is the half-travel of the valve, and L*b* is the lead. For any intermediate position of the block A in the link, produce E*a* to F, and make *a*F = *a*E, and draw the arc of a circle through points E, *b*, and F. Then E*b*F may be looked upon as a miniature link, and if a point K be taken so that EK : KF as BK : KD (Fig. 85), then OK is the equivalent eccentric for that position of the block in the link.

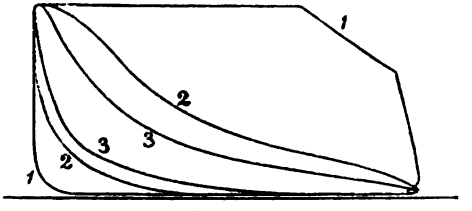


FIG. 87.

Circles drawn on OE, OK, O*b* as diameters give, by their intersections with the inside and outside lap circles, the points of admission, cut-off, etc., for the respective positions E, K, *b*, etc., of the block in the link. It will be seen, on drawing these circles, that as the link approaches mid-position the following changes occur: (1) the lead of the valve increases; (2) the travel of the valve decreases; (3) cut-off, release, exhaust closure, and re-admission take place earlier.

The effect upon the indicator diagram (Fig. 87) of "notching up" the link, or bringing the link nearer to mid-gear, may be compared with the Zeuner diagram for the respective positions. Each operation of the valve, namely, admission, cut-off, release, and compression, taking place earlier as the link approaches mid-position, the effect upon the shape of the indicator diagram, and therefore also upon the mean effective pressure of the steam in the cylinder, is very marked.

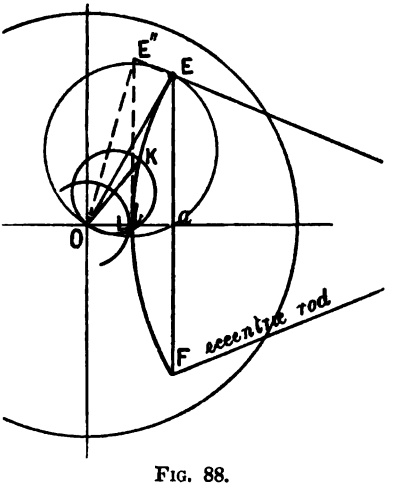


FIG. 88.

Link Motion with "Crossed" Arms.—When the eccentric rods are attached to the link as shown in Fig. 80, the effect on the steam

distribution for various positions of the link will be seen from Fig. 88. The line EE″ is drawn at right angles to OE. As before explained, OE″ is set off on the *opposite* side of OE, making an angle *a* with it (see Fig. 84). Then a perpendicular through E″ on the horizontal line through O gives a point *b*, and an arc drawn through *b* and E from a centre on line O*b* produced, and drawn concave towards the link, gives a curve representing the path of the centres of the equivalent eccentrics as the link moves from full to mid-gear. Thus OK is the radius of the equivalent eccentric for position K of the block in the link, assuming EF to be the actual link to a reduced scale. If valve circles be drawn on OE, OK, and O*b*, and the lap circle be added, it will be seen that as the link approaches mid-position—(1) the valve-travel and the port opening rapidly decrease (compare OK in Figs. 86 and 88); (2) the lead decreases; and (3) the gear may be designed so as to give no port opening when the link is in mid-position.

In setting a link motion, the port opening or lead is usually set to be the same at both ends of the stroke when the link is in *mid-gear*.

The Meyer Expansion Valve Gear.—This gear, illustrated in Figs. 89 and 90, consists of two plates sliding on the back of a main valve

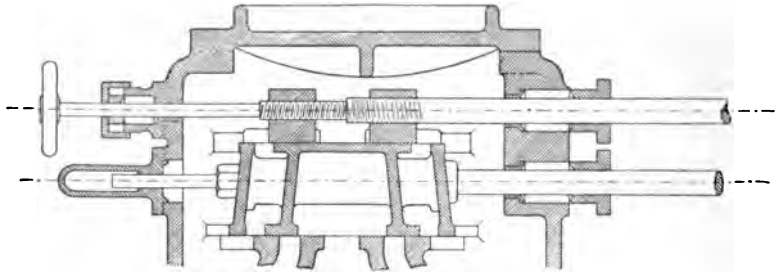


FIG. 89.

as shown. The degree of expansion is regulated by varying the distance apart of the two plates as required, by means of a right and left handed screw.

In Fig. 90, MV is the main or distributing valve, which is an ordinary simple slide-valve, with the addition of pieces at the ends to form parts, *p*, through the valve. EV are the expansion valve plates. Consider the expansion valve EV moving to the left; then when *e* reaches *n* cut-off takes place, and the port in the main valve MV is closed, till on the return stroke *e* again moves to the right of *n*. Evidently, by increasing the distance between the two plates of the expansion valve, the distance *s* between *e* and *n*—when both valves are in mid-position—is decreased, and cut-off takes place earlier.

The main valve acts as an ordinary slide-valve, and the engine might be worked with it alone if the expansion valve were entirely removed; though in that case the steam would be supplied to the

cylinder during the greater portion of the piston-stroke. The action of the expansion valve does not in any way affect the action of the exhaust through the main valve.

The relative motion of the two valves may be conveniently found by making an outline drawing of the valves and ports (Fig. 90), and drawing on the centre line above the valves, a circle representing the path of the centre of the expansion eccentric, and below the valves a circle representing the path of the centre of the main-valve eccentric, both circles to the same scale as that of the valves.

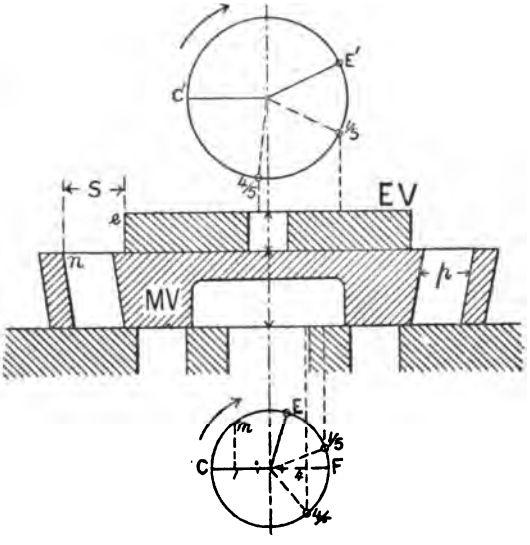


FIG. 90.

On these circles draw the relative positions of the crank and eccentrics. The main eccentric is set as for a simple valve, and the angle COE is known, having given the lap and lead of the main valve.

The expansion eccentric is usually set right opposite the crank for a reversing engine; for a non-reversing engine the angle C'O'E' is somewhat less than 180°.

Assuming the limits of cut-off, say, from 0·8 to 0·2 of the stroke, then first by the method of templets: Let templets of the valves be made preferably full size, and so that they may be moved relatively to each other, and let the crank and eccentric on the respective circles drawn above and below the figure be placed in position correctly for 0·8 stroke of the piston. Draw perpendiculars from the respective eccentric positions E and E' of the eccentrics, moved to position $\frac{4}{5}$ on the circular path, and let the centres of the respective valves coincide with these lines. Then the edge *e* of the expansion plate must be so placed as to cover the port, the centre line of the plates remaining as determined by the position of the eccentric. Proceeding similarly for the other limit, the range of opening and closing of the plates will be determined.

The plates composing the expansion valve must be sufficiently wide to prevent re-opening of the port in the main valve before the cylinder port is closed.

Application of Zeuner Valve Diagram to Meyer Valve Gear.—In

Fig. 91, if OC represent the position of the crank, OM that of the main-valve eccentric with angular advance θ, and OE that of the

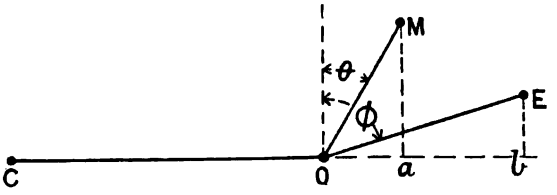


Fig. 91.

expansion valve with angular anvance ϕ, then Oa is the distance of the main valve from its middle position, and Ob the distance of the expansion valve; also ab is the distance between the respective centres of the two valves. If now OD, Fig. 92, be drawn equal and parallel to EM, and a perpendicular Dd be let fall, then Od = ab, and OD

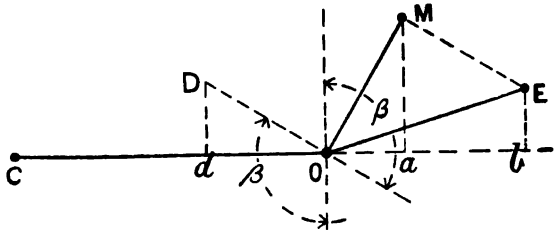


Fig. 92.

may be considered as an eccentric with angular advance β and eccentricity OD, which governs, for any part of its path, the relative position of the centres, or the relative motion of the main and expansion valves.

On OM (Fig. 93) describe the main-valve circle, and on OE describe the expansion-valve circle; also on OD describe a circle representing the *relative-motion* circle. Then, for any position OA of the crank, Om is the distance of the main valve from its mid-position, and Oe is the distance of the expansion valve from its mid-position. Hence em is the distance between the centres of the two valves. But Od = em, because if lines be drawn on OA from M, E, and D respectively to m, e, and d, these lines are parallel, for each of them, forming angles in a semicircle, are perpendicular to OA. But OD and ME are equal. But when a line (as OA) cuts perpendiculars from the extremities of two equal and parallel lines (OD and EM), the perpendiculars intercept equal portions of that line; therefore Od = em. And for any position OA of a crank, the radius vector Od, intercepted by the relative-motion circle, gives the relative positions of the centres of the main valve and the expansion valve respectively.

Referring to Fig. 90, we see that when the centres of the valves are at a distance apart $= en = s$, then cut-off or re-admission will take place. Therefore, if a circle be struck from centre O (Fig. 94) with radius $s = Od_s$, cut-off will take place when the crank is at OC, and re-opening of the valve port will take place when the crank is at OC'.

From this it will be seen that, having given the position of the crank at which cut-off is required, the value of s may be determined by the length

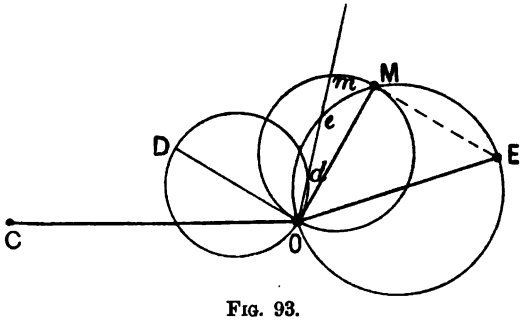


FIG. 93.

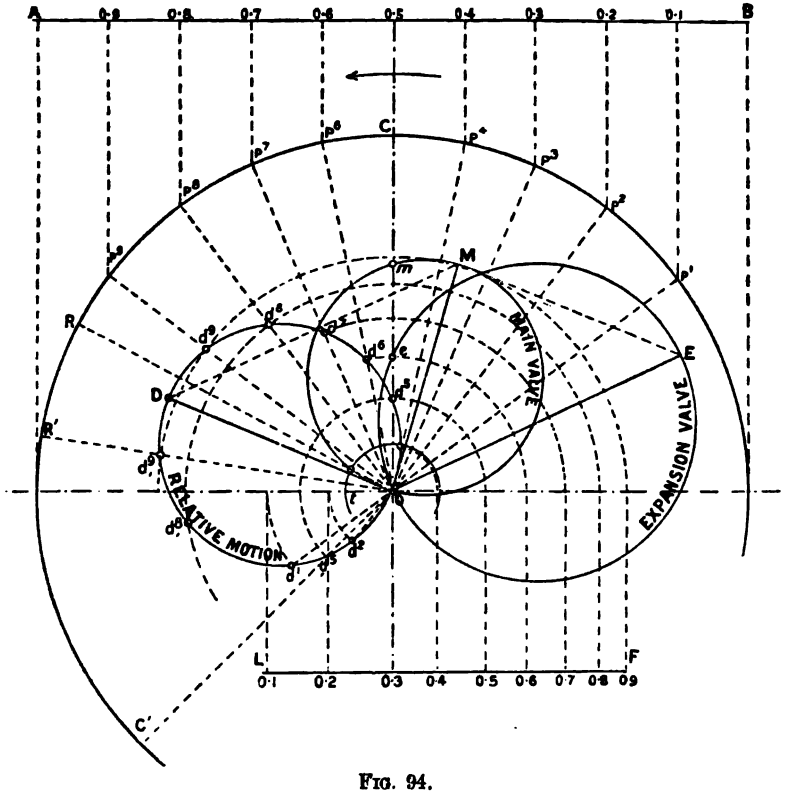


FIG. 94.

of the line representing the crank position which is intercepted by the relative-motion circle.

If the value of s becomes greater than OD, the expansion valve becomes useless, merely contracting the port in the main valve instead of closing it. To cut off at early points in the stroke, the value of s may become negative—that is, the expansion plates overlap the ports of the main valve when both valves are in mid-position. Thus od^1 is the negative value of s to cut off at crank-position OP^1, or at 0·1 of the stroke of the piston.

The various values of s are brought down on to one line, LF, and these distances may be used for graduating the scale by which the valve may be set for any desired point of cut-off.

Reuleaux Diagram for Meyer Valve Gear.—The action of the expansion valve may be easily followed from this diagram (Fig. 95).

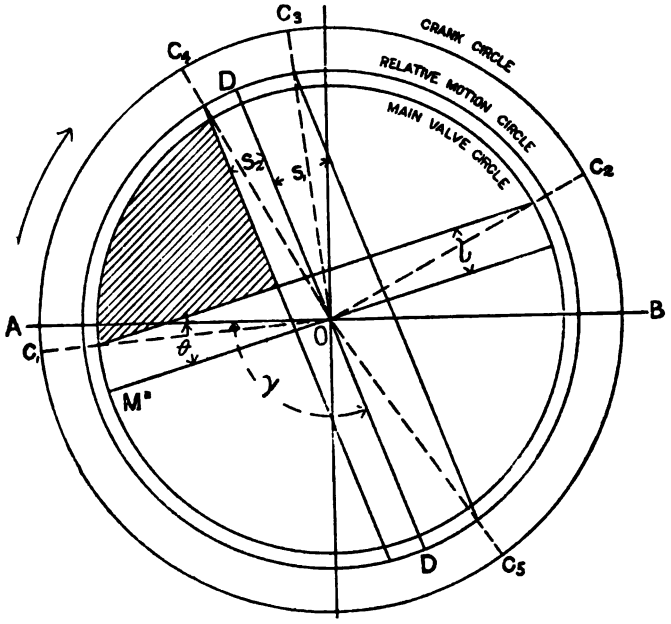


FIG. 95.

Thus, taking the same example as in Fig. 94, draw the main-valve circle with radius OM, equal to the eccentricity of the main-valve eccentric. Draw also the relative-motion circle with radius OD of the relative motion or virtual eccentric (obtained as explained in Fig. 92), and from the same centre the crank circle C_1C_2 to any convenient scale.

From AB make the angle AOM = θ = the angular advance of the main-valve eccentric, and in a direction opposite to the crank-pin

motion; and draw DD, making an angle γ with AB, the angular advance of the relative-motion eccentric. From MO set off the lap line of main valve parallel to MO, and at a distance l from it. Then, with main valve, port opens at crank-position OC_1 and closes at OC_2. From DD measure a distance, S_1 corresponding with s in Fig. 90. Then OC_3 is the position of the crank at point of cut-off. If s be negative, that is, if the expansion plates overlap the ports in the main valve when both valves are in mid-position, set-off S_2 = lap of expansion plate. Then cut-off takes place earlier in the stroke, namely, when the crank is at OC_4.

The expansion valve, for position S_1 of the plate, re-opens the port in the main valve at C_5. It will be seen that C_5 falls behind C_2—that is, the main valve has closed the steam port before the expansion valve re-opens the valve port. If C_5 had fallen before C_2, the steam would be admitted to the cylinder twice during the stroke.

CHAPTER V.

THE INDICATOR.

THE indicator was originally invented by James Watt, and although improved in points of detail, the main features of the instrument as devised by him are substantially retained at the present time by makers of indicators.

The uses to which the indicator is chiefly applied are—

1. To obtain a diagram from which conclusions may be drawn as to the correctness or otherwise of the behaviour of the steam in the cylinder; the promptness of the steam admission; the loss by fall of pressure between the boiler and the cylinder; the loss by wiredrawing; the extent and character of the expansion; the efficiency of the arrangements for exhaust, including the extent of the back pressure; the amount of compression.

2. To find the mean effective pressure exerted by the steam upon the piston, with which to calculate the *indicated horse-power* of the engine.

3. To determine whether the valves are set correctly by taking diagrams from each end of the stroke, and observing and comparing the respective positions of the points of admission, cut-off, release, and compression.

4. To determine the condition of the steam as to dryness when the diagram is measured in connection with the known weight of steam supplied to the cylinder per stroke.

Description of the Indicator.—The instrument, of which there are several different types, consists essentially of a small steam-cylinder containing a piston, and spring to regulate the movement of the piston according to the pressure; a pencil carried by a system of light levers constituting a parallel motion, by which the pencil reproduces the vertical movement of the indicator piston, but magnified four, five, or six times; and a drum to which a paper or "card" is attached, and which receives a backward and forward rotation on its own axis by a motion derived by a reducing gear from the crosshead or other suitable portion of the engine.

By the combined vertical movement of the pencil and horizontal movement of the paper, a closed figure is drawn called the indicator diagram. The enclosed area represents the effective work done by the steam upon the piston; the upper portion of the diagram represents the varying pressure of the steam during the forward or impulse

stroke of the piston, and the lower portion that during the backward stroke.

The diagram traced by the indicator pencil differs more or less considerably from the theoretical (pv) diagrams already considered,

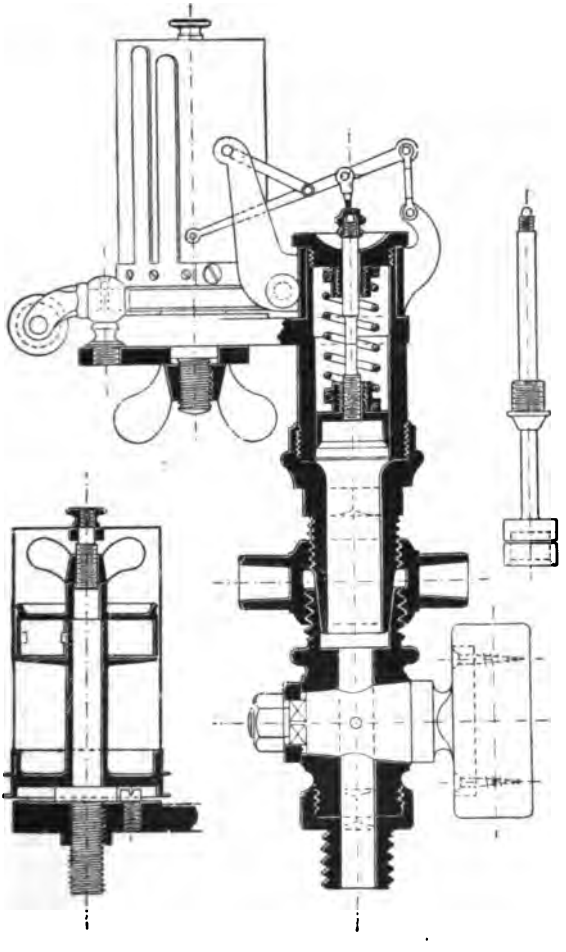


FIG. 96.

but the actual diagram is usually the more satisfactory, as it approaches the more closely to the form of the theoretical diagram.

Three indicators will be here described, as sufficient for our purpose, namely, the Thompson indicator, the Tabor indicator, and the outside-spring indicator by Messrs. Elliott Bros.

1. The *Thompson indicator* is illustrated in section in Fig. 96.

The indicator and tap here shown are screwed into a union connected immediately with the end of the cylinder.

The area of the indicator piston is one-half square inch. It is put into communication with the engine cylinder by opening the tap. The steam then lifts the piston, compressing the spring to an extent depending on the pressure.

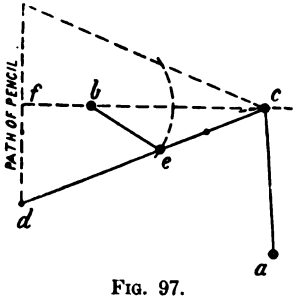


FIG. 97.

The piston has no packing, and makes an easy fit with the indicator barrel. The piston-rod is connected to the pencil lever by means of a ball joint and a small milled nut.

The upper side of the piston communicates with the atmosphere by means of small holes in the upper portion of cylinder.

The drum upon which the paper is fixed for receiving the diagram is carried by a disc which rotates on a vertical pin. The drum is pulled in one direction by a cord, attached through a reducing motion to the engine crosshead or some other suitable point, and it returns in the opposite direction by the tension of a spring coiled in the drum. The tension of this spring may be regulated by a fly-nut on the drum spindle. The drum is shown in section in Fig. 96.

FIG. 98.

The object of most recent improvements in steam-engine indicators has been to reduce the weight of the parallel motion, so as to reduce the errors due to inertia which occur at high speeds with the heavier moving parts.

The parallel motion of the Thompson indicator is represented by Fig. 97.[1]

The points *a* and *b* are fixed. The link *ac* turns about *a*, and *eb* about *b*. The line described by the pencil *d* is practically straight within the limits of its motion.

To change the spring in the

[1] From a paper by Mr. C. F. Budenberg, M.Sc., on "Steam Engine Indicators."

Thompson indicator, unscrew the small milled nut by which the piston-rod is attached to the pencil lever. Then unscrew the cylinder cover, and remove the cover, spring and piston. Unscrew the spring from the cover, and lastly from the piston. Proceed in the reverse order to fix a new spring.

2. *The Tabor indicator* is illustrated in Figs. 98 and 99. The

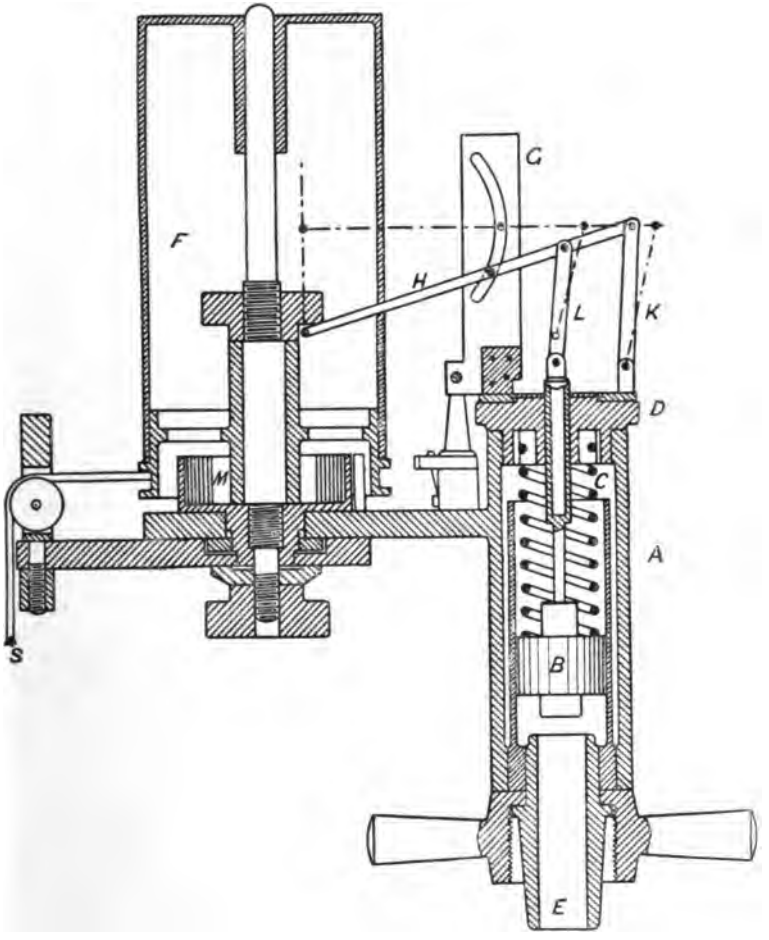


FIG. 99.

most noticeable feature of this indicator is the means employed to secure a straight-line movement of the pencil. A plate G containing a curved slot is fixed in an upright position, and a roller fixed to the

pencil lever H is fitted so as to roll freely in the slot. The curve of the slot is so formed that it exactly neutralizes the tendency which the pencil has of describing a circular arc, and the path of the pencil is a straight line. This arrangement reduces the weight of moving levers to a minimum, and this instrument is especially suitable for high speeds. The pencil movement consists of three pieces—the pencil bar H, the back link K, and the piston-rod link L. The two links are parallel to each other in every position. The lower pivots of these links and the pencil-point are always in the same straight line. If an imaginary link, parallel with the pencil bar, be supposed drawn from the bottom centre of one link to the other link, the combination would form a pantagraph. The slot and roller serve the same purpose, but to better advantage.

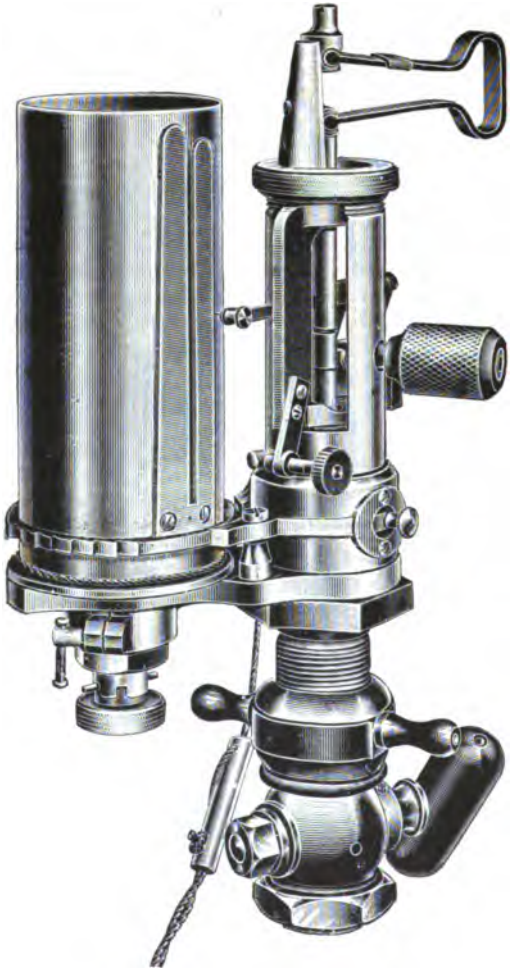


FIG. 100.

The pencil mechanism multiplies the piston motion five times. To change the spring of the Tabor indicator, remove the cover and loosen the screw beneath the piston, which liberates the piston from the piston-rod. Then unscrew the piston from the spring, and the spring from the cover. Proceed in the reverse order to fix another spring.

Selection of Spring for Indicator.—Springs are made of various strengths to suit the pressure of steam employed in the engine to be indicated, weak springs being required for low pressures, and strong springs for high pressures. The strength of the spring is marked upon it; thus a $\frac{1}{12}$

spring gives a reading of 1 lb. per square inch pressure for every $\frac{1}{12}$ in. vertical movement of the indicator pencil.

The strength of the spring chosen depends upon the height of diagram required, which might be $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 in. for slow speeds to not more than half that height for high speeds. At 100 lbs. pressure in the steam-chest, and no loss by throttling, a $\frac{1}{50}$ spring would give a diagram 2 in. above the atmospheric line, a $\frac{1}{64}$ spring about $1\frac{1}{2}$ in., and so on. In measuring the diagram to find the mean pressure, care must be taken that the scale used is the same as that of the spring in the indicator.

3. The construction of the outside-spring indicator, by Messrs. Elliott Bros., will be understood from the diagrams (Figs. 100, 101). It possesses the advantage of having a spring which is not exposed to high temperature, and which is therefore especially suitable for indicating engines using superheated steam, or engines using steam of high pressures and temperatures.

Fig. 101.

Attachment of the Indicator.—A hole is drilled at each end of the cylinder, and tapped to receive a half-inch steam-pipe, to which to connect the indicator-cock. Care must be taken, in fixing the piston of the hole, that it is in no danger of its being covered by the position of the engine at the end of the stroke. The pipe connecting the indicator should be as short and direct as possible, and be well lagged. Long pipes and sharp bends may greatly interfere with accuracy of results.

Reducing Motions.—The motion of the indicator drum must be an exact reproduction of the motion of the piston, or crosshead, on a reduced scale. The length of the indicator diagram is usually from 3 to 4 in., or longer for slow-speed engines; at high speeds the length is reduced. The movement of the drum is obtained by some arrangement for reducing the motion of the crosshead in the following ratio, namely—

(length of diagram required) ÷ (length of stroke of engine)

The method of obtaining the movement required differs according to the design of the engine to be indicated. The cord used for attaching the drum to the moving part of the engine should be as short as possible, and the cord itself well stretched before being used for such a purpose.

Fig. 102 shows a method of fitting up an indicator gear for a small vertical engine, as used by the author for experimental purposes. Figs. 103–107 show other methods, as applied to horizontal engines. The points requiring special attention are—

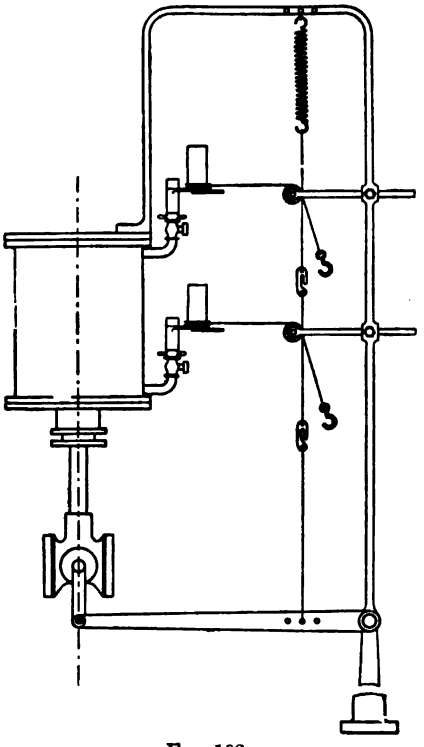


Fig. 102.

(1) The point from which the motion of the cord is taken must be a correct reproduction of the motion of the crosshead to a reduced scale.

For this purpose it is necessary that the ratio AB : AC should be constant for all positions of the crosshead (see Figs. 103, 105, and 106), where C represents a pin moved by the crosshead of the engine, and B the pin to which the indicator string is attached. The cord is carried away from the pin B parallel to the centre line of the engine; but when the cord is taken off the circumference of a portion of a disc, as shown in Fig. 104, the cord may be carried away to the indicator in any direction, because the

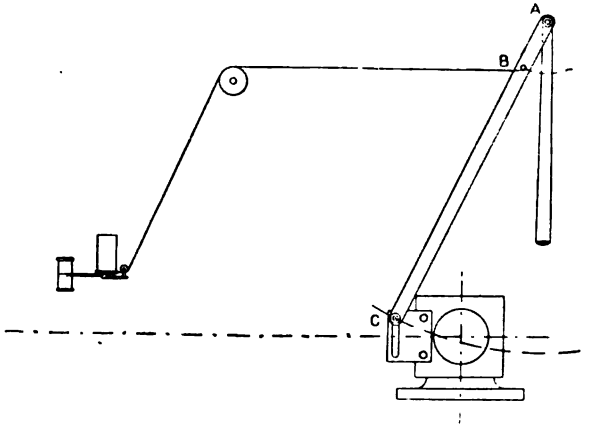


Fig. 103.

travel of any point in the cord throughout its length is the same for all directions of the cord.

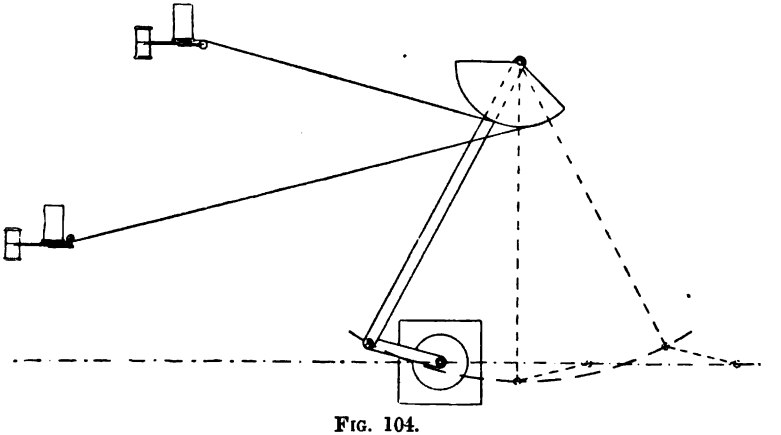


FIG. 104.

Fig. 107 is a pantagraph, the point A being connected to the crosshead, while the point C is a fixed centre. The cord is attached to E, so placed that E is in the straight line joining A to C.

(2) The cord must in all cases (except when attached to the circumference of a disc) be led away from the driving-point in a line parallel

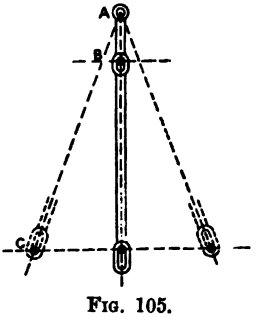


FIG. 105.

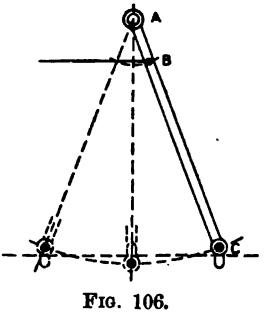


FIG. 106.

to the line of motion of the piston to a leading-off pulley, after which it may be taken at any angle, in the same plane, to the indicator drum; the important point being that the motion of the cord at the drum is the same as its motion at the driving-point.

Sometimes a reducing motion is fixed to the indicator direct, and consisting of two pulleys whose diameters are in the same ratio as (length of diagram required) : (length of stroke of engine). Then a cord led from the large pulley to the engine crosshead by a suitable

guide pulley, and another cord from the small pulley to the indicator drum, give the motion of the drum required without any levers.

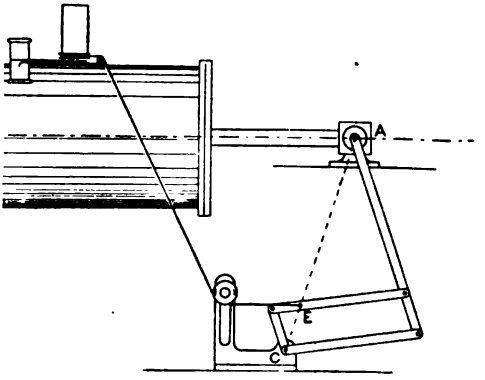


FIG. 107.

Method of taking Indicator Diagrams.—

1. Lubricate the indicator piston.

2. Before attaching the indicator, blow through the pipes to see that they are clear.

3. Adjust the drum-cord so that the drum rotates freely without knocking at either end of its stroke.

4. Place the cord on the drum, and attach the cord to the driving-point.

5. Warm up the indicator by admitting steam for a few seconds.

6. When the steam is shut off, bring the pencil round till it touches the card gently, and draw a firm line. Adjust the stop-screw so that the pressure on the pencil cannot afterwards be excessive.

The line drawn while the steam-cock is shut is called the "atmospheric line."

7. Open the steam-cock, apply the pencil to the card, and draw a diagram. Allow the pencil to remain against the card till several diagrams are traced one upon another.

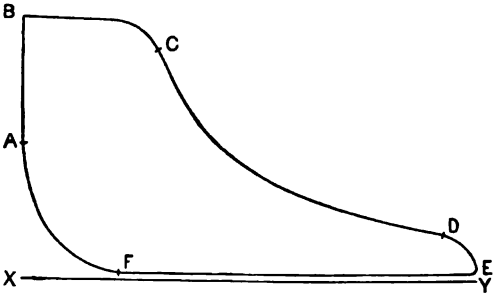


FIG. 108.—XY = atmospheric line; AB = admission line; BC = steam line; CD = expansion line; DE = exhaust line; EF = back-pressure line; FA = compression line; A = point of admission; C = point of cut-off; D = point of release; F = point of compression.

8. Remove the card and mark on it the following particulars :—

Name of engine	... ...
Date	... ...
No. of diagram	... ...
Scale of spring	... ...

Cylinder diameter	... ...
,, stroke	... ...
Which end	... ...
Diameter of piston-rod	... ...
Revolutions per minute	... ...
Boiler pressure	... ...
Vacuum	... ...
Barometer	... ...
Initials	... ...

The Indicator Diagram.—Fig. 108 is an example of a common form of diagram from a single cylinder non-condensing engine running under good working conditions :—

The *admission line*, AB (Fig. 108), shows the rise of pressure of the steam as it enters the cylinder. The character of this line varies with the lead of the valve : thus in Fig. 109, the effect of too early opening of the port to steam is shown by the dotted line *m* ; too late action is shown at *n*, Fig. 110.

The *steam line*, BC (Fig. 108), shows how nearly the steam pressure in the cylinder reaches that of the boiler. For this purpose it is usual to draw the boiler-pressure line over the steam line as shown in Fig. 114. There is always a certain fall of pressure between the boiler and the cylinder in consequence of throttling of the steam

FIG. 109.—*m* = excess of lead; *p* = wiredrawing; *s* = early release; *r* = early compression.

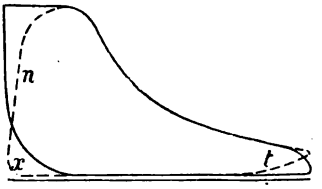


FIG. 110.—*n* = insufficient lead; *t* = late exhaust; *x* = late compression.

in the ports and passages, and especially at high speeds, when working linked up, also with very long steam-pipes, or with steam-pipes too small in diameter or having sharp bends.

Again, during the flow of steam into the cylinder there is often a further gradual fall of pressure, as shown by dotted line *p* (Fig. 109), due to the increased demand for steam as the piston advances, causing a sudden large displacement. This effect, namely, the gradual fall of pressure during admission, is known as "wiredrawing."

The effect on the *steam line* of regulating the engine by a throttle valve, and thus varying the opening for the supply of steam, is shown by Fig. 111, which was obtained by successively removing portions of the load on the engine and maintaining the speed constant by partially closing the steam-supply valve.

The forward-pressure line A for a heavy load fell to B for a medium load, and to C for a light load, the points of cut-off, release, and compression remaining constant.

The *point of cut-off*, C (Fig. 108), is more or less sharp and definite

with trip-valve gears, which cut off suddenly by the action of a strong spring; but with the slide-valve the cut-off is more gradual, the corner is rounder, and the *exact* point of cut-off is more difficult to locate. In such a case the point of cut-off may be taken at the point where the concave curve of the expansion line meets the convex curve of the cut-off corner.

The effect on the diagram of varying the point of cut-off is shown

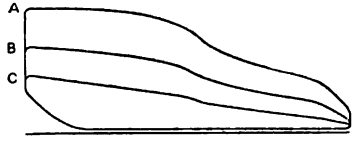


FIG. 111.

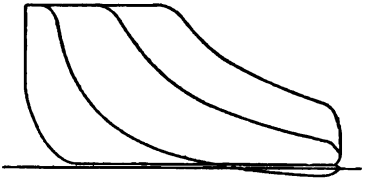


FIG. 112.

in Fig. 112 for non-condensing engines, and in Fig. 113 for condensing engines with a trip-valve gear, the cut-off being fairly sharp.

Fig. 114 shows the effect of regulating the cut-off with a slide-valve high-speed engine. Here the cut-off point is much less definite than with a trip gear (Fig. 113).

In the non-condensing diagrams (Fig. 112) with an early cut-off, it is seen that the expansion line falls below the atmospheric line, and forms a loop at the end of the diagram; this is due to the pressure of steam during expansion falling below atmospheric pressure, and hence, when the exhaust port opens, the pressure will rise instead

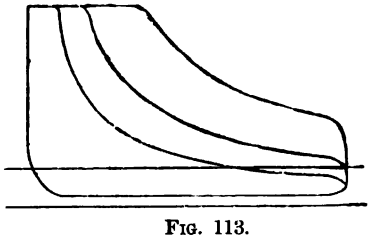


FIG. 113.

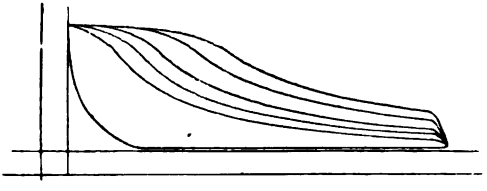


FIG. 114.

of fall to the back-pressure line. This is a most wasteful form of diagram. In condensing engines with a good vacuum, a loop is not formed even with a very early cut-off (Fig. 113).

Where it is necessary to work regularly with a very early cut-off, the conditions are uneconomical, and the engines are too large for their work.

The expansion curves of indicator diagrams vary considerably, and they do not obey any very definite law. They are, in fact, the resultant effect of a variety of separate causes, operating to a different extent in different engines, and even in the same engine by change of conditions. These causes include: increase of volume of the steam after cut-off; condensation by work done and by loss of

heat to the internal cylinder surface; re-evaporation of water present in the cylinder during expansion.

It is, however, frequently helpful to apply to the expansion line of a diagram an approximate standard, and for this purpose the *hyperbolic* curve is used, and, without expecting the diagram necessarily to follow that curve, useful information may sometimes be obtained by its aid, especially as to the probable extent of re-evaporation in the cylinder. The method of applying this curve to the diagram is explained on p. 109.

The *release point*, D (Fig. 108), occurs just before the end of the stroke. The higher the rate of revolution of the engine the earlier the exhaust, the trouble with high-speed engines being not so much how to get the steam *into* the cylinder as how to get it *out*.

The *exhaust line*, DE (Fig. 108), represents the fall of pressure which takes place when the exhaust port is opened. Fig. 109, p. 99, shows, by dotted line, early opening to exhaust at *s*, and Fig. 110 late exhaust at *t*.

The *back-pressure line*, EF (Fig. 108), shows the pressure against the piston during its return stroke, the amount of the pressure being measured from the back-pressure line down to the zero line of pressure. In non-condensing engines, the back pressure coincides the more nearly with the pressure of the atmosphere as the exhaust passages permit of a free exit for the steam. In good non-condensing engines the back pressure is about 1 lb. above the atmosphere, and in condensing engines about 3 lbs. above zero.

The *compression curve*, FA (Fig. 108), commences from the point of exhaust closure at F. The point of closure depends upon the amount of inside lap on the valve, and the angular advance of the eccentric, and the nature of the curve formed will depend upon the pressure of the steam trapped, as well as upon the volume of the clearance space. A valve having an amount of inside lap suitable for a condensing engine when the pressure of the steam at beginning of compression is only, say, 3 lbs. absolute, will probably show an excessive amount of compression when the same engine is used non-condensing, and compressing steam at 16 lbs. absolute pressure.

The shape of the compression corner of the diagram is, however, the resultant effect of several causes, including the compression of the steam enclosed; compression of air trapped with the steam, especially in non-condensing engines; leakage of steam into and out of the cylinder during compression; and the early admission of steam before the piston has yet reached the end of its backward stroke, especially with a link motion linked up towards mid-position.

Clearance.—This is the space enclosed between the piston and the face of the slide-valve when the piston is at the end of its stroke, and includes the space between the piston and cylinder cover, the volume of the steam-port up to the face of the slide-valve, and the volume of any other pipes or passages opening into the cylinder requiring to be filled with steam each stroke, such as auxiliary

starting valve pipes, relief cock, and indicator connections. The clearance volume is relatively greater in small engines than in large, and varies from 3 to 10 per cent. of the piston displacement. With piston valves the clearance volume may reach 25 or 30 per cent. The clearance space, though generally a source of loss when considered in connection with steam consumption, is necessary for practical reasons —first, to avoid danger to the cylinder covers by allowing space for the small amount of water which is invariably present to a greater or less extent in engine cylinders; and also to provide passages sufficiently large for the ready ingress and egress of the steam. Since the clearance volume depends upon the area of the piston, and not upon the length of stroke, it follows that in the short-stroke cylinder of large diameter the clearance volume is necessarily a large proportion of the piston displacement.

The *clearance line*, OP (Fig. 115). Before this line can be drawn, the volume of the clearance space must be obtained by calculation from the drawings of the cylinder, or by measurement. Then, if vertical lines be drawn touching the ends of the indicator diagram, the distance between them represents the piston displacement. The clearance line must then be set back from the line through AB, so that its distance OB from the end of the diagram is to the whole length of the diagram BC, as the volume of the clearance is to the volume of the piston displacement.

The *zero line of pressure*, or line of perfect vacuum, is drawn 14·7 lbs. below the atmospheric line, or, more correctly, by the reading of the

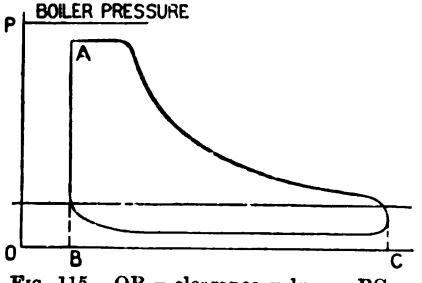


FIG. 115.—OB = clearance volume; BC = piston displacement.

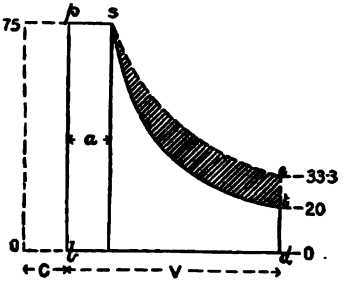


FIG. 116.

atmospheric pressure from the barometer, which is set down from the atmospheric line to the same scale of pounds as the spring used in drawing the diagram.

Effects of Clearance.—1. Effect of clearance on the ratio of expansion :—

In Fig. 116, let V = piston displacement; c = clearance volume; a = piston displacement at cut-off; R = nominal expansion; R_1 = actual expansion.

Assuming hyperbolic expansion—

$$\text{Then } R = \frac{\text{final volume}}{\text{volume at cut-off}} = \frac{V}{a}$$

$$R_1 = \frac{V + c}{a + c}$$

EXAMPLE.—Let V = 5 cub. ft.; $c = a = 1$ cub. ft.; initial pressure = 100 lbs. absolute.

Then cut-off takes place at $\frac{1}{5}$ of the stroke, and, neglecting the effect of clearance volume, the nominal number of expansions R = 5.

But when the clearance volume is added, then the actual number of expansions—

$$R_1 = \frac{\text{final volume}}{\text{volume at cut-off}} = \frac{V + c}{a + c} = \frac{6}{2} = 3$$

Or the actual ratio of expansion is $\frac{1}{3}$ instead of $\frac{1}{5}$.

$$\left.\begin{matrix}\text{The terminal pressure}\\ \text{neglecting clearance}\end{matrix}\right\} = 100 \times \frac{\text{initial volume}}{\text{final volume}} = 100\frac{a}{V} = 20$$

$$\left.\begin{matrix}\text{The terminal pressure}\\ \text{including clearance}\end{matrix}\right\} = 100 \times \frac{c + a}{V + c} = 33\tfrac{1}{3}$$

Clearance steam does no work on the piston during admission; but after cut-off its effect is to raise the pressure during expansion, or to permit a larger expansion for a given terminal pressure, and thus to increase the area of the expansion portion of the work diagram.

2. Effect of clearance on steam consumption when the steam is admitted to the cylinder through the whole length of stroke, and with no compression of exhaust.

Here evidently the clearance volume is filled each stroke by steam that does no work on the piston, and the steam so used is all wasted at the exhaust.

3. Effect of clearance on work done per unit volume or weight of steam with expansion.

(*a*) Taking first the case (Fig. 117) where clearance volume = 0 and compression = 0: To find the work done per unit weight of steam, which is here taken as the weight of 1 cub. in. of steam at 75 lbs. absolute pressure, expanded down to back pressure of 15 lbs. absolute.

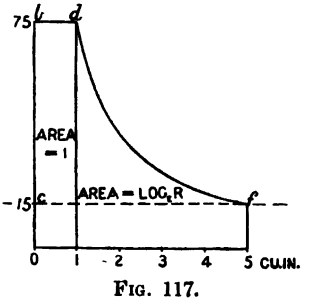


FIG. 117.

$$\text{Mean pressure} = \frac{\text{area}}{\text{length}} = \frac{75(1 + \log_e r)}{5} = \frac{75(1 + 1{\cdot}61)}{5} = 39{\cdot}15$$

or mean effective pressure = 39·15 − 15 = 24·15 lbs.

Work done per unit of steam admitted = 24·15 × 5 = 120·75 inch-lbs.

(*b*) Taking, secondly, clearance volume = 0·5 cub. in. and compression = 0 (Fig. 118).

Here for the same terminal pressure the piston displacement may

be increased to 7 cub. in., the number of expansions being five in each case.

$$r = \frac{\text{final volume}}{\text{original volume}} = \frac{7{\cdot}5}{1{\cdot}5} = 5$$

$$\left.\begin{matrix}\text{Mean pressure}\\ \text{during stroke}\end{matrix}\right\} = \frac{\text{area}}{\text{length}} = \frac{75 + (75 \times 1{\cdot}5)\log_e r}{7} = 36{\cdot}59$$

$$\text{or effective pressure} = 36{\cdot}59 - 15 = 21{\cdot}59$$

$$\text{Work done per cubic inch of steam admitted} = 21{\cdot}59 \times 7 \div 1{\cdot}5 = 100{\cdot}75 \text{ inch-lbs.}$$

This result, namely, 101·75 units of work per cubic inch of steam admitted, compared with 120·75, which is the amount of work done per unit of steam with no clearance space in the cylinder, shows a loss due to clearance space in this example of 16·5 per cent. in work units per unit of steam. Both these cases are without compression.

(*c*) Taking the same data as before, but with compression during the backward stroke from atmospheric pressure up to initial pressure (see Fig. 119).

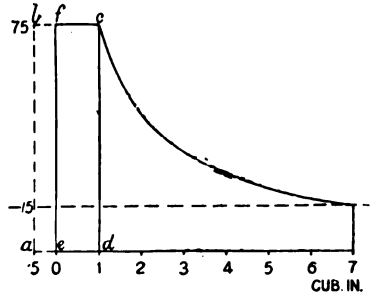


FIG. 118.—Area *efcd* = 1 ; area *abcd* = 1·5.

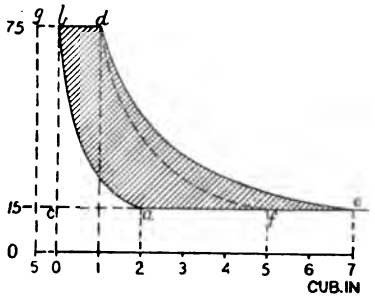


FIG. 119.

Considering the case numerically, it has been shown, case (*a*), that the figure *cbdf* without clearance (Fig. 119) is equivalent to a work area of 24·15 × 5 = 120·75 units; also, by case (*b*), that the figure *cbde* with clearance is equivalent to a work area of 21·59 × 7 = 151·13 units, or a difference equal to the area *fde* of 30·38 units.

But the area of the figure *oba*2 = ($\log_e r = \log_e 5 = 1{\cdot}61$) times the area of the clearance volume rectangle *og* = 1·61 × 75 × 0·5 = 60·375.

$$\text{The mean pressure} = \frac{\text{area } oba2}{\text{length } o2} = \frac{60{\cdot}375}{2} = 30{\cdot}1875$$

$$\text{Deducting pressure of atmosphere, } 30{\cdot}1875 - 15 = 15{\cdot}1875$$

$$\left.\begin{matrix}\text{Work units performed during formation}\\ \text{of compression corner } abc\end{matrix}\right\} = 15{\cdot}1875 \times 2 = 30{\cdot}375$$

That is, the negative work area of compression *abc* is equal to the positive work area *fde* due to increased expansion.

Therefore the work area *cbdf* without clearance is equal to the

work area *abde* with clearance, and each of these areas has been formed with the same weight of steam. Hence there is no loss by clearance when compression is carried to initial pressure, and when expansion is carried down to back pressure.

In practice the two latter conditions are rarely fulfilled, and there is, therefore, usually a considerable loss by clearance, especially when the clearance volume is proportionally large, as in short-stroke high-speed engines.

The compression of the steam towards the end of the exhaust stroke is of more importance from the point of view of smooth running and the prevention of shocks than of steam economy; and the higher the speed the more necessary is it to have a good compression corner to the diagram.

The Stephenson link motion fulfils this condition very efficiently by providing an increasingly early closure to exhaust, and an increasing lead when linking up takes place at high speed, the combined effect of which is to give a large compression corner, shown in Fig. 87, and thereby to improve the smoothness of running of the engine.

Limit of Useful Expansion.—In addition to the limit which cylinder condensation and excessive variation of stress upon the piston may

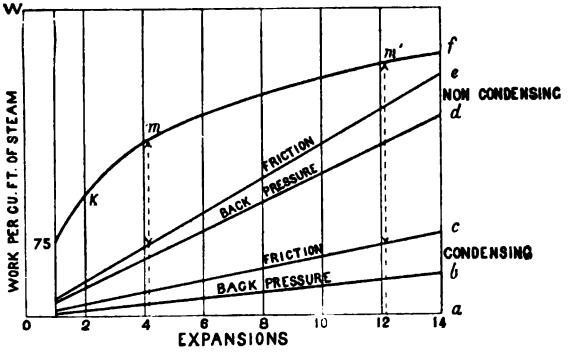


FIG. 120.

place upon the number of expansions permissible in a single cylinder, there is a further reason for limiting the number of expansions, namely, the work to be done by the engine in overcoming back pressure and friction; and this applies to both simple and compound engines of all classes.

The proportional loss due to work done against the back pressure of the atmosphere increases directly as the expansions increase, while the gain due to increased expansion is a gradually decreasing one. A limit is therefore eventually reached, beyond which further expansion would involve a loss. This is well illustrated by the following (Fig. 120), which is a modification of a diagram by Willans.

From the point O a vertical line, OW, is drawn representing work done in foot-pounds, and O*a* is a line of volumes in cubic feet.

On the vertical line through O a scale is set off of work done per cubic foot of steam at any required pressure (= PV). Then, assuming hyperbolic expansion, the work done by expansion from 1 to 2, 3, 4, etc., cub. ft. is set up to scale on the vertical lines from the respective points 2, 3, etc., on the line O*a*.

Thus at 2 cub. ft. the height of the vertical 2K for any pressure, as 75 lbs., = PV(1 + $\log_e$ 2); at 3 cub. ft. = PV(1 + $\log_e$ 3), etc. These vertical lines represent to scale the total work done by the steam during admission and expansion, 2, 3, 4, etc., times.

But these totals will be reduced by the work done against back pressure. For non-condensing engines, taking 16 lbs. per square inch absolute to represent back pressure due to the atmosphere, and 2 lbs. per square inch of piston to overcome the friction of the engine, then from 1 set up PV due to back pressure = (18 × 1); from 2 set up (18 × 2), and so on. Then the height of the vertical from O*a* to meet the oblique line through *e* represents the work done against back pressure and friction for non-condensing engines. Similarly, an oblique line through *c* is drawn for condensing engines, allowing 6 lbs. absolute for work done against back pressure and in overcoming friction.

Then the vertical ordinates measured at each ratio of expansion, from the friction line to the curves, give the theoretical net effective work for the initial steam pressure taken.

The most effective number of expansions is where this ordinate is a maximum. A dotted line (*m*) is drawn representing the number of expansions, beyond which it does not pay to go. The limiting ratio of expansion for non-condensing engines was given by Willans as (absolute initial pressure) ÷ 25. For condensing engines, it will be seen from the figure that the limiting ratio (*m'*) is much higher, and in practice the number of expansions = (absolute initial pressure) ÷ 14 approximately.

Indicated Horse-power (I.H.P.).—The formula is given on p. 2. It is convenient to use a *constant* for each engine = L × A ÷ 33,000, where L = length of stroke in feet, and A = effective area of piston in square inches.

Then—

P × N × constant = I.H.P.

where P = mean effective pressure, and N = number of impulses per minute.

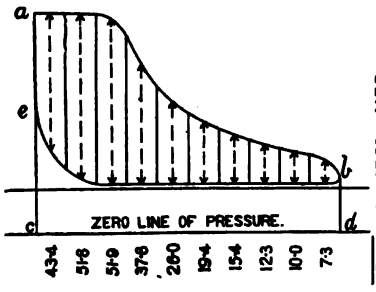


FIG. 121.

The *mean effective pressure*, as obtained from an actual indicator diagram, is the mean width of the figure measured by the scale of the indicator spring with which the diagram was taken (Fig. 121).

The *mean forward pressure* is the mean height of the irregular figure *cabd* from the zero line of pressure.

The *mean back pressure* is the mean height of the irregular figure *cebd* from the zero line of pressure. The difference between the mean heights of these two figures = the mean effective pressure.

Measurement of Mean Pressure.—For this purpose two methods may be adopted—first, the method of ordinates; or, second, the use of the planimeter. The method of ordinates is as follows: Draw two lines at right angles to the atmospheric line, touching the diagram at its extreme ends, and divide the space between them into 10 equal parts (or, when great accuracy is required, into 20 equal parts).

In order now to find the mean width of the diagram, measure the width in the centre of each space by the scale corresponding to the spring of the indicator, add the results together, and divide by the number of measurements; the result will be the mean effective pressure.

The *planimeter* is an instrument by means of which the mean pressure may be obtained from the diagram more rapidly than

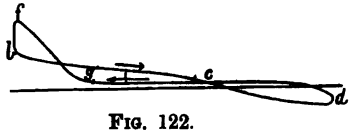


FIG. 122.

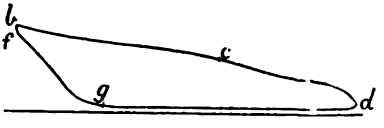


FIG. 123.

by measurement. There are various kinds of planimeters, as the Amsler planimeter, the Coffin averaging instrument, the Hatchet planimeter, and others. The operation with the Amsler planimeter consists of tracing the outline of the diagram with a pointer of the instrument, when the mean pressure of the diagram may be read from the graduations of a small roller, the movement of which depends upon the path of the tracer as it passes over the outline of the diagram.

When a diagram has loops, as shown in Fig. 122, the loops represent negative work, and show that the engine is under-loaded. The

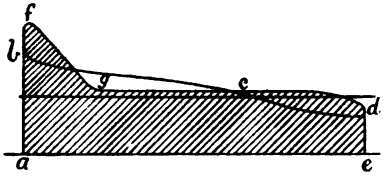


FIG. 124.

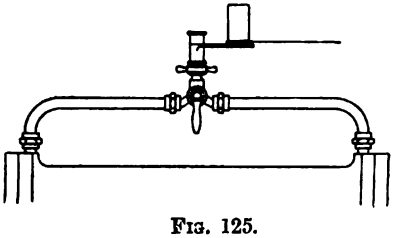


FIG. 125.

loops would disappear if the load were increased. The forward line *bcd* would then rise as in Fig. 123, while the back-pressure line *fgd*

remains as before. Or, by exhausting into a condenser, the back-pressure line may be lowered, while the forward-pressure line remains. In all cases of diagrams with loops, it is advisable to draw the zero line of pressure, and estimate by the usual method of ordinates, the mean pressure of the whole forward-pressure diagram, *abcde* (Fig. 124), and afterwards of the back-pressure diagram, *abfgde*, shown cross-lined. The difference will be the resultant mean effective pressure.

To find the power of an engine, diagrams must of course be taken from each end of the cylinder. When one indicator is connected

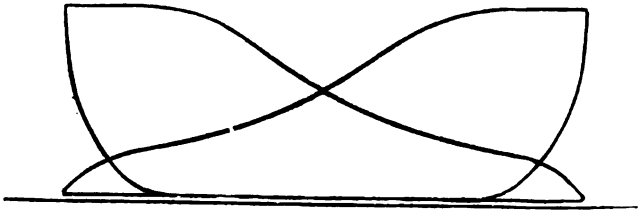


FIG. 126.

with the two ends of the cylinder by pipes and a three-way cock, as shown in Fig. 125, the two diagrams may both be taken on one card, as Fig. 126. This system (Fig. 125) is not to be recommended except for small engines. The mean pressure of such diagrams is taken by measurement separately, and their sum is divided by 2 to obtain the mean pressure.

To find the mean value of the area A of the piston, when the steam acts on a full face, a_1, of the piston on one side, and when on the other side the amount of this area is reduced by the area a_2 of the piston-rod—

$$\text{Then mean area } A = \{a_1 + (a_1 - a_2)\} \div 2$$

For compound or multicylinder engines, the power of each cylinder separately is obtained, as already explained, and the sum of these is the total indicated horse-power.

Mean Power at Variable Speeds.—Where the revolutions are variable during the period of trial, indicator diagrams should be taken more frequently, and to ensure accuracy where the speed varies considerably, and especially when the mean pressures at the two ends of the cylinder vary also, it is more satisfactory to keep the diagrams from the two ends of the cylinder separate; to obtain a piston constant for such end separately; to find the I.H.P. for *each* diagram as it is taken; to take the diagrams at equal intervals; and, finally, to find the mean of all the diagrams from the respective ends of the cylinder. Then the sum of the means from each end of the cylinder is the total I.H.P.

To draw a Hyperbolic Curve upon an Indicator Diagram.—The point from which the curve is drawn may be at *a* just before the

exhaust port opens, or at *b* just after cut-off. At *a* the weight of steam present in the cylinder as steam is usually a maximum, owing to the effect of re-evaporation. It will not represent the *whole* weight of steam passing through the cylinder, because even here there is probably a certain percentage of water not yet re-evaporated, and a certain amount of leakage past the piston and valve to exhaust. The space between the diagram and the curve will show approximately the loss of area due to the previous condensation of the steam now reappearing in the later part of the diagram.

Set off first the clearance line at O, and draw the zero line of pressure O*v* by scale of indicator spring. Then, to draw the curve touching point *a* (Fig. 127), draw a horizontal and vertical line

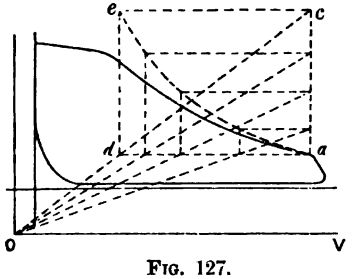


FIG. 127.

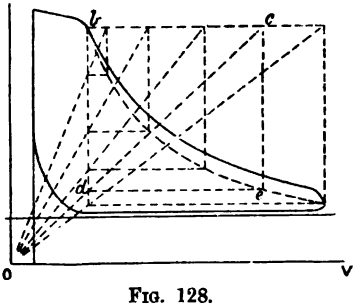


FIG. 128.

through *a*, and make *ac* any convenient height. Join O*c*, and from *c* draw a horizontal, *ce*. Where O*c* cuts the horizontal line through *a* raise a perpendicular, *de*. Then *e* is a point in the hyperbolic curve. Any number of further points in the required curve may be obtained by drawing lines from O as shown, and by drawing horizontals and verticals from the intersections of the lines through O with *ac* and *ad* respectively. The curve is drawn through the points of intersection.

The construction of the curve through *b* (Fig. 128) will be understood from the figure, the points in the dotted hyperbolic curve being obtained by drawing any oblique line, O*c*, to a point *c* on the horizontal through *b*. Then, where the oblique line O*c* cuts the vertical through *b*, namely, at *d*, draw a horizontal line, *de*, to cut a vertical through *c*: then point *e* is a point on the hyperbolic curve.

CHAPTER VI.

QUALITY OF THE STEAM IN THE CYLINDER.

In all ordinary types of steam-engines, the steam in the cylinder at the point of cut-off is less than that actually admitted to the cylinder per stroke, the remainder being present in the cylinder as water, or having passed away to exhaust by leakage at the slide-valve or piston.

The amount of the loss from these two causes combined varies from 20 to 50 per cent. of the total weight of steam supplied per stroke. The causes of the presence of water in the cylinder may be stated in detail as follows :—

1. Wetness of the steam originally supplied by the boiler.
2. Wetness due to condensation in long ranges of steam-pipes and in the valve chests, especially when these parts are not well covered with non-conducting material.
3. "Initial condensation" of the steam on entering the working barrel of the cylinder.
4. Condensation due to work done by the steam during expansion in the cylinder after cut-off.
5. Condensation due to external radiation and conduction from the cylinder walls.

1. **Wetness of Steam supplied by the Boiler.**—When steam carries over with it from the boiler to the engines *water* which has not been evaporated, but which passes away mixed with the steam, the phenomenon is known as *priming*.

The conditions which determine, to a greater or less extent, the quality of the steam supplied from a boiler as to dryness are : (*a*) the rate at which the steam is generated—whether by natural draught or accelerated draught; the greater the rate the greater the tendency to wetness. (*b*) The area of the water surface at the water-level of the boiler per pound of steam generated per minute ; the smaller the surface area for a given weight of steam delivered, the greater the disturbance of the surface, and the more probability of the steam being wet—hence the steam is usually dryer from a Lancashire boiler than from a vertical-type boiler. (*c*) The volume of the steam space, within certain limits, the smaller the volume the greater the tendency to wetness ; hence one means of reducing the amount of priming in boilers is to work with the water-level low in the gauge-glass. (*d*) The size of the boiler compared with the weight of steam required

per stroke by the engine; thus a large slow-running engine, if supplied with steam from a relatively small boiler, causes a fluctuation of pressure in the boiler at each stroke of the engine, which induces surface agitation of the water as the pressure varies, and tends to increase the wetness of the steam. This effect may be remedied by throttling down the steam-supply at the stop-valve, so as to reduce the extent of the fluctuation of the pressure in the boiler.

2. **Wetness due to Condensation in Steam-pipes and Valve Chest.**—The loss of heat from uncovered steam-pipes is considerable, and varies directly as the difference of temperature of the steam and the external air, and inversely as the thickness of the pipe.

The loss from iron steam-pipes uncovered, per degree difference of temperature between steam and external air, is approximately 2·4 thermal units per hour per square foot of external surface of pipe. By covering the pipe with woollen felt ½ inch thick, this loss is reduced to 0·7 thermal unit per hour per square foot of external surface of metal pipe; with 1-inch covering the loss is 0·4 thermal unit, and with a 2-inch covering 0·24 thermal unit.[1]

All water present in the steam should, as far as possible, be separated from it, so that the steam may enter the cylinder dry, and for this purpose it is usual to fix a *separator* as near as possible to the engine. The action of one form of separator, of which there are various designs, will be understood by reference to Fig. 129. The wet steam enters the chamber at the top, and passes through a spiral passage downwards towards the bottom of the separator. The whirling motion of the steam thus set up causes the particles of water present in the steam to strike the sides of the chamber, and to flow to the bottom of the vessel. The steam passes forward in a more or less dry condition, in an upward direction through the exit pipe, the bottom of which is some distance from the bottom of the separator. Connected with the separator is a "steam trap" into which the water is collected, and from which it is passed into the feed-tank. A gauge-glass is fitted to show the height of water present in the bottom of the separator.

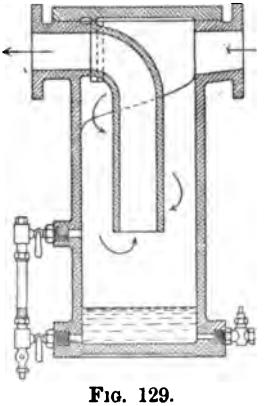


FIG. 129.

3. **Initial Condensation.**—Next to the loss of heat at the exhaust, that due to initial condensation of steam in the cylinder is the most serious of the losses connected with the use of steam as a working fluid; and the endeavour to prevent the loss from this cause has accounted for most of the improvements in the steam-engine since the time when James Watt invented the separate condenser. Before this time the cylinder was used alternately as a steam-cylinder and a condenser.

[1] These numbers are deduced from a table by Mr. A. G. Brown in "The Indicator."

When steam from the boiler is admitted to the cylinder with the piston at the beginning of the stroke, it comes in contact with the metallic surfaces of the cylinder cover, the face of the piston, the walls of the steam ports, and more or less area of the circumferential surface of the cylinder barrel.

If all these surfaces were as hot as the steam which enters the cylinder, no transfer of heat would take place between the steam and the metal, and therefore there would be no initial condensation of the steam.

But in practice the temperature of the walls is always lower than that of the entering steam, the walls being cooled during expansion and during exhaust, by having been in contact with the comparatively cool steam of reduced pressure at these periods. Consequently, during admission of steam at the beginning of the stroke, condensation takes place, till the walls are heated up to a temperature approaching that of the initial steam. Hence the weight of steam admitted to the cylinder per stroke, up to point of cut-off, is greater than that present in the cylinder as steam, by the amount condensed during admission in the process of warming up the cylinder walls.

Condensation, then, up to point of cut-off is due to the heat lost in warming up the metallic walls with which the steam comes in contact in the cylinder.

In addition to this, as already explained in the chapter on temperature-entropy diagrams, there is the condensation which takes place after cut-off due to the work done during expansion at the expense of the internal energy of the steam.

Considering the amount of steam condensed in the cylinder, it would seem, at first sight, that the cylinder must gradually become choked with water. Such is more or less the case when the engine is started, and before the cylinders have been properly heated up, and to get rid of this water, *relief-cocks* are fitted at each end of the cylinder, which are always opened when the engine is started, so as to *blow through* and relieve the cylinder of the water deposited.

As the temperature of the cylinder walls gradually increases, less water is deposited. If the relief-cocks are now shut, more or less condensation will still continue, but the water deposited is now removed from the cylinder by re-evaporation.

Re-evaporation.—During the stroke of the piston, as soon as cut-off takes place, the pressure of the steam gradually falls, and the water present, owing to the removal of the pressure upon it, begins to re-evaporate as soon as the pressure of the steam falls below that corresponding with the temperature of the water in the cylinder. This point generally occurs soon after cut-off, and the re-evaporation continues as the expansion continues, the weight of steam present, as steam, gradually increasing towards the end of the stroke. When the exhaust port opens, the pressure is, more or less suddenly, still further reduced and the rate of re-evaporation accelerated, and during the exhaust stroke the water of initial condensation more or less completely disappears as dry steam.

The heat required for re-evaporation is obtained partly from the heat in the water itself, but chiefly at the expense of the heat in the cylinder walls; hence the greater the re-evaporation the more heat flows from the walls, and the more heat must be given up to the walls on the succeeding stroke by the steam during admission.

The heat given up by the steam to the walls is practically lost (except for the small amount of work done by re-evaporated steam), because this heat, which is again returned by the walls, is given up during exhaust, and thus increases the already large exhaust waste.

Mean Temperature of Cylinder Walls.—From the experiments of Messrs. Bryan Donkin, Callendar, and Nicolson, it has been shown that the cylinder walls may be divided into two parts, namely, the outer portion, where the temperature is constant; and the inner or "periodic" portion, where the temperature fluctuates with the temperature of the steam in contact with it.

The depth of the periodic portion is usually very small, and the less so as the time of interaction is less between the steam and the cylinder walls.

In all cases economy results from raising the mean temperature of the walls nearer to that of the initial steam in the cylinder. The mean temperature of the walls is raised as the weight of steam passing through the engine per minute is increased, and the condensation is thus reduced per pound of steam supplied.

Conversely all causes tending to reduce the mean temperature of the cylinder walls tend also to increased cylinder condensation, and therefore to increased consumption of steam per I.H.P. per hour.

$$\text{Weight of metal heated} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{thermal units absorbed} \div (\text{specific heat} \\ \text{of iron} \times \text{degrees rise of temperature}) \end{array} \right.$$

Range of Temperature.—The range of temperature of the steam in the cylinder is the difference $(t_1 - t_3)$, where t_1 is the temperature during admission, and t_3 the temperature of exhaust. The range of temperature is thus independent of the point of cut-off.

But cylinder condensation depends, not directly on the *range* of temperature of the steam, but on the *mean* temperature of the internal portion of the cylinder walls, and the following relations should be noted between range of temperature of the steam and mean temperature of the walls:—

(1) For a given constant range of temperature of the steam in a cylinder, the mean temperature of the walls increases as the point of cut-off is later; hence the mean temperature, and also the amount of cylinder condensation, may vary considerably with the same range of temperature.

(2) The mean temperature of the walls may remain constant for any number of different ranges of temperature above and below the mean; hence the amount of cylinder condensation may vary considerably with the same mean temperature, being greater as the difference between the initial temperature of the steam and the mean temperature of the walls is greater, and *vice versâ*.

Wet Steam supplied to Cylinder.—Experiment has shown that steam admitted to the cylinder initially wet tends still further to increase initial condensation, at least up to a certain limit, and, conversely, the drier the steam the smaller the heat interaction between the steam and the cylinder walls. Hence the importance of draining steam-pipes and valve chest, as already pointed out.

Water entering the cylinder with the steam tends to become partially evaporated in passing through the cylinder, because the sensible heat contained in the water on entering the cylinder is greater than will be retained by it on leaving, hence a portion of the original water is evaporated by the heat liberated at the lower pressure.

4. **Condensation due to Work done during Expansion.**—In addition to initial condensation due to interchange of heat between the steam and the cylinder walls, there is, during expansion in the cylinder, an internal or molecular liquefaction due to work performed at the expense of the internal energy of the steam; therefore the greater the expansion the wetter the steam becomes. The extent of the condensation due to work done has been already explained under temperature-entropy diagrams (p. 44), and on unjacketed cylinders the causes tending to wetness of exhaust exceed those tending to dryness.

Speaking generally, the amount of initial condensation depends—

(1) Upon the difference between the initial temperature of the steam entering the cylinder and the mean temperature of the cylinder walls, condensation being less as the mean temperature of the walls approaches the temperature of the initial steam.

(2) Upon the point of cut-off in the cylinder; the mean temperature of the cylinder walls is higher, and therefore the condensation is less, as the cut-off is later—that is, as the greater weight of steam is passed through the cylinder per stroke, other things being equal.

(3) Upon the time of contact of the steam with the cylinder walls, condensation being less as the rate of revolution (N) increases, other things being equal.

(4) Upon the extent of cylinder surface exposed to the steam when the piston is at the beginning of the stroke, condensation being less as the area of metallic surface taking part in the heat interchange is less.

The measure of initial condensation in the cylinder has been expressed by Escher thus:

$$CW = \rho A \frac{s T_1}{\sqrt{N} T_m}$$

where C = initial condensation in B.T.U. per pound of steam; W = weight of feed-water in pounds per stroke; s = exposed surface of the metal at beginning of stroke; T_1 = initial temperature of steam; T_m = mean temperature of cylinder walls (absolute scale); ρ = the density of the entering steam; N = revolutions per minute; A is a

constant, which is given as 80 for unjacketed cylinders, and 56 for jacketed cylinders. This constant will vary with varying types of engines.

To find the Weight of Steam accounted for by the Indicator Diagram.—To find the weight of steam in a cylinder per stroke from the indicator diagram, it is necessary to know the volume occupied by the steam present in the cylinder at the point of the stroke chosen for measurement, and the pressure of steam at that point; then, knowing from the Steam Tables the weight per cubic foot of steam at the given pressure, the weight required can be at once determined.

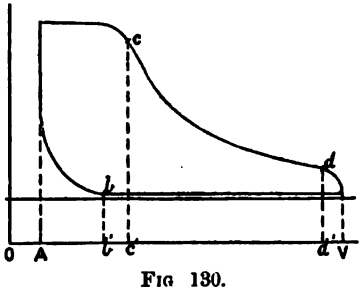


FIG 130.

The points from which measurements are taken must be chosen from that portion of the diagram where the slide-valve covers the ports, and where the steam is completely enclosed within the cylinder, and its volume definitely known. In other words, the points must be chosen on the expansion curve after cut-off and before release, or on the compression curve after exhaust closure and before opening of the port for readmission.

Thus, referring to Fig. 130, OA = clearance volume, AV = piston displacement, w_b = weight of 1 cub. ft. of steam at pressure *b*. All volumes are expressed in cubic feet. Then—

(1) Weight of dry steam at *b*.

$$= \left\{ \left(\text{piston displacement} \times \frac{Ab'}{AV} \right) + \text{clearance volume} \right\} w_b$$

(2) Weight of dry steam at *c*

$$= \left\{ \left(\text{piston displacement} \times \frac{Ac'}{AV} \right) + \text{clearance volume} \right\} w_c$$

(3) Weight of dry steam at *d*

$$= \left\{ \left(\text{piston displacement} \times \frac{Ad'}{AV} \right) + \text{clearance volume} \right\} w_d$$

In the same way, the weight of steam may be determined for any other point on the expansion curve.

To find the Dry Steam Fraction at Cut-off.—The indicator diagram accounts for all the steam present in the cylinder *as steam*, but it gives no clue as to the amount of water present in the cylinder at the same time, or as to the extent of the loss by leakage, unless we have first some independent means of determining the weight of steam supplied to the engine, as by weighing the feed-water, for example, or by other methods to be afterwards described. Then, to find the dry steam fraction the facts required are as follows:—

(1) Total weight of feed-water per hour ÷ number of strokes per

hour = actual weight of working fluid passing through cylinder per stroke, called "cylinder-feed."

(2) Weight of steam per stroke (assumed dry) retained in the cylinder as clearance steam is determined from compression curve at *b*, the point *b* being chosen as near as possible to the actual exhaust closure (Fig. 130).

(3) Total weight of steam in cylinder per stroke after cut-off and during expansion = cylinder-feed + clearance steam.

(4) Weight of dry steam at cut-off (determined from the indicator diagram by measurement, as already explained).

(5) Dry steam fraction at cut-off = (dry steam measured from indicator diagram) ÷ (cylinder-feed + clearance steam).

In the same way the dry steam fraction may be determined by measurement for any other portion of the expansion curve up to point of release. These results may be shown graphically by the following method :—

To apply the Saturation Curve to an Indicator Diagram.—This curve represents the curve of expansion which would be obtained if the whole of the steam and water passing through the engine per stroke were present in the cylinder as dry saturated steam. It also supposes no condensation during expansion. This is the ideal curve which is aimed at when the steam jacket is used.

To draw the curve, set off, as before explained, the clearance line and the zero line of pressure, and draw a horizontal line through any point *c* (Fig. 131) on the expansion curve of the diagram at cut-off or beyond it; then *ad* is the clearance volume, *ab* is the volume of the known weight of steam in the cylinder during expansion, supposing it all present as dry saturated steam at pressure *c*, and including the weight of steam enclosed during compression, and the weight of steam passing through the cylinder per stroke. Also $ac \div ab$ is the dry steam fraction at *c*. The steam in the clearance space at beginning of compression is assumed to be dry saturated steam.

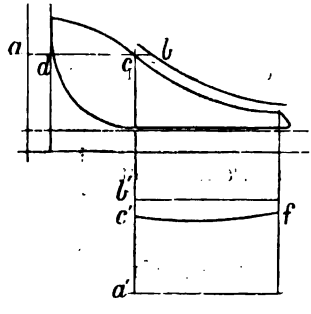


FIG. 131.

The dry steam fraction curve below the indicator diagram (Fig. 131) is constructed for all points of the expansion curve from cut-off to release by setting up from a horizontal line to any scale the ratio $a'c' \div a'b' = ac \div ab$. The fraction $cb \div ab$ represents the loss by condensation and by leakage.

Application of the Indicator Diagram to the Temperature-Entropy Chart.[1]—The temperature-entropy chart is illustrated on Plate I., and consists, as already explained, of that portion of the temperature-entropy diagram enclosed between the "water-line" and the "dry-steam line," on the left and right respectively, the horizontals

[1] See also Boulvin's method, p. 304.

intersecting these lines being lines of temperature. The portion of the chart used will depend, of course, upon the range of temperature between which the particular engine works.

The object of placing the indicator diagram upon the chart is to represent by an area the heat-units converted into work per pound of steam expanding in the cylinder, independently of all considerations as to size or power of the engine, and to show what the extent of the losses are as compared with a perfect engine working between the same limits of temperature.

The temperature-entropy diagram drawn upon the chart differs from the indicator diagram in giving, not the work done per stroke in foot-pounds, but the work done per pound of steam in thermal units.

It is necessary first to know the weight of steam passing through the engine per stroke, and the weight of steam enclosed in the clearance space. Then the saturation curve can be applied to the indicator diagram, as explained on p. 116.

If it is required only to compare the actual expansion line of the indicator diagram with the adiabatic or saturated-steam lines of the temperature-entropy diagram, then the method is similar to that shown in Fig. 131, the value of $ac \div ab$ being determined for a number of points between cut-off and release. Then, knowing the pressure and dry steam fraction for each point taken on the indicator diagram, corresponding points, $a'c' \div a'b'$, on the same pressure lines may be located at once upon the temperature-entropy chart (Fig. 133). For this purpose no constant-volume lines are required to be used; but when it is required to transfer points other than those on the expansion curve, it is necessary to find the *diagram factor* of the indicator diagram.

If the steam expanding in the cylinder, including the steam enclosed at compression, weighs exactly 1 lb., the diagram factor will be 1. If the actual weight expanding is either more or less than 1 lb., it is necessary to find the factor by which the actual weight of steam must be multiplied, so that *actual weight* $\times$ *diagram factor* $= 1$;

$$\text{or diagram factor} = \frac{1}{\text{actual weight}}.$$

The diagram factor is used in order to express the changes of the indicator diagram on the chart in terms of 1 lb. of steam.

If, now, any point d (Fig. 132) on the indicator-diagram be taken, and the volume of the steam in the cylinder corresponding with that point be determined, this volume multiplied by the diagram factor gives the position of the point d as to volume on the chart (Fig. 133), and, its pressure being known, its position is completely determined.

EXAMPLE.—In Fig. 132 take any point c; then c' can be immediately found on Fig. 133 by finding the line of pressure on the chart corresponding with the pressure of c on the indicator-diagram, and making the ratio $a'c' \div a'b' = ac \div ab$.

To find any other point, as d', not on the expansion line, find the actual volume of the steam in the cylinder at d, and multiply this volume by the diagram factor. This gives the constant-volume line on which d' will be found, and, the pressure of d being known, the position of d' is completely determined. Any other points may be similarly found. A free curve is drawn through the points thus found.

In the example chosen, the mean-admission line up to cut-off has been substituted for the actual line. The mean-admission line and the back-pressure line are both taken back to the water-line, and the compression curve is neglected.

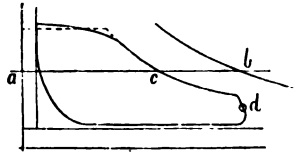


FIG. 132.

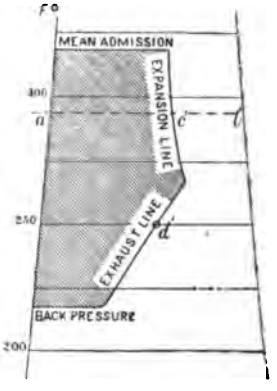


FIG. 133.

If there were no losses whatever in steam-engine cylinders, the diagrams of work done per pound of steam would fill the whole area between the water-line on the left and the vertical adiabatic line on the right (Fig. 134), and between the upper horizontal line representing the pressure of steam at the engine stop-valve, and the lower horizontal line representing the pressure in the exhaust pipe. The object is to fill up as much as possible of the available area on the chart.

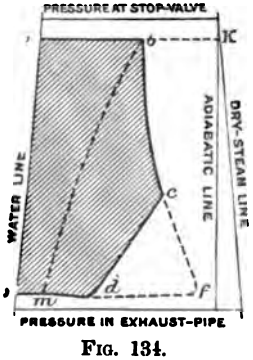


FIG. 134.

It will be seen that (neglecting the effects of compression) there are four conditions which determine the gain or loss in the thermal efficiency of the steam expanding in the cylinder.

(1) The nearness of the mean-admission pressure line *ab* to that of the source from which the steam is supplied.

(2) The proportion of dry steam present in the cylinder; in other words, the extent to which the dry-steam fraction line *bc* of the actual engine diagram, shown shaded, approaches the dry-steam line of the chart, enlarging or otherwise the area of the shaded diagram between the water-line and the dry-steam line.

(3) The number of expansions of the steam, or the extent to which the pressure at end of expansion approaches the back pressure. Thus (Fig. 136) the line *cd* represents fall of pressure during release, the

fall taking place at nearly constant volume, and following very nearly a constant-volume line of the chart.

When the terminal pressure of expansion is carried down to back pressure, the expansion line *bc* extends to *f*; but as the difference of pressure between that at the end of the expansion and the back pressure becomes greater, the further the release-corner line *cd* recedes from the point *f*, the blunter the corner becomes, and the greater the loss of area due to incomplete expansion. When the steam is admitted to the end of the stroke, and the engine is worked without expansion, the line *cd* recedes to the position shown by the dotted line *bm*, where *bm* is also a line of constant volume.

(4) The nearness of the back-pressure line to that representing the pressure in the exhaust pipe.

Relative Effects of Cylinder Condensation and Number of Expansions of Steam in a Single Cylinder.—If the indicator diagram from an engine with an early cut-off be drawn upon the temperature-entropy chart, the diagram will have some form similar to that shown by the shaded area. If, now, the indicator diagram for a later cut-off be transferred, it will have some position extending further towards the right to the dry-steam line, as shown by the unshaded portion; and showing a larger dry steam fraction, and a gain of work done per pound of steam by increased dryness of the steam. But with the earlier cut-off there was a gain of area by increased expansion, and these two areas—one due to increased dryness, and the other due to increased expansion—tend to neutralize each other. For a limited number of expansions, the gain by increased expansion is the larger gain, but beyond this the gain may become negative owing to loss by condensation. The best number of expansions in any cylinder is that which gives the largest work area per pound of steam passing through the engine.

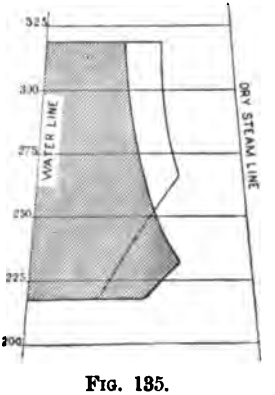


FIG. 135.

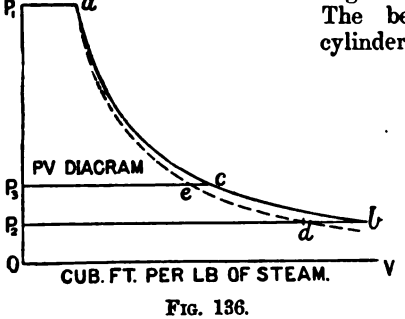


FIG. 136.

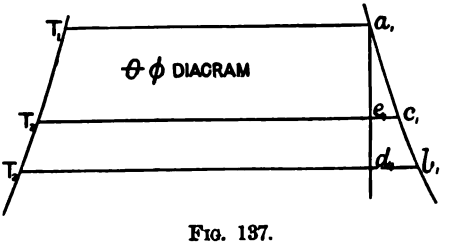


FIG. 137.

Usually, from three to five expansions in one cylinder give a

maximum work area; but the best number of expansions, considered from this point of view, varies with different types of engines, and can only be determined by experiment.

To draw the Adiabatic Curve on the pv Diagram from the Temperature-entropy Chart.—From the point O (Fig. 136) draw rectangular axes OP_1 and OV to any convenient scales. At P_1, P_2, P_3, etc., draw horizontal lines P_1a, P_2b, etc., representing to scale the volumes—taken from the Steam Tables—of 1 lb. of saturated steam at absolute pressures P_1, P_2, etc., and join the points *a*, *c*, *b* by a free curve. Then *acb* represents the curve of volumes for 1 lb. of saturated steam without condensation. Divide the line P_3c at *e*, so that $P_3e \div P_3c = T_3e_1 \div T_3c_1$ on the temperature-entropy chart (Fig. 137), and so on for any number of divisions. Then, by joining the points so found, we obtain the dotted line *aed* on the *pv* diagram (Fig. 136), which is the adiabatic curve required.

Hirn's Analysis.—This is a method of analyzing the action of the steam passing through the cylinder, and showing by areas the quantities of heat interchanged between the steam and cylinder walls. This method, first employed by Hirn, has been developed graphically by Prof. Dwelshauvers Dery, of Liège.[1]

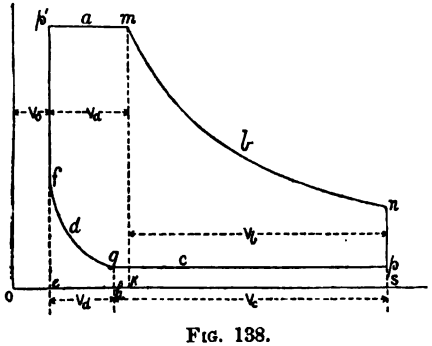


FIG. 138.

The portions of the stroke are indicated by subscript letters corresponding with those on the diagram (Fig. 138); thus *a* for admission, *b* for expansion, *c* for exhaust, *d* for compression. Then—

V_a = volume in cubic feet described by piston during admission.
V_b = " " " " " expansion.
V_c = " " " " " exhaust.
V_d = " " " " " compression.
V_o = volume in cubic feet of clearance space.
V = whole volume displaced by piston.

Work done in Thermal Units.—The work done in thermal units by the steam during the several portions of the stroke is represented by T with its appropriate subscript, thus:

T_a = work done during admission = area *ep'mke* in thermal units.
T_b = " " expansion = " *kmnsk* " "
T_c = " " exhaust = " *hgpsh* " "
T_d = " " compression = " *efghe* " "
$T_a + T_b$ = absolute work done by steam = area *ep'mnse*.
$(T_a + T_b) - (T_c + T_d)$ = net area of indicator diagram.

Heat exchanged.—The quantities of heat in thermal units exchanged

[1] *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vol. xcviii. p. 254.

between the steam and the metal are represented by areas R_a, R_b, etc., the areas being drawn to the same scale as the work diagram.

R_a = heat exchanged between metal and steam during admission.
R_b = " " " " expansion.
R_c = " " " " exhaust.
R_d = " " " " compression.
E = heat lost by external radiation.
Q = the quantity of heat supplied to cylinder per stroke by admission steam.
Q′ = the quantity of heat supplied from the jacket.
Q + Q′ = total heat supplied.

Weight of Steam.—Let the weight of wet steam admitted to the cylinder per stroke = M lbs., of which Mx is the weight of dry steam, and $M(1 - x)$ is the weight of water present in the steam. Then, neglecting the effects of leakage, the actual condition of the steam at any point in the expansion curve is known, since the actual weight of steam passing through the cylinder per stroke is known by a test of the engine.

Let also the weight of steam retained in the clearance space each stroke = M_g. The actual weight of this steam may be measured, knowing the pressure g at beginning of compression, and assuming the steam dry at this point.

Quantity of Heat.—The heat Q required to raise M lbs. of water from 32° Fahr. to its temperature of admission, and to evaporate the portion Mx, is—

$$Q = M(h + xL)$$

For superheated steam heated from normal temperature t_n of saturated steam to temperature t_s—

$$Q = M\{h + L + 0{\cdot}48(t_s - t_n)\}$$

Internal Heat of Steam.—The internal heat of the steam in the clearance space at commencement of compression, assuming the steam dry—

$$= M_g(h_g + \rho_g)$$

where M_g, h_g, and ρ_g represent weight, sensible heat, and internal heat respectively of steam at pressure and volume at point g on the diagram (Fig. 138).

$$\text{The internal heat at cut-off} = (M + M_g)(h_m + x_m\rho_m)$$

where x_m = dry steam fraction at point m on the diagram (Fig. 138).

$$\text{The internal heat at end of expansion} = (M + M_g)(h_n + x_n\rho_n)$$

And similarly for the several parts of the cycle.

Thermal Units interchanged between the Steam and the Metal enclosing the Steam in the Cylinder.—1. To find the heat R_a exchanged during admission. The heat supplied is Q; the heat in the cylinder at admission is $M_f(h_f + x_f\rho_f)$; the work done is T_a; and the heat remaining in the steam at cut-off is $(M + M_g)(h_m + x_m\rho_m)$. Then—

$$Q + M_f(h_f + x_f\rho_f) = T_a + R_a + (M + M_g)(h_m + x_m\rho_m) \quad (1)$$

from which R_a may be obtained.

If the steam is superheated at cut-off, this equation will be modified by corrected values for the heat supplied, and the heat contained in the steam at cut-off, as explained above, and in the chapter on superheating. The temperature of superheated steam at cut-off may be determined by its increased volume over that of the same weight of saturated steam at the same pressure, it being assumed that superheated steam behaves as a gas, and that its increase of absolute temperature is proportional to its increase of volume.

2. To find R_b, the heat exchanged during expansion. The heat in the steam at the end of expansion is $(M + M_g)(h_n + x_n\rho_n)$; the external work is T_b; the heat present at beginning of expansion is $(M + M_g)(h_m + x_m\rho_m)$; then—

$$(M + M_g)(h_m + x_m\rho_m) = T_b + R_b + (M + M_g)(h_n + x_n\rho_n) \quad (2)$$

from which R_b may be obtained.

3. To find R_c, the heat rejected by the cylinder walls to the steam during exhaust. The heat in the steam at the end of expansion is $(M + M_g)(h_n + x_n\rho_n)$; the work done upon the steam during exhaust is T_c; the heat in the steam at beginning of compression, assuming the steam of compression dry, is $M_g(h_g + x_g\rho_g)$.

The heat rejected to condenser in exhaust steam is measured by a test of the engine, and by actually weighing the steam condensed in a surface condenser in a given time, and then dividing the amount weighed by the number of strokes made by the engine in that time. This gives the weight of steam (M) exhausted per stroke. Then M lbs. of steam become water at temperature t. The heat in this condensed steam is now Mh_t. The heat carried away by the condensing water equals the weight of condensing water (W) per stroke multiplied by its increase of temperature in passing through the condenser $= W(t_1 - t_2)$. Then—

$$(M+M_g)(h_n+x_n\rho_n)+T_c=R_c+Mh_t+W(t_1-t_2)+M_g(h_g+x_g\rho_g) \quad (3)$$

from which R_c may be obtained.

4. To find the heat, R_d, exchanged between the walls and the steam during compression.

The internal heat in the steam at beginning of compression is $M_g(h_g + x_g\rho_g)$. Then work is done upon it $= T_d$ during compression; and the internal heat of the steam at end of compression is $M_f(h_f + x_f\rho_f)$; then—

$$M_g(h_g + x_g\rho_g) + T_d = M_f(h_f + x_f\rho_f) + R_d \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (4)$$

from which R_d may be obtained.

Graphic Representation of the Quantities of Heat exchanged. Scale of the Diagram.—The quantities of heat employed in the performance of work may be measured directly from the indicator diagram.

The volume described by the piston is represented by the length of the indicator diagram. From this a scale of cubic feet of piston displacement may be made upon the diagram.

The vertical scale of pressures on the indicator diagram represents pressures per square inch; but it may be converted into a scale of

pressure in pounds per square foot by multiplying the scale by 144, or by dividing the unit of the inch-pressure scale by 144 to represent a pressure of 1 lb. per square foot. Then an area having P, or the unit of pressure per square foot for height, and V, or the unit of volume in cubic feet for length, = 1 foot-lb. of work. This area multiplied by 778 represents a thermal unit on the diagram, and is the unit chosen for representing also the heat-exchanges. During admission, if P_a is the pressure per square foot, and V_a the volume displaced by the piston up to point of cut-off = *os* (Fig. 139), then work done = $P_a V_a$ foot-lbs. = $\frac{P_a V_a}{778}$ thermal units = T_a. Hence—

$$P_a = \frac{778 T_a}{V_a}$$

The area $P_a V_a$, measured from the zero lines of pressure and volume, represents to the scale of the diagram the heat expended in the cylinder in doing the work of admission = area *oefs*.

Heat-exchange Areas.—Having obtained R_a by equation (1), a rectangle is drawn on the same base V_a = *os*, and at height r_a = *oe*, so that—

$$r_a = \frac{778 R_a}{V_a}$$

Then the rectangle at a height r_a above *os* represents, to the same scale as the indicator diagram of work, the heat given by the steam to the cylinder walls.

Similarly for the other parts of the stroke, the rectangles can be drawn representing R_b, R_c, and R_d respectively:

$$r_b = \frac{778 R_b}{V_b}; \quad r_c = \frac{778 R_c}{V_c}; \quad r_d = \frac{778 R_d}{V_d}$$

These rectangles represent the *mean* result of the heat-exchanges during the several portions of the stroke.

Distinction between Positive and Negative Quantities of Heat.—In the forward stroke during admission, the heat transferred from steam to metal is considered positive, and the rectangle R_a representing the heat quantity is drawn above the zero line on the base *os* (Fig. 139). For the heat-exchange during the expansion part of the stroke, the heat passes conversely from the metal to the steam; the interchange is considered negative, and the rectangle R_b is drawn below the zero line on the base *st* down to r_b.

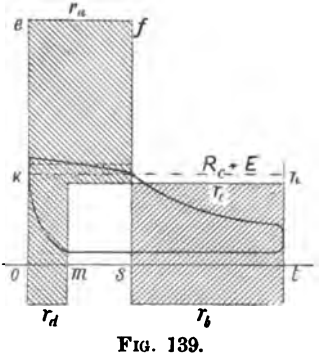


FIG. 139.

For the backward stroke, the opposite positions are adopted for the positions of the rectangles, namely, above the zero line for negative exchange—that is, from metal to steam; and below the zero line

for positive exchange—that is, from steam to metal. Hence the exhaust rectangle R_c is drawn above the zero line on the base *mt*, and the compression rectangle R_d is drawn below the zero line on the base *om*. The positive and negative quantities are further distinguished by the direction of the cross-hatching on the rectangles. The sum of the rectangles $R_a + R_d - R_b = R_f =$ the net heat-exchange while the steam is enclosed in the cylinder; and rectangle R_f = area *oknt* may be constructed on the base *ot*. The area $R_f =$ rectangle R_c, the heat rejected to exhaust, if there were no loss by external radiation, E; but since there is always some loss E in practice, then—

$$R_a - R_b + R_d = R_c + E$$

from which E may be obtained. In Fig. 139 the difference between the areas of the rectangles *oknt* and the rectangle R_c, expressed as thermal units, represents the loss E.

If the cylinder is steam-jacketed, the water of condensation from the jacket is weighed separately, and the weight of water collected from the jacket per hour divided by the number of strokes of the engine per hour gives the weight (M_j) of steam condensed in the jacket per stroke. Then the heat-units (Q') per stroke given up by the jacket—

$$Q' = M_j \times L$$

where L = the latent heat of steam at the pressure in the jacket.

If R_e = heat rejected to condenser during exhaust, T = work done by steam, then—

$$Q + Q' = T + R_e + E$$

or, in words, the total heat supplied, including the jacket heat, is equal to the heat expended on work done, plus the heat rejected to condenser, plus the heat lost by external radiation.

CHAPTER VII.

COMPOUND ENGINES.

VARIOUS methods have been adopted to increase the efficiency of the steam in the cylinder, including—

1. Compounding the cylinders.
2. Steam-jacketing.
3. Superheating.
4. Increased rotational speeds.

And these methods will now be described in the above order.

COMPOUND ENGINES.

It will be clear, after studying the temperature-entropy chart, that the proportion of useful work to be obtained per pound of steam will increase as the initial pressure increases, providing advantage is taken of the possibility of working the steam expansively so as to recover a portion of its internal energy, and providing also that initial condensation and all other condensation can be reduced.

Pressures are gradually increasing; large ranges of expansion are being obtained by means of the multi-cylinder engine; reduced losses by condensation are being secured by compounding, steam-jacketing, superheating, and increased rotational speeds.

Referring to the compound engine and the reasons for its adoption, there are three important objections to working steam at high pressures and large expansion in *one* cylinder, and these objections become more serious as the pressure and number of expansions increase.

1. The volume of the cylinder must be sufficient to provide for the required expansion of the steam, but it must also be sufficiently strong to carry the maximum pressures. Similarly, also, the working parts require to be sufficiently large and strong to transmit the maximum stresses; and since the maximum pressures and stresses are greatly in excess of the mean when the number of expansions in one cylinder is large, the engine becomes excessively heavy and costly compared with the power exerted.

2. The loss by initial condensation increases rapidly as the number of expansions in one cylinder increases.

3. The turning effort on the crank-pin becomes excessively variable.

By the introduction of the compound engine, the range of stress on the working parts, the loss by initial condensation, and the irregularity of the turning effort are much reduced, as compared with a

single-cylinder engine working with the same initial pressure and number of expansions. Hence, for smoothness of working, with a wide range of pressures, and for economy of fuel, the compound engine was an important advance on the simple engine.

The improvement in the distribution of the stresses, and of the turning effort effected by compounding the cylinders, is dealt with later. The reduction of the loss by initial condensation in compound engines as compared with single-cylinder engines working through the same range of pressures may be accounted for as follows:—

1. Because the heat transferred from the steam to the metal depends upon the difference of temperature between the initial steam and the metal with which it is in contact; but in a compound engine the only cylinder coming into contact with condenser pressures and temperatures is the low-pressure cylinder, and the further removed from the low-pressure cylinder, the higher the temperature of the walls of the preceding cylinders. This corresponds also with the temperature of the steam passing through the engine, the hot steam meeting the hot walls, and the cooler steam the cooler walls;[1] hence the difference of temperature between the steam and the walls in contact with it being reduced, the condensation is reduced also.

2. Because initial condensation in the successive cylinders of a compound engine is not cumulative, but is approximately that due to one cylinder only. The water due to initial condensation in each cylinder is re-evaporated during the exhaust stroke in that cylinder, and leaves the cylinder as steam, to provide for the needs of the succeeding cylinder, and so on.

Methods of Compounding.—The essential feature of compounding is to exhaust the steam from one cylinder into a second cylinder of larger volume, where the steam may do further work by continued expansion. This may be repeated through three or four or more successive cylinders.

Engines may be compounded by exhausting from a high-pressure cylinder into a low-pressure cylinder of one or other of the following types:—

1. A cylinder of larger diameter but the same stroke, which is the usual arrangement.

2. A cylinder of the same diameter but longer stroke.

3. A cylinder having the same dimensions as the high-pressure cylinder, but with its piston making a larger number of reciprocations or strokes per minute, the engines working on independent cranks.

4. Any combination of these methods.

In all cases the work done in a cylinder, or between the pistons of a compound engine, or in any combination whatever of cylinders and pistons $= p_m(V_2 - V_1)$, where p_m is the mean pressure, and $(V_2 - V_1)$ the increase of volume while the steam is enclosed, and independently of the way in which the increase of volume is obtained.

Double-expansion compound engines may be divided into two

[1] The high-*pressure* cylinder might be called with equal correctness the high-*temperature* cylinder, and the low-*pressure* cylinder the low-*temperature* cylinder.

main classes: (1) the Woolf type, in which the pistons of each cylinder commence the stroke simultaneously, as in tandem engines (Fig. 140), or those with cranks at 0° or 180° apart; (2) the Receiver type, in which the cranks are set at an angle other than 0° or 180° with each other, and in which the steam exhausted from the first cylinder is passed into a chamber called the receiver, between the two cylinders, where it

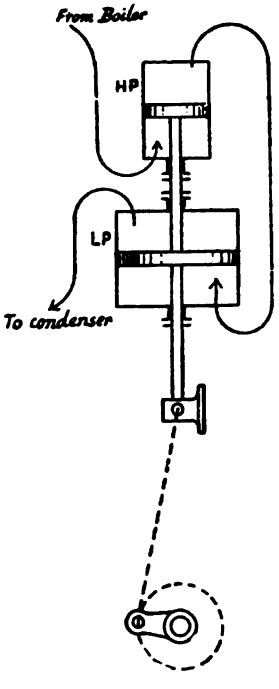


FIG. 140.

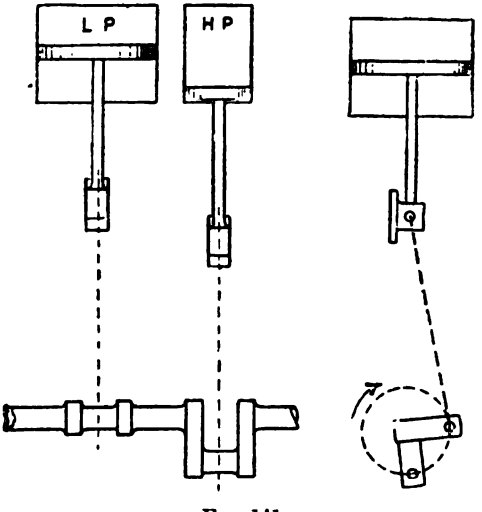


FIG. 141.

is retained till the second cylinder is ready to receive it.

In practice it is usually found unnecessary to have a separate special chamber for a receiver, as the exhaust pipe of the high-pressure cylinder and the valve chest of the low-pressure afford sufficient capacity for the purpose.

Number of Cylinders.—Having determined the terminal pressure desired at the end of the expansion, and the number of expansions or point of cut-off in each cylinder, then the number of cylinders will depend upon the range of pressure, and will increase as the initial pressure increases. Thus for condensing engines the terminal pressure may be 10 lbs. absolute, and for non-condensing engines 20 lbs. absolute, and the number of expansions in each cylinder, say, three. Then for the condensing engine (Fig. 142), if the ratio of the cylinder volumes is 1 : 3, and there were no losses, the pressure at cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder is approximately 30 lbs. If now the high-pressure cylinder at end of stroke contains the same volume of steam as the low-pressure cylinder at cut-off, then the pressure at end of

stroke in the high-pressure cylinder is 30 lbs., and again cutting off at $\frac{1}{3}$ of the stroke, the initial pressure in the high-pressure cylinder is 90 lbs. absolute.

For boiler pressures of 150 to 180 lbs. and condensing engines, the steam is expanded in three cylinders successively, which arrangement is known as the triple-expansion engine.

At boiler pressures of 200 lbs. and upwards quadruple-expansion engines are used.

Equal Distribution of the Work and Initial Stresses between the Cylinders.—In the example just chosen of a two-cylinder, or double-expansion compound, with the volume of the high-pressure cylinder equal to the volume of the low-pressure cylinder up to cut-off, the curve of expansion is continuous, as shown in Fig. 142, and there is no loss by compounding with such an arrangement, as the work done

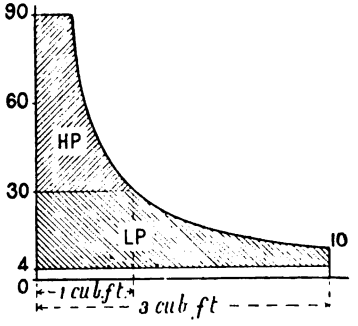


FIG. 142.

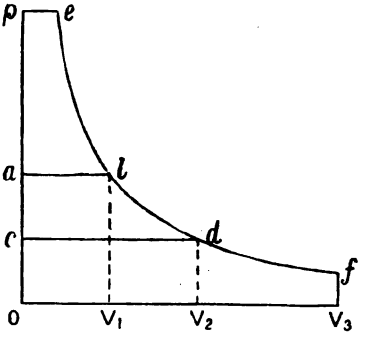


FIG. 143.

is the same theoretically as would be done in a single cylinder of the same dimensions as the low-pressure cylinder.

But from Fig. 143 it will be seen that it is possible to secure this with any number of different ratios between the cylinders; thus, if OV_3 = volume of low-pressure cylinder, then if *ab* be drawn as shown, O*a* may be taken as the back pressure on the high-pressure cylinder and the forward pressure on the low-pressure cylinder; OV_1 = volume of the high-pressure cylinder; *peba* is the work diagram for the high-pressure cylinder, and *abfv*$_3$O is the work diagram of the low-pressure cylinder; *b* is the point of cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder; and $\frac{OV_3}{OV_1}$ is the ratio between the cylinder volumes.

Again, if *cd* had been drawn instead of *ab*, then O*c* is the pressure between the cylinders; *pedc* and *cdf*V_3O are the respective work diagrams; *d* is the point of cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder; and $\frac{OV_3}{OV_2}$ is the ratio between the cylinders.

Hence the ratios between the cylinders may be widely different.

In fixing the ratio for any given case, the ratio is so chosen that the effective work areas of the respective cylinders and the initial stresses on the respective pistons are as nearly as possible equal.

Taking the case illustrated in Fig. 144, where $p_1 = 100$, with 8 expansions; ratio of cylinder volumes 1 : 2; back pressure 4 lbs. absolute. Comparing the work done in the two cylinders and the initial stresses on the pistons, we have—

Mean effective pressure p_m in the high-pressure cylinder—

$$p_m = p_1 \frac{1 + \log_e r}{r} - p_b$$

$$= 100 \frac{1 + 1{\cdot}386}{4} - 25$$

$$= 34{\cdot}65$$

Mean effective pressure P_m in the low-pressure cylinder—

$$P_m = 25 \frac{1 + 0{\cdot}693}{2} - 4$$

$$= 17{\cdot}16$$

Multiplying p_m and v_1 and P_m and v_2, we have—

$$(34{\cdot}65 \times 1 = 34{\cdot}65) \text{ and } (17{\cdot}16 \times 2 = 34{\cdot}32)$$

that is, the work done in the two cylinders is practically equal.

Comparing now the initial stresses on the respective pistons, we have—since these stresses are in the ratio of the net initial pressures multiplied by the relative areas of the pistons—

$$(100 - 25)1 : (25 - 4)2 :: 75 : 42, \text{ or as } 1{\cdot}8 \text{ to } 1$$

In other words, the initial stress on the high-pressure piston is much in excess of that on the low—that is, the area of the high-pressure piston is too large. Hence, when the cylinders are designed to give

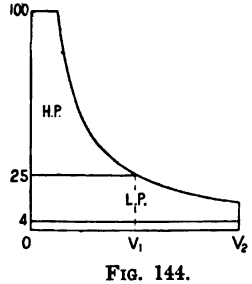


FIG. 144.

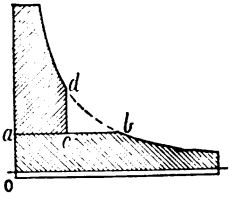


FIG. 145.

an equal distribution of the work with a continuous expansion line, the high-pressure cylinder is too large to maintain equality of initial stresses on the pistons; and at the loss of some efficiency, it is necessary in practice to reduce the dimensions of the high-pressure cylinder.

This may be done by retaining the cut-off at point *b* (Fig. 145) in the low-pressure cylinder, and reducing the high-pressure cylinder

volume from *ab* to *ac*. This arrangement will cause a fall or "drop" of pressure at the end of the stroke in the high-pressure cylinder from *d* to the receiver pressure *c*, and a consequent loss by "drop" of the triangular area *dcb*. Here the initial stress on the low-pressure piston is unchanged, while the stress on the high-pressure piston is reduced in the proportion of $ac \div ab$. By a certain amount of compromise, it will be possible in this way to approximately equalize both the work done and the initial stresses in the cylinders.

The same principles apply to the design of any number of successive cylinders.

Features of the Compound Engine.—1. *Effect of varying the Cut-off in the High-pressure cylinder on the Distribution of Power.* Suppose the cylinder ratios to be 1 : 2; the cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder to be constant at 0·5, and to enclose a volume at cut-off equal to the whole volume of the high-pressure cylinder. Then the effect on the distribution of power between the cylinders may be shown by the use of the diagram (Fig. 146), which assumes hyperbolic expansion. In practice this diagram is subject to many, and in some respects considerable, modification, but for obtaining a general idea of the various effects occurring in compound engines, whether for double, triple, or quadruple expansion, it is very helpful.

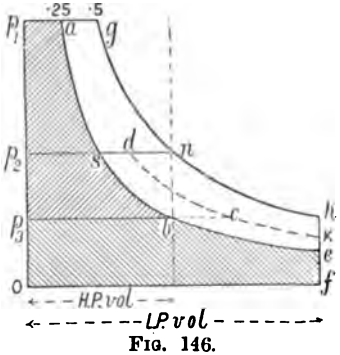


FIG. 146.

With a cut-off at 0·25 of the stroke in the high-pressure cylinder, and at an initial pressure p_1, the steam expands in this cylinder along *ab* to a terminal pressure $p_3 = p_1 \times 0{\cdot}25$, neglecting clearance. This is also the pressure in the receiver. Then the work diagram of the high-pressure cylinder is given by the area p_1abp_3, and of the low-pressure cylinder by the area p_3befo.

With a cut-off at 0·5 of the stroke in the high-pressure cylinder, approximately twice the weight of steam is supplied per stroke; the steam is exhausted from the high-pressure cylinder into the receiver at some higher back pressure p_2, acting as back pressure on the small piston and as forward pressure on the large piston, and the work diagrams are given by the areas p_1gnp_2 and p_2nhfo for the small and large cylinders respectively.

There is here, with a late cut-off, a large increase of work done in the low-pressure cylinder, while the work done in the high-pressure cylinder is nearly the same with a late as with an early cut-off.

The same point is illustrated by Figs. 147 and 148. These show that—when the power is regulated by the cut-off—as the cut-off in the high-pressure cylinder is made later, the total power of the engine is increased, and the larger share of the increased power is

taken in the low-pressure cylinder; with an early cut-off and at low powers, the larger share of the work is done in the high-pressure cylinder, and as this power is reduced to a minimum, the power in the low-pressure cylinder may be reduced to zero (Fig. 147).

In non-condensing compounds, at light loads, if by extended expansion, the mean absolute forward pressure of the steam in the low-pressure cylinder falls below that necessary to overcome the resistances due to back pressure, and the friction of the moving parts of the low-pressure engine, then the low-pressure cylinder is worse than useless, and it may, in fact, become the cause of a serious loss of efficiency.

Hence non-condensing compound engines are most suitable where the load is fairly constant, and they should not be worked with a terminal pressure on the low-pressure cylinder below about 20 lbs. absolute. If expanded below atmospheric pressure, the low-pressure diagram will show a negative-work loop (see Fig. 150).

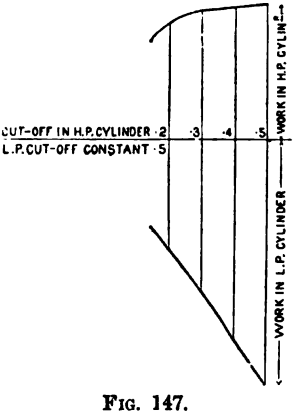


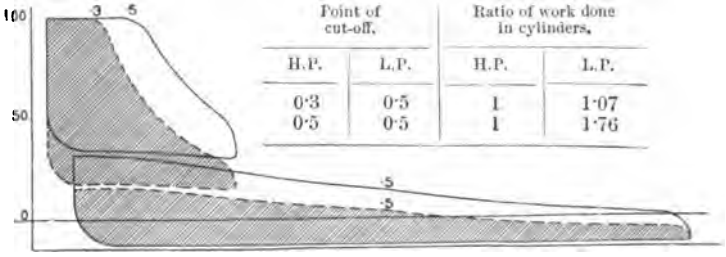
FIG. 147.

2. *Effect of throttling the Steam-supply on the Distribution of the Power between the Cylinders.*—Considering ratios of cylinders 1 : 2 as before, without drop and the cut-off in both cylinders constant at half-stroke. Then (Fig. 146) if the initial steam pressure be p_1, the terminal pressure in the high-pressure cylinder will be $p_1 \div 2$; this also will be the pressure in the receiver, and the terminal pressure in the low-pressure cylinder will be $p_1 \div 4$. The work areas in the high and low-pressure cylinders are p_1gnp_2 and p_2nhfo respectively.

If, now, the steam-supply be throttled down to p_2 lbs. $= \frac{1}{2}p_1$, then the effect on the distribution of power between the cylinders is seen; thus, area p_2sbp_3 for the high-pressure, and p_3befo for the low-pressure cylinder. At high powers the distribution is the same as in Case (1) with a late cut-off (0·5), but at low powers and with the steam-supply throttled, the work done in the high-pressure cylinder is now much reduced, while the work done in the low-pressure cylinder remains the same as in Case (1) with cut-off at 0·25. This shows a less satisfactory distribution of the power between the cylinders than if the power had been reduced by an earlier cut-off instead of by throttling. It also shows that, theoretically, throttling to a pressure p_2 is less economical than altering the cut-off from 0·5 to 0·25 with constant initial pressure, for in both cases the same weight of steam is exhausted per stroke, namely, the low-pressure cylinder volume at pressure fe, though, with throttling, the useful work area is reduced by the area p_1asp_2. The theoretical gain would not, however, be fully realized in practice, owing to greater loss by cylinder condensation with an early cut-off.

A similar result is seen by diagrams Figs. 149 and 150, which

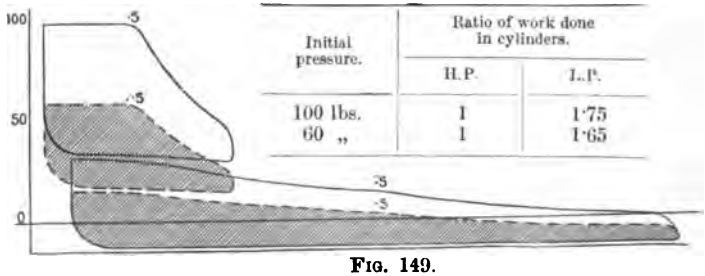
VARIABLE CUT-OFF IN H.P. CYLINDER.
CONSTANT „ L.P. „



Point of cut-off.		Ratio of work done in cylinders.	
H.P.	L.P.	H.P.	L.P.
0·3	0·5	1	1·07
0·5	0·5	1	1·76

FIG. 148.

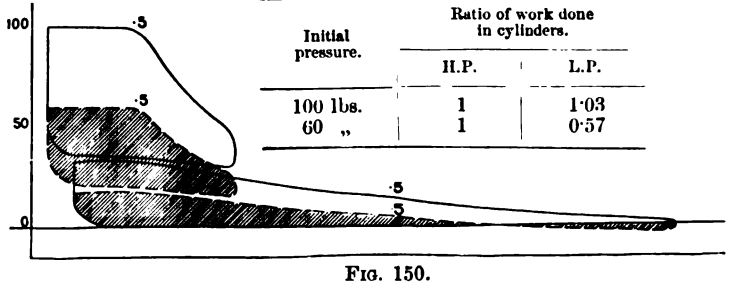
THROTTLING GOVERNING IN H.P. CYLINDER.
CONDENSING.



Initial pressure.	Ratio of work done in cylinders.	
	H.P.	L.P.
100 lbs.	1	1·75
60 „	1	1·65

FIG. 149.

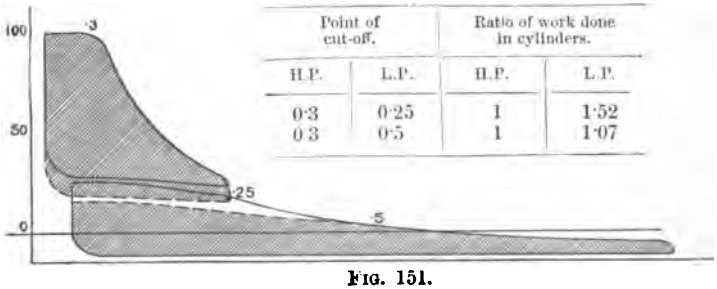
NON-CONDENSING. THROTTLING.



Initial pressure.	Ratio of work done in cylinders.	
	H.P.	L.P.
100 lbs.	1	1·03
60 „	1	0·57

FIG. 150.

CONSTANT CUT-OFF IN H.P. CYLINDER.
VARIABLE „ L.P. „



Point of cut-off.		Ratio of work done in cylinders.	
H.P.	L.P.	H.P.	L.P.
0·3	0·25	1	1·52
0·3	0·5	1	1·07

FIG. 151.

show the effect of throttling. Fig. 149 is for a condensing engine, and Fig. 150 for a non-condensing engine. The dotted shaded areas show the work areas when the initial pressure has been reduced by throttling the steam-supply to the high-pressure cylinder. The full-line figures show the effect on the distribution of the power before the initial pressure was reduced by throttling.

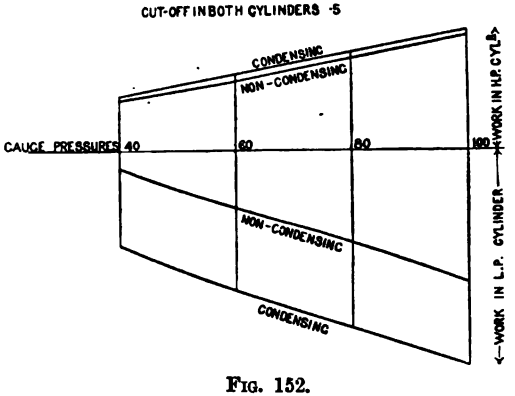


FIG. 152.

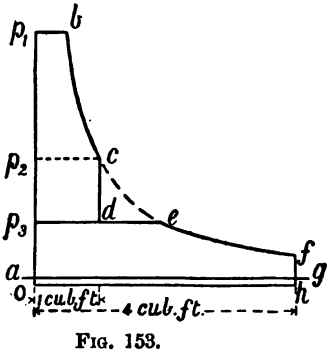


FIG. 153.

Fig. 152 shows the effect on the distribution of the power between the cylinders, of throttling the initial steam between the ranges of 100 and 40 lbs. pressure. Vertical measurements above and below the pressure line give the work done in the high and low-pressure cylinders respectively. The effect of adding a condenser is also shown.

3. *Effect of a Variable Cut-off in the Low-pressure Cylinder on the Distribution of the Power between the Cylinders.*—Unequal distribution of the power can be remedied to some extent by regulating the point of cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder. Thus, suppose the cylinder ratios = 1 : 4, and cut-off in each cylinder at half-stroke, and let p_1bcdp_3 (Fig. 153) be the work area for the high-pressure, and p_3efga the work area for the low-pressure cylinder. If now the cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder be changed from 0·5 to 0·25 of the stroke, then the work areas will be changed, the high-pressure diagram being reduced to the area p_1bcp_2, and the low-pressure diagram being increased to the area p_2cfga. Conversely, if the cut-off

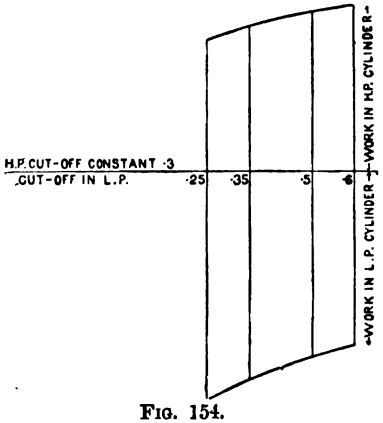


FIG. 154.

in the low-pressure is made later, the receiver-pressure line will fall, the high-pressure area will be thereby increased and the low-pressure decreased. Hence, to throw a larger share of the total work into the low-pressure cylinder, make the cut-off in that cylinder earlier, and *vice versâ*. This is also illustrated in Figs. 151 and 154. An adjustable cut-off for the low-pressure cylinders of marine engines is shown in Fig. 81.

Fig. 155 shows indicator diagrams of one set of engines of H.M.S. *Powerful*, a twin-screw cruiser.[1] The full-lined diagrams represent the power-distribution between the cylinders when the engines exerted 13,000 I.H.P., and the dotted-lined diagrams the power-distribution at 2500 I.H.P.

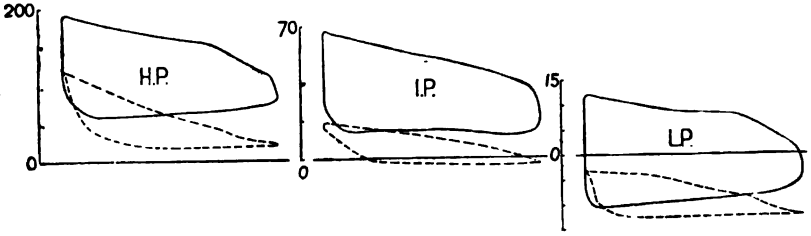


FIG. 155.

		At full power.		At low power.
Boiler pressure (lbs.)	... ...	205·0	...	190·0
Vacuum (ins.)	... ...	26·25	...	26·75
Revolutions ...	... ...	116·95	...	69·18
I.H.P. H.P.	... ...	4287·48	...	981·38
I.H.P. I.P.	... ...	4233·15	...	729·27
I.H.P. F.L.	... ...	2263·51	...	426·03
I.H.P. A.L.	... ...	2237·79	...	426·03
	Total	13,021·93	...	2562·71

The engines are four-cylinder, triple-expansion engines, having one high-pressure cylinder, one intermediate cylinder, and two low-pressure cylinders, namely, the "forward" and the "after" low-pressure cylinder respectively. By using two low-pressure cylinders instead of one, the necessary volume is obtained without an excessively large cylinder diameter.

4. *Receiver Volume.*—If the volume of the receiver or chamber between the cylinders of compound engines (including the exhaust chamber and exhaust pipe of the first cylinder, and the valve chest of the second cylinder) were indefinitely large, then the back-pressure line of the small cylinder and the forward-pressure line of the large cylinder would each be a horizontal straight line, as shown in the approximate diagrams (Figs. 142, 144).

In practice the receiver volume is from one and a half to several

[1] Reduced from diagrams given in a paper by Sir A. J. Durston before the Institution of Naval Architects, April, 1897.

times the volume of the high-pressure cylinder; and the effect of the restricted volume of the receiver is to make the back-pressure line of the high and the admission line of the low-pressure diagram somewhat irregular.

The theoretical form of these portions of the diagrams is seen in Fig. 160, which represents the pressures in the receiver, assuming *pv* constant.

The receiver volume is usually made as small as possible to avoid loss of heat by radiation, but the necessities of the design determine the volume. Other things being equal, the effect on the power-distribution, of a small receiver, is to increase somewhat the back pressure against the high-pressure piston, and increase the initial pressure on the low. Increasing the volume of the receiver, therefore, increases to a small extent the area of the high-pressure diagram, and decreases the area of the low.

5. An increase of pressure sometimes occurs in the low-pressure cylinder towards the point of cut-off, shown in practice as a more or less sudden increase of pressure during admission on the low-pressure diagram, especially when the engine is running slowly. This is due to the high-pressure cylinder exhaust passing into the receiver before cut-off has taken place in the low.

Practical Modifications.—In discussing first principles of the compound engine simple approximate diagrams were used merely to illustrate the principles, but in practice numerous corrections of these assumed conditions have to be made, as will be seen by comparing diagrams Fig. 155 with the figures previously considered. The losses in practice may be summarized as follows :—

1. The loss of pressure between the pressure in the boiler and the initial pressure on the piston; the amount of the loss varies with the speed of the engine, its distance from the boiler, the design of the steam-passages and valve gear.

2. The loss due to wiredrawing during admission of the steam to the h.p. cylinder. This causes the mean admission pressure between the beginning of the stroke and the point of cut-off to be less than the initial pressure.

3. The loss due to " drop " of pressure between the end of expansion in the high-pressure cylinder and the initial pressure in the low.

4. The loss of pressure between the back pressure of one cylinder and the forward pressure of the succeeding cylinder.

5. The loss due to early opening of exhaust. This is generally very small.

6. The loss due to back pressure on the low-pressure cylinder. This may be considerable; thus, if the h.p. and l.p. piston ratios are 1 : 7, then 1 lb. additional back pressure due to defective vacuum in the condenser will be equivalent to a loss of 7 lbs. mean pressure on the h.p. piston.

7. In unjacketed cylinders, the gradual reduction of the weight of steam present as steam as the expansion proceeds by transmutation of heat into work.

For double-expansion engines, with a given fixed terminal pressure, usually 10 lbs., the number of expansions falls in practice to about 85 per cent., and in triple-expansion engines to 70 per cent., of that given by initial pressure ÷ terminal pressure.

The *diagram factor* is the ratio of the actual mean effective pressure of an engine, referred to the low-pressure cylinder, to the theoretical mean effective pressure obtained with the same number of expansions, and supposing the only losses to be the back pressure of 3 lbs. for condensing engines and 16 lbs. for non-condensing engines. The theoretical expansion curve may be assumed either adiabatic or hyperbolic; for simplicity it is usually assumed hyperbolic, and the diagram factor is found accordingly. Thus—

$$\text{Diagram factor} = \frac{\text{actual mean pressure}}{\text{theoretical mean pressure}} = \frac{p_e}{p_m} = \text{K}$$

$$\text{Actual mean pressure} = p_e = \frac{\text{I.H.P.} \times 33{,}000}{\text{LAN}}$$

referred to low-pressure cylinder, where A = area of low-pressure cylinder, and LN = piston speed in feet per minute.

$$\text{Theoretical mean pressure} = p_m = p_1 \frac{1 + \log_e \text{R}}{\text{R}} - p_b$$

where R = (volume of piston displacement of l.p. cylinder plus clearance) ÷ (volume of steam at cut-off in h.p. cylinder).

EXAMPLE.—Find the diagram factor for a compound condensing engine, cut-off at 0·3 of the stroke in the high-pressure cylinder; boiler pressure, 100 lbs. by gauge; horse-power, 150; piston speed, 575 ft. per minute; diameters of cylinders, 11 and 20 ins.; stroke, 15 ins.; back pressure, 3 lbs.

Omitting effects of clearance—

$$\text{Number of expansions} = \frac{1}{0{\cdot}3} \times \left(\frac{20}{11}\right)^2 = 11$$

Theoretical mean pressure—

$$p_m = 115 \frac{1 + \log_e 11}{11} - 3$$
$$= 32{\cdot}54 \text{ lbs.}$$

Actual mean pressure referred to low-pressure cylinder—

$$p = \frac{150 \times 33{,}000}{575 \times 314{\cdot}16} = 27{\cdot}4 \text{ lbs.}$$

$$\text{K} = \frac{27{\cdot}4}{32{\cdot}54} = 0{\cdot}84 = \text{diagram factor}$$

DIAGRAM FACTORS FOR COMPOUND ENGINES.

High speed, short stroke, unjacketed	60 to 80 per cent.
Slower rotational speeds „	70 „ 85 „
„ „ jacketed	85 „ 90 „
Corliss valve gear jacketed	90 „
Triple-expansion marine engines (Seaton) ...	60 „ 66 „

To find the Sizes of the Cylinders for a Compound Engine of Given Power.

EXAMPLE.—Required a double-expansion compound condensing engine of 300 I.H.P.; stroke of piston, 3 ft. 6 in.; revolutions per minute, 75; steam pressure by gauge = 100 lbs.; terminal pressure, 8·5 lbs.; and 3 lbs. back pressure.

To find first the Diameter of the Low-pressure Cylinder.

$$\text{The theoretical ratio of expansion} = \frac{115}{8{\cdot}5} = 13{\cdot}5$$

$$\text{Probable actual ratio of expansion} = 13{\cdot}5 \times 0{\cdot}85 = 11{\cdot}5$$

Theoretical mean effective pressure reckoned on *actual* number of expansions—

$$p_m = (p_1 \frac{1 + \log_\epsilon R}{R} - 3)$$
$$= 115 \frac{1 + 2{\cdot}44}{11{\cdot}5} - 3$$
$$= 31{\cdot}4$$

multiplying by diagram factor 0·85 (from table)—

$$\text{Actual mean effective pressure} = 31{\cdot}4 \times 0{\cdot}85 = 26{\cdot}69$$
$$A = \frac{300 \times 33{,}000}{26{\cdot}69 \times 3{\cdot}5 \times 150} = 706{\cdot}5 \text{ sq. ins.}$$

diameter of l.p. cylinder = 30 ins.

To find the Diameter of the High-pressure Cylinder.—Having determined the dimensions of the low-pressure cylinder, the diameter of the high-pressure cylinder will depend upon a number of conditions, but the chief object usually is to provide that the power of the engine shall be divided equally between the cylinders, and that the maximum stresses on the piston shall be as nearly as possible equal. So far as the power of the engine is concerned, provided the low-pressure cylinder is correctly designed, the total power will be on the whole independent of the ratio of the cylinders, though the smooth and economical working of the engine may be much influenced by it. The following tables give the proportions usually adopted. Then, allowing a ratio of $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 from the table, area of high-pressure piston = 706·5 ÷ 3·5 = 201·86 sq. ins. = 16 ins. diameter.

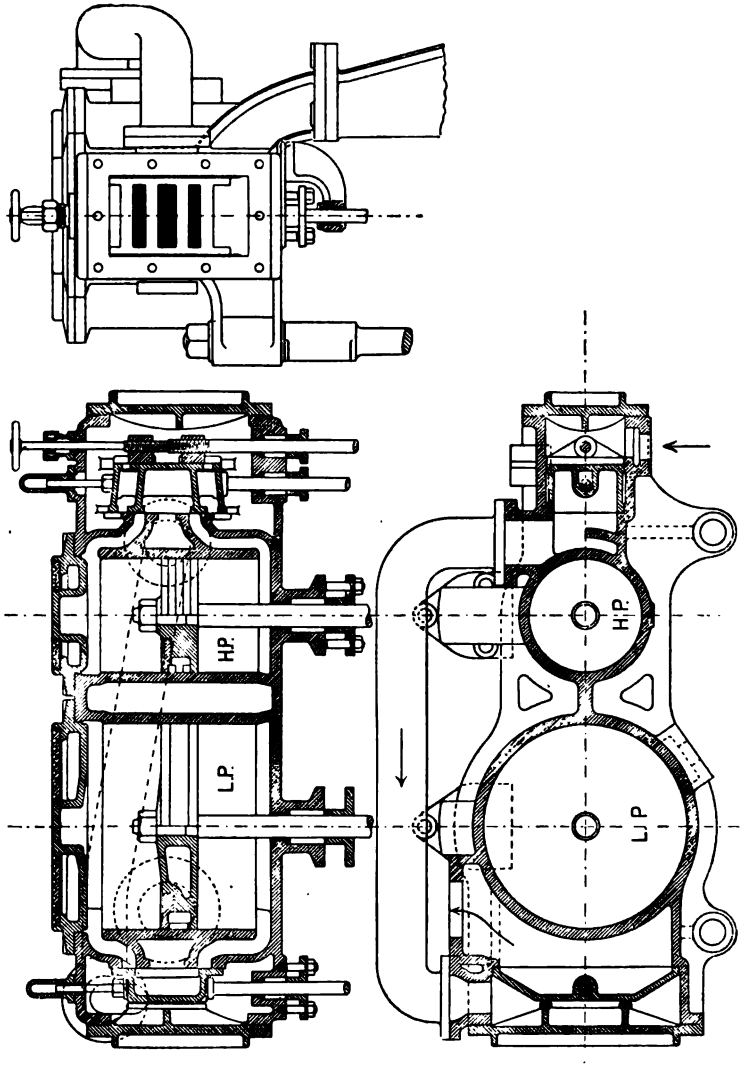


FIG. 156.

DOUBLE-EXPANSION COMPOUND ENGINES.

Condensing.

Boiler pressure ... ... lbs.	80	90	100	120
Ratio of L.P. to H.P. volumes ...	3	3¼	3½	4

Non-condensing.

Boiler pressure ... ... lbs.	90–100	120
Ratio of L.P. to H.P. volumes	2¼	3¼

LOCOMOTIVE COMPOUNDS (VON BORRIES).

	Ratio of L.P. to H.P. vols.
Large locomotives with tenders	2 to 2·05
Tank locomotives	2·15 to 2·2

TRIPLE-EXPANSION ENGINES (HORIZONTAL).

Boiler-pressure.	H.P. vol.	I.P. vol.	L.P. vol.
140	1	2¼	6½
160	1	2⅜	7
180	1	2½	7½

Marine engineers adopt the ratio for cylinder diameters of triple-expansion engines of about 3, 5, and 8 respectively. Then the areas of the successive pistons are to one another as $3^2 : 5^2 : 8^2 = 1 : 2{\cdot}78 : 7{\cdot}11$. The diagram (Fig. 157) illustrates the way in which the ratios between the cylinder diameters increase as the initial pressures increase, for triple-expansion condensing engines, the respective cylinder diameters being measured horizontally, from zero for each cylinder on the horizontal line drawn through the required boiler pressure.

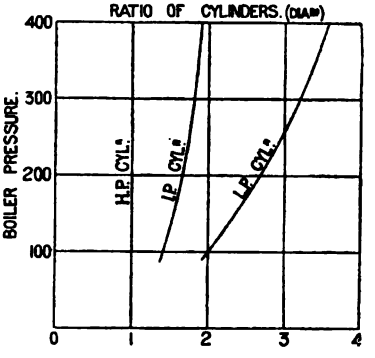


FIG. 157.

Effects of Various Portions of Work Area on Condensation in Multiple-Expansion Engines.—Consider the case of a triple-expansion

engine having high-pressure, intermediate, and low-pressure cylinders. Then, referring to Fig. 158—

1. Work done upon high-pressure piston up to cut-off $= a_1 + a_2 + a_3$. This work is done by the external latent heat of the steam provided at the boiler, and is not followed by condensation due to the work done.

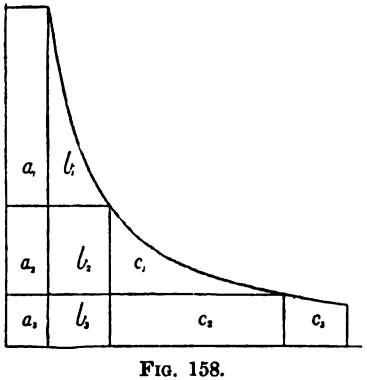


FIG. 158.

2. Work done in high-pressure cylinder after cut-off $= b_1 + b_2 + b_3$. Heat-units converted into work $=$ (area $b_1 + b_2 + b_3$) $\div$ 778. This loss of heat, due to work done, is followed by equivalent condensation, and the steam is made permanently wet to this extent throughout.

3. Work done against high-pressure piston $= (a_2 + b_2 + a_3 + b_3) =$ work done upon intermediate-pressure piston up to cut-off. Net work done by steam $= 0$. No condensation due to work done.

4. Work done by steam during expansion in I.P. cylinder $= c_1 + c_2$. Heat-units converted into work $=$ (area $c_1 + c_2$) $\div$ 778. This is followed by an equivalent condensation of steam, increasing permanent wetness.

5. Work done against I.P. piston $=$ work done upon L.P. piston $= (a_3 + b_3 + c_2)$. Net work done by steam $= 0$. No condensation.

6. Work done by steam during expansion in L.P. cylinder $= c_3$. Heat-units converted into work $=$ (area c_3) $\div$ 778, with equivalent condensation, producing permanent wetness.

Diagram of Relative Piston Displacement in Compound Engines.—Having given the ratios of cylinders and clearance and receiver volumes for a given compound engine, it is possible to follow the steam through the engine, and to construct diagrams representing the nature of the changes of volume and pressure between the points of entering and leaving the cylinder.

In Fig. 159, horizontal lines are lines of volume, and vertical lines are subdivided into portions of a revolution. Thus, starting at a on the top line, let aO = volume of high-pressure clearance (c_h); $O5$ = volume of high-pressure piston displacement (v_h); ab = volume of receiver (R); $b5'$ = volume of low-pressure clearance (c_l); and $5'O'$ = volume of low-pressure piston displacement.

On the lines O5 and O'5' draw semicircles representing a half-revolution of the crank-pin, and divide it into any number of equal parts—say five, as shown. On the vertical line to the left of the figure set off ten equal spaces representing parts of a revolution. The diagram is completed for one and a half revolution. The cranks being supposed at right angles, when the h.p. piston is at beginning of stroke O the l.p. piston is at half-stroke K. A curve is now drawn

for each cylinder, called the "curve of piston displacement," through the points of intersection of the horizontals from the divisions on the line of revolution, and of the verticals from the corresponding

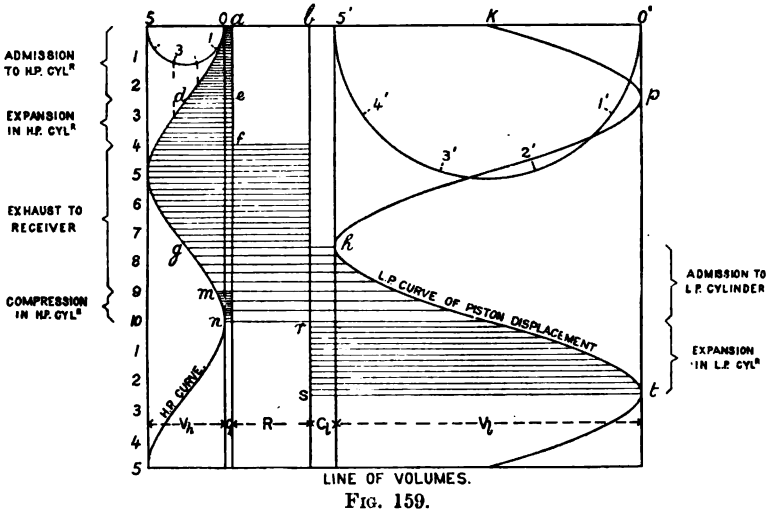


FIG. 159.

numbers on the crank-pin circles. This curve gives, by horizontal measurements to it, as shown by the shade lines, the volume of steam in the h.p. cylinder, including clearance for any position of the piston, before exhaust. After exhaust, it gives the volume of the steam on the exhaust side of the piston, and including the receiver volume; and finally, when both cylinders are in communication, the horizontal distance between the lines gives the volume of the steam for any relative position of the pistons, the displacement curves having been drawn so that the cranks have the required relative position with one another. In the case chosen, when the high-pressure piston is at the end of the stroke, as at O, the low-pressure piston is at half-stroke, as at K.

We may now follow the varying volume of the steam in its passage through the compound engine. First, the high-pressure clearance aO is filled with steam at initial pressure, and the steam is continued to point of cut-off at half-stroke in high-pressure cylinder, and volume in cylinder = de. The steam is then expanded till nearly the end of the stroke, when the exhaust port opens, and at f the steam passes into the receiver. The exhaust side of the high-pressure piston and the receiver are in communication, as shown by the ruled lines, until the low-pressure steam port opens at h. Here the volume of the steam = gh. At m the high-pressure exhaust port is closed, and compression begins. At half-stroke of the low-pressure piston, namely at r, cut-off takes place, and the steam finally expands to volume st.

The application of the diagram (Fig. 159) to the consideration of the indicator diagrams of compound engines is shown in Fig. 160. This figure shows, as before, the piston-displacement curves for

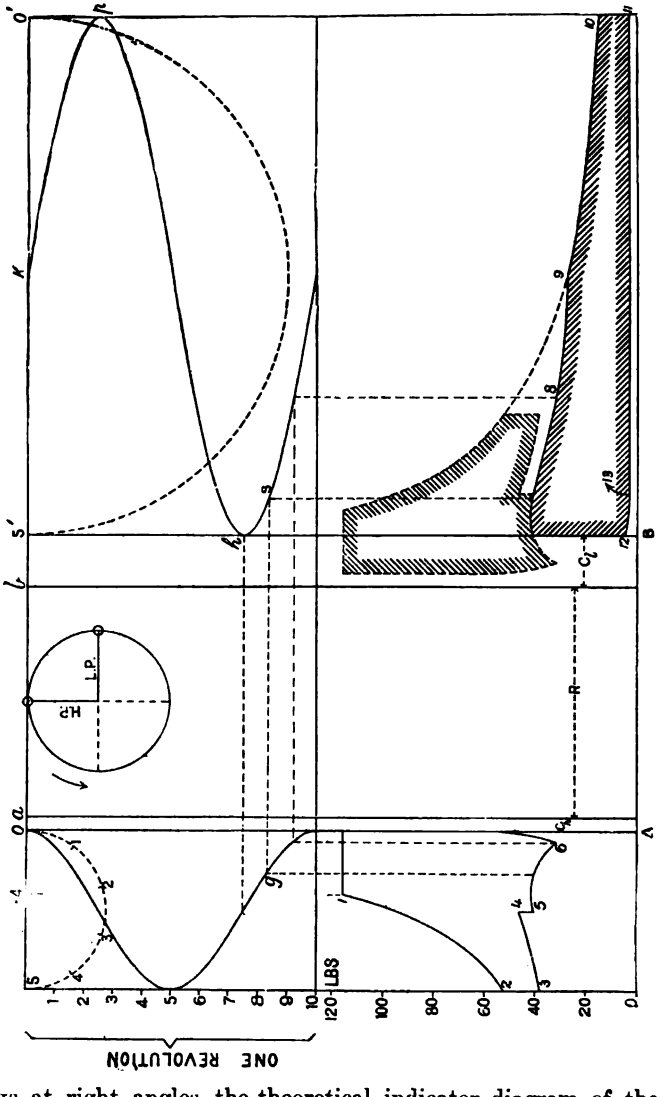


FIG. 160.

cranks at right angles, the theoretical indicator diagram of the high-pressure cylinder being drawn below the high-pressure piston curve, and the low-pressure indicator diagram below the low-pressure curve.

The initial pressure, being known, is set up from the zero line of pressure. In the diagram, cut-off takes place at 0·4 of the stroke in the high-pressure cylinder, and the initial pv being known, all other points in the cycle may be determined, assuming hyperbolic expansion, as follows:—

In the equations, the subscript figures refer to corresponding figures on the portions of the figure representing the theoretical indicator diagram. Thus v_3 = volume of steam at point 3, measured from beginning of stroke—that is, from vertical line AO and to the left in the high-pressure diagram, and from vertical line through B and to the right in the low-pressure diagram. When the exhaust side of the high-pressure cylinder is in communication with the low-pressure cylinder, then the volume, including that of the receiver, is given by the horizontal intercept between the lines of piston displacement.

Since, for the purpose of this diagram, it may be assumed that pv = a constant—

$$p_1(v_1 + c_h) = p_{10}(v_{10} + c_l) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

from which the terminal pressure is obtained. And the point of cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder being known, then—

$$p_9(v_9 + c_l) = p_{10}(v_{10} + c_l) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

From which p_9, or the pressure at cut-off in the low-pressure cylinder, and therefore also the pressure in the receiver at that time, is known.

Then the pressures at all other points may be obtained by the following equations:—

Referring to the theoretical indicator diagrams in the lower part of Fig. 160, then for the high-pressure cylinder—

$$p_1(v_1 + c_h) = p_2(v_2 + c_h) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (3)$$

At point 2 the steam exhausts and mixes with that in the receiver, which is at some pressure p_9 previously calculated.

$$p_2(v_2 + c_h) + p_9\mathrm{R} = p_3(v_3 + c_h + \mathrm{R}) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (4)$$

But during the return of the high-pressure piston, so long as the low-pressure cylinder is not open to receive steam, the volume enclosed is for the moment reduced, hence the pressure rises to p_4 until the low-pressure valve opens the port to steam, when the pressure instantly falls to p_5.

$$p_3(v_3 + c_h + \mathrm{R}) = p_4(v_4 + c_h + \mathrm{R}) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (5)$$

When the low-pressure valve opens to steam, the receiver steam mixes with that in the clearance space of the low-pressure cylinder; thus—

$$p_4(v_4 + c_h + \mathrm{R}) + p_{12}c_l = p_5(v_5 + c_h + \mathrm{R} + c_l) \quad . \quad . \quad (6)$$

This action continues, and meanwhile the low-pressure piston is moving forward and increases the displacement, causing the pressure to fall to p_6, when the high-pressure exhaust-valve closes, and compression begins in the high-pressure cylinder; then—

$$p_5(v_5 + c_h + \mathrm{R} + c_l) = p_6(v_6 + c_h + \mathrm{R} + c_l + v_8) \quad . \quad (7)$$

where v_s is the volume displaced by the low-pressure piston from the beginning of its stroke, and which volume may be measured by the horizontal intercepted between the lines of piston displacement, as shown by the dotted projectors.

The back pressure p_{11} in the low-pressure cylinder is fixed—

$$(p_{12}c_l) = p_{11}(v_{13} + c_l) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (8)$$

The same principles may be further extended to represent the changes in any number of cylinders by taking two at a time.

Over the low-pressure diagram the high-pressure diagram is shown dotted. It has been transferred from the opposite side of the figure to show more clearly the relation between the diagrams.

To combine Indicator Diagrams of Compound Engines (Fig. 161).—This is a method of constructing the diagrams to a common scale of

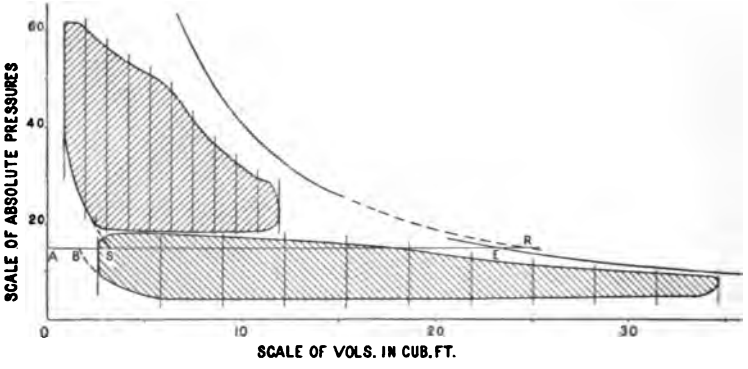


FIG. 161.

volumes and pressures for the purpose of showing the relative work areas to a uniform scale, and of seeing where the losses occur which are peculiar to compound engines.

The original indicator diagrams for each cylinder are first divided into ten equal parts, as in the ordinary way, and the clearance line and saturation curve are drawn on the original diagrams by the method already described (p. 116).

Then taking a length of, say, about 12 in. for the length of the low-pressure diagram, set off on a horizontal line—which may serve as the scale of volumes and as the absolute zero line of the pressure,—a distance so that the length of the low-pressure diagram represents, to the scale chosen, the piston displacement of the low-pressure cylinder.

To the same scale set back the clearance volume AS of the low-pressure cylinder. Through point A raise a perpendicular line, which is called the clearance line, or the zero line of volumes, and from this zero mark off the scale of volumes as shown in Fig. 161. This scale is the scale of all volumes measured on the diagram.

The common scale of pressures chosen may be that of the original low-pressure indicator diagram, or some multiple, say 1·5 of that scale. Then first, to complete the extended low-pressure diagram, divide the length chosen for this diagram into the same number of divisions (namely ten) as marked on the original indicator diagram, and set up to the scale chosen on the respective division lines of the enlarged diagram, the absolute forward and backward pressures given at the corresponding divisions of the original diagram. These points, when joined up by a free curve, will be a reproduction to an extended scale of the original indicator diagram.

To reproduce the high-pressure diagram to the new scales, set off the clearance volume and piston displacement of the high-pressure cylinder to the same scale of volume as used for the low-pressure cylinder, and divide the piston displacement into ten equal parts. Then transfer to these division lines the absolute forward and back pressure given at the corresponding division lines of the original high-pressure indicator diagram. The original indicator diagrams should first be measured with the scale of the spring used in taking the diagram, and the actual absolute forward and back pressures marked upon them, so that these numbers can be transferred at once to the combined diagram with the enlarged scale of pressures.

If the scale of the original low-pressure diagram is $\frac{1}{12}$, and that of the high-pressure diagram $\frac{1}{40}$, then, if the scale of pressures chosen for the combined diagram is $\frac{1}{10}$, the vertical dimensions of the diagrams on the enlarged scale will be $\frac{12}{10}$ of the original scale of pressures for the low-pressure cylinder, and $\frac{40}{10}$ of the original scale for the high-pressure cylinder.

The saturation curve is transferred from the original diagram to the combined diagram in each case, by the method of "dry steam fraction."

It is probable that the saturation curve of the respective cylinders will not coincide—that is, will not be continuous. This could only occur if the same weight of cushion steam was retained in each cylinder. Generally the weight of cushion steam is less in the lower-pressure cylinders, and therefore the saturation curve of the first cylinder falls outside that of the second cylinder.

In each cylinder we have during expansion the weight of steam supplied from the boiler per stroke, called the "cylinder feed," and the steam retained in the clearance space at compression. In the diagram (Fig. 161) the compression curve of the low-pressure diagram is carried up by a dotted line to any horizontal line, in this case the atmospheric line, and the compression curve of the high-pressure diagram is brought down to the same line. Then AB = weight of cushion steam in the low-pressure cylinder, and AS = weight of cushion steam in the high-pressure cylinder; also SR = BE = "cylinder feed" per stroke.

CHAPTER VIII.

SUPERHEATED STEAM.

THE temperature of saturated steam depends upon its pressure. If heat be taken from it, some of the steam is condensed, but the temperature of what remains is unchanged so long as the pressure is unchanged.

If heat be added to the steam when it is not in contact with water, its temperature will be raised above that due to its pressure; in other words, it will be *superheated.*

The temperature of saturated steam in the presence of water cannot be raised without raising its pressure. On the other hand, steam may be superheated without raising its pressure if the steam be permitted to expand as the heat is added. If steam were superheated in a closed chamber where no expansion is possible, then the pressure would increase with the temperature, as in the case of any ordinary gas. But in practice the steam is used in the engine as fast as it is generated, and the displacement of the piston is practically an indefinite extension of the volume of the steam space of the boiler.

Hence the effect of superheating the steam which passes through the superheater at constant pressure is to increase its volume per pound at the given pressure, the increase of volume being assumed—in the present state of our knowledge of the subject—to be proportional to the increase of its absolute temperature.

Superheated Steam previously used and afterwards abandoned.—In 1859, in a paper read before the Institution of Mechanical Engineers on superheated steam, by Mr. John Penn,[1] several cases were referred to in which superheated steam was then being used successfully, and for some ten years afterwards superheaters were frequently applied, especially in marine work.

In 1860 particulars were given [1] of Parson and Pilgrim's method of superheating, as carried out on the boilers of passenger steamers then running on the Thames. This method consisted of cast-iron pipes placed in the fire-grate, and showed that even in those days the importance was appreciated of placing the superheater near the furnace, and not merely in the uptake, to be heated by waste gases, as was the case generally in the marine practice of that time.

But at an early period in the history of superheating, it was found generally that if superheating was carried beyond about from 400° to 500° Fahr., trouble was liable to occur in the form of scored cylinders and valve faces, the cause of which was probably due to

[1] *Proc. Inst. Mech. Engineers*, 1859 and 1860.

defective lubrication. The tallow, which was the lubricant of that time, decomposed at temperatures lower than that of the steam in the valve-chest, and the charred residue was worse than useless for the purpose for which it was intended.

It was also found that the superheater tubes were sometimes burnt out, owing probably to a solid deposit on the inside of the superheater tubes through the use of salt feed-water. This was before the days of the surface condenser.

Considerable attention had also been given to superheating from an early period by the Alsatian engineers, and in 1857 Mr. Hirn issued a report of trials and experiments made by him on the value of superheating, which showed that a large gain might be expected from the use of superheated steam. The boiler pressure used by him was 55 lbs., and with steam superheated from 410° to 490° Fahr. he obtained economies of from 20 to 47 per cent.

Superheaters continued to be used, more or less, down to about 1870, after which they were rapidly abandoned.

The abandonment of superheating was probably due to the introduction, about that time, of steam of higher pressures and higher normal temperatures, accompanied by the rapid introduction of the compound engine, as it was found that by these means the economy obtainable by superheating might be more easily secured, and with fewer mechanical difficulties. Accordingly engineers devoted themselves to increasing the range of steam-pressures, and to the development of multiple-expansion engines. But with saturated steam the limit of efficiency is now nearly reached; and engineers are once more reverting to superheating, in which direction a large advance on present-day efficiency may be expected, and, in fact, is now being obtained.

The *specific heat* of superheated steam at constant pressure, according to Regnault, = 0·4805, and at constant volume = 0·346.

The *total heat* (H_s) of superheated steam is the heat required to raise the temperature of 1 lb. of water at 32° Fahr. to the boiling-point (t_1) due to the pressure (p_1); then to convert it into saturated steam at the same pressure; and finally to superheat the steam to some temperature t_s while the pressure p_1 remains constant. Then—

$$H_s = H_1 + 0{\cdot}48\ (t_s - t_1)$$

where H_1 = the total heat of saturated steam at pressure p_1.

Temperature-Entropy Diagram for Superheated Steam.—In Fig. 162, let *a*AB*fc* represent, by an area in heat-units, the heat required to generate 1 lb. of saturated steam at temperature T_1. The method of constructing this diagram is explained on p. 42.

If now this steam be superheated to some temperature T_s, the additional heat required = $Q_s = 0{\cdot}48(T_s - T_1)$, and the area representing the superheat is drawn by setting off first the entropy *cd* of the superheated steam on the scale of entropy, making $cd = 0{\cdot}48(\log_e T_s - \log_e T_1)$; and from *d* raising a perpendicular dT_s to a height T_s equal to the absolute temperature of the superheat. The line *f* T_s is a line

of constant pressure, and with the scale usually adopted is very nearly straight for small ranges of temperature. For a large range points may be found for intermediate temperatures, and a free curve drawn through them. Then the total heat required to generate 1 lb. of superheated steam from water at temperature T_2 to steam at T_1, and then to superheat it to T_s, is represented by the area $aT_2T_1fT_s da$.

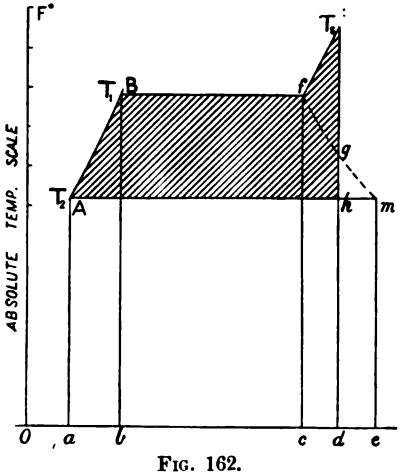


FIG. 162.

If the steam expands adiabatically from T_s to T_2, then the work done by the 1 lb. of superheated steam, if there were no losses, is represented by the area $T_sT_1fT_1hT_2$.

When the pressure of the superheated steam has fallen by expansion to g, namely, where the saturated-steam line fm is cut by the adiabatic line T_sd, the temperature has now fallen to that of saturated steam, and the steam at this point g is dry, but is no longer superheated. If the expansion is continued, the steam now becomes wet, and at h the weight of moisture present = $(hm \div T_2m)$ lb.

To find the value of the dryness fraction $x_2 = T_2h \div T_2m$, we have—

$$\frac{x_2L_2}{T_2} + \phi_2 = \frac{L_1}{T_1} + \phi_1 + 0{\cdot}48 \log_e \frac{T}{T_1}$$

from which x_2 may be obtained, where ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 = entropy of water at T_1 and T_2 respectively (see Entropy Tables in Appendix). From Fig. 162, these values are represented by—

$$ad + oa = bc + ob + cd$$

The *efficiency* of that portion of the heat added as superheat, apart from its practical effect in reducing cylinder condensation, may be seen by considering the somewhat exaggerated temperature - entropy diagram, Fig. 163.

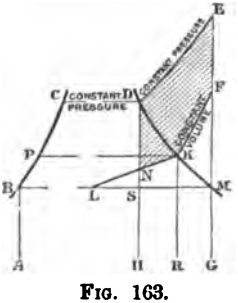


FIG. 163.

Let ABCDH represent the heat contained in 1 lb. of saturated steam at pressure and temperature C, and led HDEG represent the heat added as superheat. Then, if the superheated steam in the cylinder expanded down to back pressure BM, the steam at release would be dry saturated steam without any superheat, and the efficiency of the superheat = SDEM ÷ HDEG.

For the case where steam is superheated at release, if the steam

in the cylinder at some high temperature, E, is expanded along the adiabatic line EG to some lower pressure, F (at which, however, the steam is still superheated), then, if release takes place, the superheated steam will follow the constant-volume lines FKKL till it falls to the back-pressure line BL. The efficiency of the superheat is NDEFKN ÷ HDEG, and the loss due to release taking place before the whole of its superheat had been used is SNKFMS. The heat-equivalent of these areas can be measured from the temperature-entropy chart in heat-units.

The constant-volume curve from K is drawn by taking the specific heat of steam at constant volume 0·346 and drawing the curve KF as DE was drawn for constant pressure, substituting 0·346 for 0·48.

It will be evident from this diagram that no important gain can be theoretically expected from superheating.

Superheating and Evaporating Surface.—Heat employed to superheat the steam increases the number of units of heat carried to the engine per pound of steam supplied. Also the heat available for evaporation of water is reduced by the amount employed in superheating the steam. Thus, suppose 10 per cent. of the heat from the furnace gases employed in superheating the steam, instead of evaporating water on an extended heating surface of the boiler. The effect will be 10 per cent. less water evaporated per pound of coal burnt, and the steam generated will carry away to the engine 10 per cent. additional heat as superheat. Considering the boiler and superheater as one plant, the efficiency of this plant is unchanged, provided the temperature and quality of the chimney gases is the same in both cases; the heat supplied by the coal having been actually taken up in some form by the working fluid, whether to evaporate water or to superheat steam is immaterial from the point of view of the efficiency of the steam generator.

The effect, however, on the efficiency of the steam as a working fluid is very marked, as will be shown.

Temperature of Superheat required to maintain the Steam dry up to Cut-off.—From experiments made by the author on the behaviour of superheated steam in a small Schmidt-engine cylinder, it appears that the amount of superheat necessary to reduce the initial condensation up to cut-off by any required amount is given approximately by the following rule:[1] namely, that for each 1 per cent. of wetness at cut-off, 7·5° Fahr. of superheat must be present in the steam on admission to the engine to render the steam dry at cut-off. (A rise of 7·5° Fahr. will be equal to $7{\cdot}5 \times 0{\cdot}48 = 3{\cdot}6$ thermal units.)

For example, suppose, in a simple engine, when using saturated steam, 25 per cent. of the steam is condensed up to cut-off, and it is required to find how much superheat is necessary to secure *dry* steam in the cylinder at cut-off. Then, by the rule, since 1 per cent. of wetness requires 7·5° Fahr. of superheat, 25 per cent of wetness will

[1] Deduced by Mr. Michael Longridge from the author's experiments. See the discussion on the author's paper on "Superheated Steam Engine Trials," *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vol. cxxviii.

require 7·5 × 25 = 187·5° Fahr. of superheat = (187·5 × 0·48) = 90 thermal units per pound of steam.

These figures apply only to the experiments above referred to, and they will, of course, be subject to some modification for the numerous type of engines and variable conditions occurring in practice.

In such an engine as the one above described, only 75 per cent. of the steam is engaged in the performance of useful work. The heat supplied per pound of saturated steam would be approximately 1000 units from temperature of feed-water, and the efficiency of the heat about 10 per cent.; that is, 100 thermal units are converted into work for 1000 units supplied.

But by the addition of 90 thermal units as superheat, the whole of the 1 lb. of steam is present as dry steam in the cylinder at cut-off, and the useful work done is increased approximately in the proportion of from 75 to 100, or a gain of 33·3 per cent. That is, we now have 133·3 units of heat converted into work for an expenditure of 1090 units; or an efficiency of 133·3 ÷ 1090 × 100 = 12·23 per cent., as against 10 per cent. without superheat. This shows a very large efficiency for that portion of the heat used to superheat, namely, 33·3 ÷ 90 × 100 = 37 per cent.

Using the same numerical example, it may be seen, also, how superheating reduces the extent of the heat-exchange between the steam and the cylinder-walls; for since 7·5° of superheat per pound of steam prevents 1 per cent. of initial condensation, we have 7·5 × 0·48 = 3·6 heat-units absorbed by the walls, instead of 1 per cent. of the latent heat of the initial steam, which for steam at 100 lbs. pressure = 883·3 × 1 ÷ 100 = 8·83 heat-units, or 2·45 times as much heat. When the superheat is sufficient to maintain the steam dry at *release*, the heat-exchange is still further reduced.

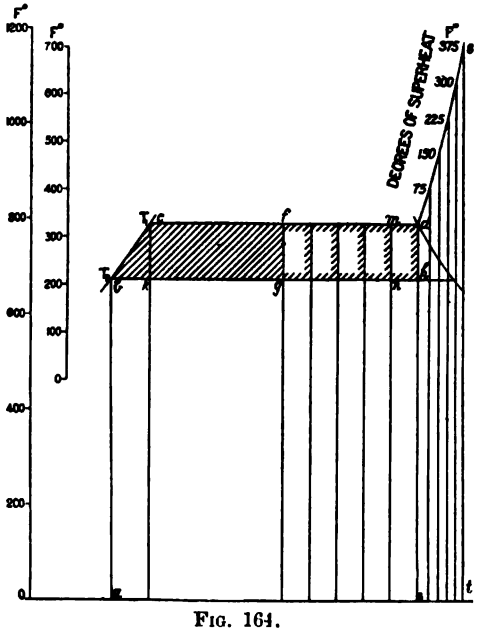


FIG. 164.

The same effects may be shown graphically by the aid of Fig. 164. Thus, suppose dry saturated steam supplied to an engine, and that the condensation at cut-off was 50 per cent. Then area *abcde* = heat supplied per pound of

steam; and the work area, when the steam is expanded down to exhaust pressure, = shaded area *cfgb*. The loss of work due to condensation = area *fdhg*.

To prevent this loss by means of superheating, by the rule given above, for every 75° of superheat added to the steam, wetness at cut-off is reduced 10 per cent., and the work area *cfgb* is gradually extended towards the right as more and more superheat is added, until with 375° of superheat (= 7·5 × 50) the steam is dry at cut-off, and the whole area *cdhb* is now available as useful work.

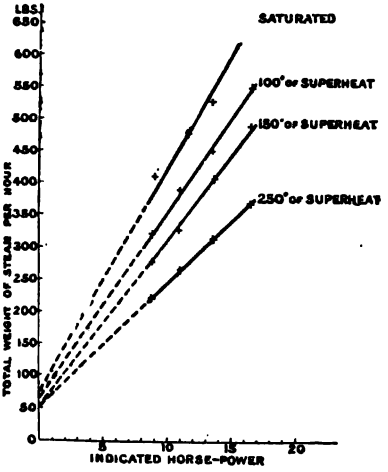


FIG. 165.

That is, in order to obtain the work area *cfgb* with saturated steam, the heat-units expended = area *abcde*, and the efficiency = *cfgb* ÷ *abcde*; but by the addition of the much smaller area *edst* heat-units as superheat, the work area is nearly doubled, and the efficiency is now *cdhb* ÷ *abcdst*. Hence the economy of heat employed as superheat.

The numerical values of these areas should be plotted for actual examples on the chart, Plate I., and measured by the student with a planimeter.

The effect on steam-consumption of gradually increasing amounts of superheat is well seen by Fig. 165, illustrating the steam-consumption with a small single-acting Schmidt motor, having a pair of 7-in. cylinders, stroke 11·8 in., running at 180 revolutions per minute, and supplied with steam with varying degrees of superheat.

According to the rule above stated, engines of the best types having a minimum loss by initial condensation will require steam less highly superheated than engines of an inferior type having a larger loss by initial condensation.

To obtain dry steam at *release*, the steam at cut-off will be more or less superheated (see Fig. 167), and this condition of things requires a further amount of superheat of from 50° to 100°, depending on the number of expansions, being greater as the expansions increase. It is also necessary to superheat the steam in the superheater to a higher degree than is required at the engine, because of the loss of heat which occurs in the passage from one to the other. This loss depends upon the length of piping and upon the quality and amount of the non-conducting lagging employed.

Reasons of Gain by Superheating.—The object of superheating is to secure dry steam in the cylinder, and the actual gain in practice which follows the use of superheated steam is due to the more or less

complete removal of the loss by cylinder condensation; for when the working fluid is saturated steam, no transfer of heat, however small in amount, can take place from the steam to the metal without accompanying deposition of water in the cylinder, which, during the exhaust stroke, is evaporated at the expense of the heat of the cylinder-walls.

The result is, that the mean temperature of the cylinder-walls with saturated steam is much below that of the steam on entering the cylinder. On the other hand, when the steam is sufficiently highly superheated it is in a far more stable condition than before the superheat was added, and can part with the whole of its superheat to the cylinder-walls without undergoing any liquefaction.

The drier the steam at cut-off, the more work is done per pound of steam passing through the cylinder. The drier the steam at release, the less demand upon the cylinder-walls during exhaust for heat of re-evaporation, and the higher the mean temperature of the cylinder-walls. A dry cylinder at release parts with little heat to the comparatively non-conducting medium passing away during exhaust, hence the smallness of the heat-exchange between the steam and the cylinder-walls under such conditions.

Superheating thus removes the principal source of loss of heat by the walls, namely, water in the cylinder at release, and reduces also the amount of the heat-exchange between the steam and the walls to a minimum.

Effect of Superheat upon Heat-exchange in the Cylinder.—By the aid of the method described as Hirn's analysis on p. 120, it

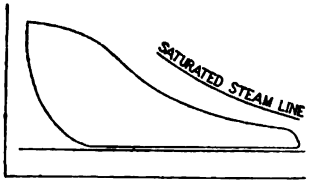


FIG. 166.—Wet steam throughout expansion.

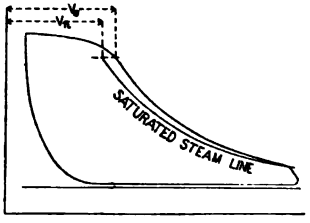


FIG. 167.—Superheated steam throughout expansion.

is possible to show by areas the effect of superheat in reducing the extent of the heat-exchange between the steam and the cylinder-walls in any actual case.

The method consists in finding the heat missing from the steam at cut-off, due to absorption of the heat by the cylinder-walls, and representing the same by a rectangular area drawn to the same scale of heat-units [1] as the indicator diagram (see Figs. 168 to 170).

The heat missing at cut-off = (total heat supplied in the steam per stroke) + (heat in steam enclosed at compression) + (work done upon

[1] The scale of the indicator diagram in heat-units = total work in foot-lbs. ÷ 778.

the steam during compression) – (work done during admission) – (heat remaining in steam at cut-off).

Using the same symbols as employed in Hirn's analysis, p. 120, then, when Q_a = heat missing at cut-off—

(1) For steam not superheated at cut-off (Fig. 166) :—

$$Q + M_o(h_o + x_o\rho_o) + AW_d = AW_a + Q_a + (M + M_o)(h_1 + x_1\rho_1).$$

(2) For steam superheated at cut-off (Fig. 167) :—

$$Q + M_o(h_o + x_o\rho_o) + AW_d = AW_a + Q_a + (M + M_o)\{h_1 + \rho_1 + c_p(t_s - t_n)\}$$

from which Q_a may be obtained.

The value of t_s, the absolute temperature of the superheated steam at cut-off, is obtained by measuring to scale from the clearance line

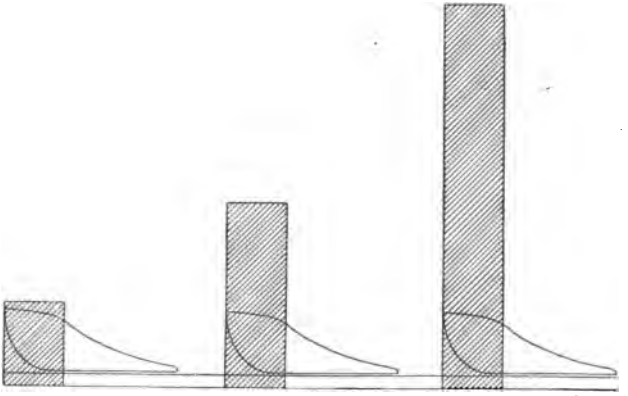


FIG. 168.—High superheat.

FIG. 169.—Medium superheat.

FIG. 170.—No superheat.

the volume v_s of the steam at cut-off on the indicator diagram; and to the same scale the volume v_n of saturated steam measured to the saturated-steam curve. Then it is assumed that the steam behaves as a perfect gas, and expands in proportion to its absolute temperature; and $t_s : t_n :: v_s : v_n$.

From a series of trials made by the author, the diagrams Figs. 168, 169, 170 have been drawn, showing the way in which the extent of the heat-interchange with the cylinder walls during admission is reduced by superheating. The heat-exchange area, shown shaded, and equal in value to Q_a in the above formula, is drawn to the same scale as the work-area of the indicator diagram expressed in heat-units. The Figs. 168 to 170 show how the heat-exchange becomes smaller as the degree of superheat increases, or, in other words, as the dryness of the steam up to cut-off increases. The power and speed of the engine, and therefore also the area of the indicator diagram, are constant throughout.

Effect of Superheat on Weight of Steam required per Stroke.—With a constant speed and power of engine, and a constant area of

indicator diagram, but a varying degree of superheat in the steam, the relative weights of steam passing through the cylinder per stroke, may be shown by placing the dry-steam curve upon the diagram as explained on p. 116.

Then for the constant-work diagram, shown shaded (Fig. 171), the weight of steam required per stroke when no superheat is used is represented by *ad* lbs.

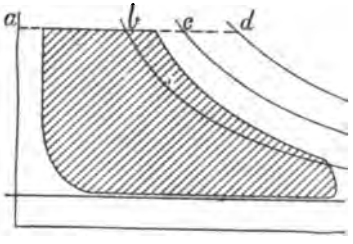


FIG. 171.

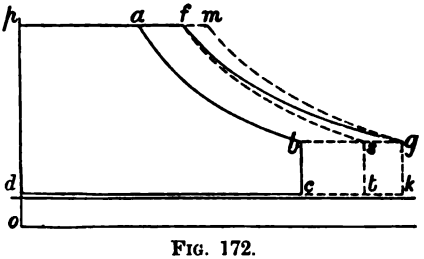


FIG. 172.

If the steam supplied to the engine be sufficiently superheated to render the steam superheated at cut-off, then the weight of steam now required per stroke $= \frac{ab}{ad}$ of the weight required when no superheat was used. When some intermediate degree of superheat is employed, the weight of steam passing through the cylinder per stroke $= \frac{ac}{ad}$ of the weight required when no superheat is used.

Effect of Superheat on Work done per Pound of Steam.—The effect on the pressure-volume diagram of superheating the steam is shown by Fig. 172, where *pf* represents the volume of 1 lb. of steam at pressure *op*, and $pa \div pf$ is the dry-steam fraction at cut-off. Then, if the steam expand down to the terminal pressure *b*, area *pabcd* represents approximately the proportion converted into work by saturated steam; and *fg* is the line of constant-steam weight. If the steam be superheated sufficiently to secure dry steam at cut-off, and it is expanded down to the same terminal pressure, then as expansion proceeds the expansion curve *fs* will fall within the dry-steam line *fg*, and the steam will become wet, and the area *pfstd* is the work area. The gain due to superheat, being equal to the difference of the two areas, $= pabcd - pfstd$. If the superheat be increased so as to secure dry steam at release, then the steam is superheated at cut-off, and its temperature T_s at point of cut-off $m = T_n \times \frac{pm}{pf}$, where T_n is the temperature of saturated steam at the pressure at point *m*. The superheat gradually disappears as the expansion proceeds, till the steam falls to the temperature of dry steam at *g*. This last condition is the condition of maximum theoretical efficiency.

The effect of superheat in increasing the effective work done per

pound of steam is well shown by the aid of the temperature-entropy diagram. Fig. 173 is illustrative of the kind of figures obtained in this way.

This diagram is drawn from the indicator diagrams, having first obtained the weight of steam used per stroke, also the dryness fraction of the steam, using different degrees of superheat in each case, but maintaining a constant speed and power. They are then transferred direct to the temperature-entropy chart (see p. 116).

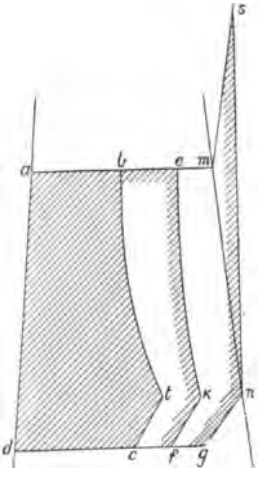


FIG. 173.

Thus, if the area *abcd* represent in thermal units the work done per pound of steam when no superheat is used, then the addition of a moderate amount of superheat has the effect of increasing the dryness fraction of the steam, and thus increasing the effective-work area *abcd* to *aefd*. If sufficient superheat be added to maintain the steam in a superheated condition at cut-off and throughout expansion, then the dryness line passes outside the saturated-steam line, and a peak rises to a point *s*, the height of which depends upon the actual temperature of the steam in the cylinder, and is determined as already described on p. 152, where $t_s = t_{n\frac{v_s}{v_n}}$.

Then the effective-work area per pound of steam = *amsngd*.

It will thus be evident how superheat, by increasing the dryness fraction of the steam in the cylinder, increases the useful work done per pound of steam supplied, the steam previously lost in the cylinder by initial condensation being now available for useful work.

Considering the expansion line of these diagrams, and the extent to which they deviate from the vertical adiabatic line, it will be seen that the wetter the steam is in the cylinder at cut-off, the greater the flow of heat from the walls to the steam during expansion, as shown by the slope of the expansion line *bt* towards the dry-steam line *mn* as the expansion proceeds; but the drier the steam is at cut-off, the more nearly the expansion line becomes a vertical line (see *ek*)—in other words, the more nearly the cylinder becomes non-conducting.

If the superheat is sufficiently high to supply not only the heat absorbed by the cylinder walls, but also to provide the heat-equivalent of the work done during expansion, then the steam will be dry at release; and this is the condition of maximum efficiency in a single cylinder.

If more superheat is added to the steam than is sufficient for the purpose of securing dry steam at release, then the steam is superheated in the exhaust pipe, and, unless the engine is compound, the superheat in the exhaust steam increases the loss at exhaust.

Superheated Steam in Compound Engines.—It is not practicable to superheat the steam supplied to the first cylinder of compound engines to such an extent as to secure superheated steam in the second cylinder. The very high economies obtained in practice by the use of superheated steam have been obtained in engines where the steam in the first cylinder only was superheated, and then it is exceptional to find the steam dry at release in the first cylinder, even with steam in the high-pressure valve-chest at 600° Fahr.

In compound engines, although, by means of high superheating, the whole of the steam supplied to the first cylinder may appear in that cylinder as dry steam, yet when it passes forward to the next cylinder, only about 70 per cent. of it, or less, will appear as steam at cut-off, the remainder being present as water, if there is no superheating between the cylinders. The power of the lower-pressure cylinders is therefore much reduced as compared with the power of the high-pressure cylinder. Superheating between the cylinders would add to the power and efficiency of the lower-pressure cylinders for a given weight of steam supplied to them; and this may be accomplished by fitting a multitubular reheater receiver between the cylinders, for reheating with superheated steam, by surface reheating (not by mixing). This is equivalent to jacketing the receiver.

Superheated steam may be looked upon, not as a means of obtaining a thermal efficiency with the steam-engine in any way proportional to the temperatures used in the superheat, but as a device for realizing, or at least approaching, the full thermal efficiency of the saturated steam between the range of pressures used in the engine.

Notwithstanding what has already been done, still higher efficiencies may be expected to follow the adoption of higher initial pressures combined with sufficient superheating to maintain the steam dry throughout the expansion.

Admission of a Supplementary Supply of Superheated Steam between the Cylinders of Compound Engines.—If drying and superheating the exhaust steam, on its way from the high to the low pressure cylinder, could be accomplished by the admission of an auxiliary feed of highly superheated steam from the main steam-pipe to the receiver, it might be supposed that the loss would be more than compensated by the increased efficiency of the steam in the following cylinders. But it will be seen that this proposal, though often made, is not feasible; for, assuming the auxiliary steam supplied from the main steam-pipe to contain 10 per cent. additional heat as superheat—equivalent to, say, 100 heat-units per pound—then, if the steam in the receiver contains 10 per cent. of moisture, the weight of auxiliary feed necessary, even to dry the steam without any superheating (that is, to provide heat-units $= \frac{1}{10}L$, where L = latent heat of steam in the receiver), would be nearly equal to the total weight of steam exhausted into the receiver from the first cylinder, which is an altogether impracticable quantity.[1]

Lubrication.—The difficulties which arose from defective lubrication

[1] *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vol. cxviii. p. 86.

in the earlier applications of superheated steam were probably due to the fact that the lubricant—or at least that portion of it admitted to the valve-chest, where it would be subjected to the maximum temperature of the steam—had all its lubricating properties destroyed, and its presence then would be more harmful than otherwise. But with the greatly improved quality of the lubricants now to be obtained, and with increased attention to the method of application of the lubricant, this cause of trouble has been removed.

If great care is taken to prevent loss of heat by radiation between

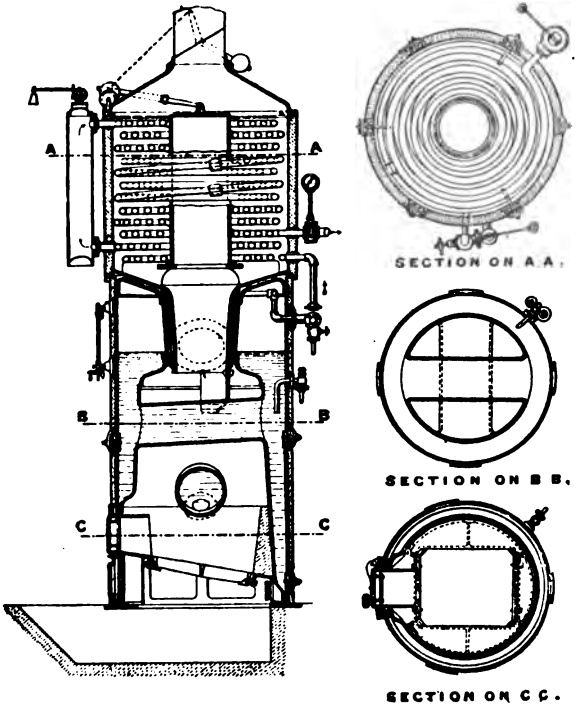


FIG. 174.

the superheater and the engine by the ample use of good non-conductors, then the superheated steam may be delivered at a high temperature up to and surrounding the admission valve; but when it enters the cylinder it parts usually with the whole of its superheat to the cylinder walls, the steam being rarely superheated at cut-off except with very highly superheated steam, and then only when the cut-off is comparatively late.

Hence the chief point requiring attention in regard to lubrication is the steam-admission valves rather than the piston.

Superheaters.—Fig. 174 illustrates the *Schmidt superheater* as fitted to a small vertical boiler. It consists of coils of tubes placed above the boiler, around which the flue gases are made to pass on their way to the chimney. The coils are arranged watch-spring like, and placed one above the other.

The steam leaves the steam-space of the boiler by a perforated tube, enters first the lowest coil, and then passes to the next coil above it. These two coils are termed the "fore-superheater," and they contain the wettest steam; they are also, of course, subjected to the highest temperatures of the flue gases. The steam then passes from the second coil into the vertical enlarged pipe (called the "after-evaporator"), and from here it passes to the topmost coil of the upper or "main superheater." It then flows downwards through the successive coils in a direction opposite to that of the flow of the chimney gases, and leaves the superheater at its maximum temperature from the lowest coil of the main superheater (the third coil from the bottom) and passes forward to the engine. The steam flowing in the opposite direction to the chimney gases enables a high temperature of steam to be obtained with a comparatively low temperature of chimney gases.

The wet steam in the lowest coils is intended as a protection against overheating of these coils.

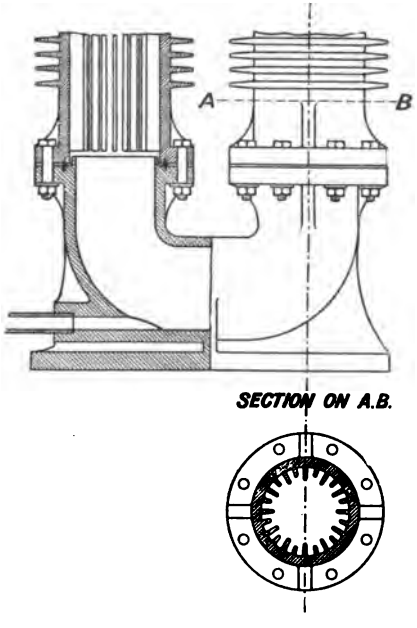


FIG. 175.

For regulating the superheat, a valve is fixed at the top of the vertical flue tube, which is closed when the maximum superheat is required, and the gases have then all to pass through the superheater coils on their way to the chimney. To reduce the superheat the valve is partially raised, and more or less of the furnace gases may escape by the chimney without passing through the coils.

In experimenting with this superheater, the author found that if the weight of steam passed through the coils per minute were reduced, then, independently of the firing, the temperature of the steam immediately began to fall; on the other hand, if the weight of steam passed through the coils per minute were increased, then the temperature of the steam immediately began to rise

also. From many experiments it was found that, within certain limits, the higher the velocity of the steam passing through the superheater, the more rapidly the heat was taken up by the steam.

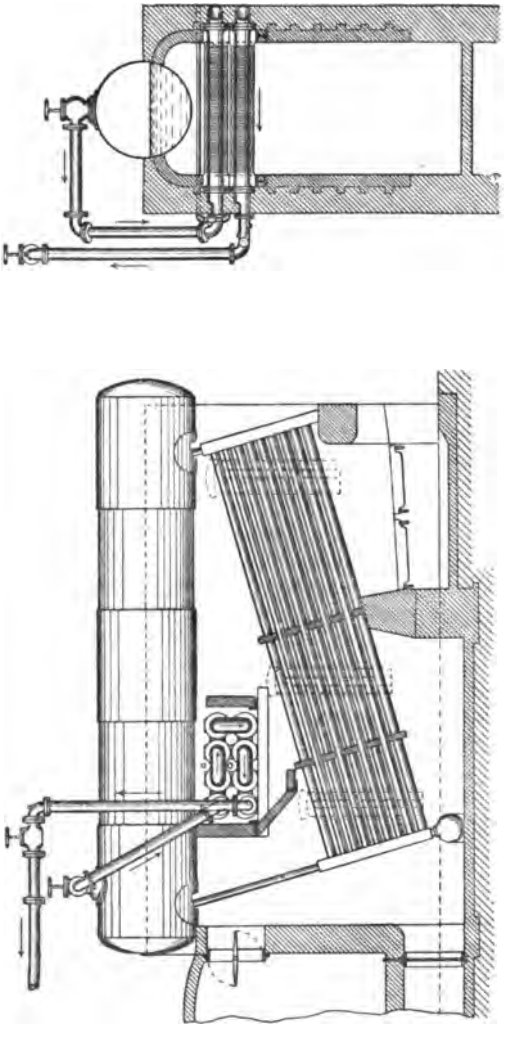


FIG. 176.—Babcock and Wilcox Water-tube Boiler, with Schwoerer superheater.

The *Schwoerer superheater* is a type much used on the Continent, and with considerable success. It consists of an arrangement of cast-iron pipes fitted with transverse ribs on the outside and longitudinal

ribs on the inside, as shown in Fig. 175. The regulation of the superheat is secured by dampers.

Fig. 176 is an illustration of the Schwoerer superheater[1] as fitted by Messrs. James Simpson & Co. to a Babcock and Wilcox boiler.

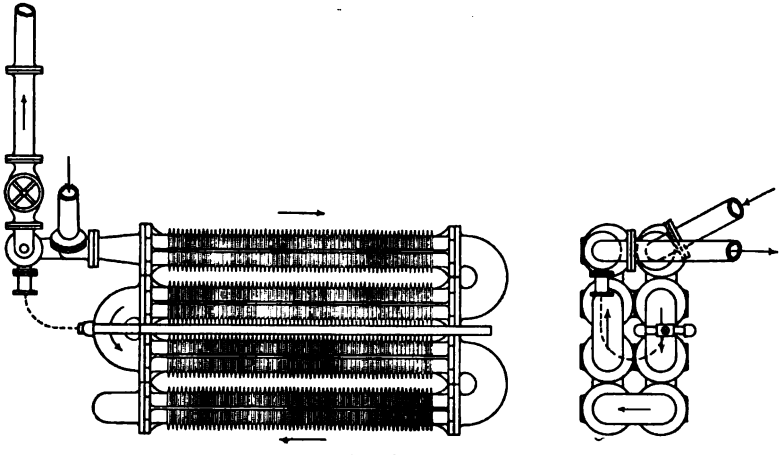


FIG. 177.

Fig. 177 is an enlarged view of the superheater. Fig. 178 shows its application by the same firm to a Lancashire boiler. Fig. 179 shows an independently fired installation of the Schwoerer superheater. Figs. 180 and 181 show a small-tube type of superheater as fitted to a Lancashire boiler by Messrs. Hick, Hargreaves & Co.

The *position of the superheater*, in relation to its distance from the furnace, depends upon the extent of the superheat required; if the steam is merely to be dried, then the superheater may be placed in the aste gases beyond the boiler-heating surface. But it is usually desirable to place the superheater where the temperature of the gases is at least 1000° F. The higher the temperature of the gases to which it is exposed, the more efficient the surface, and the smaller proportionately the surface required for a given degree of superheat.

Heat transmitted by Superheaters.—From the results of many experiments, Mr. Michael Longridge states that, in order that the superheater surface may be efficient, there should be a head of temperature between the flue gases and the steam of something like 400° F. With such conditions he estimates that a heat transmission of about five units per square foot of surface per hour per degree of difference in temperature, the difference of temperature being taken as the difference between the mean temperature of the flue gases and of the steam respectively before entering and after leaving the superheater,[2]

[1] From a paper on "Superheating," by Mr. W. H. Patchell, *Proc. Inst. Mech. Engineers*, April, 1896.

[2] *Proc. Inst. Mech. Engineers*, 1896, p. 175.

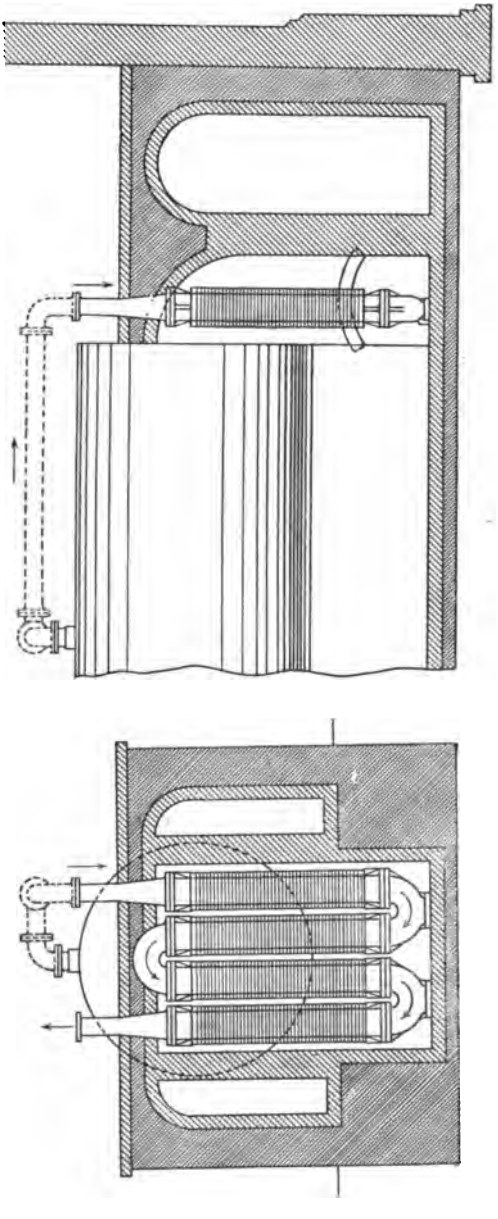


FIG. 178.—Schwoerer superheater attached to a Lancashire boiler.

Regulation of Superheat.—The methods employed for this purpose may be summarized as follows:—

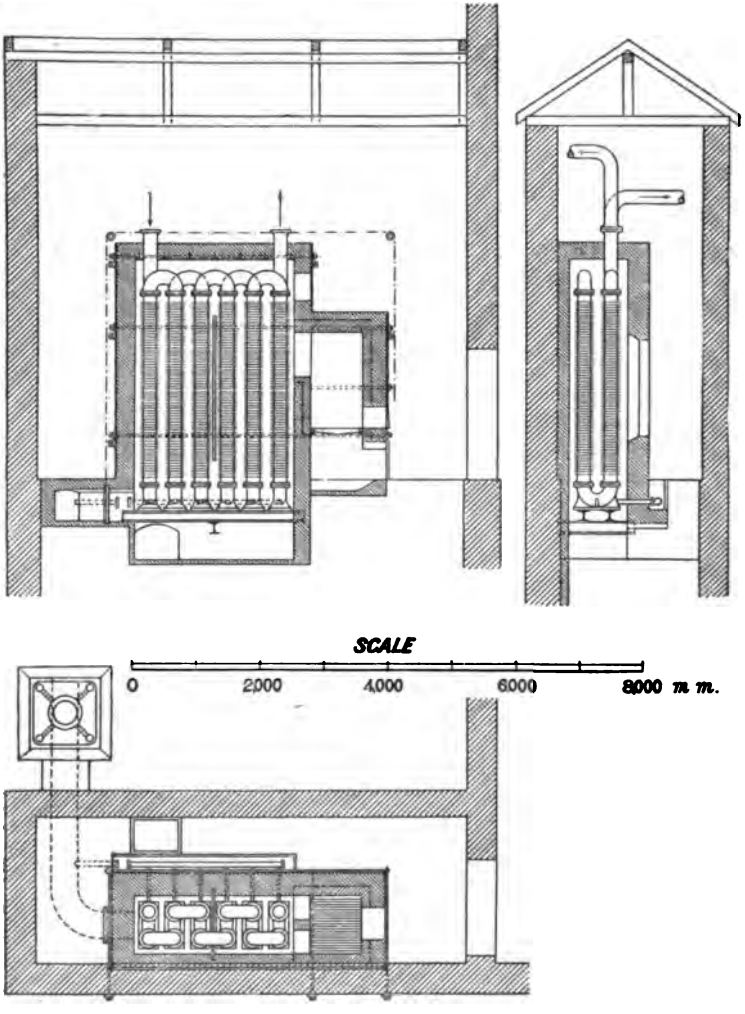


FIG. 179.[1]

(1) By the use of dampers regulating the flow of flue gases to the superheater.

[1] From "Application de la Surchauffe aux Machines à vapeur," by Prof. François Sinigaglia.

(2) By mixing or combining saturated and superheated steam in any required proportion.

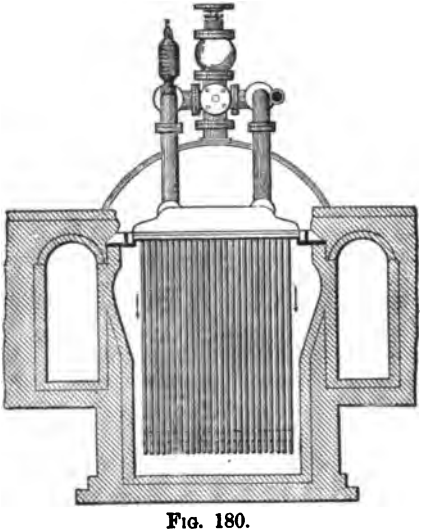


FIG. 180.

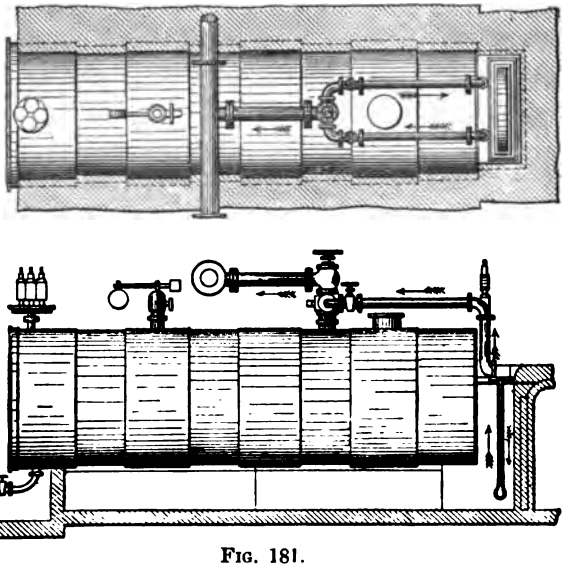


FIG. 181.

(3) By the use of an independently fired superheater, which arrangement lends itself very easily to the regulation of the heat.

(4) By regulating the rate of flow of the steam.

CHAPTER IX.

INTERNAL SURFACE OF ENGINE CYLINDERS.

THE loss by condensation in engine cylinders is due to the difference of temperature between the steam and the cooler metal of the cylinder, and the extent of the loss increases as the extent of the actual surface in contact with the steam increases.

The portion of the double stroke, during which heat passes from the steam to the metal, begins at admission of the steam to the cylinder and terminates usually almost immediately after cut-off, where the expanding steam has fallen in temperature to that of the mean temperature of the walls. The greater the area of the internal surface per pound of steam admitted, the greater the condensation. Hence the importance of reducing this surface as much as possible, especially the clearance portion of it, where, by care in designing, considerable reductions might often be made, with a corresponding improvement in the economy of the engine.

In respect of clearance surface and cylinder surface generally, it may be well to compare the effect of difference of ratio between cylinder diameter and length of stroke.

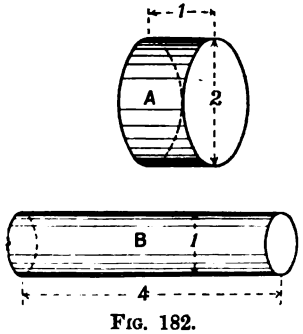


FIG. 182.

Taking cylinders (Fig. 182) of equal capacity A and B, A having 4 sq. ft. of piston area and 1 ft. stroke, and B having 1 sq. ft. of piston area and 4 ft. stroke; A representing the short-stroke, high-speed type of engine of relatively large piston area, and B representing the long-stroke type with relatively small piston area; then, neglecting clearance volume and steam passages, the relative area of clearance and cylinder surface exposed to equal weights of steam in the two cases will be seen from the following table:—

		A.	*B*
Piston area	sq. ft.	4·0	1·0
Stroke	ft.	1·0	4·0
Piston displacement	cub. ft.	4·0	4·0
Surface of barrel	sq. ft.	7·09	14·18
Clearance surface	„	8·0	2·0
„ „ + barrel to ½ stroke	„	9·78	5·56
„ „ + „ ¼ „	„	11·56	9·13

		A.	B.
Clearance surface + barrel to ¾ stroke	sq. ft.	13·35	12·69
„ „ + „ full „	„	15·13	16·26
Surface exposed per unit weight of steam admitted with cut-off at ¼ stroke		9·78	5·56
Ditto ditto ½ „		5·78	4·56
Ditto ditto ¾ „		4·45	4·23
Ditto ditto full „		3·78	4·06

Comparing the two cases, on admission of steam to the respective cylinders, the clearance surface of the short-stroke engine is four times as great as with the long-stroke. If cut-off takes place at ¼ stroke, the actual wall surface of the cylinder enclosing the steam up to cut-off is 5·56 sq. ft. in the long-stroke engine, and 75 per cent. more than this in the short-stroke engine. That is, if condensation be directly proportional to surface, the condensation in the short-stroke engine will be 75 per cent. greater than in the long-stroke engine when cut-off takes place at ¼ stroke in each engine.

It will, however, be observed that as the cut-off is made later, the respective areas of cylinder surface in the two cases become more and more nearly alike, and if steam were admitted to the end of the stroke, the surface is 7 per cent. greater in the long-stroke engine; in other words, the loss by condensation in the two cylinders would be more nearly the same as the cut-off is later. The earlier the cut-off the more advantage lies with the long-stroke engine.

It has been so far assumed that the engines are run at the same rotational speed; but if they are run at the same piston speed, as would be more probably the case, then the short-stroke engine would make four times as many revolutions as the long-stroke.

But if the assumption is correct that cylinder condensation is inversely proportional to the square root of the number of rotations, then the loss by condensation in the long-stroke engine as compared with that in the short-stroke is as $1 : \frac{1}{\sqrt{4}} = 1 : \frac{1}{2}$.

Short-stroke engines are therefore most economical when run at high speeds and with a late cut-off.

This statement takes no account of clearance volume. In short-stroke engines (see above table) the clearance volume is proportionally large, and in such engines great care must be taken to make the best use of the compression steam, so as to fill the clearance space with steam at a pressure as near as possible to the admission pressure, otherwise the difference must be made up by boiler steam, and the amount required for this purpose may be a large proportion of the total steam used.

Turned and Polished Clearance Surfaces.—The advantage of turned and polished surfaces for the clearance spaces in reducing cylinder condensation has been proved in numerous instances; and the most economical results yet recorded with saturated steam have been obtained in engines having the piston face and inner surface of the cylinder cover turned and polished. The surfaces appear to be thereby rendered more nearly non-conducting.

CHAPTER X.

THE STEAM-JACKET.

THE steam-jacket, as its name implies, is an arrangement for covering the cylinder with a hot-steam covering. It consists of a chamber or chambers enveloping the working barrel and the covers of the cylinder. These chambers are filled with steam at a temperature equal to or greater than the initial temperature of the working steam entering the cylinder.

The object of the jacket is to maintain the temperature of the internal walls as nearly as possible equal to that of the steam entering the cylinder, and in this way to reduce the loss due to initial condensation.

As already stated, whatever tends to increase the mean temperature of the walls tends also to reduce initial condensation, and experiment has shown that the heat expended in the jacket for this purpose is more than compensated for by the increased efficiency of the working steam in the cylinder. The extent of the gain following the use of the jacket varies greatly according to the conditions of working, the construction of the jacket, including the arrangements for drainage and for supply of steam to the jacket, the temperature of the steam supplied to the jacket, the speed of the engine, the quality of the steam entering the cylinder, the ratio of internal cylinder surface to weight of steam used, the range of temperature of the steam in the cylinder, etc.

Action of the Jacket.—Unjacketed cast-iron cylinders are practically a heat sponge absorbing from the steam, each stroke during admission, heat which should have been employed in doing useful work, and rejecting the same amount of heat, but at a lower temperature, during expansion and exhaust, by re-evaporation of the water deposited at the beginning of the stroke. This heat is almost entirely wasted, as the useful work done by it by re-evaporation of water during expansion is extremely small, and the remainder goes away during exhaust to increase the already large exhaust waste.

The greater the proportion of water deposited in the cylinder, up to a certain limiting point, the greater the demand upon the store of heat in the cylinder walls for the purpose of re-evaporation; the deeper, also, the ebb and flow of the heat-wave in the metal walls

each stroke, the larger the proportion of heat taking part in this most wasteful process.

The action of the jacket is therefore to reduce the extent of the heat-interchange between the steam and the walls, and, as a consequence, to reduce also the weight of water to be afterwards re-evaporated at the expense of heat from the cylinder walls. Thus with a jacket a smaller proportion of the heat of the steam is wasted in merely passing into and out of the walls, and a larger proportion is employed in the performance of useful work than when no jacket is used.

All heat transmitted through the cylinder walls from the jacket is accompanied by a corresponding loss due to condensation in the jacket, but the net result is in favour of jacketing. For it should be noted that each 1 lb. of steam condensed in the jacket leaves the jacket as *water* containing say 270 units of heat; while each 1 lb. of steam condensed in the cylinder passes away as *steam*, and carries with it to the air or condenser the latent heat of the steam (from 900 to 1000 units) which has been first given to and then taken from the cylinder walls. There is no re-evaporation of the water in the jacket, but it may be usefully employed as a hot feed to the boiler. The heat transmitted by the jacket per pound of steam condensed therein is the latent heat of steam L for the pressure in the jacket.

Effect of Speed of Rotation.—Since the amount of heat transmitted through the cylinder walls varies with the time, then, as the rate of rotation increases, the extent of the heat interchanged per stroke between the steam and the walls will become less, until, when the speed is indefinitely great, the heat-interchange is zero, and the jacket is of no effect. From this it follows that the efficiency of the jacket is greater as the rotational speeds decrease.

Effect of Ratio of Expansion.—With given initial and back pressures—that is, with a fixed range of temperatures in the cylinder, but with a variable cut-off—the efficiency of the jacket will vary with the point of cut-off. For, since the flow of heat through the cylinder walls varies with the temperature on the two sides of the walls, it is evident that the jacket heat will pass more readily the earlier the cut-off, since the mean temperature of the internal portion of the cylinder walls is lower as the cut-off is earlier.

Hence the jacket is more effective in cylinders having a large ratio of expansion. During expansion the re-evaporation is greater without a jacket than with one, and the dryness fraction, especially at release, is always greater with a jacket than without one.

The following diagram shows the varying efficiency of a steam-jacket at different ratios of expansion. It was prepared by Mr. Bryan Donkin from trials made by him with an engine having a cylinder 6 in. diameter, stroke 8 in.; speed in all experiments about 220 revolutions per minute; steam pressure, about 50 lbs. above atmosphere.

Water in the cylinder, from any cause whatever, is a source of loss of heat from the cylinder walls. Owing to the property which liquids possess of absorbing heat from surrounding bodies

during the process of evaporation which follows a fall of pressure, it is easy to account for the rapid flow of heat from the walls to the water in the cylinder during expansion, but especially when the exhaust port opens.

However dry the condition of the steam on entering the cylinder, there is always *some* initial condensation (except when a high degree of superheat is used), and even if the steam were dry at cut-off, there is still the water formed during expansion by transmutation of heat into work.

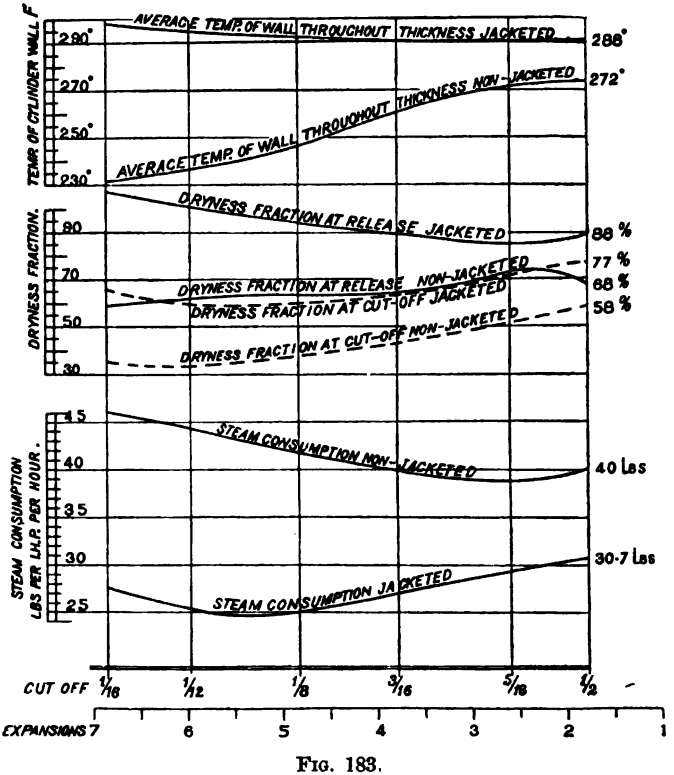


FIG. 183.

Assuming that all possible care has been taken to obtain dry steam in the cylinder by lagging steam-pipes, cylinders, and valve-chests, by fixing separators, and drain-cocks from valve-chests, by reduction as far as possible of the proportion of clearance surface, and by polished internal surfaces of cylinder-cover and pistons, then, unless the speed of rotation is high, the steam-jacket or superheating will still be necessary to secure dry steam at release.

The action of the jacket may be further illustrated by the aid of the temperature-entropy diagram.

1. If the cylinder walls are as hot as the entering steam, then the steam is dry at cut-off. The heat required to maintain the steam dry throughout expansion = area *akfd* (Fig. 184), where *kf* is the dry or saturated steam curve, or curve of constant steam weight. This shows that without a jacket, in the best of engines, the dry steam, expanding adiabatically and doing work, becomes wetter as the expansion continues, and that the steam can only be dry at release by the further addition of heat from an external source. It also shows that the heat so added is not theoretically so efficient as the heat of the working steam, because the whole of the added heat is not applied at its maximum temperature, but is applied during a gradual fall of temperature. The efficiency of the jacket steam in such a case is *nkf* ÷ *akfd*. If this were the condition of things in practice, then a jacket would not be a source of gain, but a source of loss of efficiency; but in practice these conditions are considerably modified, with the result that the jacket heat actually increases the efficiency.

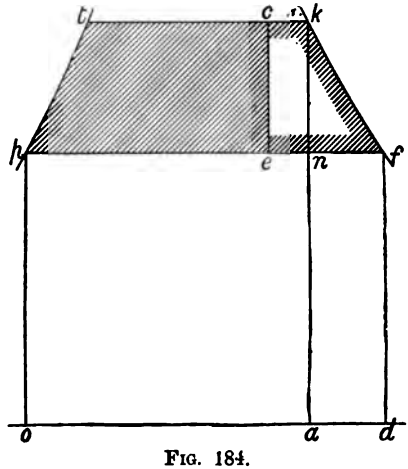


FIG. 184.

2. In unjacketed cylinders, though dry steam is supplied to the engine, the steam is never dry at cut-off, but has some dryness fraction *tc* ÷ *tk*. Suppose now that a jacket be added, and that the steam is thereby rendered dry at cut-off and throughout expansion to release. Then heat supplied by jacket = area *akfd*. But by this addition of heat there is an increase of useful work = area *ckfec*; therefore the actual efficiency of the jacket heat = *ckfec* ÷ *akfd*, or an increase of engine efficiency of from (*tcep* ÷ *optka*) to (*tkfp* ÷ *optkfd*).

Construction of the Jacket.—The success of jacketing depends very largely upon the care exercised both in the design and use of the jacket. If a jacket is so constructed as to leave pockets which will inevitably remain filled with water, or flat horizontal surfaces upon which will continually lie a layer of water through which heat is expected to pass to the cylinder, the result will be disappointing. Great care should be taken to arrange for the proper flow of the water deposited in the jacket to the jacket drain by sloping surfaces and properly placed drain-pipes.

The steam-supply pipe to the jacket should be made of ample diameter; also care should be taken to provide for efficient circulation of the steam in the jacket.

Cylinders are sometimes made with a surrounding jacket, through

which the steam from the boiler first passes before entering the cylinder. The object of this is, no doubt, to accelerate the action of the jacket by a rapid circulation of the jacket steam; but unless special means are taken to prevent the jacket water entering the cylinder, it is probable that the increased wetness of the admission steam will more than neutralize the effect of the jacket.

The value of the jacket is greater, other things being equal, as the dimensions of the cylinder are smaller; because in small cylinders the cylinder surface per unit weight of steam passing through the engine is greater than in large cylinders.

One effect of jackets is to increase the tendency to loss of heat by radiation, as the area of the external surface and the temperature of the surface are both increased by the addition of jackets.

It appears, from various experiments, that there is no advantage in making the pressure of the steam in the jacket of any cylinder more than a few pounds greater than that of the initial steam in the cylinder. Thus it is usual to reduce the pressure in the jackets of the second and succeeding cylinders of triple and quadruple expansion engines.

In the engines of H.M.S. *Powerful*, the pressure of steam at the stop-valve is 210 lbs. All the cylinders are steam-jacketed. The high-pressure cylinder is jacketed with steam at 210 lbs. pressure. The steam to the intermediate jacket passes through a reducing-valve loaded to 100 lbs., and to the low-pressure jacket through a reducing-valve loaded to 25 lbs.

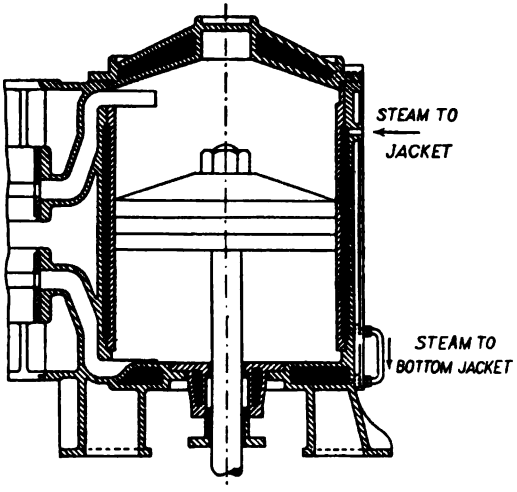


FIG. 185.

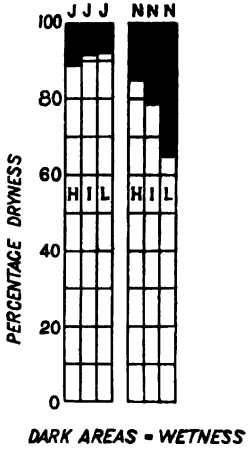


FIG. 186.

The above figure (Fig. 186) shows the effect of jackets on the cylinders of a triple-expansion engine. H = high-pressure cylinder; I = intermediate cylinder; L = low-pressure cylinder. The rect-

angles marked N, N, N show by the darkened areas the proportion of water present at cut-off with no steam in the jackets.

The rectangles marked J, J, J show the effect on the dryness fraction of the steam when steam is admitted to all the jackets; from which it will be seen that the gain resulting from a jacket is greatest in the low-pressure cylinder, and least in the high-pressure cylinder.[1]

The Reports of the Research Committee of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers on the value of the steam-jacket are a collection of valuable facts obtained from numerous sources, but the Report containing the final conclusions of the committee has not yet been published. It has, however, been shown that the gain by jacketing varies considerably as the conditions and extent of the jacketing vary, being from 2 or 3 per cent. to 25 per cent. in favour of jacketing.

In the trial of the Pawtucket pumping engine by Prof. J. E. Denton, the engine being compound, with both cylinders jacketed on barrels and ends, and with steam at full boiler pressure in all the jackets, a difference of only 3 per cent. in favour of jacketing was obtained.

From trials made by Prof. Osborne Reynolds of the triple-expansion fully jacketed engines at the Owens College, it was found that with jackets filled throughout with boiler pressure, 19·4 per cent. of the total heat supplied was converted into work. Without steam in any of the cylinder jackets this percentage fell to 15·5, showing a gain of over 25 per cent. in favour of jacketing.

[1] See "Reports of Research Committee on the Value of the Steam Jacket," *Proc. Inst. M.E.*, 1889, 1892, 1894.

CHAPTER XI.

THE INJECTOR.

THE injector is an instrument for feeding boilers, and is used instead of, or in conjunction with, a feed pump. It was invented in 1858 by M. Giffard, a French engineer, who established beyond doubt the power of a jet of steam, passing from the steam space of a boiler, to force water into the same boiler against the same internal pressure as that of the steam itself.

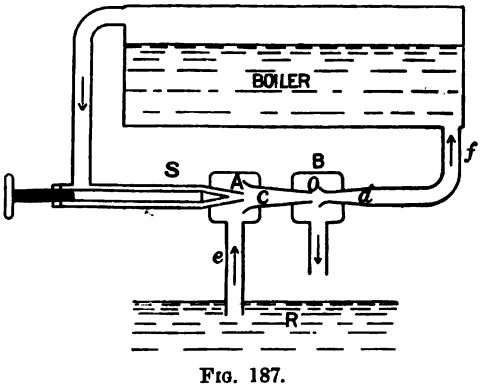


FIG. 187.

The construction of the injector will be understood by the following diagrammatic sketch (Fig. 187). The *steam-nozzle*, *s*, shows how the steam is supplied to the injector through a small inlet. The amount of the steam-supply is regulated by the coned plug, which fits more or less closely against the orifice.

The *combining tube*, *c*, is where the slowly moving water, drawn up from the well R by the action of the steam-jet, combines with the swiftly flowing stream of condensed steam, and is carried forward by it into the boiler.

The *delivery tube*, *d*, receives the contents of the combining tube. Here at its narrowest part the maximum velocity of the jet is attained, and from this point the velocity of the jet is reduced as it proceeds along the diverging tube to the boiler feed-pipe *f*.

The *overflow*, *o*, is an opening or break in the pipe through which excess of water or steam may escape during the operation of starting.

Fig. 188 illustrates the actual construction of the injector as originally introduced, and of which pattern large numbers are still made.

Fig. 189 is a section of Messrs. Holden and Brooke's Injector (non-lifting pattern).

Action of the Injector.—To start the injector, it is necessary first

to turn on the water-supply, and then to withdraw the steam-spindle slightly so as to admit steam through the nozzle into the injector. The steam-spindle may then be fully opened, the supply of water being regulated till there is no overflow of either water or steam. The steam-jet carries forward with it entrained air from the water-chamber (A, Fig. 187), thereby causing a partial vacuum in that chamber, and the water in the suction pipe to rise and enter the combining tube. The jet of steam, coming into contact with the cold water, is condensed laterally to an attenuated thread of water, which retains, however, its original velocity, and passes forward from the combining tube into the delivery tube, carrying with it entrained water.

After passing through the throat of the delivery tube, the velocity of the steam decreases as the cross-section of the diverging tube increases, and finally the combined stream enters the boiler.

The Combining Tube.—In this tube, by means of the vacuum formed by the condensed steam, the water is drawn up into the injector. It is evident, therefore, that the water must be sufficiently cold to condense the steam, and that the proportion of

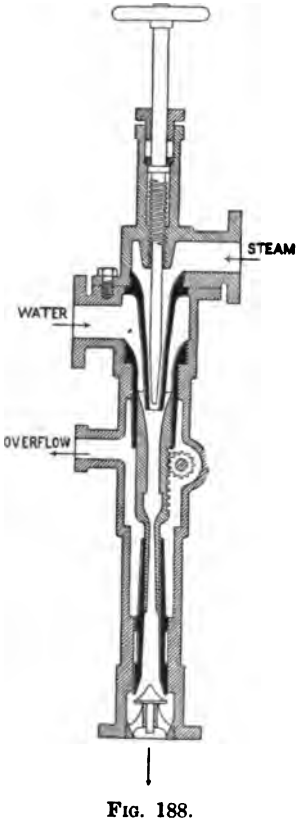


FIG. 188.

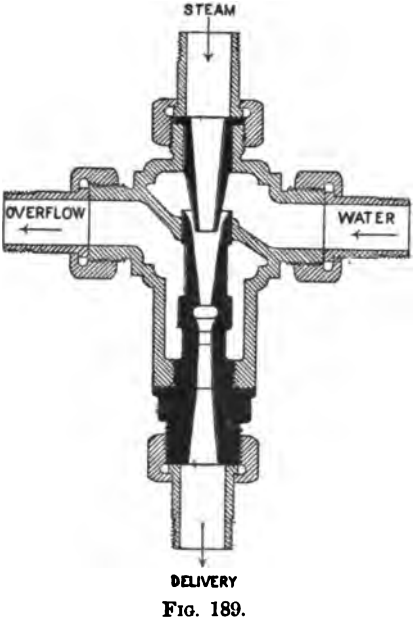


FIG. 189.

water to steam must be sufficient to ensure complete condensation,

if the injector is to lift water from a well placed below it. The quality of the vacuum in this tube depends upon the temperature of the combined steam and water.

The effect of varying the steam pressure with a given setting of the instrument is to vary also the supply of water needed. Thus, if the steam pressure is increased, the supply of feed-water should increase also, to properly condense the steam, or the degree of vacuum will be reduced and the action of the injector impaired. Or, if the pressure of the steam is reduced, the feed-water will be in excess, and will escape by the overflow.

Velocity in the Delivery Tube.—If H = the head of water in the boiler equivalent to the internal pressure, then the velocity (v) of a jet of water flowing from the boiler = $\sqrt{2gH}$, and the velocity of the jet to enter the boiler, or its equivalent in pressure, must be in excess of this.

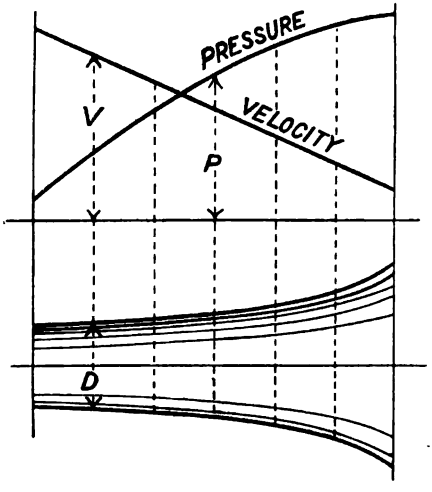


FIG. 190.

Also, if w = the weight of 1 cub. ft. of water in pounds, then P in pounds per square ft. = wH lbs.; or—

$$H = \frac{P}{w}$$

and—

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2gP}{w}}$$

From which it is clear that the velocity of a jet varies inversely as the square root of its density (w). Thus the velocity of steam will be very much greater than the velocity of water under the same pressure, because of the very low density of steam compared with water; hence the effectiveness of the condensed steam-jet as a means of admitting water into the boiler against the boiler pressure.

The impinging jet enters the boiler because the kinetic energy which it possesses $\left(\frac{v^2}{2g}\right)$, or its equivalent in pressure, is greater than that which is due to the head H of the equivalent water-column acting in the opposite direction. *Napier's formula* for the flow of steam into the air in pounds per second

$$= W = \frac{P \times A}{70}$$

where P = boiler pressure absolute in pounds per square inch; A = area of orifice in square inches.

In the gradually diverging delivery tube, if a section be taken at

successive positions along the tube, there will be exactly the same weight of water flowing through each of these sections in the same time, namely, AV, where V = velocity in feet per second, and A = area in square feet; and $AV = A_1V_1 = A_2V_2$, etc., assuming the density of the jet to be uniform. And since the area A of the section increases from the minimum section towards the boiler, so the velocity decreases; and since the area changes as the square of the diameters of the section, the velocity will change inversely as the square of the diameters. This is shown by the diagram Fig. 190, where a curve of velocities is set up at successive sections of the tube, calculated thus:

$$\text{Velocity at any section} = \frac{\text{volume passing in cubic feet}}{\text{area of section in square feet}}$$

$$\text{or } V_1 = \frac{AV}{A_1}; \text{ or } V_1 = \frac{d^2V}{d_1^2}, \text{ where } d = \text{diameter of section}$$

Since the pressure at any section varies with the velocity, a curve of pressures is also drawn. It is calculated from the following formula:—

$$H_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = H_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} = \text{a constant}$$

these expressions representing the "total heads" at the beginning and end respectively of the delivery tube; and the sum of the pressure and kinetic energies in the tube being a constant—

$$\text{Then } H_2 = H_1 + \frac{v_1^2 - v_2^2}{2g}$$

the value of v for any section of the tube being obtained as explained above; and the value of P being equal to wH as before, we may write—

$$\frac{P_2}{w} = \frac{P_1}{w} + \frac{v_1^2 - v_2^2}{2g}$$

Weight of Feed Water per Pound of Steam.—Assuming the steam supply to be dry, and reckoning from 32° Fahr.—

Heat-units contained in the steam per pound $= h_1 + L_1$
" " feed-water per pound $= h_2$
" " mixture per pound $= (1 + W)h_2$

Then, neglecting losses by radiation, the pounds of feed-water supplied per pound of steam used by the injector may be obtained when we know the rise of temperature of the water passing through the injector. Thus—

$$\text{Gain of heat by feed-water} = W(h_2 - h_3)$$
$$\text{Loss of heat by the 1 lb. of steam} = L_1 + h_1 - h_2$$
$$\left.\begin{matrix}\text{The kinetic energy of the jet} \\ \text{expressed in heat-units}\end{matrix}\right\} = (1 + W)\frac{v^2}{2g} \times \frac{1}{778}$$

Then—

$$L_1 + h_1 - h_2 = (1 + W)\frac{v^2}{2g} \times \frac{1}{778} + W(h_2 - h_3)$$

Loss by steam = kinetic energy of jet + gain by feed

Neglecting the term representing kinetic energy, which would be very small—

$$L_1 + h_1 - h_2 = W(h_2 - h_3)$$

$$W = \frac{L_1 + h_1 - h_2}{h_2 - h_3}$$

= the weight of feed-water lifted per pound of steam supplied to the injector

The overflow is assumed to be open to the atmosphere, and therefore the temperature of the jet cannot exceed 212° Fahr. It is seldom higher than 170° Fahr.

The temperature of the water passing into the boiler depends upon the fact that the steam from the jet must all be condensed as it leaves the steam-nozzle.

The temperature of the water with which the injector is supplied must be low enough to condense the steam from the steam-nozzle, otherwise the injector will not work. The weight of water delivered per pound of steam used is about 13 lbs. for locomotive injectors.

As the initial temperature of the feed-water is increased, the weight of steam required to lift a given weight of feed-water increases.

Efficiency of the Injector.—The mechanical work performed by the injector consists in lifting the weight of feed-water through a height h, and delivering it into the boiler against the internal pressure.

$$U = \{Wh + (W + 1)h_p\}\frac{1}{J} \text{ in heat-units}$$

where U = work done; h_p = the equivalent head = $p \times 2{\cdot}3$ due to the pressure, where 2·3 = head in feet per 1 lb. pressure; and W = pounds of water delivered per pound of steam.

If considered as a pump, the efficiency E_m is—

$$E_m = \frac{U}{L_1 + h_1 - h_2}$$

where the denominator represents the number of units of heat given up by the steam to perform the work.

The **Thermal Efficiency,** E_t, of the injector is unity, for—

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Heat supplied}\\ \text{from boiler}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{work done in lifting and}\\ \text{injecting feed-water}\end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix}\text{heat restored}\\ \text{to boiler}\end{pmatrix}$$

or—

$$E_t = \frac{U + W(h_2 - h_3)}{L_1 + h_1 - h_2}$$

That is, all the heat expended is restored either as work done or

in heat returned to the boiler, and the value E_t of the above fraction = 1. It should be noted, however, that the heat is returned at a lower temperature.

When a boiler plant is provided with an economizer or feed-heater, the injector may be made to supply the feed through the feed-heater, and the hot feed from the injector may thus be still further heated in the feed-heater on its way to the boiler.

The Lifting Injector.—The property possessed by the injector enabling it to *lift* water depends upon its power to reduce the pressure in chamber A (Fig. 187) below that of the atmosphere. There is no difficulty in continuing the water-supply when it has once entered the injector, because of the vacuum formed by the condensation of steam in the combining tube; but to raise the water in the first place, the jet of steam passing out of the nozzle at a high velocity must act first as an *ejector* entraining the air away from the chamber A and carrying it forward through the combining tube, thus causing a vacuum in A.

For this purpose the steam must have a *free passage* through the instrument sufficient to prevent any throttling of the steam as it issues from the nozzle, otherwise a pressure will be set up in A greater than that in B (Fig. 187) which is open to the atmosphere, and no water will be lifted.

This freedom from throttling of the steam as it passes along the combining tube may be accomplished in two ways: first, by arranging for a small amount of steam to pass through the jet by only opening slightly the steam-spindle; or, secondly, if a large flow of steam is passing through the nozzle, to arrange for a self-acting method of enlarging the area of exit for the steam, to prevent its becoming throttled in the injector. Injectors fitted with such an arrangement are termed automatic, self-acting, re-starting injectors.

"Automatic" Injectors.—These are injectors which, if stopped in their action by jolting, as on a locomotive, or from any other cause, automatically re-start, and continue to work without requiring any readjustment of the steam or water supply, as would be necessary if the injector were of the type previously described.

The methods adopted in order to fulfil the condition of automatic re-starting are shown in Figs. 191 and 192. Fig. 191 is a standard pattern as made by Messrs. Holden and Brooke. Fig. 192 is the "split-nozzle" injector, in which it will be seen that the combining tube is split longitudinally for rather more than half its length. The loose half forms a flap, and hangs freely from a hinge. When the injector is not at work the flap hangs open, and thus affords a large area for escape of steam through the overflow.

When steam is turned on it flows freely through the injector, entraining air with it, forming a vacuum in the suction pipe and drawing water into the instrument. When the water reaches the combining tube, the steam is condensed, a partial vacuum is formed, and the flap instantly closes, the overflow being in communication with the air. The split nozzle then acts as an ordinary solid

combining tube, and the water is carried forward through the delivery tube into the boiler.

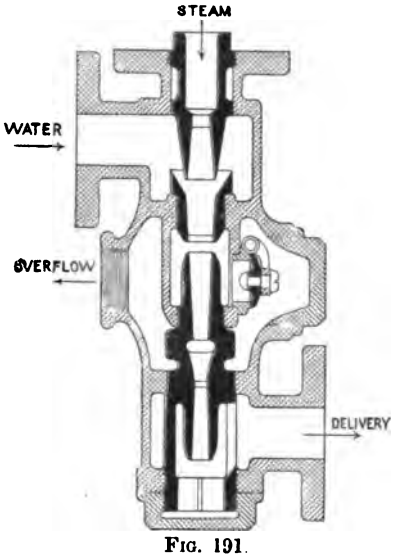


FIG. 191.

The Holden and Brooke injector (Fig. 191) is similar in principle to the flap, but the flap valve is placed in the

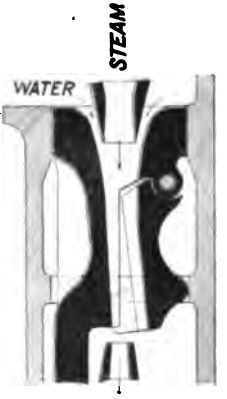


FIG. 192.

shell of the injector instead of in the nozzle.

The **Exhaust Injector** is similar in principle to an ordinary injector, and differs from it chiefly in having a steam-nozzle of very wide bore.

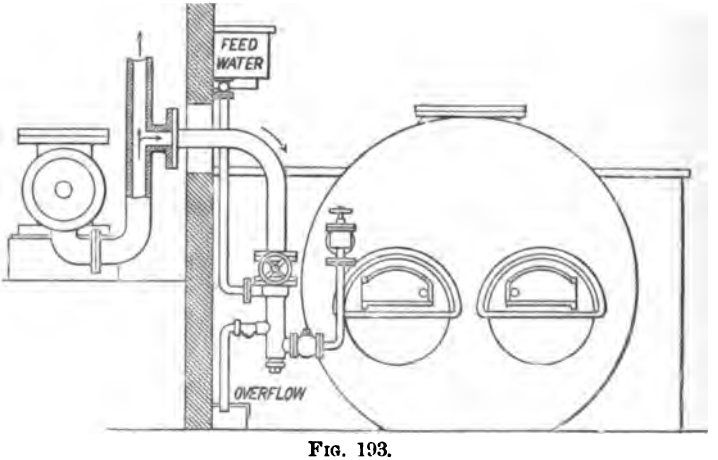


FIG. 193.

The feed-water supply to the exhaust injector must be arranged to *flow into* the injector.

Fig. 193 shows the attachment of the exhaust injector to a boiler.

CHAPTER XII.

CONDENSERS.

THE condenser is a chamber into which the steam is passed and condensed instead of being exhausted into the air.

The object of the condenser is twofold, being first to remove as far as possible the effect of atmospheric pressure from the exhaust side of the piston by receiving the exhaust steam and condensing it, thus reducing the back pressure from 16 or 17 absolute to 3 or 4 lbs. absolute; and, secondly, to enable the steam which acts on the piston to be expanded down to a lower pressure before leaving the cylinder than can profitably be done when the steam exhausts into the air.

In compound engines, since the influence of the condenser acts in the largest cylinder, the proportional increase of power will be large, varying from 20 to 30 per cent., depending on the proportion which the increase of mean pressure bears to the original mean pressure of the engine referred to the low-pressure cylinders. The proportional gain by a condenser will thus be greater as the power of the engine is reduced.

Condensers are of various types, which may be divided as follows:—

1. Those requiring large quantities of cold water for the purpose of condensing the exhaust steam, including—
   (*a*) Jet condensers;
   (*b*) Surface condensers;
   (*c*) Ejector condensers;

where in each case the cooling water passing from the condenser flows away to waste.

2. Those requiring very small quantities of water, the place of the continuous water-supply being taken by an extended cooling surface exposed to currents of air, and including—
   (*a*) Evaporative condensers;
   (*b*) Ordinary condensers combined with a system of air-cooling of the condensing water.

The **jet condenser**, as its name implies, condenses the steam by means of a jet of cold water, and is illustrated by Fig. 194.

The steam, on being exhausted from the cylinder, passes into the condenser C, where it is condensed by the jet of cold water. The condensed steam and injection water must now be removed by means

of the *air-pump* AP, so called because it removes the air which comes into the condenser with the injection water and also with the steam. The air thus introduced to the condenser is cumulative, and would soon set up a large back pressure unless removed. The amount of air by volume in injection water is said to average 5 per cent. of the volume of the water.

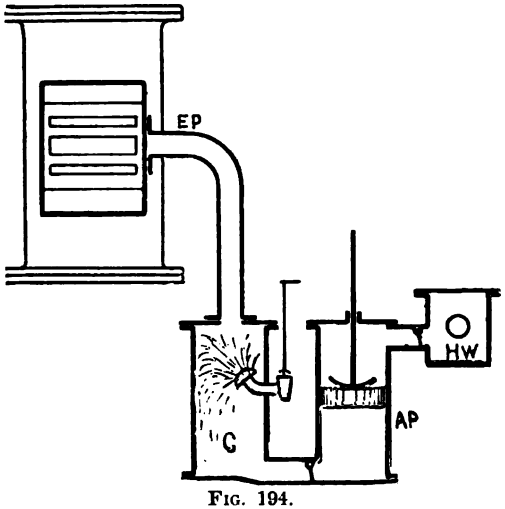


FIG. 194.

The condensed steam, injection water, air, and vapour are pumped into the hot well HW, and thence flow chiefly to waste. The feed-supply for the boilers is taken from this source.

The suction valve of the air-pump is called the *foot valve*, and the delivery valve is called the *head valve*.

Another form of jet condenser and air-pump used for horizontal engines as made by Messrs. Tangyes of Birmingham is shown in the diagram, Fig. 195.

The air-pump rod is an extension of the piston-rod through the back end of the cylinder. The exhaust steam enters the condensing chamber C, where it is met by the cold-water spray J and condensed. The condensed steam and injection water are removed from this chamber by the air-pump AP, which draws it through the suction-valves FV, and forces it forward through the delivery valve HV into the hot well HW, from which the boiler-feed may be taken. The remainder overflows.

The steam should enter the upper portion of a jet condenser so that there is no danger of the water flowing back to the cylinder, and in all cases the injection supply should be carefully regulated, and shut off before or at the same time as the steam-supply is closed when the engine is stopped.

The condenser should be so shaped that the water may flow readily by a fall from the condenser to the bottom of the air-pump.

The capacity of a jet condenser may be generally one-third that of the cylinder or cylinders exhausting into it.[1]

Surface Condensers.—The surface condenser has now entirely superseded the jet condenser for marine work, and it is employed for stationary work in cases where it is desired to return the condensed steam as feed to the boilers, as when the condensing water is too dirty or too full of impurities to be used as feed.

[1] Seaton's "Manual of Marine Engineering."

Up to about the year 1860 the pressure of steam in marine boilers was not more than 30 lbs. to the square inch, and the boiler-feed was taken from the hot well of a jet condenser. This water

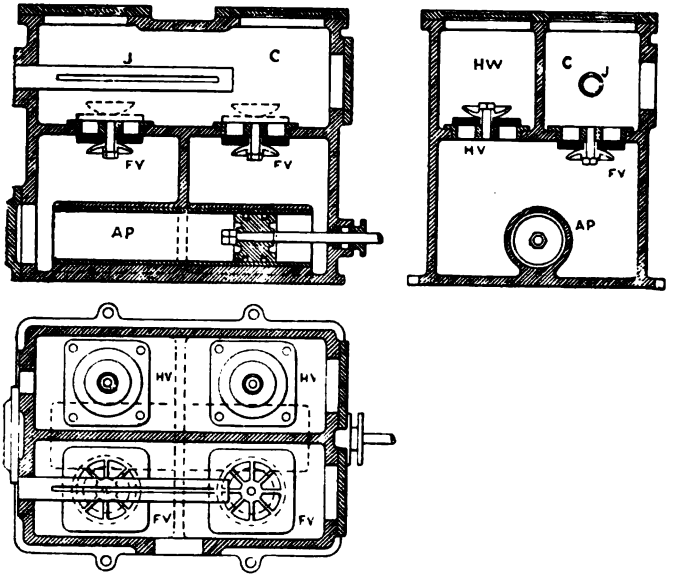


FIG. 195.

was practically as salt as sea-water, owing to the fact that the condenser was supplied with a sea-water injection, the sea-water and the exhaust steam being in the proportion of about 30 to 1 by weight. Even with the low boiler-pressures then used, the salt in the boiler was a serious drawback, for sea-water contains $\frac{1}{33}$ of its weight of solid matter dissolved in it, and when evaporated, the whole of the dissolved solid matter is left behind to be deposited on the boiler-plates, forming a more or less solid incrustation. This incrustation is a bad conductor of heat, and further, since it keeps the water from contact with the hot furnace-plate, there was great danger of the plate getting red hot, and the top of the furnace collapsing. To prevent the water in the boiler from becoming too much saturated with salt, it was necessary to "blow off" a portion of the contents of the boiler from time to time, and to supply its place with a fresh supply of sea-water. By thus blowing away to waste large quantities of hot water, a considerable waste of heat was evidently the result.

But when steam pressures began to increase—this being made possible by the introduction of mild steel plates for boiler construction—the difficulty arising from the presence of salt in the feed-water now became more serious, for at higher temperatures and pressures the presence of solid matter is much more mischievous and dangerous.

Hence the introduction of the surface condenser, which does away with the necessity of feeding the boiler with salt water; the condensed steam itself being kept separate from the condensing water, and the condensed steam alone being pumped back again to the boiler as a hot fresh-water feed. For the steam is here condensed, not by being mixed with large volumes of cold water, but by coming in contact with cold metallic surfaces.

Thus the great advantage of the surface condenser consists in its providing a feed to the boilers free from sea-salt in solution.

Starting with the boilers filled to the working level with pure water, this same water is used over and over again indefinitely, the

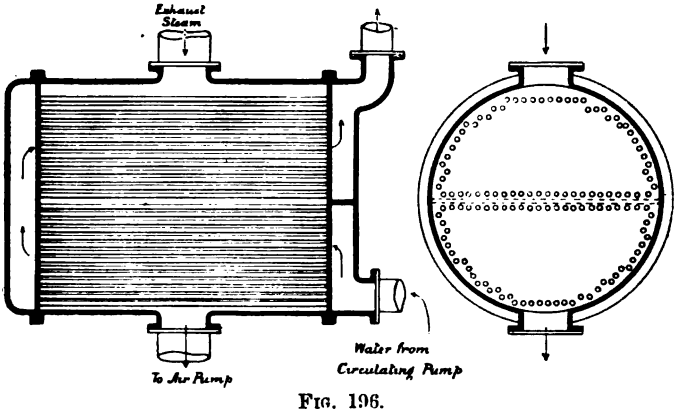


FIG. 196.

only additional feed being that necessary to make up for the small waste from leaky glands, loss by safety-valves, etc.

The general arrangement of a surface condenser is shown in Fig. 196. The cold metallic surface required by which to condense the steam is provided by means of a large number of thin tubes through which a current of cold water is circulated. This arrangement supplies a large cooling surface within comparatively small limits of space.

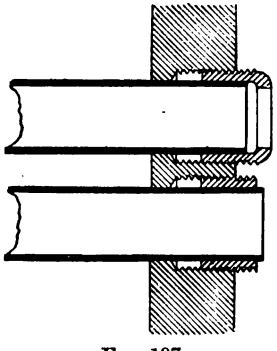


FIG. 197.

The tubes are made to pass right through the condensing chamber, and so as to permit of no connection between the steam and condensing water. The steam is exhausted into the condenser, and there comes in contact with the cold external surface of the tubes. It is then condensed, falls to the bottom, flows into the air-pump chamber, and is pumped into the hot well, from which the feed-pump passes it forward to the boiler.

The tubes are secured to tube plates as shown (Fig. 197), and outer

covers are placed over each end, space being left to allow of circulation of the cooling water as shown by the arrows.

The cooling water is forced through the tubes by means of a

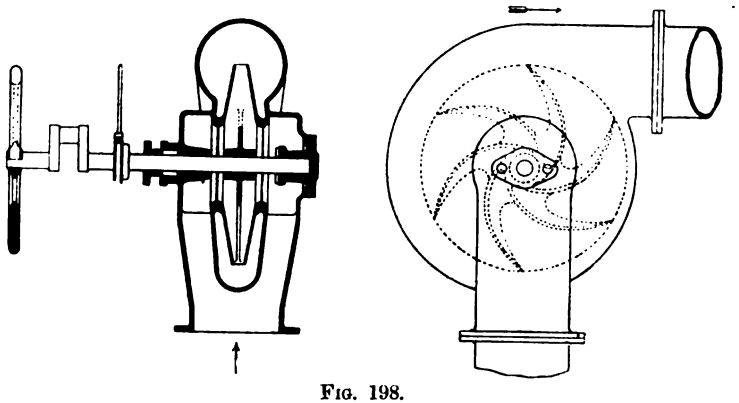


FIG. 198.

circulating pump, sometimes of an independent type, as shown in Fig. 198, though frequently of the simple plunger type worked directly from the engine.

The cold circulating water enters at the bottom corner of the condenser through a flanged opening in the cover, and it is compelled to pass first through the lower set of tubes by a horizontal dividing-plate, and to return through the upper rows to the outlet leading to the overflow.

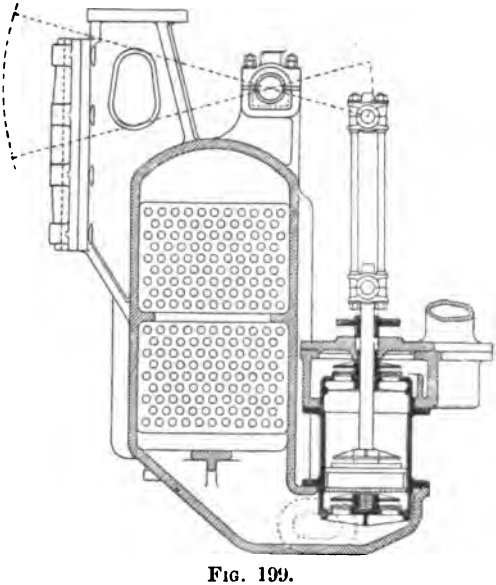


FIG. 199.

Fig. 199 illustrates a surface condenser and air-pump as applied to marine engines, the pumps being driven from the main engines by side levers worked by links from the cross-head.

The Vacuum Gauge.—The vacuum gauge records the difference between the pressure of the external air and the pressure in the condenser in inches of mercury, not in pounds

per square inch. The face of the gauge is graduated from 0 to 30 in. of mercury. One inch of mercury = 0·491 lb. pressure. This is usually taken as 0·5, and then 1 lb. pressure = 2 in. of mercury approximately.

To convert the reading of the vacuum gauge into pounds per square inch pressure measured from absolute zero, take reading of vacuum gauge, subtract from 30, and divide by 2.

Independent Air-pump and Condenser.—To convert a non-condensing plant into condensing, a simple method is to fix an independent con-

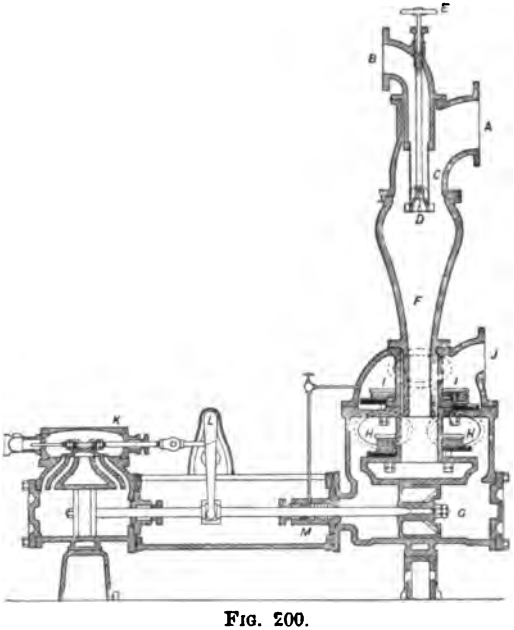


FIG. 200.

denser and air-pump worked by its own separate steam-cylinder. Such an arrangement is shown in Fig. 200, which illustrates the Worthington independent jet condenser.

Exhaust steam enters at A and passes into the vacuum chamber F, through a spray of cold water issuing from the cone valve D, the cold-water supply being connected at B. The quantity of cold injection water is adjusted by the wheel E.

The condensing water and condensed steam are removed by the air-pump G, through the suction valves H, and the discharged valves I, to the discharge pipe J.

The Worthington pump is "duplex"—that is, there are two steam-cylinders and two pumps working together side by side, forming one set, and so combined as to act reciprocally, each on the steam-valve of the other. The one piston acts to give steam to the other, after which it finishes its own stroke, and waits for its valve to be acted upon

before it can renew its motion. This pause allows all the valves to close quietly, and prevents shocks. One or other of the valves is always open, and there can therefore be no dead point.

Fig. 201 illustrates the Wheeler independent surface condenser mounted on its own air and circulating pumps, these pumps being driven by a single separate steam-cylinder shown between them.

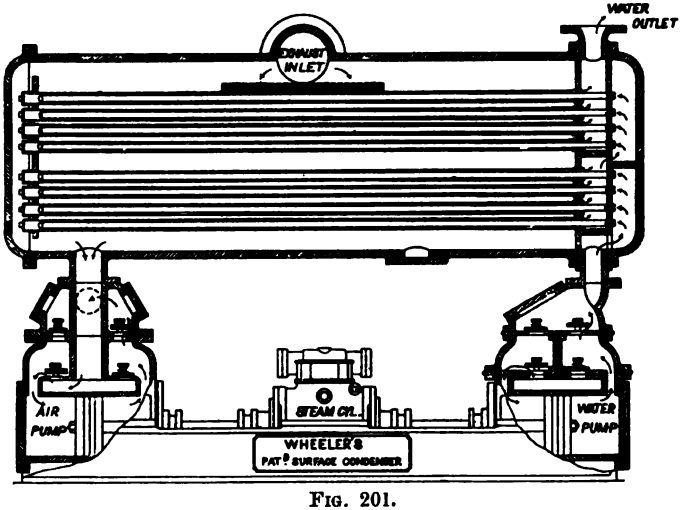


FIG. 201.

A feature of this condenser is the "double-tube system" of conveying the cooling water, as shown in Fig. 202. The circulating or cooling water enters at the outer end of the smaller internal tubes, which extend nearly to the far end of the larger tubes. The small tubes are open at the inner end, and the large tubes are closed at

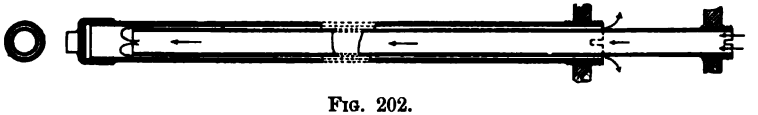


FIG. 202.

that end by a brass cap. Thus the water, after passing through the small tube, returns in the opposite direction through the annular space between the two tubes. By this device the surface exposed per unit weight of cooling water supplied is considerably increased.

The water passes from the lower group of tubes to the higher, as shown by the arrows, and after passing in a similar manner through the upper group of tubes, leaves the condenser at the top.

Weight of Water required per Pound of Steam condensed.—Each pound of cooling water entering a jet condenser will gain $t_2 - t_1$ units of heat, and each pound of steam condensed will lose $H - t_2$ units of

heat ; where t_2 = final temperature of mixture of condensed steam and injection water, t_1 = initial temperature of injection water, H = total heat of steam at pressure in exhaust pipe. If W = weight of cooling water required per pound of steam, then—

$$W(t_2 - t_1) = H - t_2$$

$$W = \frac{H - t_2}{t_2 - t_1}$$

This assumes the steam dry at exhaust, which is sufficiently accurate for practical purposes.

The weight of water required for condensing in surface condensers is somewhat greater than that in jet condensers, because in surface condensers the final temperature (t_2) of the cooling water on one side of the cooling surface must always be less than that of the steam (t_2) on the other side of the surface ; whereas in the jet condenser the condensing water and condensed steam are both finally at the same temperature (t_2). For surface condensers, assuming the exhaust steam from the cylinder is dry—

$$W = \frac{H - t_2}{t_3 - t_1}$$

$H - t_2$ being the heat lost by the steam, and $t_3 - t_1$ being the heat gained by the condensing water.

The Ejector Condenser.—This apparatus, as constructed by Messrs. T. Ledward & Co., is illustrated in Figs. 203 and 204. The cold water, which should be supplied from a head of 15 to 20 ft., enters the apparatus through a contracted nozzle as shown, and passes forward in the form of a round solid jet through a series of coned nozzles, and at a suitable velocity obtained from the head of water in the supply pipe.

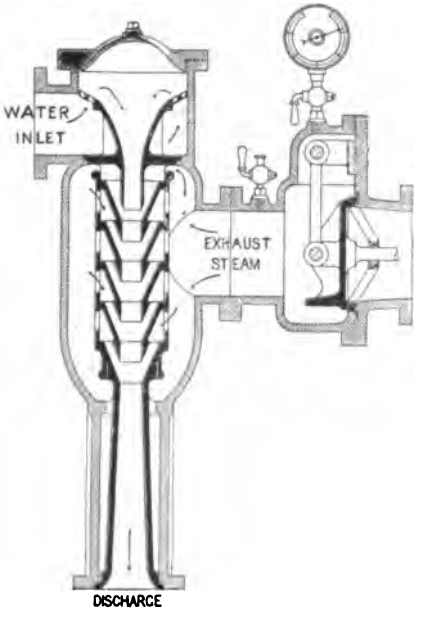


FIG. 203.

The exhaust steam entering the apparatus flows into the annular spaces between the cones, and is condensed by the stream of cold water and rapidly carried away ; and this condensation of the exhaust steam takes place so rapidly as to maintain a high degree of vacuum in the exhaust chamber.

Where a natural fall of water is not available, a pump

must be used to raise the water to the required height, or to force the water direct into the condenser.

With this apparatus a vacuum can be obtained before the engine starts, which is in some cases an advantage.

No air-pump is required with the ejector condenser. It will be

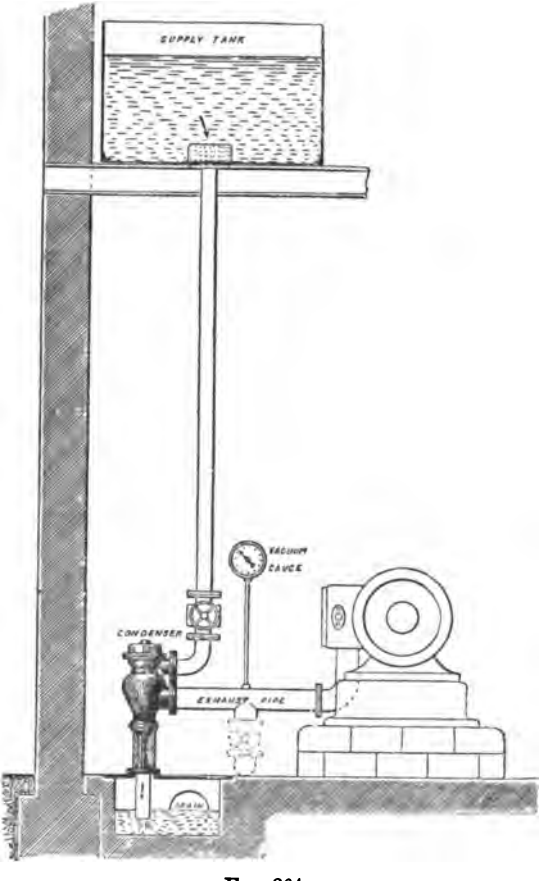


FIG. 204.

noticed that the ejector condenser delivers a stream of water against atmospheric pressure while there is a more or less perfect vacuum in the condenser itself. This is due to the kinetic energy of the jet of water being able to overcome atmospheric resistance. The amount of condensing water required per pound of steam condensed may be calculated in the same way as already described for the jet condenser.

Evaporative Condensers.—The chief difficulty in the way of working engines condensing instead of non-condensing has usually

been the absence of a good supply of water, the quantity required in surface and jet condensers being from twenty to thirty times the weight of the feed-water used. But with the introduction of the evaporative condenser, the absence of a good water-supply is no longer a difficulty, as the same result may be obtained by the action of air on an extended cooling surface. By the use of such an extended external cooling surface, it is possible with a supply of cooling water no greater in amount than that used by the boiler feed, or even less, to secure an efficient vacuum.

The increase of power, or increase of economy of steam for the same power as compared with working non-condensing, as already stated, may be considerable, while after the first cost of the apparatus the working expenses are practically nothing. Thus if the mean effective pressure on the piston without a condenser is 30 lbs. per square inch, and this mean pressure be increased by an additional 12 lbs. due to removal of back pressure by the condenser, we have a gain of 40 per cent., and this gain would probably be a very good interest on the outlay.

The evaporative condenser, as made by Messrs. Ledward & Co. (Fig. 205), consists of a series of pipes arranged and constructed

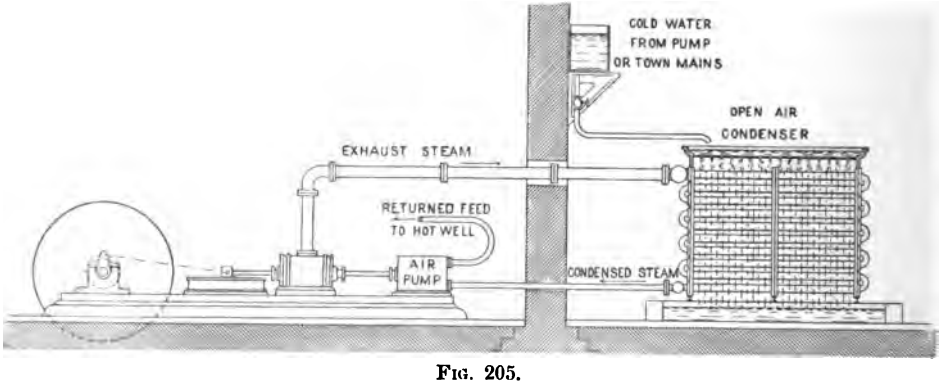


FIG. 205.

so as to afford a large external radiating surface, over which small streams of water are allowed to slowly trickle. The exhaust steam enters the system of pipes at one end, the other end being connected with an air-pump which maintains a vacuum in the pipes. The exhaust steam parts with its heat by evaporation of the water on the external surface of the pipes. A circulation of cooling water is continuously maintained by means of a circulating pump, which feeds from the collecting tank below the system of pipes.

The apparatus just described is in all respects similar to an ordinary surface condenser.

Condensing-water Coolers.—The illustration (Fig. 206) shows an arrangement by Messrs. Worthington for re-cooling the condensing water, which is discharged from an ordinary *jet* condenser. This arrangement is not to be confounded with the *evaporative condenser.*

The feature of the arrangement is that the condensation may be maintained continuously by the use of a comparatively small original

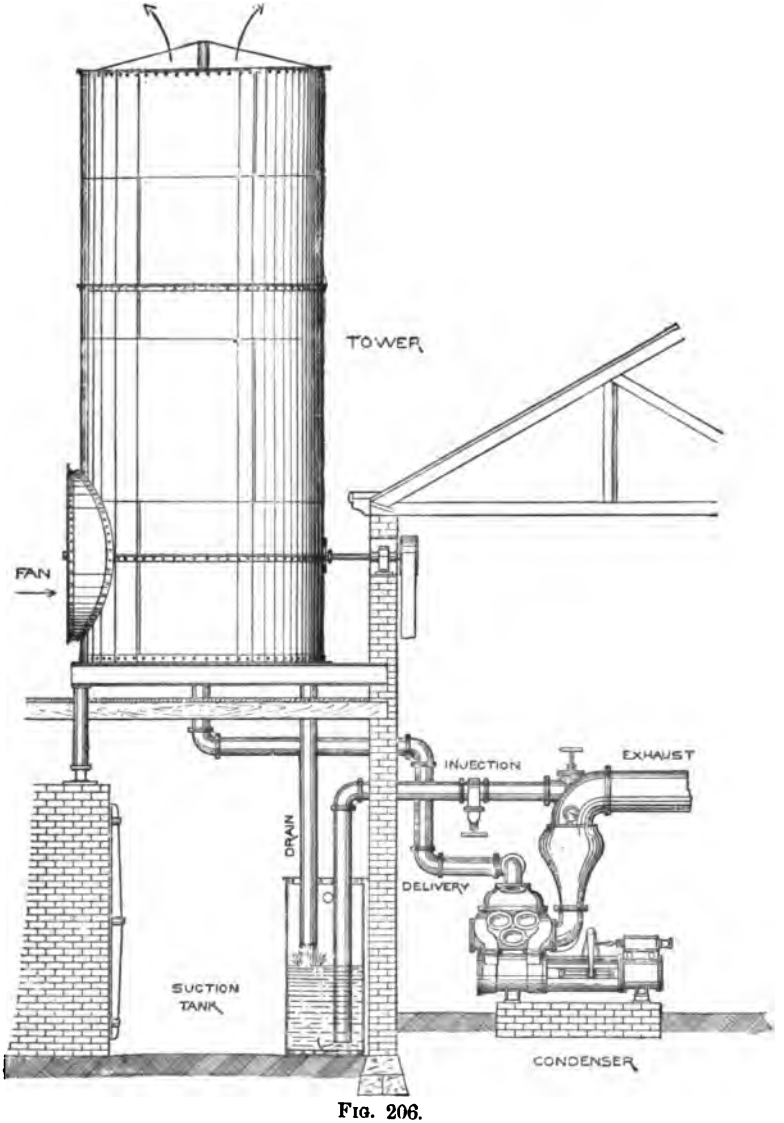


FIG. 206.

supply of cooling water, this water, which is used over and over again, being successively heated in the condenser and cooled in a cooling tower.

The heated water, on leaving the condenser, is raised to the top of the tower, where it is distributed, and cooled by means of a current of air induced by a fan, and finally returned to the storage tank, from which it is again drawn for re-use in the condenser.

A small portion of the water is evaporated in the tower, but the amount so evaporated is less than that of the condensed steam by which the injection water is continuously augmented in the condenser. The cooling surface within the tower is made up of series of hollow cylindrical tiles arranged one above the other but not concentrically. In this way a large cooling surface is provided.

The hot water from the condenser passes up by a pipe through the centre of the tower, and is sprayed over the top row of tiles by distributing pipes, which rotate around the central pipe; the rotation being accomplished by the reaction of the jets of water issuing from the sides of the rotating pipes.

CHAPTER XIII.

FEED-WATER HEATERS.

THE importance of heating the feed-water supplied to boilers cannot be too frequently impressed, from the point of view not only of economy, but also of the durability of the boiler.

The economy obtained by the use of feed-water heaters arises from the fact:

(1) That the heat used for the purpose of feed heating is usually heat which would otherwise have been wasted: as in exhaust feed heaters and waste chimney-gas feed heaters.

(2) That the evaporative power and efficiency of the boiler are increased when the solid matter dissolved in the feed-water has been first separated and deposited in the feed-heater, rather than on the more effective heating surface of the boiler.

The economy obtained by using heat for feed heating which would otherwise be wasted, may be illustrated numerically as follows:—

Suppose steam supplied from the boiler at 150 lbs. pressure by gauge. Then the total heat per pound from 32° = 1193·6 units; or if the cold feed-water is at 60° F. then the net heat per pound required = {1193·6 − (60 − 32)} = 1165·6 thermal units with a cold feed-supply.

If now the temperature of the feed-water is raised to 200°, we shall require from the boiler furnace, for each pound of water evaporated {1193·6 − (200 − 32)} = 1025·6 thermal units, which is a gain of $\frac{140}{1165·6} \times 100 = 12$ per cent.

The diagram (Fig. 207) shows the extent of the gain by heating feed water. Thus, referring to the inclined line drawn through a feed temperature of 40°, it is seen that by heating the feed to 160°

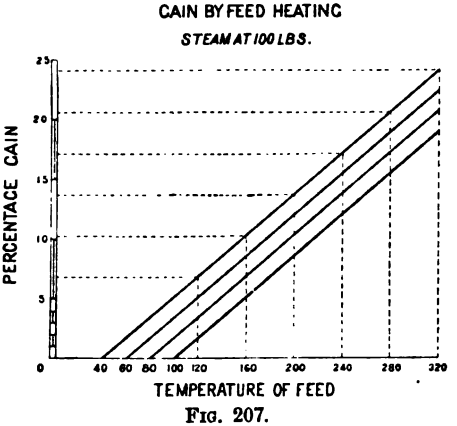


FIG. 207.

the gain is over 10 per cent.; or if it is raised to 280° the gain is over 20 per cent. The inclined lines have been plotted from calculation.

A good form of exhaust-steam feed-heater, as made by the Wheeler Engineering Company, is illustrated in Fig. 208.

The exhaust steam enters the lower part of the heater, passing around and among the tubes, and leaves by an exit towards the top of the heater. The space surrounding the tubes in the heater is made large enough to allow a free passage of the steam without increasing back pressure.

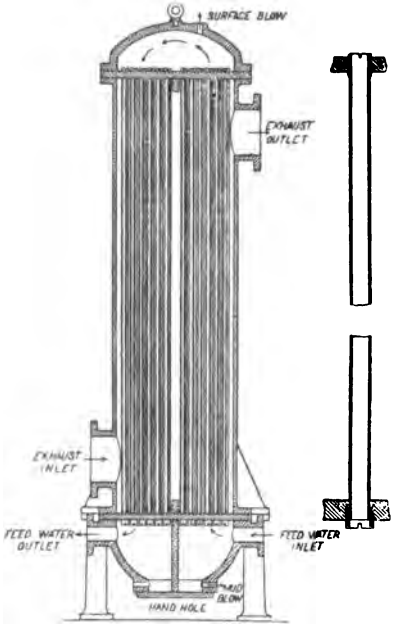


FIG. 208.

The cold feed-water passes through the tubes, entering at the bottom and passing upwards to the top through one half of the tubes, and downwards to the bottom through the other half.

The tubes are screwed into the tube-plate at one end, and at the other end pass through a stuffing box, so that the tubes are free to expand independently of the body of the condenser. The feed-water and that part of the heater containing it, are under boiler pressure, and must therefore be constructed of suitable strength for the purpose. The feed-water is forced into the boiler by the feed pump, through the heater, against the pressure of the boiler.

A feed-water heater may be of value even in condensing engines, the heater being then placed between the engine and the condenser. The gain in such a case is due to the fact that the temperature of the water in the hot well is usually much lower than that corresponding with the pressure of the steam in the exhaust pipe. For example, the water in the hot well may not be more than 90°, while the temperature of the steam in the exhaust pipe may be 150°.

The use of the exhaust steam from auxiliary engines for the purpose of feed-heating is considered good practice.

Feed-heating by Steam from the Receiver of a Compound Engine.[1]— It has been already pointed out that the maximum efficiency of a heat engine is expressed by the equation $\frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1}$, where T_1 = initial

[1] See an article on "Feed Water Heaters," by Dr. A. C. Elliott, *Engineering*, January 11, 1895.

temperature of the working fluid, and T_2 = the temperature due to the back pressure against the piston.

But the efficiency of the steam-engine cycle falls short of this, owing to the heat of the feed not being supplied at the maximum temperature, but along a gradually increasing temperature line. The useful work done falls short of the Carnot cycle by the dotted triangle *aeb* (Fig. 209).

This efficiency, however, may be further approached by the method of abstracting heat from the working steam by stages during expansion, from the high-pressure cylinder downwards towards the condenser, for the purpose of heating the feed-water. The cycle then becomes similar to that of the engine of Dr. Stirling, who applied the regenerative principle of adding and subtracting heat to and from the working fluid by means of a regenerator. Thus, in Fig. 210, if, instead of expansion along *ct* from T_1 to T_2, heat is abstracted for

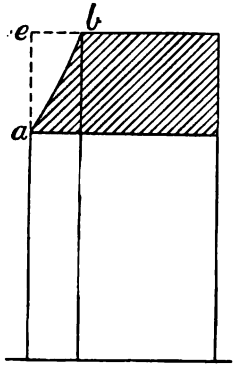


FIG. 209.

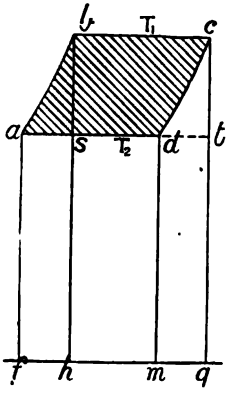


FIG. 210.

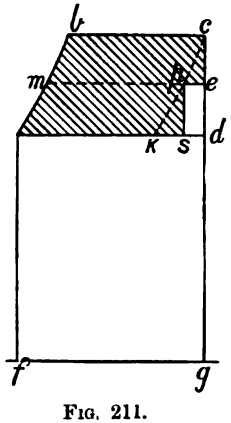


FIG. 211.

the purpose of feed-heating equal in amount to the area *mdcg*; then, if the heat, *mdcg*, so abstracted be transferred to the working fluid, and the amount transferred per pound be equal to that required to raise the temperature of the 1 lb. of feed-water from T_2 to T_1, namely, *fabh*: then the net heat added = area *hbcg*; and the net heat rejected = area *fadm* = area *hstg*;

$$\text{and the efficiency} = \frac{abcd}{fabcdm} = \frac{sbct}{hbcg} = \frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1}$$

The system introduced by Mr. Weir of heating the feed-water by steam taken from the receiver between the cylinders of compound engines is an approximation to the same result. Thus, instead of the expansion being carried along the adiabatic line, *cd*, from *c* to *d*, it expands from *c* to *e* (Fig. 211) in the high-pressure cylinder, and then a portion of the dry steam, namely *ep* ÷ *em*, is extracted from the receiver to heat the feed-water. If an indefinite number of small

portions be extracted, then the irregular line, *ceps*, will approach nearer and nearer to the dotted line, *ck*, and the efficiency becomes equal to $(T_1 - T_2) \div T_1$.

Taking a numerical example: Compare the efficiency of a triple-expansion engine with and without feed-heating, the feed being heated in the former case by steam from the receiver between the intermediate and low-pressure cylinders (Fig. 212).

Initial absolute temperature of steam $T_1 = 842°$
Temperature in exhaust-pipe $T_2 = 624°$
Temperature in receiver $R_2 = T_3 = 740°$
Absolute temperature of air-pump delivery = 590°

Suppose 10 per cent. of the steam be taken from receiver R_2 at temperature T_3 to heat the feed-water.

1. Efficiency *without* feed-heating:—

To find the value of U = the number of units of heat converted

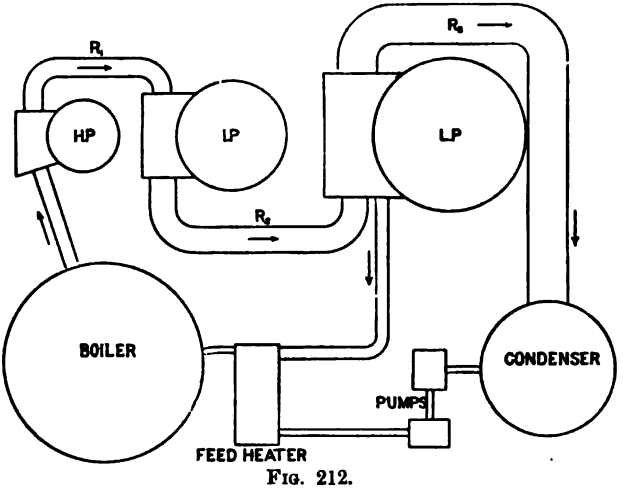


FIG. 212.

into work with steam working from T_1 and expanding down to T_2, and exhausting at that temperature.

Total work done *without* feed-heating = U

$$= (1437 - 0{\cdot}7\,T_1)\frac{T_1 - T_2}{T_1} + (T_1 - T_2) - T_2 \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_2} \text{ (see p. 54)}$$

$$= (847{\cdot}6 \times 0{\cdot}2589) + 218 - 187{\cdot}2$$

$$= 250{\cdot}24$$

Also, total heat-units supplied per pound of steam—

$$= H = 1437 + 0{\cdot}3T_1 \text{ from absolute zero}$$
$$= 1082 + 0{\cdot}3t \text{ from } 32° \text{ Fahr.}$$

Or from feed-temperature 590° absolute

$$= (1437 + 0{\cdot}3T_1) - 590 = 1099{\cdot}6 \text{ units}$$

$$\text{therefore efficiency} = E = \frac{U}{H} = \frac{250{\cdot}24}{1099{\cdot}6} = 0{\cdot}22819$$

2. Efficiency *with* feed-heating:—

If U = work done per pound working from T_1 to T_2
U_a = " " " " T_1 to T_3
U_t = total work done

Then, since $\frac{1}{n}$ lb. of the steam passing through the engines is removed at T_3, the total work done per pound

$$= U_t = \frac{n-1}{n}U + \frac{1}{n}U_a.$$

But the value of U has been found, and it only now remains to find the value of U_a, the process being exactly the same as in finding U, substituting T_3 for T_2 throughout; thus, to find U_a, or the work done per pound of steam working between the temperatures T_1 and T_3—

$$U_a = (1437 - 0{\cdot}7\,T_1)\frac{T_1 - T_3}{T_1} + (T_1 - T_3) - T_3 \log_e \frac{T_1}{T_3}$$
$$= 847{\cdot}6 \times 0{\cdot}12114 + 102 - 95{\cdot}608$$
$$= 109{\cdot}072 \text{ heat-units.}$$

Total work done (U_t) by the steam when $\frac{1}{n}$ is extracted from the receiver; and when $n = 10$; then—

$$U_t = \frac{n-1}{n}U + \frac{1}{n}U_a$$
$$= 0{\cdot}9 \times 250{\cdot}24 + 0{\cdot}1 \times 109{\cdot}072$$
$$= 236{\cdot}123 \text{ heat-units.}$$

But the work done when no steam was withdrawn from the receiver was equal to 250·24, and is, of course, greater than when steam was withdrawn from the receiver. Before, however, we can compare the efficiencies of the two systems we must find the net heat *supplied* in each case, and for this purpose, in the latter case, we must find the temperature (F_1) of the hot feed obtained by this system of feed-heating.

Thus, if F be the temperature of the unheated feed-water, and $1437 + 0{\cdot}3T_1$ = the total heat of steam when temperature is expressed in absolute units, we have—

$$F_1 = F\left(\frac{n-1}{n}\right) + \frac{1437 + 0{\cdot}3\,T_1 - U_a}{n}$$
$$= (590 \times 0{\cdot}9) + (1689\,6 - 109{\cdot}072) \times 0{\cdot}1$$
$$= 689{\cdot}05$$

Then *net heat supplied* with the hot feed from receiver = H_1, and

$$H_1 = 1437 + 0{\cdot}3T_1 - F_1$$
$$= 1000{\cdot}55$$

We can now compare the efficiencies—

(1) Efficiency without hot feed = 0·22819 as already found.

(2) Efficiency with hot feed = $E_1 = \frac{U_t}{H_1} = \frac{236{\cdot}123}{1000{\cdot}55} = 0{\cdot}236$

There is, therefore, a gain in favour of the system of heating the feed-water by steam withdrawn from the receiver in the proportion of 0·236 : 0·22819, or a gain of 3·4 per cent.

The economy obtained by feed-heating may be well seen by reference to the temperature-entropy diagram (Fig. 213). Thus, taking the data used in the above problem, the diagram represents first the heat in the feed-water which is included within the area to the left of *ha*. The temperature of the water from the hot well is given as 590° Fahr. absolute. This is seen to be 34° below the temperature of the exhaust steam. It should here be noticed that the temperature of the condensed steam passing away through the air-pump is always below that due to the pressure in the condenser, in consequence of the cooling due to the excess circulating water passing through the condenser. This excess is necessary, otherwise, the condensed steam in the condenser being near its boiling-point, the air-pump would not work.

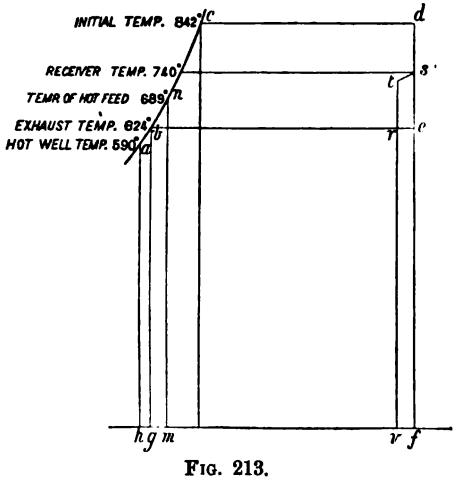


FIG. 213.

With the conditions already described, the heat required per pound of steam, when the feed is drawn direct from the condenser, is given by the area *hacdfh*. By the arrangement described of supplying steam from the receiver to heat the feed, the temperature of the feed has been raised, and the total heat now required to generate 1 lb. of steam is reduced by the area *hanmh*, making the net heat required = *mncdfm*. This has been accomplished at the expense of a loss of heat = *vtsfv*, or a loss of useful work = *rtse*. The net gain has been shown to be 3·4 per cent.

Feed-water Filters.—The chief objection to the use of condensed steam as a boiler-feed is the presence of oil carried out of the cylinders with the exhaust steam, and which, if pumped into the boilers, may cause serious trouble through deposit on the furnace plates. Too much care cannot be taken to prevent oil passing into the boilers, and, for the purpose of separating the oil, the feed-water is passed through a feed-water filter.

If a sample of unfiltered feed-water from the hot well of a surface condenser be drawn off, it will be seen to have a slightly milky

appearance, and to be soapy to the touch. When this water is passed through a good filter, the oily constituents are almost entirely removed.[1]

These filters consist essentially of a series of layers of filter-cloths and fine grid-wire meshes, through which the feed-water is either drawn or forced by the feed-pumps, and is thereby cleansed of suspended matter.

The filtering material meantime becomes gradually laden with a dark viscous muddy deposit, consisting of heavy oils and certain mineral matter. This deposit is periodically removed from the filter by cleaning or renewal of the filtering medium.

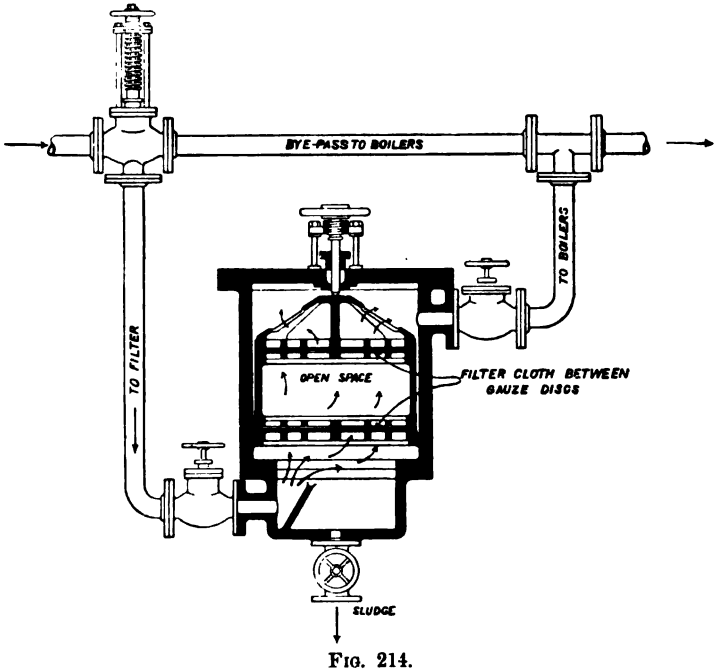


FIG. 214.

The filter, of course, removes solid matter only; the impurities dissolved in the feed-water pass forward into the boiler unless removed in a feed-water heater or by chemical means. The efficiency and duration of a filter depend upon the nature of the filtering material and upon the thickness or number of strata through which the feed-water passes. The filter should be placed at the point of lowest possible temperature of the feed-water, for the lower the temperature the more viscous and the less fluid is the condition of the oily matter, and the more easily it is separated from the feed-water.

[1] See article by Mr. N. Sinclair, in *Cassier's Magazine*, October, 1897.

Fig. 214 is a type of feed-water filter made by the Harris Filter Company.[1] The arrangement speaks for itself.

To reduce the amount of oil returned to the condensers from the engines, regulations have been introduced, in some cases of marine practice, prohibiting the use of oil in the cylinders, not only of the auxiliary, but also of the main, engines; and experience has shown

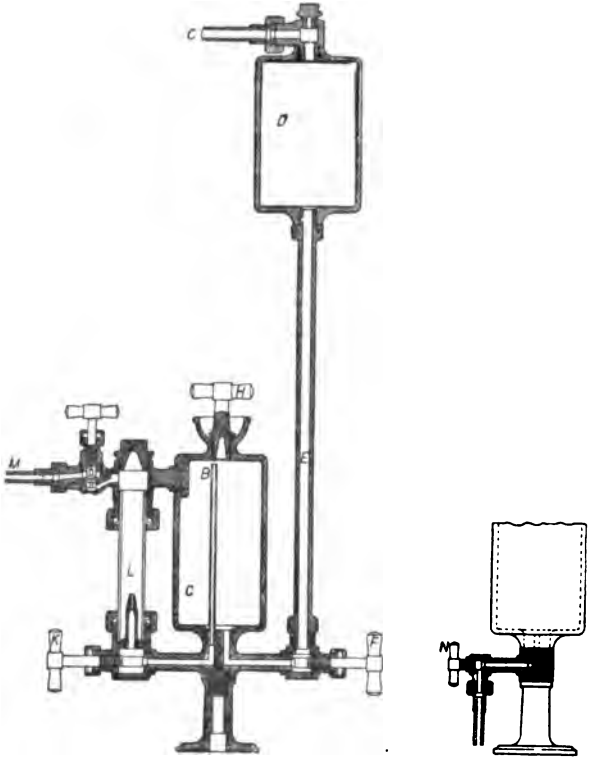


FIG. 215.—C = connection from main steam-pipe; D = condenser; E = pipe for transmitting pressure of head of water in condenser D to oil-chamber; G = oil-chamber; H = plug valve for filling oil-chamber; K = valve for regulating delivery of oil; L = sight-feed glass tube, showing delivery of oil in drops; M = connection to steam-chest of engine, or to steam-pipe, for delivering the oil; N = valve for running off condensed water from oil-chamber.

that these engines may be worked without any lubrication of the pistons except by the water in the cylinder; but there is certainly a loss of efficiency in most cases, due to increased friction.

The Sight-feed Lubricator has been a most valuable invention, as it provides for a regular supply of oil to the cylinder, and in

[1] From *Cassier's Magazine*, October, 1897.

minimum quantities. The diagram (Fig. 215) illustrates Grandison's condenser type of sight-feed lubricator. This lubricator acts by the pressure obtained from the head of water contained in the condenser D and the vertical pipe E, connecting it to the bottom of the oil-chamber G. When first fixed, the condenser and pipe are filled by hand, or allowed to fill by the condensation of steam admitted by the pipe C attached to top of the tube. The oil-chamber is filled with oil through the plug valve H, and the sight-tube L is filled with water. The valves F and K at the bottom of the condenser-tube and sight-tube respectively are then opened, the condensed water enters the bottom of the oil-chamber, and by its pressure displaces the oil, which flows from the top down the small centre tube, and is forced through the nozzle inside the glass tube L. The oil leaves the nozzle in drops, and ascends through the water in the tube, and thence through the pipe to the steam-chest of the engine. The rate of feed or number of drops is regulated by the valve K at the bottom. When the oil is exhausted, it is replenished by first closing the inlet and outlet valves, removing the plug valve H, and running the condensed water off by the small valve, N, at the bottom. This valve is then closed, and the chamber refilled with oil.

CHAPTER XIV.

GOVERNORS.

Regulation of the Speed of the Engine.—Variation in speed of an engine may be due to variation of load on the engine, or to variation of mean pressure of the steam in the cylinder. When the variation is of the nature of a gradual increase or decrease of speed extending over a number of revolutions, such variation is controlled by the governor. When, however, the speed of rotation tends to vary during the period of a single revolution, due to variable turning effort on the crank-pin, or to sudden change of load, as in a rolling mill, such variation is regulated by the flywheel.

The object of the governor is to maintain as nearly as possible a uniform speed of rotation of the engine independently of change of load and of boiler-pressure.

None of the governors applied to steam-engines are able to accomplish this result perfectly, for, being themselves driven by the engine, they cannot begin to act until a change of velocity has first occurred to give motion to the regulating mechanism.

In practice, however, when any change of velocity does take place, a good governor instantly acts and prevents anything more than a small alteration of speed.

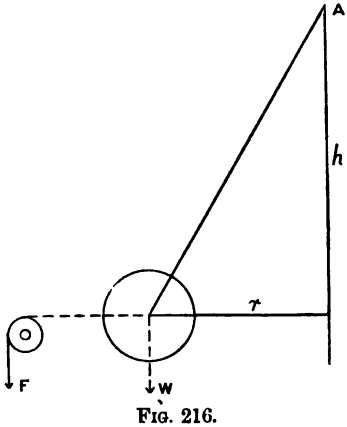


FIG. 216.

Governors regulate the speed by regulating the mean pressure of the steam acting on the piston. This is usually done in one of two ways—

1. By throttling; that is, by varying the initial pressure of the steam supplied, the point of cut-off remaining constant.

2. By variable expansion; that is, by varying the point of cut-off in the cylinder, the initial pressure remaining constant.

The principle of action of most governors depends upon the change of centrifugal force when the rate of rotation changes.

In the case of a simple revolving pendulum, let W = weight of

ball, and F = centrifugal force due to speed of rotation, h = height of cone of revolution, and r = radius of rotation of ball. Then, if the speed of rotation is constant, the ball remains at a constant distance, r, from the axis of rotation by the action of the centrifugal force F. The measure of the force necessary to maintain the ball at this constant distance, r, may be shown by means of a weight, F, hanging over a pulley, as shown (Fig. 216). Then, taking moments about A—

$$F \times h = W \times r$$

So that, knowing the values of W, r, and h for any given governor, and neglecting friction, F can at once be found by calculation.

Fig. 217 illustrates a simple type of pendulum-governor, the action of which, as will be seen by the figure, is, by the rotation of the balls, to cause a movement of the sliding-sleeve E upwards or downwards on the spindle, and thus give motion to the bell-crank lever C, which, in this case, regulates the opening and closing of the valve through which the steam is supplied to the engine.

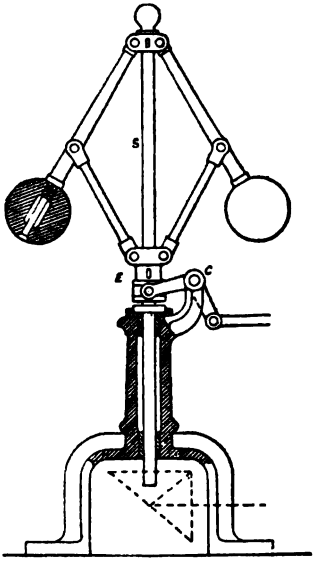


FIG. 217.

Suppose a governor of the kind described is supplied for the purpose of attachment to an engine. There are, in the first place, at least two important points to be determined—

1. At what speed must the governor be made to run. This information is needed in settling the sizes of the pulleys or wheels by which the governor is driven from the engine-shaft.

2. Through what range of speed will the governor run during the movement of the sleeve from its bottom to its top position. This must be known, because for any other speeds outside this range the governor may rotate on its axis, but it will in no sense be a governor, and will serve no purpose whatever.

A certain speed of rotation must be reached before the balls move from their position of rest. When this speed is reached, the governor begins to act.

If, when the speed increases, the governor reaches its top position, and in doing so does not close the steam-supply to the engine, then the speed may go on increasing, but the governor is no longer acting as a governor. It acts as a governor only between the range of speed that belongs to it while moving from its bottom to its top position.

Let F represent the configuration of the governor when in its bottom and top positions respectively.

$$\text{Then } F \times h = W \times r$$

$$F = W\frac{r}{h}$$

and F is therefore known for both positions, r and h being determined by measurement, and W being the weight of one ball (omitting for simplicity the weight of the arms). Or F may be determined by experiment, as shown in Fig. 216.

Having found F, we have now to find the speed of rotation which will generate a centrifugal force equal to F.

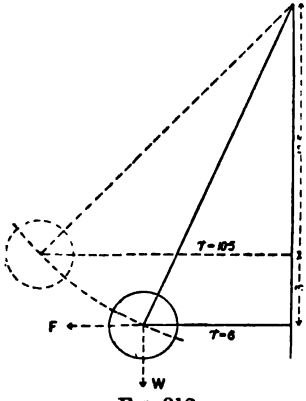


FIG. 218.

It is shown in works on theoretical mechanics that centrifugal force—

$$F = \frac{mv^2}{r} = \frac{Wv^2}{gr} = \frac{4\pi^2 n^2 r W}{g}$$

$$\text{and } n = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{Fg}{Wr}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{g}{h}}$$

where n = revolutions of the governor per second, and r = radius of rotation in feet.

This may be conveniently written—

$$F = WrN^2 \times 0{\cdot}00034$$

where N = revolutions per minute; r = radius in feet.

We may now find the speed N of the governor for the two positions shown in the sketch, Fig. 218.

1. Suppose W = 5 lbs., and taking first the lowest position of the governor balls, and finding the values of r and h by measurement—

$$F \times h = W \times r$$
$$F \times 13{\cdot}5 = 5 \times 6$$
$$F = 2{\cdot}22 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$\text{Then } N^2 = 2{\cdot}22 \div (5 \times 0{\cdot}5 \times 0{\cdot}00034) = 2614$$
$$N = 51 \text{ revolutions per minute}$$

2. To find the speed in the upper position—

$$F \times h = W \times r$$
$$F \times 10{\cdot}5 = 5 \times 10{\cdot}5$$
$$F = 5$$
$$N^2 = 5 \div (5 \times {\cdot}875 \times 0{\cdot}00034) = 3361$$
$$N = 58 \text{ revolutions per minute}$$

Here the range of speed of the governor is from 51 revolutions per minute in its bottom position to 58 revolutions in its top position. The effect of friction in the working parts of the governor will be referred to later.

Height of Cone of Revolution.—The relation between the height

h of the cone of revolution (Fig. 219) and the speed of the governor is obtained from the following equation :—

$$F \times h = W \times r$$

$$\text{since } F = \frac{Wv^2}{gr}$$

$$\frac{Wv^2}{gr} \times h = W \times r$$

$$\therefore h = \frac{gr^2}{v^2} \text{ ft.}$$

$$\text{But } v = 2\pi rn = 2\pi r \frac{N}{60}$$

where n = revolutions per second, and N = revolutions per minute;

$$\therefore h = \frac{gr^2}{v^2} = \frac{gr^2 \times 60 \times 60 \times 12}{4\pi^2 r^2 N^2} = \frac{35200}{N^2} \text{ in.}$$

If the value of h for a simple pendulum governor be calculated for different speeds, it will be found that while the change of height,

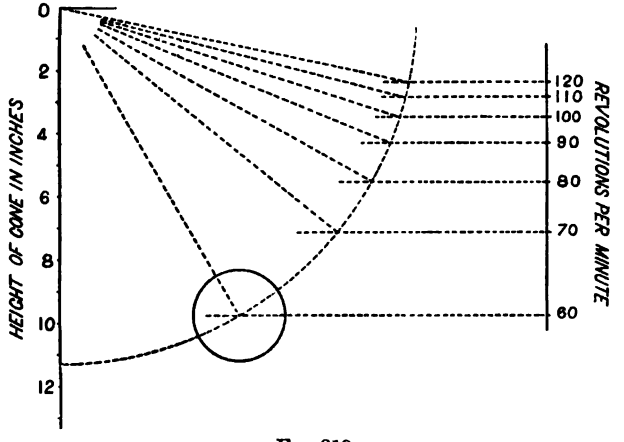


FIG. 219.

h, for a change of speed may be comparatively large when the speed of the governor is low, when the speed is increased the change of height for a change of speed becomes so small as to be of no practical value.

Thus, for a change of speed from 51 to 58 revolutions we have seen there is a change of height of 3 in., which gives a movement of the sleeve of the governor sufficient to suitably open or close the throttle-valve by means of levers; but when the speed is increased to 200 revolutions, the height $h = 35{,}200 \div (200 \times 200) = 0{\cdot}88$ in.; and for a speed of 300 revolutions, $h = 35{,}200 \div (300 \times 300) = 0{\cdot}39$ in.; that is, a change of height of $0{\cdot}88 - 0{\cdot}39 = 0{\cdot}49$ in., or about $\frac{1}{2}$ in. is all

the movement of the sleeve which can be obtained for a change of speed from 200 to 300 revolutions. This, of course, renders such an arrangement useless for the purpose of a governing at high speeds.

The value of h may be written—

$$h = \frac{g}{\omega^2}$$

where $\omega = \frac{v}{r}$ = angular velocity in radians,

$$\text{and } \omega = \frac{2\pi N}{60} \text{ radians per second}$$

where N = revolutions of the governor per minute.

Thus, if the revolutions of a simple Watt governor are 120 per minute—

$$h = \frac{32{\cdot}2}{\left(\frac{2\pi N}{60}\right)^2} = 0{\cdot}204 \text{ ft.} = 2{\cdot}448 \text{ in.}$$

The height h varies inversely as the square of the revolutions only, and does not depend upon weight of ball or length of arm; thus the height h will be constant at a constant speed for either of the governors A, B, or C (Fig. 220).

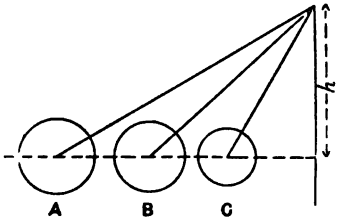


FIG. 220.

Loaded Governors.—It has been seen that the simple pendulum governor is unsuitable for high speeds, because the difference of height $h_1 - h_2$ for a given change of speed, rapidly becomes too small, as the speed of rotation increases, to be of practical service in giving motion to the steam-regulating mechanism.

If now a weight be added which increases the load on the governor, but does not increase the centrifugal force, then a large movement of the sleeve may be obtained with a high speed of rotation, and at the same time a much more powerful type of governor is obtained than when no central weight is used.

A loaded governor running at a high speed may be constructed with comparatively small rotating weights, because the centrifugal force increases as the square of the number of revolutions and only directly as the weight of the balls, and the centrifugal force therefore rapidly increases with the speed.

Fig. 221 is a drawing of a model of a Porter governor with which many useful experiments may be made, and which serves to illustrate the principles involved in governor design, including the values of F for varying positions of the balls, and for varying weights on the sleeve, from which the corresponding speed may be calculated.

In a Porter governor as illustrated by Fig. 222, it will be seen that

the load on the sleeve does not itself add anything to the centrifugal force, though it necessitates the generation of a large centrifugal force in the rotating balls before the load on the sleeve can be removed.

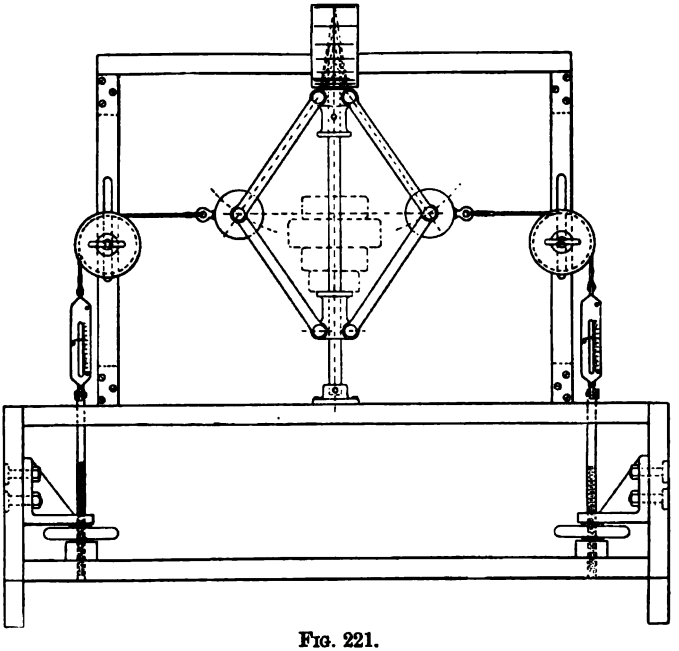


FIG. 221.

If a load had been put on the balls as in Fig. 223, then the vertical movement of the balls and the sleeve would be equal, but in Fig. 222 the vertical movement of the central load is twice that of the ball.

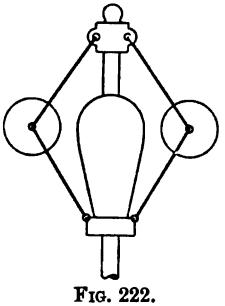


FIG. 222.

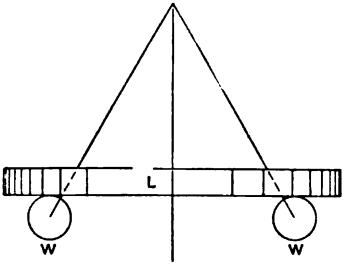


FIG. 223.

Let K = the velocity ratio of the vertical movement of the load L to the vertical movement of the ball W.

Then the moment Fh of the centrifugal force of the rotating ball

has to balance the moment, not only of its own weight (Wr), but also its share of the central load. Thus, referring to Fig. 223, if the central load were attached to the governor as shown, then each weight W would carry half L, and the value of $F = \left(W + \frac{L}{2}\right)\frac{r}{h}$. But since in the Porter governor the central load is moved through a vertical distance = K times that moved through by W, then, by the principle of virtual velocities—

$$F = \left(W + K\frac{L}{2}\right)\frac{r}{h}$$

But in practice it is usual to make K = 2;

$$\text{then } F = (W + L)\frac{r}{h}$$

But F also $= \frac{4\pi^2 n^2 r W}{g}$, where W = weight of one ball; from which we have—

$$n = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{(W + L)g}{Wh}} \text{ revolutions per second}$$

Comparing the value of n here given for the loaded governor with the value of n given for the simple governor, we have the ratio—

$$\frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{(W + L)g}{Wh}} : \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{g}{h}}$$

$$\text{or as } \sqrt{W + L} : \sqrt{W}$$

The equivalent value of h in feet for a loaded governor, where the central load L has double the vertical movement of the ball, may also be written thus:

$$h = \frac{W + L}{W} \times \frac{g}{\omega^2}$$

$$= \frac{W + L}{W} \times \frac{g}{\left(\frac{2\pi N}{60}\right)^2}$$

These same results, and many other useful facts connected with governors, may be shown graphically, as will now be explained. Let the triangle abc, Fig. 224, represent the triangle of forces acting at the centre of the ball of the governor when the governor is at rest; ab = weight of ball; bc = horizontal pressure of ball against point of rest as shown; and ac = tension in arm, all to the same scale representing pounds.

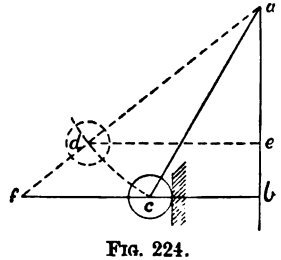


FIG. 224.

When the governor begins to rotate and to increase in speed, the centrifugal force F of the ball increases, gradually reducing the amount of the

horizontal pressure of the ball against the point of rest until the two are equal, after which any further increase of speed will cause the ball to move outwards along the arc *cd*, say to *d*. Then *ade* is the triangle of forces in the new position of the arm, and *ae* = weight of ball to a new scale. Using, however, the same scale as before, then *ab* is still the weight, and *bf* to the same scale = F. If *ac* and *ad* are the two extreme positions of the governor arm, then the speed corresponding to these positions can be calculated from the values of F, given respectively by *bc* and *bf* to the scale of pounds ; and, taking for *r* the values *bc* and *de* to a scale of feet—

$$F = WrN^2 \times 0{\cdot}00034$$

In Fig. 225, let *ab* = weight of one ball, and *bd* to the same scale = weight of central load L on sleeve, as in the Porter governor. The whole value of L is taken, and not half L, for reasons explained above. Then, when the speed of the governor generates a centrifugal force = *bc*, if there were no central load, the governor ball is just about to rise, and to make an angle greater than *cab* with the spindle *ab*. But, with the central load L and the speed as before, the centrifugul force *bc* = *df*; the effect is equivalent to the arm *ac* lying in position *af*. Produce *ac* to meet *de* in *e*. Then *de* is the centrifugal force which must be obtained from the rotating ball before the governor will begin to move from its position of rest, *df* being the centrifugal force to balance the weight of the ball, and *fe* to balance the central load.

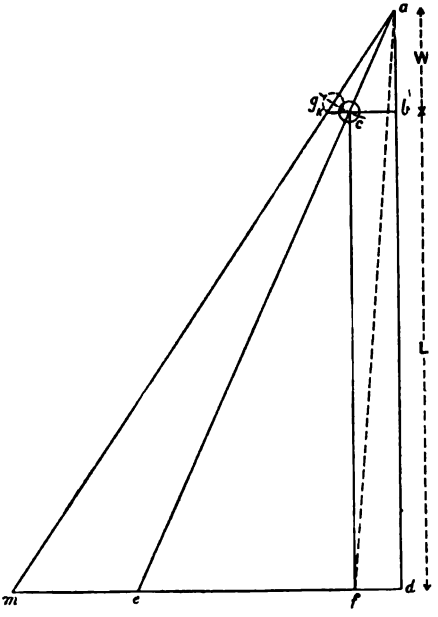


FIG. 225.

If *ag* be the position of the outer limit of the arm, and, if *ag* be continued to *m*, then *dm*, measured from the diagram to the same scale of pounds as *ab*, is the centrifugal force necessary to place the governor arm in this position, and the range of speed of the governor may be calculated, knowing the values of F in pounds, namely, *de* and *dm* for the respective positions of the arm.

In Fig. 225, $cb = F_1$, and $ed = F_2$, these being respectively the centrifugal force without and with central load when the ball arm makes the angle *cab* with the spindle. But F varies as the square of the speed (N) ; then—

$$F_1 : F_2 :: N_1^2 : N_2^2$$
$$\text{and } cb : ed :: ab : ad$$
$$N_1^2 : N_2^2 :: W : W + L$$
$$N_1 : N_2 :: \sqrt{W} : \sqrt{W + L}$$

Similarly, $kb = F_3$ and $md = F_4$, these being respectively the centrifugal force without and with a central load, when the ball-arm makes an angle *gab* with the central spindle.

From the values of F so obtained, the values of N can be determined for any proportions of weight to central load.

If the central load be increased or diminished by an amount $= w$, then the change of speed N_1 to N_2 for a given position of the governor arm is obtained from the ratio—

$$N_1 : N_2 :: \sqrt{W + L} : \sqrt{W + L \mp w}$$

Sensitiveness.—The sensitiveness of a governor may be defined as the ratio of variation of speed $n_1 - n_2$ to mean speed n, where n_1 and n_2 are the range of speed permitted by the governor, and the sensitiveness per cent. $= \frac{n_1 - n_2}{n} \times 100$.

Taking this definition of sensitiveness, and neglecting the effect of the friction of the governor, and the working parts connected with it, it will be found that the addition of a central load has theoretically no effect upon the sensitiveness of a governor, though since, in practice, the friction of the governor and its gear may be considerable, the sensitiveness of the loaded governor is actually much greater than that of the unloaded one.

Thus, if the range of speed of a governor of the Porter type, but unloaded, be from 60 to 70 revolutions, then, if a central weight = 8 times the weight of one ball be added to the central spindle, we have, for the speed of the governor in the lowest position—

$$N_1 : N_2 : \sqrt{W} : \sqrt{W + L}$$
$$60 : N_2 : \sqrt{1} : \sqrt{9}$$
$$\text{or } N_2 = 180 \text{ revolutions}$$

and for the highest position of the ball—

$$70 : N_2 \sqrt{1} : \sqrt{9}$$
$$\text{or } N_2 = 210 \text{ revolutions}$$

That is, with the unloaded governor the sleeve moved through its full movement between the speeds of 60 and 70 revolutions, while the loaded governor gave the same movement of the sleeve between the speeds of 180 and 210 revolutions.

Applying now the above formula, we have—

(1) $\frac{70 - 60}{65} 100 = 15{\cdot}38$ per cent.

(2) $\frac{210 - 180}{195} 100 = 15{\cdot}38$ per cent.

That is, the sensitiveness is the same in both cases when friction is

omitted. But when friction is included, the loaded governor is the more sensitive type, because the friction is a smaller proportion of the total forces acting on the governor when loaded than when unloaded.

About 2 per cent. variation of speed of the engine is the practical limit of variation with good governors. A less percentage than this requires a very large flywheel.

Diagram of Forces for the Porter Governor.—Fig. 226 shows a Porter governor with another form of the diagram of forces drawn for the two limiting positions of the balls. The object is to find the

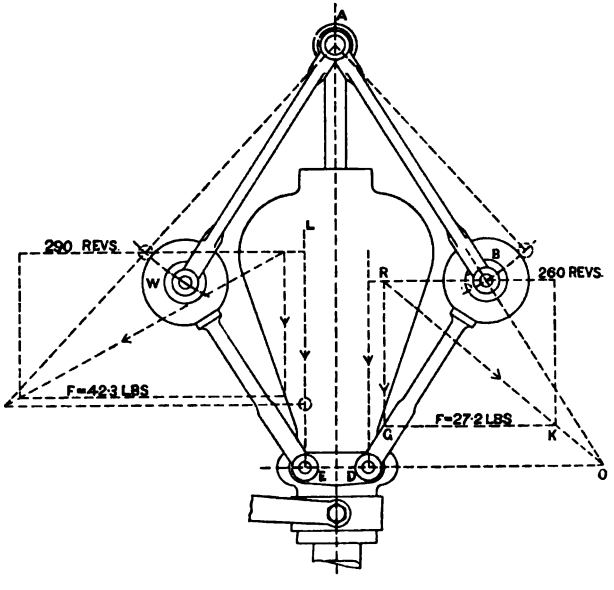


FIG. 226.

centrifugal force F at these two positions, and to find therefrom the maximum and minimum speed of the governor.

In the example taken, the weight W of each ball is 3 lbs.; the central load L is 40 lbs.; in the lowest position the radius $r = \frac{4{\cdot}72}{12}$ ft., and in the highest position $r = \frac{6{\cdot}05}{12}$ ft.

In order that the system of forces acting on the lever BD joining the ball and sleeve may be in equilibrium in any position of the governor, the resultant of the forces acting upon it must pass through its virtual or instantaneous centre of rotation.

Produce the lines AB and ED to meet in O. Then O is the instantaneous centre, and the resultant of the weights and centrifugal force acting on this side of the governor must pass through the point O.

The vertical resultant $= W + \frac{L}{2}$, and this force RG is set down to any convenient scale from the horizontal line through B. The position of this resultant of the vertical forces is obtained by dividing the horizontal distance between the verticals through B and D in the proportion of the weights acting through B and D. In the present case $BR = \frac{20}{23}$ of the horizontal distance.

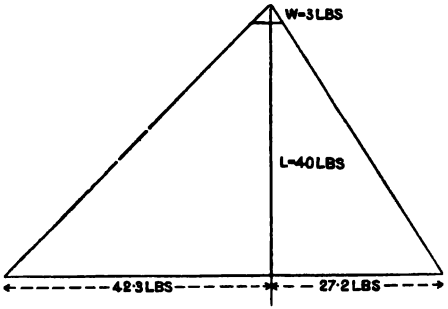


FIG. 227.

The centrifugal force is horizontal, and may be taken as acting through the centre of the ball B. The resultant of the centrifugal and vertical forces must act through O. Join RO; and from G, the extremity of the vertical resultant draw a horizontal to meet RO or RO produced in K. Then GK is the centrifugal force required in pounds to the same scale as the scale of weight in RG. From this the number of revolutions required to balance the governor in this position may be at once calculated as before.

A similar process is adopted for the other position of the governor shown. The centrifugal force is again determined, and the speed obtained.

Thus the range of speed of the governor is known.

In the present example, in the lower position, the force $F = 27{\cdot}2$ and the revolutions $N = 260$; in the higher position, $F = 42{\cdot}3$ and $N = 290$. The same result is shown by drawing the vertical line of Fig. 227 to the scale of weights, namely, $W = 3$ lbs. and $L = 40$ lbs., and drawing lines from the apex parallel to the arms of the governor; then the horizontal line completing the figure for any required angularity of arm gives the value of F when measured with the same scale as the line of weights.

Stability of the Governor.—A governor is said to be *stable* or *static* when it maintains a definite position of equilibrium at a given speed; it is said to be *unstable* or *astatic* when at a given speed it assumes indifferently any position throughout its range of movement. The condition of stability is that F must increase more rapidly than r when the ball moves outwards.

If F increases or decreases proportionally as r increases or decreases, then the speed n is constant for all positions of the ball.

In the diagram (Fig. 228) the governor ball is shown in three different positions, with radii *de*, *fb*, and *gk* respectively. If *ab* be the common scale of W, the weight of the ball, then the triangles *acb*, *afb*, and *aib* are respectively the triangles of forces, and *cb*, *fb*, and *ib* respectively are the centrifugal forces for the positions *d*, *f*, and *g* of the balls.

In Fig. 229, if the governor arm were made to slide in the cap at a, then the centrifugal force F would vary as the radius r, and the

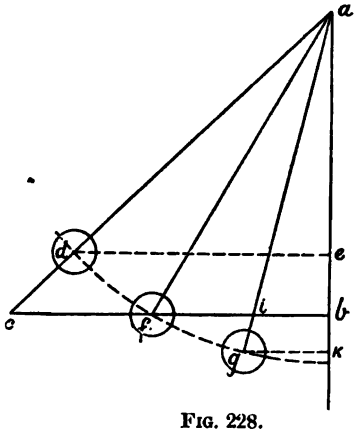


FIG. 228.

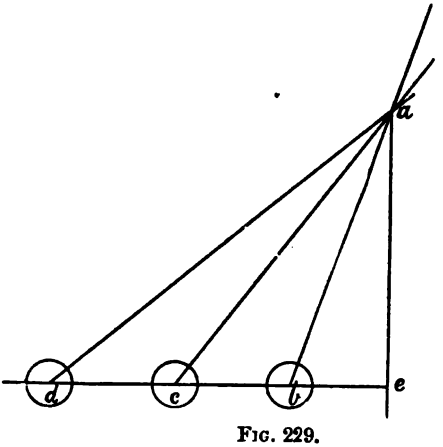


FIG. 229.

lengths de, ce, and be respectively represent both the radius r and the centrifugal force F.

To compare these two cases, Figs. 228 and 229, by plotting the results and superposing them, let Fig. 230 be constructed, making the ordinates = F and the abscissæ = r. We shall then have for Fig. 229 the line joining the intersections of F and r a straight line, namely, OS. But for Fig. 230 we notice that the values of F and r when plotted do not coincide with the straight line. Thus, for the position f of the ball (Fig. 228), fb = F = r; but for position d of the ball, de, the radius, is less than cb, the centrifugal force; also gk, the radius, is greater than ib, the centrifugal force.

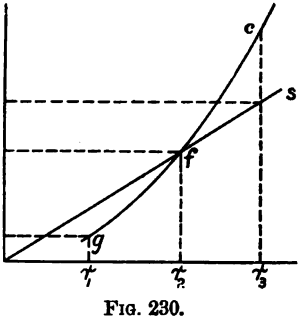


FIG. 230.

Let or_3 (Fig. 230) = radius de (Fig. 228), and let r_3c (Fig. 230) = centrifugal force cb (Fig. 228), and so on for the other points. Then the line joining the respective intersections will be a curve of the form cfg.

The relation which the curve cfg bears to the straight line oS, drawn from the origin o is important. Thus, since the values of F for the curve cfg increase more rapidly than the values of r, the curve is steeper than the straight line oS, in which F varies as r.

The angle (ofg) made by a tangent to the curve cfg at f, with a line (of) joining the point of contact f to the origin o, is a measure of the stability of the governor.

If the curve cfg coincided with the line oS, then the governor

would be in neutral equilibrium. If the curve crossed the line *o*S in the other direction—that is, if the tangent to the curve made a less angle with the horizontal than the line joined to the origin *o*, then the governor would be in unstable equilibrium.

Power of a Governor.—The power of a governor is measured by the work done by the governor in lifting through its full range of movement, and it is equal to the mean centrifugal force exerted multiplied by the range $r_2 - r_1$ in feet through which the force acts in moving the governor through its full range.

The power of a governor, and the effect upon the power of additional loading, can be well seen by plotting a curve with F for ordinates and r for abscissæ.

Such a curve can be plotted for an actual governor, or it may be constructed from data obtained from an outline sketch.

Let r_1, r_2, r_3, etc. (Fig. 231) be the path of the ball of a Porter governor. Let W = weight of one ball and L = central load. First suppose the governor unloaded; that is, L = 0, and draw a curve *ab* (Fig. 232), by plotting the respective values of F and r.

The value of F in pounds $= 2W\frac{r}{h}$, which includes the

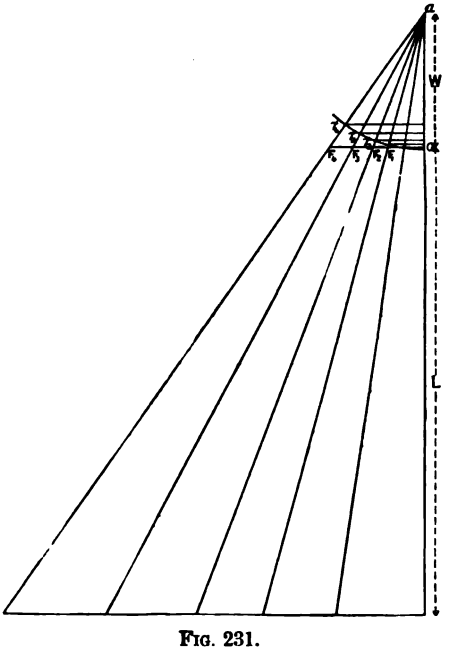


Fig. 231.

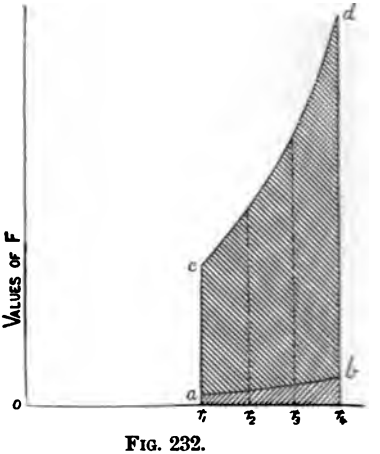


Fig. 232.

effect of the two balls; and r is drawn to a convenient scale of decimal parts of a foot.

Next draw a curve *cd*, which is obtained by including the effect of the central load. Here $F = 2(W + L)\frac{r}{h}$.

It is usual to estimate the centrifugal force F of one ball only when

considering questions of speed and rotation, lift of sleeve, and so on; but double the value of F must be taken for the effect of the two balls when considering the *power* of the governor.

The area r_1abr_4 shows the work done by an unloaded governor in moving through its full range.

The area r_1cdr_4 represents the work done by a loaded governor in moving through the same range.

The increase of power by increase of central load is thus very clearly seen.

Friction of a Governor.—Hitherto the effect of friction on the governor has been neglected, and its movements have been considered to be perfectly free from any disturbing effects. But in practice, if F = the centrifugal force which would cause the governor to rise if there were no friction, a further force f is necessary before any rise of the governor actually occurs in order to overcome the friction of the moving parts, and therefore a certain range of speed takes place due to the respective centrifugal forces F and $F + f$, but without any corresponding rise of the governor.

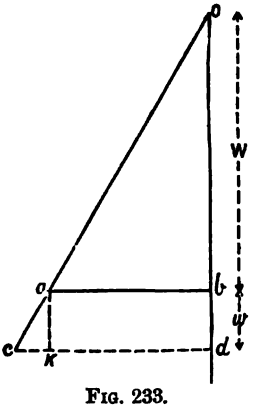


FIG. 233.

Similarly, in the downward direction, the speed of the governor may change accompanied by a corresponding change of force from F to $F - f$, but without any change of position of the governor owing to the resistance due to friction.

The amount of the friction, or, in other words, of the upward pull, due to a change of speed of the governor, but without a corresponding rise of the sleeve, may be determined either graphically or numerically as follows.

In Fig. 233, if the angle *aob* is the configuration of the governor arm, $ab = F$, $cd = F + f$, $cK = f$. The problem is to find w, which is the resistance due to friction when the speed rises from N, namely, that due to F, to N_1, namely, that due to $F + f$.

$$\text{Then } ab : cd :: F : F + f$$
$$\text{and } F : F + f :: N^2 : N_1^2$$
$$N^2 : N_1^2 :: W : W + w$$

$$\frac{N_1^2 - N^2}{N^2} = \frac{(W + w) - W}{W} = \frac{w}{W}$$

$$\therefore w = W\left(\frac{N_1^2 - N^2}{N^2}\right) \text{ for one ball}$$

$$= 2W\left(\frac{N_1^2 - N^2}{N^2}\right) \text{ for two balls}$$

EXAMPLE.—Find the pull on the governor sleeve when the governor ball weighs 5 lbs., and the speed changes from 100 to 120 revolutions without any lift of the sleeve.

$$w = 2 \times 5 \left(\frac{120^2 - 100^2}{100^2} \right) = 4{\cdot}4 \text{ lbs.}$$

The effect of friction in increasing the total range of speed of the governor may be well shown by the diagram first proposed by Mr. Hartnell.

In the Fig. (234) for any governor, neglecting friction, the curve *ab* is drawn so that any vertical ordinate = F at radius *r*.

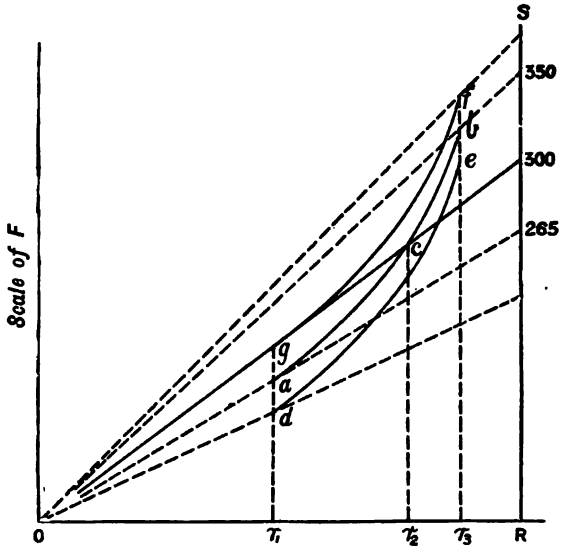


FIG 234.

Take any point *c* on this curve; then the centrifugal force $r_2c = F$, and the radius or_2 being known, the speed at *c* can be found from—

$$F = 4\pi^2 n^2 r \frac{W}{g}$$

But when F varies as *r*, *n* is constant; and *oc* is a line of constant speed of rotation. Also the lines drawn from *o* to *a* and from *o* to *b* are lines of constant speed of rotation, and they represent the range of speed of the governor in moving through its extreme positions or_1 to or_3, when friction is neglected. If now friction lines be added, *gf* being drawn = F + *f* for each position r_1r_3, etc., when the balls are moved outwards, and *de* is drawn = F − *f* when the balls are moved inwards, the total range of speed of the governor is now given by the lines *od* and *of*, which, it will be seen, is much greater than before.

If *o*R be taken = 1 ft. to scale, then a scale of speeds may be drawn on the vertical line RS by calculating the value of F for certain speeds as 100, 120, 140, etc., and setting up the values of F found on the line RS, and joining to the point O. These points are then

marked with the number corresponding to the revolutions used in calculating F.

Isochronism.—When a governor is so designed that the height h of the cone of revolution of the balls is constant for all positions of the balls (see Fig. 229), then the speed n is constant throughout the full range of movement of the governor, neglecting friction. The governor is then said to be *isochronous*, that is, it runs at an equal speed in all positions.

In such a case F varies directly as r, for—

$$F = 4\pi^2 n^2 r \frac{W}{g}$$

and all the factors but F and r are constant.

Referring to Figs. 230 or 234, it will be seen that the curve of such a governor is a straight line radiating from the origin o, and it will be evident that such a governor will be in neutral equilibrium; also that it does not obey the condition of stability, namely, that F must increase more quickly than r as the governor rises.

Such a governor would be too sensitive, for the engine driving the governor would first increase in speed until it reached the speed due to the governor, after which the slightest increase would cause the balls to fly to the extreme position and the governor to cut off steam. The engine would then slow down, when the balls would suddenly fall to the other extreme position, and the steam-supply be opened wide. This effect of continual fluctuation above and below the mean speed is called "hunting." In practice it is somewhat reduced by the friction always present in a governor gear, and it may be further reduced by the addition of a dash-pot or by means of a spring, which is arranged to cause F to increase somewhat more quickly than r.

If the governor balls move in a parabolic path, then they fulfil the condition of isochronism, namely, that h is constant.

Thus, it is a property of the parabola (Fig. 235) that

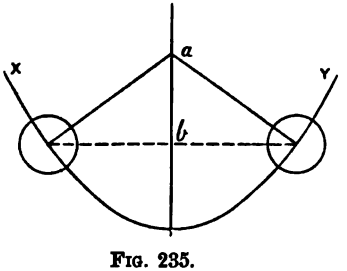


FIG. 235.

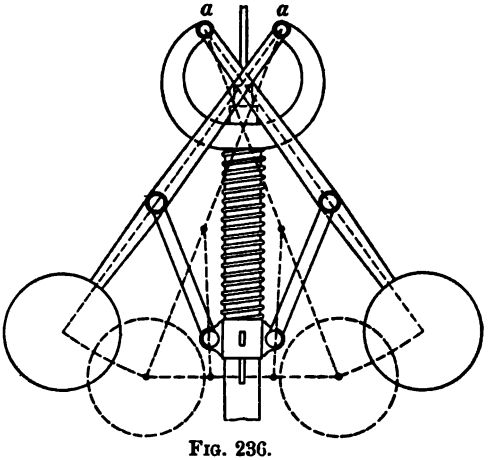


FIG. 236.

the subnormal $ab = h$ is constant for all positions of the weight W on

the parabolic curve XY, so that if W move in a parabolic path, the height h will be constant.

An approximate equivalent to this is obtained by the use of the crossed-arm governor; and by suitably choosing the points of suspension a, a of the arms, as in Head's governor, Fig. 236.

If the points are chosen so that h is approximately constant, then the governor is in neutral equilibrium. If, however, the points a, a are taken nearer the axis than in the previous case, then the equilibrium is stable; but if further away from the axis than in the first case, instead of nearer to it, then the equilibrium becomes unstable—that is, the height h of the cone of revolution becomes greater, and not less, as the speed increases.

Spring governors can be made isochronous, if desired, by so adjusting the spring that the initial compression in the spring bears the same ratio to the total compression that the minimum radius of the balls bears to the maximum radius. The spring is usually made a little stronger than this to give stability to the governor. This point is referred to later.

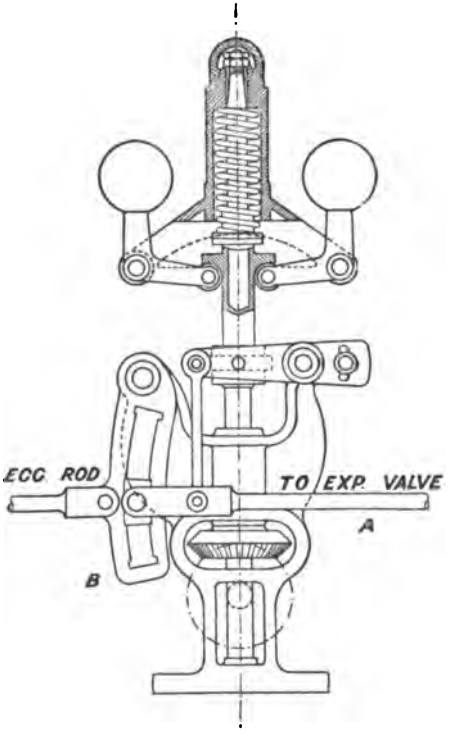


FIG. 237.

Fig. 237 is a drawing of a Hartnell automatic variable expansion governor for regulating the travel of an expansion valve working on the back of a main slide valve, the travel being regulated by the movement of the lever A in the slotted link B. As the speed increases the governor raises the position of the lever A, and the travel of the valve is thereby reduced. This governor is capable of very close regulation, and when the speed exceeds a given number of revolutions, the steam supply may be entirely cut off.

The Proell Governor.—Fig. 238 consists of two inverted ball-arms which are suspended by the curved bell crank levers LL from the pins CC. The centrifugal force of the balls is counteracted by a powerful spring S, which takes the place of a weight.

On the engine reaching a certain speed, which is determined by

the initial compression in the spring, the balls move outwards, and the sleeve rises from its bottom position, as shown in the figure, towards the highest position, shown dotted.

The points AA, at which the ball-arms are pivoted, are chosen outside the centre lines of the arms, and in such a position that the centres of the balls as they open move very nearly in a horizontal plane. This governor may thus be made as nearly isochronous as desired by making the centrifugal force of the balls increase or decrease in the same ratio as the compression of the spring.

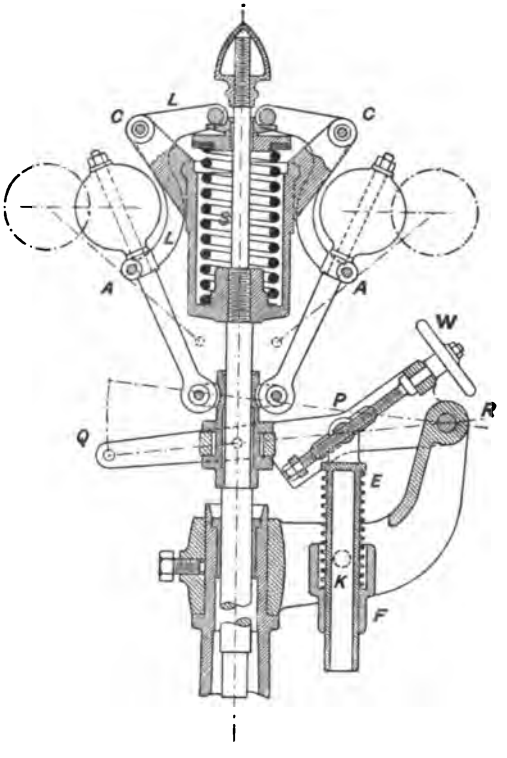


FIG. 238.

The figure also shows the mode of application of an auxiliary spring E to vary the speed of the engine while running. The spring rests in a sleeve, F, which is pivoted in a bracket at K. The point P at the upper end of the auxiliary spring is made to move as required along the groove shown in the lever QR by means of the screw W; the effect of the movement of P in the groove in the direction towards the centre of the governor is to further compress the spring E, as well as to increase the leverage of the spring about the centre R, and thus to assist the outward movement of the balls and reduce the speed at which the governor begins to act.

Fig. 239 is a sectional drawing of the well-known "Pickering" governor, fitted also with a stop-valve A in the same casting as the valve of the governor. In the Pickering governor, the ordinary arms are replaced by flexible sheet-steel strips, to which the balls are attached, and which bend outwards by the outward tendency of the balls as the speed increases. This bending of the strips causes the upper cap on the top of the spindle to press the spindle downwards, and to tend to close the steam-passages by the equilibrium

valve V at the bottom of the spindle. The speed at which the governor may be made to act is regulated by a spring S, which is

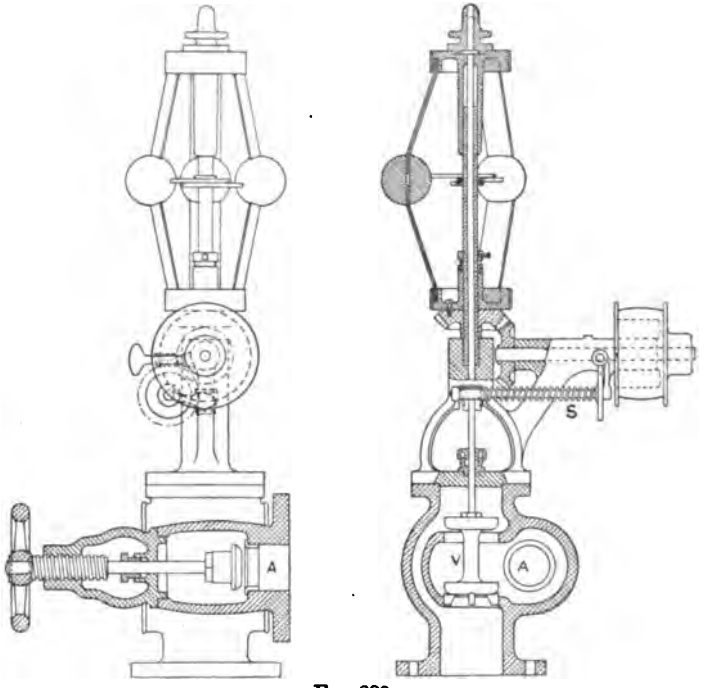


FIG. 239.

equivalent to regulating the load on the spindle, the spring actuating a forked lever resisting the downward movement of the valve spindle.

The Shaft Governor.—To secure regulation of the speed by automatic cut-off in quick revolution engines, and to obtain a governor sufficiently powerful for the purpose, it is usual to use what is known as the *shaft governor*. The construction of this type of governor will be understood from the diagrams which follow. The mechanism of the governor is usually arranged to work in a pulley keyed to the engine crank-shaft, and it thus rotates at the same speed as the shaft. The movement of the parts of the governor depends, as usual, upon the change of centrifugal force of rotating weights on change of speed of the engine.

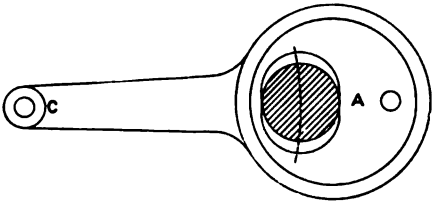


FIG. 240.

There are many different designs for transferring the movement of the balls to the valve gear for the purpose of regulating the cut-off; but a simple form consists of an arrangement as shown in Fig. 240, where A is the eccentric from which the slide-valve of the engine is worked. The governing of the engine is done by varying the position of the eccentric centre relatively to the centre of the shaft, and thus varying the travel of the slide-valve.

The eccentric is slotted as shown, so as to permit of a radial movement of the eccentric arm about some convenient centre C, the

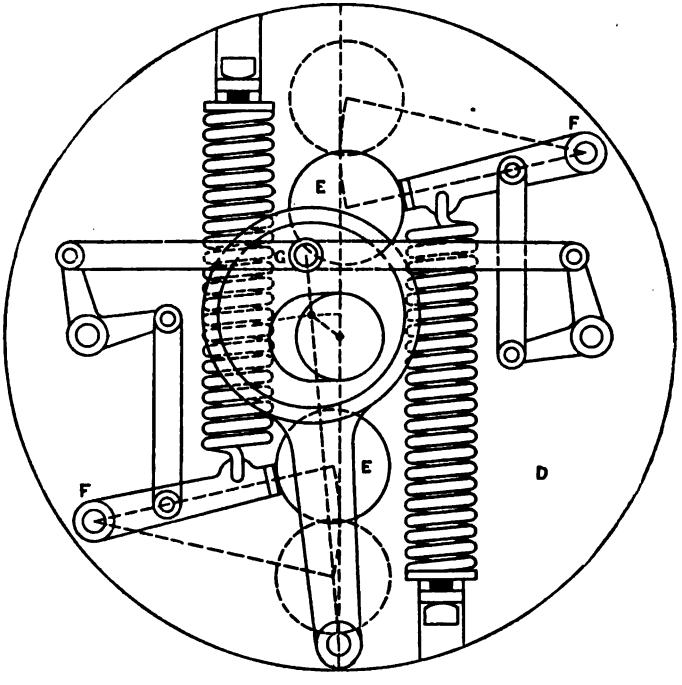


FIG. 241.

effect of which is to give the required change of position of the centre of the eccentric disc relatively to that of the crank-shaft.

In Fig. 241, which is an outline sketch of a shaft governor, the rotating wheel D is keyed to the engine shaft, and the weights E, E are pivoted to the wheel at F, F. The weight levers are connected to the eccentric arm at G, and when the speed increases, the weights move outwards about the centres F, F by centrifugal force, and cause the eccentric disc to move across the shaft by means of the levers as shown. The springs resist the outward movement of the balls, and by means of the springs the speed at which the governor acts is regulated.

The effect of the movement of the eccentric disc across the shaft is

similar to that which happens in an ordinary Stephenson link motion, when the link is moved from the end to the middle position, and which has already been described in connection with the link motion. But the subject may here be considered a little further.

In an automatic cut-off gear arranged to vary the travel of the valve by an adjustable eccentric, when the path of the eccentric centre is a straight line at right angles to the crank, as in Fig. 242, the lead *ed* is constant for all positions *a*, *b*, *c*, or *d* of the eccentric, where circle of radius *oa* is the maximum travel circle, and *oe* is the radius of the lap circle.

When the path of the eccentric centre is on an arc *ad*, concave towards the crank-shaft centre, as in Fig. 243, then the lead increases

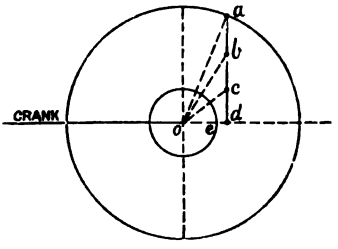


FIG. 242.

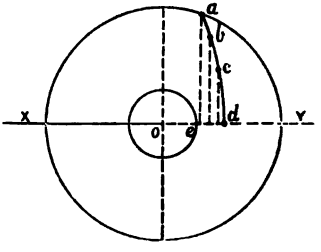


FIG. 243.

as the eccentric moves nearer to *d* in the arc *ad*; that is, the lead is greatest at the minimum loads.

When the arc *ad* is convex towards the crank-shaft centre, as in Fig. 244, then the lead *ef* is a maximum at full load, and decreases to *ed*, a minimum, at the light loads. In this case the lead may be reduced to zero, or a minus quantity at mid-position. The arc of movement of the eccentric centre depends upon the point of suspension of the eccentric arm of the governor.

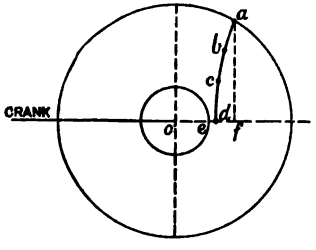


FIG. 244.

Generally speaking, the condition of constant lead, as in Fig. 242, would be preferred, but this motion is somewhat difficult to arrange.

Fig. 243 represents the conditions which obtain in most ordinary link-motion engines, where the lead is greatest at light loads, the increasing lead securing a sufficient port opening to maintain the initial steam-pressure as high as possible to obtain the full benefit of expansion, the power being kept down by a large compression.

Fig. 244 is exceptional, but is preferred by some engineers. In this case a reduced port opening at light loads reduces the initial steam pressure by partial throttling, and a large expansion is sacrificed to reduced range of stress on the piston.

If the point of suspension of the eccentric arm, instead of being on the centre line XY, is chosen in some position, A, as shown in Fig. 245, we then have a compromise between the conditions already described, and the same lead may be obtained at both maximum and minimum loads, with a somewhat larger lead in mid-position.

The various points of port opening, cut-off, release, and compression for any position of the eccentric centre on the arc *ad* may be found, as already shown in Figs. 85, 88, and 90.

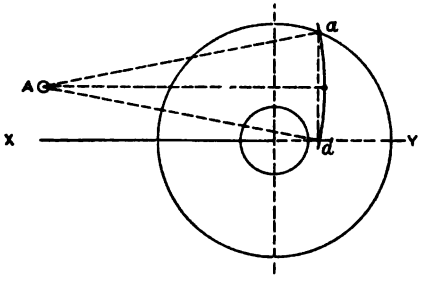


FIG. 245.

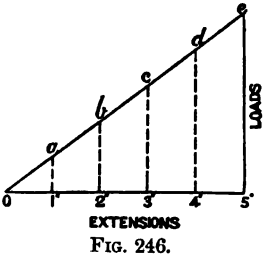


FIG. 246.

Springs.—The law of the helical spring is that equal increments of load give equal increments of extension or compression, within certain limits.

This may be represented by a diagram (Fig. 246) where the base-line is the line of extension and the vertical lines the loads producing the extensions. Then it will be found by experiment that the line joining the upper extremities of the load-lines is a straight line, the extensions being in units of length, and the loads in pounds.

The load required to extend the spring per unit of length—say 1 inch—is a measure of the *strength* of the spring. Thus 1*a* is the strength of the spring, being the load required to extend the spring 1 in.

The load required to extend the spring 2 in. is twice that required to extend it 1 in., and so on. Similarly, we have seen that at constant speed of rotation centrifugal force varies directly as the radius, and a similar figure to Fig. 246 may be used to represent the uniformly increasing centrifugal force as the radius of rotation increases, the revolutions remaining constant (Fig. 247). If, therefore, the revolving weights of a governor are held by springs so designed that the tension of the spring is equal to the centrifugal force at all positions of the

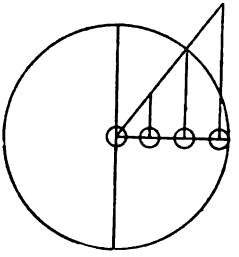


FIG. 247.

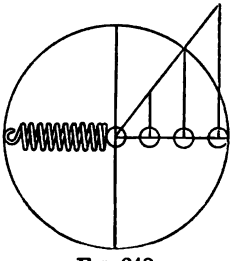


FIG. 248.

balls, then Figs. 246 and 247 may be combined (Fig. 248), and in such a case the governor is isochronous.

EXAMPLE.—A ball weighing 20 lbs. revolves at 250 revolutions per minute. Find the strength of spring required to make the governor isochronous, supposing the spring to be attached directly to the ball.

Since, by supposition, the tension in the spring varies with the centrifugal force, then, when the ball is at zero radius, the tension in the spring is also zero; and if S = the strength of the spring, that is, the pull required to stretch it unit length, then—

$$Sr = 0{\cdot}00034 \div 12 \times W \times r \times N^2$$

where r = radius of ball or stretch of spring in inches;

$$\begin{aligned} S &= 0{\cdot}0000284 \times W \times N^2 \\ &= 0{\cdot}0000284 \times 20 \times 250^2 \\ &= 35{\cdot}5 \text{ lbs.} \end{aligned}$$

that is, the strength of the spring = 35·5 lbs. per inch of extension.

Let the mean radius of the rotating weight be 12 in. with a range 2·5 in. on each side of the mean radius. Then (Fig. 249) *ob* is the mean radius; and the pull in the spring at this radius = 35·5 × 12 = 426. Set up *be* = 426 lbs. Then for all other positions of the rotating weight, since the value of N is assumed constant, the centrifugal force and the pull in the spring at any radius will be given, by joining the line *oe* through the origin *o*, and measuring the vertical height as at *ad*, *ef* to the same scale as *be*. The line *ad* = 9·5 × 35·5 = 337·25, and the line *cf* = 14·5 × 35·5 = 514·75.

So far we have considered the strength of the spring for an isochronous governor, or one running at constant speed for all positions of the balls; but, as before explained, such governors are not desirable, being inactive below the speed required, and flying outwards through their whole range of movement when this speed is slightly exceeded. The friction, however, which is always present more or less in all governors prevents absolute isochronism in any governor.

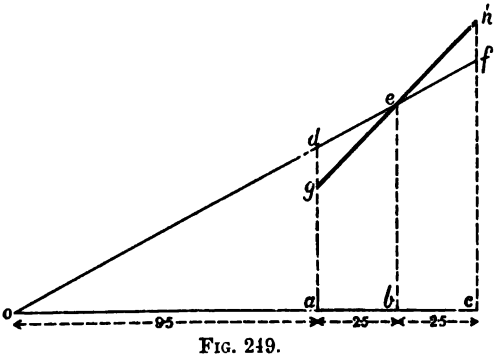


FIG. 249.

In practice, a spring is chosen whose strength increases at a rate somewhat greater than the rate of increase of the radius. Thus, suppose in the same governor the strength of the spring to be 45 lbs., to find the effect of the change of spring upon the speed for the same range of radius. The speed at the mean position *ob* (Fig. 249), namely, 12 inches radius, being the same as before, the centrifugal

force in this position and the tension of the spring are in equilibrium, and are equal to $35{\cdot}5 \times 12 = 426$ lbs. $= be$. At the minimum radius oa, the tension in the spring is now $426 - (45 \times 2{\cdot}5) = 313{\cdot}5$ lbs. $= ag$, and at the maximum radius $oc = 426 + (45 \times 2{\cdot}5) = 538{\cdot}5$ lbs. $= ch$; this represents a range of speed as follows: (1) For the minimum radius $oa = 9{\cdot}5$ in.—

$$N^2 = \frac{F}{0{\cdot}00034 \times W \times \frac{r}{12}}$$

$$= \frac{313{\cdot}5}{0{\cdot}0000284 \times 20 \times 9{\cdot}5}$$

$$N = 241 \text{ revolutions per minute}$$

(2) For the maximum radius $oc = 14{\cdot}5$ in.—

$$N^2 = \frac{538{\cdot}5}{0{\cdot}0000284 \times 20 \times 14{\cdot}5}$$

$$N = 260$$

The variation in speed neglecting the effect of friction

$$= \frac{\text{range of speed}}{\text{mean speed}} \times 100 = \frac{260 - 241}{250} \times 100 = 7{\cdot}6 \text{ per cent.}$$

Also *geh* is the line of force with the stronger spring, and it makes with *oe* an angle *oeg*, which is a measure of the stability of the governor.

If the spring is attached to the weight arm at some point *c* (Fig. 250), between the centre *a* and the centre of gravity of the weight *b*, then the strength of the spring must be greater than if attached directly to the ball in the ratio $\frac{ab}{ac}$.

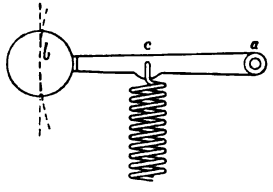


FIG. 250.

We have so far considered only the centrifugal force acting in the governor, but during a change of speed of the engine there are other forces beside centrifugal force acting on the governor, and which will be found to either oppose or assist the action of the centrifugal force. These forces will now be briefly considered.

1. *Tangential Acceleration.*—Let Fig. 251 represent a governor disc secured to the engine shaft and rotating about the centre A, and let the ball B be connected by the arm BC to the pivot C on the disc. Then an increase in the speed of rotation of the disc will cause the ball B to move outwards from the centre A by centrifugal force. But if the centre C of the ball arm be pivoted at the centre of the shaft, as in Fig. 252, then, when the disc is rotated, the centrifugal force acts radially along the arm connecting the ball to the centre of the shaft, but the centrifugal moment is zero, since the pivot of the arm coincides with the centre of the shaft, and the force has no effect for the purpose of regulation of speed.

If, however, the speed of rotation of the disc increases, then the tendency is for the ball (Fig. 252) to maintain its original speed and to lag behind relatively to the disc, which is equivalent to a movement in the direction of the arrow D, or in the direction opposite to D if the speed of rotation of the disc decreases. This movement of the ball relatively to the disc and in a direction tangential to the path of the centre of gravity of the ball, is the result of the inertia of the ball producing *tangential acceleration.*

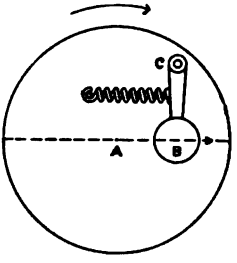


FIG. 251.

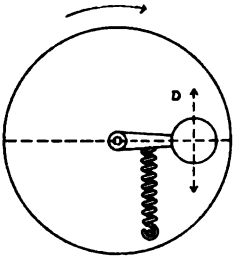


FIG. 252.

In the case of Fig. 251, the moment about C of the force producing tangential acceleration is zero whatever the change of speed, because the line of action of the force passes through the pivot.

In Fig. 252 this moment is a maximum. In intermediate positions the moment of the force producing tangential acceleration is equal to the force multiplied by the perpendicular distance CD, between the pivot C, and the tangent to the circle drawn from the centre of rotation, and passing through the centre of gravity of the weight.

This force may be made to *assist* or to *oppose* the centrifugal force

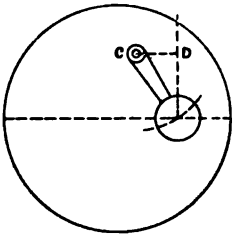


FIG. 253.

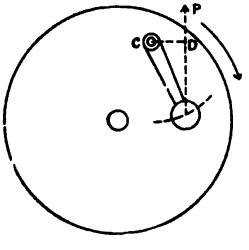


FIG. 254.

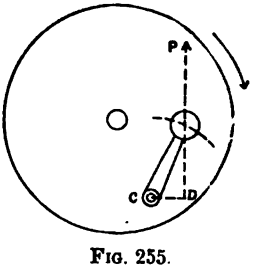


FIG. 255.

according to the position of the pivot of the ball arm in relation to the centre of gravity of the weight. Thus, if in Figs. 254, 255 the disc is rotating clockwise as shown, then in Fig. 254 the moment of the tangential force acting during increase of velocity of the disc $= P \times CD$, and it acts so as to supplement the centrifugal force, and thus to make the governor more prompt and rapid in its movement; in Fig. 255, with the position as shown, the tangential force acts to oppose the centrifugal force, and thus to make the governor more sluggish.

2. *Angular Acceleration.*—Another form of accelerating force which is capable of useful application in the shaft governor will be understood

from the illustration (Fig. 256). At the end of the arm AB, which is supposed to be rigidly attached to the shaft at centre A, let the weight at the end B be distributed in the form of a bar, CD, instead of being concentrated in the form of a ball at the centre of gravity B; and let the bar CD be free to move about the centre B. Then, if the shaft to which AB is rigidly attached is rotated about the centre A at a high velocity and then suddenly stopped, the kinetic energy in the balls C and D will cause the arm CD to spin round the centre B.

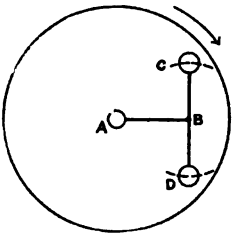


FIG. 256.

Similarly, if during the rotation of the shaft the rate of rotation should suddenly increase, even slightly, then

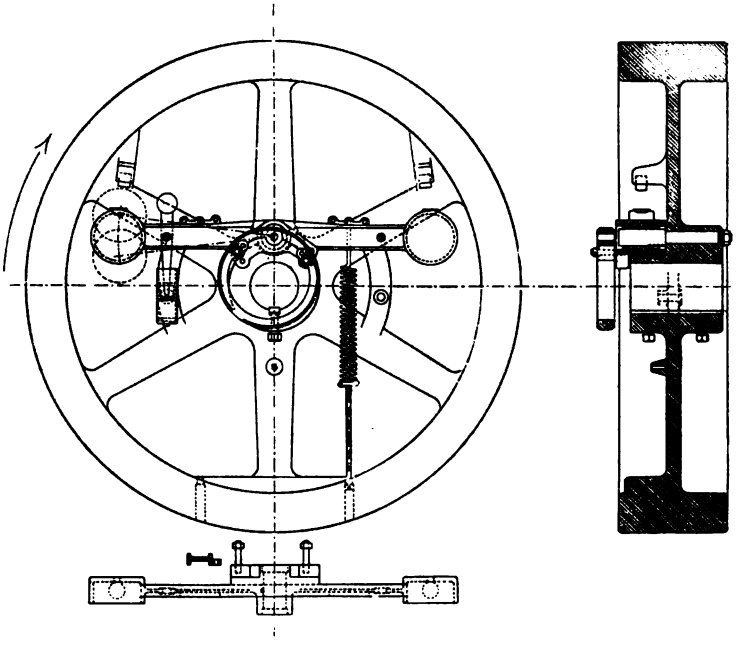


FIG. 257.

during the change of speed the arm tends to lag behind momentarily until the speed has again become uniform; or, *vice versâ*, if the speed of the shaft decreases, the arm tends to maintain the same rate of rotation, and thus to move about its centre B with a greater angular velocity than the shaft A. This property of the bar when centred at B has been termed *angular inertia*, and it has

recently been successfully applied as a supplement to centrifugal force for the purpose of increasing the sensitiveness of the shaft governor.

Fig. 257 illustrates a very successful governor made on this principle, and known as "Begtrup's shaft governor," made by Messrs. Browett and Lindley, of Patricroft.

CHAPTER XV.

TURNING EFFORT IN THE CRANK-SHAFT.

As has been already pointed out, it is important, for steadiness of running, that the turning effort in the crank-shaft should be as uniform as possible. But in practice, the conditions are such that the turning effort varies more or less considerably during each half-revolution of the crank. The nature and extent of the variation, and the means adopted for reducing it to a minimum, will now be described.

The causes producing variable turning effort are—

1. The variable pressure of the steam acting on the piston.

2. The mechanical combination of crank and connecting-rod which, even with a uniform steam-pressure on the piston, results in a variable turning effort on the crank-pin, the variation ranging from zero to a maximum twice every revolution of the crank.

3. The inertia of the reciprocating parts of the engine, including the piston, piston-rod, cross-head, and connecting-rod, which absorb power in acquiring velocity during the early portion of the stroke, and restore it while being retarded during the later portion of the stroke.

The means employed to reduce the variable turning effort in the crank-shaft, or to modify its effects, are—

1. The combination of engines working on separate cranks in the same shaft, the cranks being so disposed that the mutual variations in the separate cranks correct each other when in combination. The number of cranks employed in practice may be one, two, three, four, five, or more, and the more numerous the cranks the more uniform the twisting moment at all points in the revolution of the shaft.

2. The adjustment of the points of cut-off and compression to the speed of the engine.

3. The use of the flywheel.

It will be necessary, before proceeding further with the subject, to consider the relation between the respective velocities of the piston and crank-pin.

Piston and Crank-pin Velocities.—Neglecting the obliquity of the connecting-rod. Take any point P (Fig. 258) to represent the position of the crank-pin when crank of radius OP moves about the

centre O. Assume that the crank-pin P moves in its circular path at a uniform velocity V in feet per second. Set off PV at right angles to OP, or tangential to the circle at point P, making PV equal in length to the velocity V of the pin to any scale of feet per second.

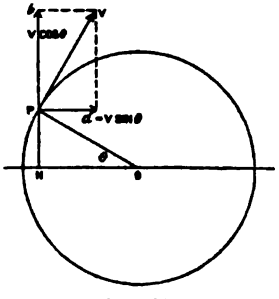


FIG. 258.

This velocity V, in a direction tangential to the circle, may be resolved into component velocities, Pa horizontally, and Pb vertically.

Draw the perpendicular PN to meet the horizontal diameter. Then angle bPV = angle PON = θ; and Pa = V sin θ; and Pb = V cos θ.

But when OP is drawn to scale to represent in units the velocity of the crank-pin (which is assumed uniform), then the perpendicular PN = V sin θ, and ON intercepted between the perpendicular and the centre O = V cos θ; and thus for any position P of the crank-pin, PN = Pa = V sin θ = the horizontal component of the crank-pin velocity = the velocity of the piston.

Relative Velocities, including Obliquity of Connecting-rod.—In Fig. 259, let O be the centre of the crank-pin circle, with radius of crank OP, and PN the length of the connecting-rod. The point N is the position of the cross-head pin, and relatively also of the piston. To find the relative velocities of crank-pin and piston with a short connecting-rod, PN, find the virtual centre or instantaneous axis about which the connecting-rod PN is moving for the given position OP of the crank, by drawing lines PA and NA normal to the direction of motion of P and N at the moment considered. Then the point A is the virtual centre required, and the relative velocities of P and N are proportional to the virtual radii AP and AN respectively.

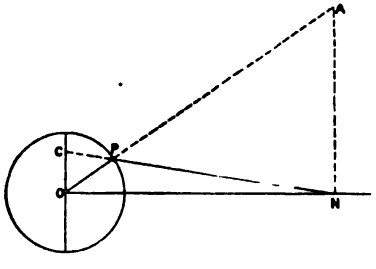


FIG. 259.

The same result may be obtained by producing the connecting-rod NP to meet the perpendicular through the centre O in C. Then the triangles APN and OPC are similar, and AP : AN :: OP : OC. In other words, if OP = velocity of crank-pin, then the intercept OC = corresponding velocity of piston for position OP of the crank.

Polar Diagram of Piston Velocity.—The velocity of the piston at each point of its path throughout the stroke may be represented by a curve as follows: First draw a circle with radius Oa = assumed constant velocity of the crank-pin, and, as shown in Fig. 260, draw the connecting-rod for various crank-positions, a, b, c, cutting the vertical

centre line at points 1, 2, 3, etc. With radius O1, O2, O3, etc., transfer these distances on to their respective crank positions *a*, *b*, *c*, etc., and join the points so obtained by a curve.

If the obliquity of the connecting-rod had been neglected, this curve

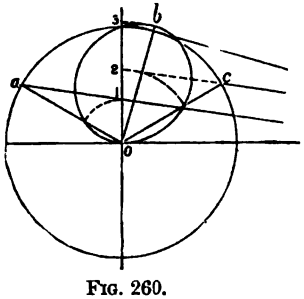


FIG. 260.

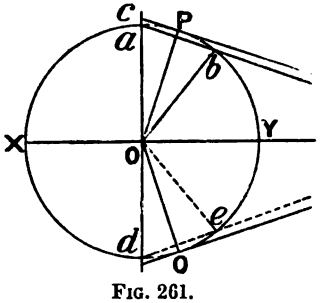


FIG. 261.

would be a circle, but it will now be seen to be an irregular figure extending beyond the crank-circle for a short portion of the crank-path.

With a short connecting-rod, the point of maximum velocity of the piston is as nearly as possible that at which the crank and connecting-rod are at right angles; in other words, where the centre line of the connecting-rod is tangential to the crank-pin path, as at OP, OQ (Fig. 261).

The velocity of the piston is the same as that of the crank-pin when the crank is perpendicular to the centre line of the engine, and again at crank position O*b*, where the connecting-rod produced from *b* passes through *a*. The conditions are similar at *d* and *e* below XY.

Between crank positions *a* and *b* and *d* and *e* the piston velocity is greater than that of the crank-pin; in all other positions the piston velocity is less than that of the crank-pin.

At positions of maximum velocity of the piston, namely, at OP and OQ of the crank, the velocity of the piston is to that of the crank-pin as O*c* : O*a*.

Tangential Pressure on the Crank-pin.—Having considered the relative *velocities* of piston and crank-pin, we will now examine the relation between the *forces* acting through these moving parts.

First, considering the case where the pressure of the steam is assumed uniform throughout the stroke, and neglecting the obliquity of the connecting-rod and the inertia of the moving parts.

In Fig. 262, let AB produced be the centre line of a horizontal engine, O the centre of the crank-shaft, and OA the radius of the crank. Let OA also represent to scale the total pressure P acting on the piston (supposing the pressure on the piston constant).

When the crank is in position AO, the pressure of the steam upon the piston has no tendency to turn the crank about its centre O, the piston-rod, connecting-rod, and crank being all in one straight line, and the whole pressure acts to press the crank-shaft against its bearings. When the crank is in position OB, the pull being in the

line AB, there is again no tendency to turn the crank about O. These two positions of the crank are called the *dead centres*.

For positions OC and OD of the crank, the whole pressure P on the piston (neglecting the obliquity of the connecting-rod) acts at the moment in the direction of motion of the crank-pin, and hence the whole force is exerted in turning the crank. At this point C, and at the opposite point D, the turning moment is a maximum = P × CO.

From this we see that, even though the pressure on the piston is uniform throughout the whole stroke, the turning effort on the crank-pin is very variable, changing from zero at the dead centres, to a

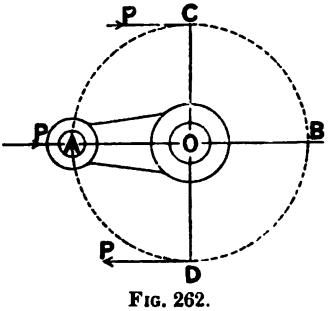


FIG. 262.

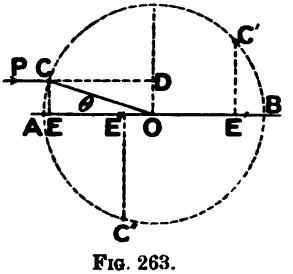


FIG. 263.

maximum at two points of the revolution. Under the conditions here assumed, the points of maximum turning effort are when the crank is at right angles to the axis of the cylinder; but when the steam is cut off at some earlier point than half-stroke, the maximum turning effort is somewhere nearer the beginning of each half-revolution.

At intermediate positions the pressure on the crank-pin is employed partly in turning the shaft, and partly in causing an increased pressure through the crank upon the main bearings.

To find the *twisting moment* on the shaft due to the pressure on the piston acting on the crank at point C (Fig. 263). The pressure P, acting parallel to AB through C, causes a twisting or turning moment about O = P × DO = P × CE. But P is assumed constant; therefore for any point, C, C', C'', of the crank the twisting moment is proportional to the perpendicular CE, C'E', etc., drawn from C upon AB; and the amount of the twisting moment in inch-pounds = CE, C'E', etc., in inches multiplied by P, the total pressure on the piston in pounds.

The tangential or *turning effort* acting on the crank-pin, as distinguished from the *twisting moment* acting through the shaft, may be found thus:

If T is the turning effort acting tangentially on the pin, then T × radius CO = twisting moment due to turning effort T about O. But P × CE is also the twisting moment;

$$\text{therefore } T \times CO = P \times CE$$

$$T = P \times \frac{CE}{CO}$$

$$= P \sin \theta$$

If the radius CO be drawn equal to the pressure P to scale, then—

$$\text{from } T = P \times \frac{CE}{CO}$$

$$\text{we have } T = CE$$

and this is true for any position of the crank.

Since the twisting moment at any part of the revolution is equal to the tangential effort multiplied by a constant number, namely, the length of the crank, the diagram of tangential effort and the diagram of twisting moments are the same, though measured by a different scale, the one being in pounds, and the other in pounds multiplied by the radius of the crank in inches.

Diagrams of Turning Effort on the Crank.—The facts above stated as to the variable nature of the tangential or turning effort on the crank-pin during a revolution of the crank may be well illustrated by a diagram as follows :—

Let the circle ACBD represent the crank-pin path, and OC the radius of the crank; and let OC represent to scale the pressure on the piston (supposed uniform). Take a number of equal subdivisions, C, C′, etc. Then the perpendicular CE on AB for any position OC of the crank represents the turning effort on the crank-pin at this point. From C, C′, etc., set off on the radius OC produced distances CF, C′F′ equal to CE, C′E′. If the extremities of these lines be joined, a curve is obtained above and below the centre line which represents the turning effort at every part of the revolution; and it will be seen therefrom in what way the turning effort varies during one revolution from zero at A and B to a maximum at G and H. As before explained, if the scale of measurement be multiplied by the crank radius in inches, the same diagram will serve as a twisting-moment diagram.

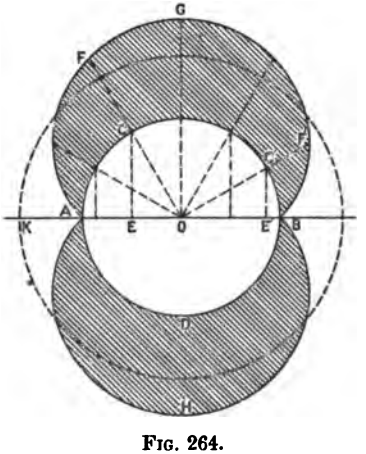


FIG. 264.

The dotted circle drawn from the centre O, with radius OK, is the curve of *mean tangential pressure*, and it is drawn by making AK : P :: 2 : π, where P = the mean effective pressure on the piston (neglecting friction).

The circumference of the circle ACBD (Fig. 264) may be unwound and the diagram set up on a straight base, as shown in Fig. 265. The straight base MN is drawn equal to the circumference of the circle ACBD (Fig. 264). It is then divided into the same number of equal parts as the circumference, and distances CF, C′F′, etc., set up from

the respective divisions. The curves joining the ends of these lines are the curves of tangential pressure as before.

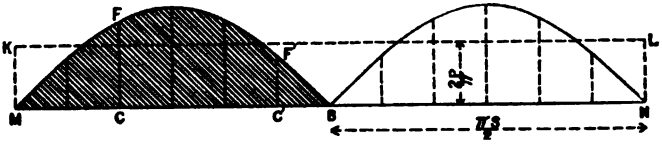


FIG. 265.

The *mean* tangential-pressure line KL is drawn by setting up MK, so that MK : P :: 2 : π.

It will be noticed that the area MFF'B, enclosed between the base and the curve and shown shade-lined, is the diagram of work done upon the crank-pin during a half-revolution of the crank-shaft, the ordinates representing the turning effort in pounds, and the base representing the distance through which the effort has been exerted; and this area is exactly equal (neglecting friction) to the work done upon the piston during a single stroke, as given by the indicator diagram. If S = stroke of piston, and P = mean pressure on piston, then $S \times \frac{\pi}{2}$ = path of crank-pin during one stroke of piston, and MK, mean tangential pressure on crank-pin, $= P \times \frac{2}{\pi}$

$$P \times S = \left(P \times \frac{2}{\pi}\right) \times \left(S \times \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

The line KL (Fig. 265) has been called the line of mean tangential pressure, but it is also the *line of resistance* due to the load (assuming

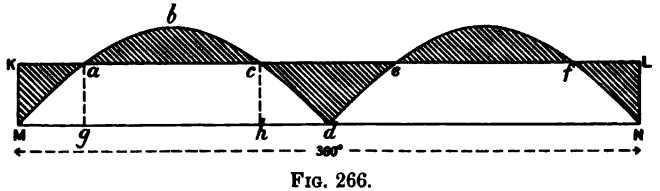


FIG. 266.

the load constant); for unless the mean effort and the mean resistance are equal, there must be a change of speed of revolution of the engine, the speed increasing or decreasing as the effort is greater or less than the resistance.

We have seen that, though the resistance is uniform, the effort is extremely variable. Thus (Fig. 266), during a half-revolution of the crank, and commencing at the point *a*, the force exerted rises above the mean-resistance line KL, and continues above this line till the point *c* is reached, and unless a flywheel is attached to the engine to absorb the additional power, the result will be that

during the short portion *ac* of the revolution, the driving force being greater than the resistance, the speed of rotation will increase and become a maximum at *c*. Beyond the point *c* the driving force falls below the resistance, and without a flywheel to restore power to the engine, the speed will decrease until the point *e* is reached, at which point the speed is a minimum.

It will thus be seen, though the speed per minute may be uniform, that there is much tendency to irregularity of speed of rotation during a single revolution. This tendency, however, is very largely corrected by the addition of a flywheel, as is explained subsequently. If the straight base MN (Fig. 266), representing the circumference of the crank-pin path, be divided into a scale of degrees, then M*g* degrees to scale represent the position of the crank-pin past its dead centre M when the velocity of the crank is a minimum, and M*h* degrees the position of the crank-pin when the velocity of the crank is a maximum.

When the speed of the engine is constant, the area *abc* is equal to the area *cde*. When the area *abc* is greater than the area *cde*, then the speed is increasing, and *vice versâ*.

Effect on the Twisting Moment of Combinations of Cranks.—For several reasons, it is important that the twisting moment on the crank-shaft should be as uniform as possible, and therefore that the areas *abc* and *cde* (Fig. 266) should be reduced as much as possible. The way in which these areas are affected by various combinations of multiple-cylinder engines working on various arrangements of cranks is shown by the following figures. The steam in the respective cylinders is considered of uniform pressure throughout the stroke for the sake of simplicity.

Case I. *A single engine working on a single crank.* This case has already been considered.

Case II. *Two engines working on the same shaft with cranks directly opposite* (Fig. 267).

In this case each engine is on the dead centre at the same time, and the points of minimum and maximum twisting moment on the crank-pin coincide. Hence the twisting stresses in the crank-shaft are doubled throughout, and the diagram of total twisting moments is obtained by adding together the diagrams of each crank as shown in Fig. 268. Thus M*b*D is the twisting-moment curve for a single engine during a half-revolution, and M*c*D is the twisting-moment curve for the combined cranks when placed directly opposite. M*c*D is obtained by doubling the ordinates *ab*, so that $ac = 2ab$ for each position along the circumferential base MN.

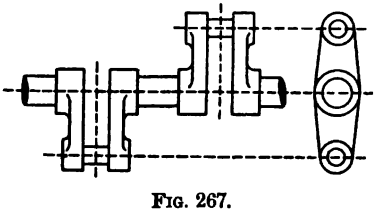


FIG. 267.

From this diagram (Fig. 268), it will be seen that in Case II. the stresses vary through a much wider range than in Case I., the range in the second case being from zero to double the maximum stress

which obtained in the first case. The line of resistance KL, or of mean twisting moment, is raised to twice its former height, and the

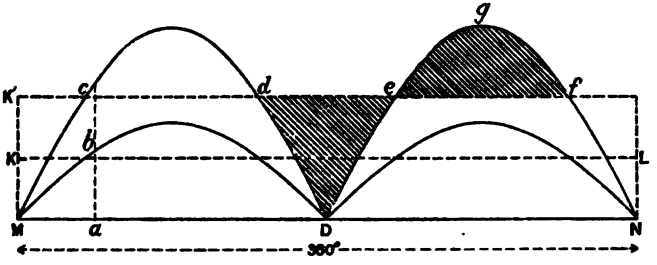


FIG. 268.

shaded areas *egf* and *d*De represent the energy in foot-pounds given up to the flywheel or restored by it respectively, twice every revolution.

This arrangement of opposite cranks is sometimes adopted, especially in small high-speed engines, with the object of balancing.

Case III. *Cranks at right angles.* This is much the most common arrangement of cranks in two-cylinder engines, and its advantages in reducing the range of the twisting stresses will be seen from Fig. 270.

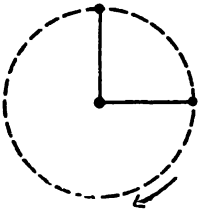


FIG. 269.

This arrangement possesses the further advantage of enabling an engine to start more easily than when the two cranks are opposite, for when one crank is on the dead centre the other is in the position of maximum turning moment, in which position the engine may be started easily—unless it should happen that steam is cut off by the valve-gear before the half-stroke, in which case the engine would have to be moved round till the crank was past the dead centre before starting could take place.

Fig. 270 is constructed by drawing first the twisting-moment curve

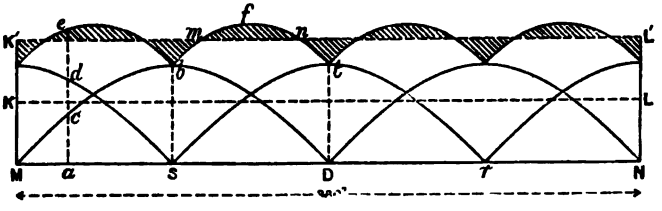


FIG. 270.

as before for one crank, as M*b*D on the half-revolution length MD. Then for the second crank the point *s*, midway between M and D, or

90° ahead of M, is the starting-point for the second curve of twisting moment.

When the engines are equal in all respects, as is here assumed, then the two curves are equal, and the curve ***str*** is drawn equal to M*b*D. The true curve of twisting moment, ***ebft***, etc., is then found by taking the sum of the vertical distances of the separate curves, thus $ac + ad = ae$, and so on.

The line KL is the mean turning-effort line for a single crank, as before, and MK′ = 2MK for the double crank. Or in practice, when the power of the engines is unequal, MK′ is obtained from $(P_1 + P_2 + \ldots)\frac{2}{\pi}$, where P_1, P_2, etc., are the mean effective pressure on each piston respectively for two or more engines.

Case IV. *Triple expansion engines with cranks at* 120°.

In Fig. 272, the curves for a single engine are drawn as before, starting from the point M with the first curve; at a point 120° ahead of M, for the second crank; and at a point 240° ahead of M, for the third crank. The true curve of twisting moments is then obtained by taking the sum of the ordinates $ab + ac + ad$, and constructing the curve by taking as many ordinates as are required.

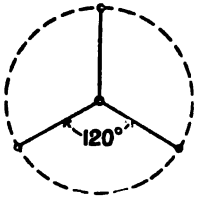


FIG. 271.

From the Figs. 268, 270, 272, it will be observed that by increasing the number of cranks the percentage variation in the turning effort is much reduced, as shown by the shaded areas on each side of the mean line KL.

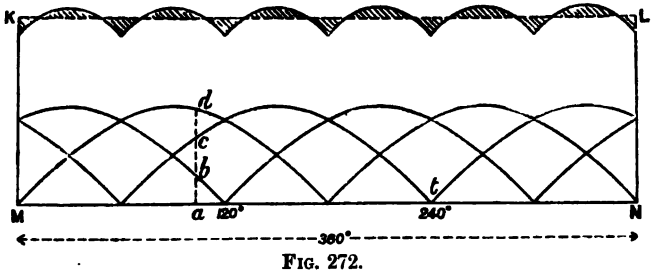


FIG. 272.

Turning Effort on the Crank-pin with Variable Pressure on the Piston.—It has already been shown, in connection with the velocity ratios of piston and crank-pin (Fig. 273), that for any position OC of the crank and CP of the connecting-rod, if OA be drawn perpendicular to ON, velocity of P : velocity of C :: OA : OC, the velocity of the crank-pin OC being constant, and OA varying with the position of the piston in the path of its stroke, MN. Then, having obtained the velocity ratio of two rigidly connected joints, C and P, and knowing that force ratio $= \frac{1}{\text{velocity ratio}}$, the pressures transmitted

at C and P in the element PC are inversely as their velocities. Hence, if OC represent to any scale the pressure P*d* on the piston, then OA represents to the same scale the turning effort on the crank-

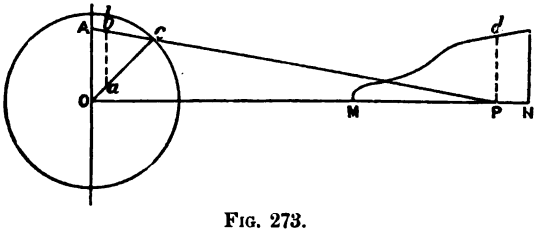


FIG. 273.

pin C. Or, more conveniently, if the pressure P*d* per square inch on the piston for any position P be set off on CO as at C*a*, and *ab* be drawn parallel to OA, then *ab* is the turning effort on the crank-pin per square inch of piston area for the position OC of the crank; for the triangles OAC and *ab*C being similar, OA : OC :: *ab* : *a*C. If *ab* be multiplied by the area of the piston in square inches, the total turning effort is obtained.

Diagram of Effective Pressure on the Piston.—In order to obtain the twisting-moment diagram accurately, it is necessary to find out the net pressure acting on the piston at each point of the stroke, and this can only be obtained by knowing the pressure acting on the two *opposite* sides of the piston; whereas the indicator diagram gives the forward line, and the backward line on the *same* side of the piston.

We therefore require to have a diagram taken from each side of the piston at the same time, and to combine the forward line of the diagram from one side with the backward line of the diagram from the opposite side.

In Fig. 274, A and B are indicator diagrams from opposite sides of the piston, and C and D are effective-pressure diagrams drawn therefrom. Fig. 274, C is the net or resultant diagram for the front end of the cylinder, and D for the back end set up from a horizontal base line MN. The diagrams are drawn by first dividing each figure into ten equal divisions, and each line MN, M'N', similarly. Take, for example, division 1 on each diagram, A, B, and C; *a* is the total forward pressure (Fig. A) when *b* is the back pressure at the same time on the other side of the piston (Fig. B); therefore the height at division 1 (Fig. C) is equal to the difference between *a* and *b*, and so on for each division. Towards the end of the stroke of the piston, the back pressure due to large compression may be in excess of the forward pressure, and the curve becomes negative and falls below the zero line of pressure MN.

The Figs. C and D (274) are net diagrams for each side of the piston respectively. The effect of the inertia of the reciprocating parts is not here included.

Influence of Inertia of the Reciprocating Parts.—It may be explained

that by the term *inertia* is meant the property possessed by bodies by virtue of which they offer *resistance* to *change of velocity*, whether

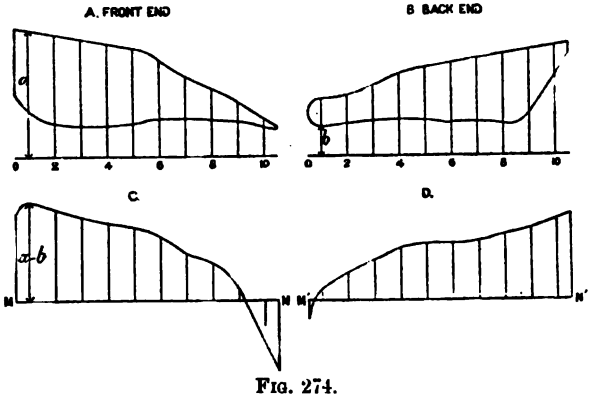


FIG. 274.

that change be from a condition of zero velocity, as when a shot is projected from a gun, or whether the change be from that of a high velocity to a condition of rest, as when the flying projectile is stopped by the target. In each case the inertia of the shot had to be overcome—in the first instance, by the energy in the powder; and in the second instance, at the expense, possibly, of the fractured target upon which the force was expended. Similarly, in order to start the reciprocating parts of an engine from their condition of rest at the beginning of each stroke to that of maximum velocity, if the piston velocity is high, a considerable proportion of the energy of the steam may be absorbed in overcoming the inertia of those parts before its effect can be felt as turning effort on the crank-pin. Fortunately, however, there is no loss of energy due to this cause, for the force required to overcome inertia during the increase of velocity is again restored in the later part of the stroke as pressure on the crank-pin while the crank-pin brings the moving parts to rest.

It is evident, therefore, that before constructing a diagram of turning effort on the crank-pin, we must first "correct the indicator diagram for inertia" by subtracting the amount of the pressure employed in accelerating the reciprocating parts during the early part of the stroke, and adding to the diagram the pressure restored to the crank-pin while retarding those parts during the later portion of the stroke.

The amount of the effort absorbed during acceleration is in all cases equal to that restored during retardation, and the total energy exerted upon the pin (neglecting friction) is unaffected by the work of acceleration and retardation, but the distribution of the turning effort during each half-revolution of the crank may be greatly changed, and its influence upon the regularity of speed of the engine may be considerable.

Force required to accelerate the Velocity of the Reciprocating Parts.—The reciprocating parts include the piston, piston-rod, cross-head, and part of the connecting-rod, and the force required may be easily found by assuming, for the purpose of this problem, that the whole mass of the parts is concentrated at the crank-pin, and rotating with it—the obliquity of the connecting-rod being in the first instance neglected.

The centripetal force required to turn the mass about the centre O (Fig. 275) acts radially in the direction AO, PO, BO, etc., for every position of the crank, and is equal to $F = \frac{Wv^2}{gr} = M\omega^2 r$; and this force may be resolved horizontally, as at PE, and vertically, as at PN, for each position of the crank. Thus, if OP = the centripetal force F, then PE = NO = F cos θ = the horizontal component of the centripetal force F, and is the amount of force employed in accelerating the velocity of the mass at position N in the horizontal direction A to B. The forces may thus be obtained for all positions P of the crank, and they are the same as would be required to accelerate the reciprocating parts in their corresponding ordinary positions, the masses, the horizontal distances, and the intervals of time being the same in either case.

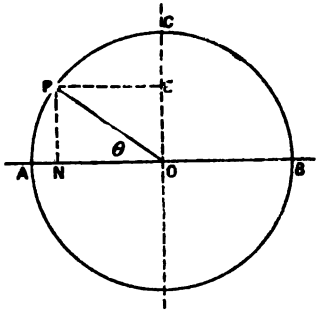


FIG. 275.

The vertical components of the centripetal force take no part in horizontal acceleration, and are therefore neglected.

At the beginning A of the stroke, the whole centripetal force F acts horizontally, it has no vertical component, and cos θ = 1. Therefore acceleration at A is a maximum, and = $F = \frac{Wv^2}{gr} = WrN^2 \times 0{\cdot}00034$, where W = weight of reciprocating parts in pounds, r = radius of crank in feet, and N = number of revolutions per minute. In order to apply the force, when obtained, to the indicator diagram, it must be expressed in pounds per square inch of the piston area; the above value of F is therefore divided by the piston area in square inches. Thus, pressure required per square inch of piston to start the reciprocating parts at beginning of stroke

$$= f = \frac{WrN^2 \times 0{\cdot}00034}{\text{area of piston}}$$

At the middle of the stroke the whole centripetal force acts vertically, and it has no horizontal component. Here the velocity of the reciprocating parts is a maximum, and there is no longer any force exerted in increasing its velocity any further; the acceleration, therefore, at the mid-positions of the crank is zero.

Beyond this point the reciprocating parts are retarded until they

are brought to rest at the end of the stroke ; the forces exerted on the crank-pin in bringing the moving parts to rest are exactly the reverse of those acting upon the piston to generate its velocity during the first half of the stroke.

The distribution of the forces throughout the stroke may be seen by Fig. 276, where AB represents the length of the piston stroke. Set off AC $= f$ as obtained by the above equation, and use the same scale of pounds as is used for the indicator diagram to which the diagram is to be applied. At D, the mid-position of the piston, the acceleration is zero. At intermediate points, as at N, set off NO (Fig. 276) to scale, by measurement of the horizontal component NO from the

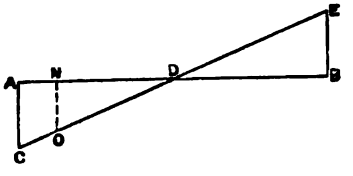


FIG. 276.

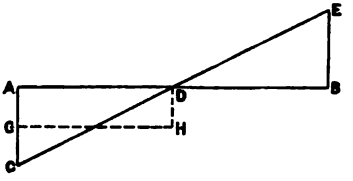


FIG. 277.

diagram (Fig. 275), or by calculation of the value of $f \cos \theta$ for several positions of the crank. If the ordinates so found be joined, the straight line CODE is obtained.

The triangles ACD and BED are equal, and they each represent, by their area, work done (1) by the steam upon the piston to generate velocity, (2) by the reciprocating parts upon the crank-pin during retardation from maximum to zero velocity. Thus, area of triangle ACD = kinetic energy stored up in moving parts on reaching middle of stroke $= \frac{Wv^2}{2g}$. But AD $= r =$ radius of crank, and $r \times \frac{1}{2}AC =$ area of triangle $= \frac{Wv^2}{2g}$; therefore AC $= \frac{Wv^2}{gr}$ as before. The same reasoning applies to triangle DEB, which represents energy given up by the reciprocating parts and transferred to the crank-pin.

Illustrations of the Effects of Inertia upon the Pressure transmitted to the Crank-pin.[1]—Suppose first the case of an engine taking steam through the whole length of stroke. Then the indicator diagram is approximately a rectangle = ABCD (Fig. 278). Let the pressure of steam AB = 20 lbs. per square inch, and the pressure to accelerate the piston = 6 lbs. reckoned per square inch of piston area $= \frac{Wv^2}{gr} \div$ area of piston.

If AE be set down below AD = 6 lbs. to scale, and DF above AD = 6 lbs., and points E and F be joined, then the line EKF represents the extent of correction required for the indicator diagram before the pressure transmitted to the crank-pin can be determined.

Between points B and G on the top line of the diagram, set down

[1] See "A Practical Treatise on the Steam-Engine," by Mr. A. Rigg.

below BG ordinates m equal to and corresponding with ordinates n between lines EK and AK. Similarly, set up above GC ordinates m equal to and corresponding with ordinates n between KF and KD. Then ALGHD is the corrected diagram, from which is measured the pressure transmitted to the crank-pin.

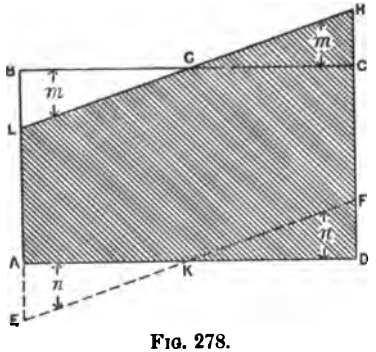


FIG. 278.

Though the pressure of the steam upon the piston is assumed uniform throughout, the pressure transmitted to the crank-pin is very variable, being 14 lbs. at the beginning of the stroke, 20 lbs. in the middle of the stroke, and 26 lbs. at the end of the stroke; and since the effects of inertia rapidly increase with the speed, the ratio of increase being as the square of the velocity, the diagram shows how seriously high the pressure on the crank-pin may become at high speed towards the end of the stroke, especially when the pressure of the steam is retained throughout the stroke.

These high inertia effects are, however, greatly modified by working the steam expansively, and by a judicious use of steam-compression at the back of the piston.

If the steam be worked expansively in the cylinder, the effect in reducing the excessive pressure on the crank-pin at the end of the stroke will be seen from the diagram (Fig. 279). SSS is the assumed

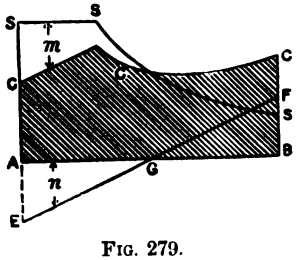


FIG. 279.

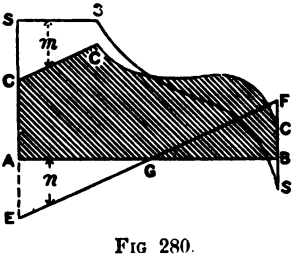


FIG 280.

diagram of net effective steam-pressure on the piston, set up from the base-line AB. Line EF is the inertia line, and the piston-pressures S, S, S, corrected for inertia by making ordinates $m = n$ on the same vertical line, and above or below SSS as required, give the line CCC, the ordinates of which at the various parts of the stroke give the actual pressures transmitted to the crank-pin.

Fig. 279 shows the effect of expansion only, and Fig. 280 of expansion and compression in tending to make the pressure more uniformly equal throughout the stroke, as shown by line CCC.

Influence of Weight of Reciprocating Parts in Vertical Engines.—On the upward stroke of the piston, the weight of the reciprocating parts acts against the steam throughout the whole stroke. Hence, if the weight of those parts expressed in pounds per square inch of piston area be set up from A = AF (Fig. 281), to the same scale as AC, and FG be drawn parallel to AB, then FG is the new base-line, which will coincide with the base of the net steam-pressure diagram to be corrected for effects of inertia and weight of moving parts. A is the beginning of the stroke, and the ordinates *m* are subtracted from, while the ordinates *n* are added to, the ordinates of the net steam-pressure diagram, in order to obtain the amount of pressure transmitted as turning effort on the crank-pin. For the downward stroke

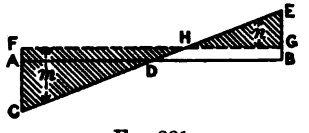


FIG. 281.

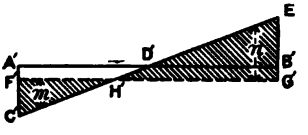


FIG. 282.

the case is reversed, the weight of the reciprocating parts acting with the steam-pressure throughout the whole stroke.

In Fig. 282, if A'C' be drawn as before, representing the force required to generate the required velocity in the moving parts at the commencement of the stroke, then, since on the downward stroke, part of this force (namely, A'F') is supplied by the weight of the parts, an amount of force equal to F'C' only is required to be provided by the steam to generate velocity.

The line F'G', drawn a distance below A'B' equal to the weight of the moving parts per square in. of piston area, is the new base upon which the net steam-pressure diagram will be placed to be corrected for effects of velocity and gravity upon the moving parts. The ordinates *m* will be subtracted from and the ordinates *n* added to the corresponding ordinates of the steam-pressure diagram, A being considered the beginning of the stroke.

The work done (= area AG) in lifting the reciprocating parts during the upward stroke, and thus reducing the effective work on the crank-pin, is compensated for by the restoration of the same amount of work to the crank-pin during the downward stroke (= area A'G'), the weights during this stroke assisting the steam-pressure. There is, therefore, no loss due to the weights of the moving parts.

When the Obliquity of the Connecting-rod is included.—When the influence of the short connecting-rod is included, the problem of finding the inertia line is more complex, but for practical purposes it is usually sufficient to find the acceleration at the two ends of the stroke, and to find the point of zero acceleration. Then, by drawing a free curve through these three points, we may obtain with sufficient accuracy the inertia line required.[1]

[1] For a construction for finding all points in the curve, see the chapter on "Balancing of Engines."

First, to find the point B (Fig. 283), or the position of the piston at the point of its maximum velocity, where its acceleration is zero. This may be found with almost absolute accuracy by a simple geometrical construction, thus:

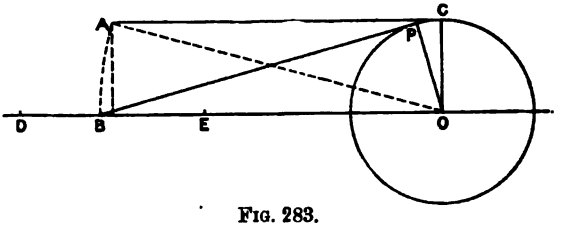


FIG. 283.

Draw OC (Fig. 283) to scale equal to the crank radius, and draw AC at right angles to it and equal in length to the connecting-rod. Join OA, and rotate the right-angled triangle OCA about O. Or—

$$BO^2 = l^2 + r^2$$
$$BO = \sqrt{l^2 + r^2}$$

B is the point required representing the position of the piston in the path DE of the stroke at the moment of maximum velocity. It is also the point of zero acceleration on the inertia curve.

At the point D, the beginning of the stroke DE (Fig. 284), the accelerating force DA is found in the following way. When the crank is passing the dead centre and the connecting-rod is finite, the

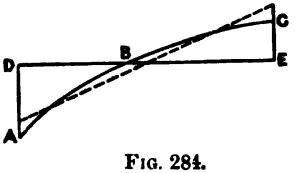


FIG. 284.

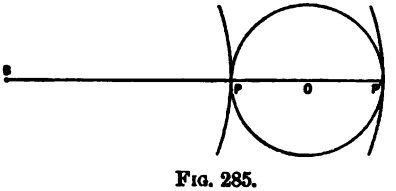


FIG. 285.

centripetal force includes two effects: first, that due to the rotation of the mass about the centre of the crank-shaft O; and, secondly, that due to its tendency to rotate also about the centre B of the connecting-rod BP (Fig. 285). Thus the acceleration at P is proportional to the sum of the curvatures drawn with radii OP and BP respectively. At the other end of the stroke, when the crank is passing the centre P', the centripetal force due to the motion of the connecting-rod acts in the same direction as that of the crank, and the acceleration at P' is proportional to the difference of those curvatures. Hence, if the connecting-rod = n times the radius r of the crank, then the accelerating force at P $= \frac{W}{g}\left(\frac{v^2}{r} + \frac{v^2}{nr}\right) = \frac{Wv^2}{gr}\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)$, and the force at P' $= \frac{W}{g}\left(\frac{v^2}{r} - \frac{v^2}{nr}\right) = \frac{Wv^2}{gr}\left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right)$. If, then, the value of the centripetal

force at P and P' (Fig. 285) be set off vertically from D and E, and =DA and EC respectively (Fig. 284), and a free curve ABC be drawn, then ABC is the curve of inertia required with which to correct the net pressure-diagram on the piston when determining the pressure transmitted to the crank-pin. This subject will be dealt with more fully in the chapter on "Balancing of Engines."

If the speed of the engine exceed a certain number of revolutions, the pressure necessary to accelerate the piston may be greater than that of the steam-pressure in the cylinder, in which case the crank

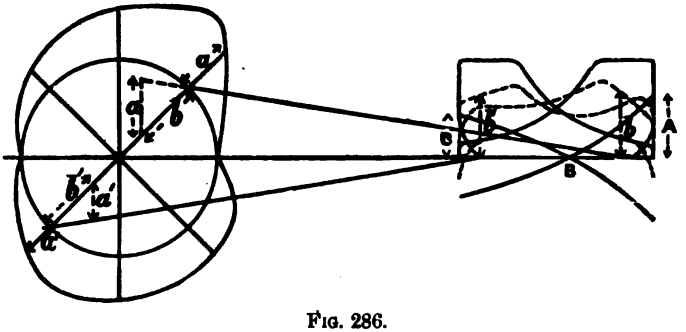


FIG. 286.

will at first pull the reciprocating parts during the early portion of the stroke beyond which the steam-pressure will begin to act, and the reciprocating parts close up against the crank-pin and crosshead-pin with a more or less serious knock. This is an indication that the engine is working beyond its limit of speed for the steam-pressure employed. By working at a higher initial steam-pressure, and cutting off earlier in the stroke, the knock may be avoided.

EXAMPLE.—To find the effect of inertia at the ends of the stroke in the following example, and to draw the curve of crank-effort :—

Weight of reciprocating parts = 292 lbs. ; length of crank, 6 in. ; diameter of cylinder, 10 in. ; revolutions = 300 per minute ; ratio of crank to connecting-rod = 1 : 4·5.

$$\text{Then force at beginning and end of stroke} = \frac{Wv^2}{gr}\left(1 \pm \frac{1}{n}\right)$$

$$= \frac{292 \times (2\pi r N)^2}{32 \times r \times 60 \times 60}\left(1 \pm \tfrac{2}{9}\right)$$

$$= \frac{292 \times 39{\cdot}4 \times 0{\cdot}5 \times 300 \times 300}{32 \times 60 \times 60}\left(1 \pm \tfrac{2}{9}\right)$$

$$= 4494\left(1 \pm \tfrac{2}{9}\right)$$

$$= 5492{\cdot}6 \text{ or } 3495{\cdot}3$$

$$\text{But } p = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{4494}{10^2 \times 0{\cdot}7854}\left(1 \pm \tfrac{2}{9}\right)$$

p = 69·9 and 44·5 lbs. per square inch of piston.

Fig. 286 is drawn with the data here given, lengths A and C being set off to scale equal to 69·9 and 44·5 at the beginning and end of the stroke respectively, and the point B is found, as already explained, by finding geometrically the position of the piston when the crank and connecting-rod are at right angles. A free curve of inertia is then drawn, and the diagram of net effective pressure on the piston is set off, as shown by dotted lines, by measuring from the inertia curve to the top line of the indicator diagram (see Fig. 279), and resolving the pressure as shown to find its tangential effect on the crank-pin.

Thus, if the net pressure *b*, measured from the base line to the corrected indicator diagram, shown dotted, be set off on the corresponding crank position as shown, and the vertical component *a*, intercepted by the connecting-rod, be set off on the crank position produced, then, by joining the outer extremities of the lines *a*, the curve of turning effort on the crank-pin is obtained.

It may here be pointed out that though the force absorbed in accelerating the moving parts is restored during retardation of those parts, yet in practice there will be a waste of energy to a greater or less degree at the end of each stroke, if owing to slack bearings there is a "pound" or shock as the crank turns the centre and the moving parts change the direction of motion. With slack main bearings, the crank-shaft may be lifted on the up-stroke, and possibly bent or sprung on the down-stroke. To avoid such effects, the brasses should be kept in good condition, having a minimum of slackness, and the energy in the piston at each end of the stroke should be absorbed by a judicious use of steam-cushioning on the exhaust side, so that the piston may be brought to rest as nearly as possible without shock.

CHAPTER XVI.

FLYWHEELS.

FLUCTUATION of speed of the crank-shaft during each single revolution of the shaft may be reduced by the use of a flywheel, whose mass and radius of rotation provide a large moment of inertia, absorbing energy when the turning effort is in excess of the resistance, and restoring it to the shaft when the resistance is in excess of the effort.

The extent to which the turning effort transmitted to the crank-pin varies above and below the *mean* turning effort is well seen by the diagrams already given.

Thus in the case of a single-crank engine this variation is large, while in triple engines with three cranks at 120° the variation is reduced to within very narrow limits.

It is clear, therefore, that for the single-crank engine a large and heavy flywheel is much more necessary than for the three-crank engine of the same power.

To design a flywheel to meet the requirements of a given case, it is necessary to find out first what is the extent of the periodical fluctuation of energy, above and below the mean energy transmitted during a single revolution.

For this purpose a turning-effort diagram is drawn by the method already explained. Thus, in Fig. 287, curve *abcde* represents the turning effort for a single-crank engine during one whole revolution,

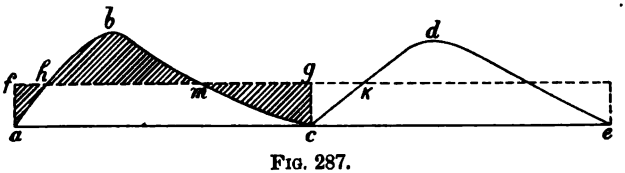


FIG. 287.

ae. Of the two curves *abc* and *cde*, that which shows the larger excess of energy is chosen for the calculation. The line *fg* is the mean of the two curves. The resistance is assumed constant. Then the work E done during one stroke is represented by the area *abc*, which area is equal also to the rectangle *afgc*. If area *hbm* = ΔE, then $\Delta E \div E$ is called the coefficient of fluctuation of energy.

For multiple-crank engines the turning-effort curves for the separate cranks are combined (Fig. 288), and the coefficient of

fluctuation of energy is now the ratio of one of the areas projecting above the mean-effort line, as the area *efg* to the total effort *abcd* during the stroke.

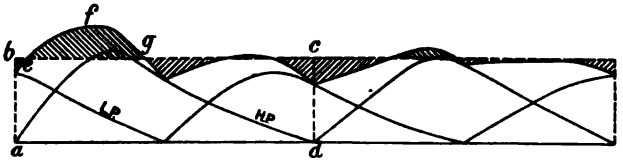


FIG. 288.

To find the value in foot-pounds of the area *efg*, obtain by means of a planimeter, or by simple measurement to any scale, the ratio of the area *efg* to the area *abcd*. Then, since the area of *abcd* is known, being equal to the work in foot-pounds done by the steam upon the piston or combined pistons during the stroke, the area *efg* may be obtained at once.

To find the weight of flywheel, having given the coefficient of fluctuation of energy and the limit of variation of speed.

Fluctuation of the force acting as turning effort on the crank-shaft is, as a necessary consequence, followed by fluctuation of speed of rotation. This is objectionable in all engines, but is especially so in some departments of engineering, such as electric lighting; and although the speed of rotation cannot be made absolutely uniform, so long as the turning effort is not uniform, the variation may be reduced to any required extent by increasing the mass and radius of the flywheel.

If W = the weight of the rim of the flywheel, the weight of the arms being neglected; r = the radius to centre of figure of the rim; v = velocity of rim at radius r in feet per second; and ω = angular velocity of wheel;

$$\text{Then the energy of the wheel} = \frac{Wv^2}{2g} = \frac{Wr^2\omega^2}{2g}$$

and for any addition of energy ΔE, such as area *hbm* (Fig. 287), we have an increase of speed from ω_1 to ω_2, and—

$$\Delta E = Wr^2\frac{\omega_2^2 - \omega_1^2}{2g}$$

that is, for a given value of ΔE the change of speed will vary inversely as the weight and as the square of the radius of the wheel.

The radius of the wheel is determined somewhat by considerations of appearance and proportion, according to the discretion of the designer, always remembering that the peripheral speed of the rim should not exceed 100 ft. per second as a maximum. But having determined the radius, the weight required to reduce the variation of speed to within given limits is obtained as follows:—

$$\Delta E = \frac{W(v_1^2 - v_2^2)}{2g}$$
$$= \frac{W(v_1 + v_2)(v_1 - v_2)}{2g}$$
$$= \frac{W \times 2v \times kv}{2g}$$
$$W = \frac{\Delta E \times g}{k \cdot v^2}$$

where v_1 = maximum velocity, v = mean velocity, and v_2 = minimum velocity, also k = coefficient of fluctuation of speed. The value of k varies from $\frac{1}{20}$ for punching and shearing machines to $\frac{1}{100}$ for electrical machinery.

This variation of speed has to do with the speed fluctuation during a single revolution, and has nothing to do with the fluctuation of speed from minute to minute, which is the work of the governor.

The stresses in a flywheel are of two kinds: (1) those due to centrifugal force, and (2) those due to inertia.

1. The centrifugal force acting radially in the wheel $= \frac{Wv^2}{gr}$ per foot of rim, measured on the mean circumference, W = weight of the rim per foot of length; r = radius of wheel to centre of rim in feet; v = velocity of rim in feet per second at radius r.

The action of this force in tending to burst the rim of the wheel may be considered as equivalent to that of steam-pressure acting internally on the circular shell of a boiler, and as, in the case of a boiler, the tendency to burst the wheel in a plane through any diameter = F × d, where F stands for centrifugal force per foot of rim, and d the mean diameter of the wheel in feet; and the stress per square inch on the material $= f = \frac{\text{load}}{\text{area}} = \frac{Fd}{2a}$, where a = area of section of rim in square inches.

In addition to the tendency to fracture of the wheel just referred to, the centrifugal force tends also to bend the rim, between the arms, concave to the centre. There is also a tensile stress upon the arms.

2. The stresses due to inertia of the mass of the wheel may become large when there is any more or less sudden variation of the speed of the engine, the effect of which is to put a bending stress upon the arms, which may be considered as cantilevers loaded at the rim end and secured at the boss of the wheel.

EXAMPLE.—A flywheel with a cast-iron rim 15 ft. mean diameter runs at a speed of 90 revolutions per minute. The section of the rim = 150 sq. in. Find the stress on the rim tending to separate it through any diameter; also find the stress per square inch on the material of the wrought-iron strap plates, 8 in. × 1½ in., one on each side of junction of segment.

Then, weight per foot of rim measured on mean circumference = 150 × 12 × 0·26 = 468 lbs.

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{Centrifugal force F per}\\ \text{foot of rim}\end{array}\right\} = \frac{Wv^2}{gr}$$
$$= WrN^2 \times 0{\cdot}00034$$
$$= 468 \times 7{\cdot}5 \times 90 \times 90 \times 0{\cdot}00034$$
$$= 9666{\cdot}5$$

This is the radial force per foot of rim. Resolving this force at right angles to a diameter, then the total force tending to separate the rim through a diameter

$$= F \times d$$
$$= 9666{\cdot}5 \times 15$$
$$= 144997{\cdot}5 \text{ lbs., or } 64{\cdot}7 \text{ tons}$$

Stress f per square inch in wrought-iron straps holding segments of wheel together

$$= f = \frac{\text{load}}{\text{area}} = \frac{64{\cdot}7}{2(8 \times 1{\cdot}5)} = 2\,7 \text{ tons per square inch}$$

This neglects the influence of the arms in resisting tensile stress.

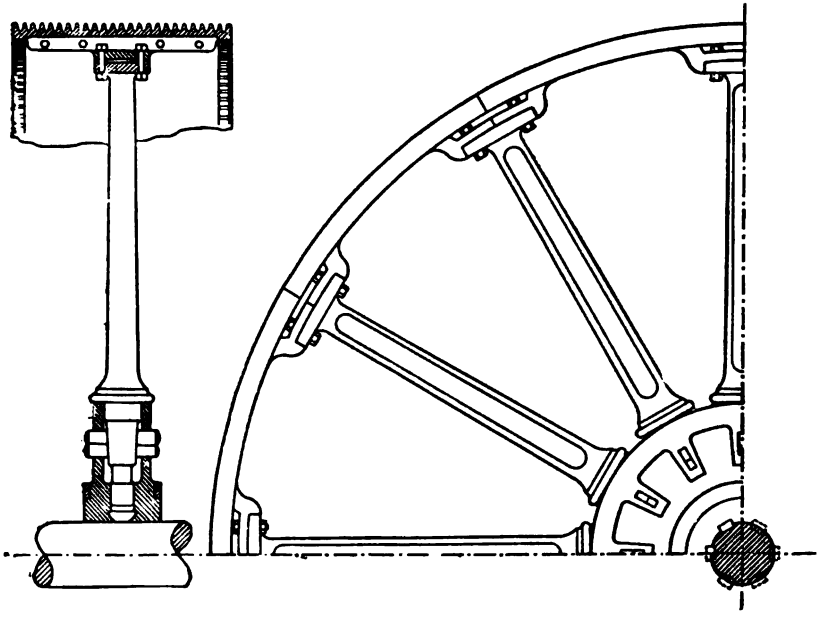


FIG. 289.

Fig. 289 is a combined flywheel and rope drum as made by Messrs. Musgrave of Bolton. The construction will be understood from the drawing.

Fig. 290 is a type of flywheel made for rolling mills in the United

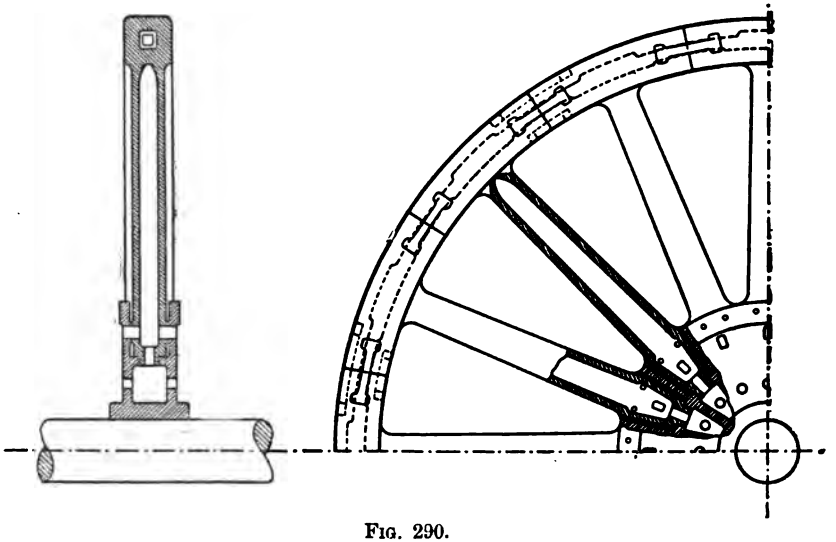


FIG. 290.

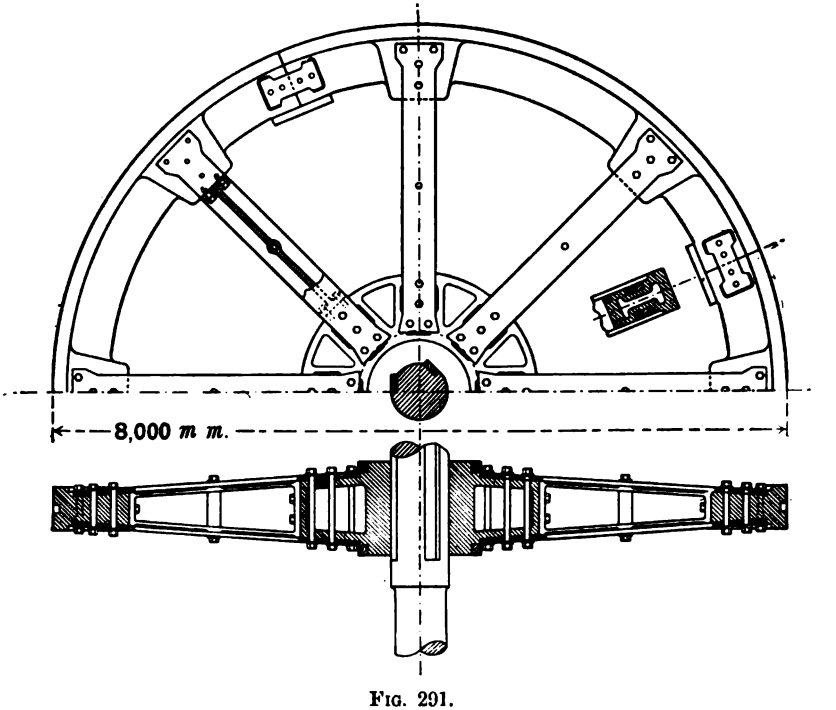


FIG. 291.

States. It was recently described by Mr. John Fritz.[1] This design of wheel is made varying in diameter from 20 to 30 ft. It has been subjected to very severe treatment, and is said never to have been known to fail.

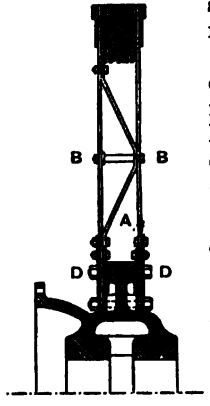


FIG. 292.

The rim is cast in segments, each segment being cast with its accompanying arm; and both segment and arm are cast hollow as shown. The holes in the segments are made smaller at the ends so as to allow for the metal taken out for the connecting T-pieces. The steel limbs or T-pieces are designed so that the rim is as strong at the joints of the segments as elsewhere.

It will be noticed that at the centre of the wheel there is a space left of about $\frac{1}{4}$ in. on both sides of each arm. This is filled with oakum, and driven hard after the wheel is finished and in its place.

Fig. 291 shows a design for a flywheel[2] by the "Duisburger Maschinenbau-Actien-Gesellschaft" with a cast-iron rim made in segments, a cast-iron boss, and steel-plate arms secured in pairs to the boss

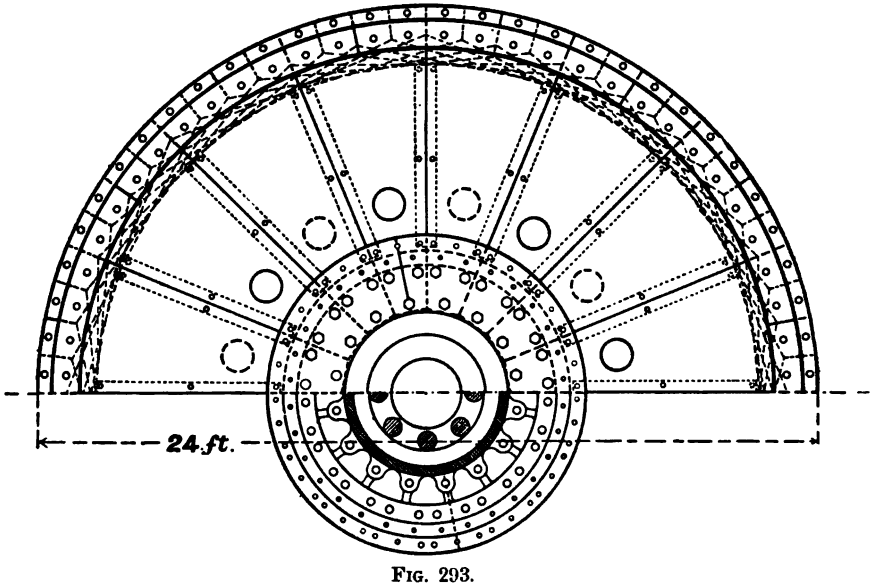


FIG. 293.

and rim as shown, with a cast-iron distance-piece between the pairs of arms.

[1] *Cassier's Magazine*, vol. 16, No. 2. [2] From "Stahl und Eisen," May, 1899.

Figs. 292 and 293 [1] show a form of built-up flywheel composed of flat steel plates, constructed by the E. P. Allis Company of Milwaukee, U.S., for a cross-compound engine, 32-in. and 62-in. cylinders, and 5-ft. stroke. The speed at which the wheel is intended to run is 75 revolutions per minute, giving a speed at the circumference of 90 ft. per second.

Fig. 292 is a side elevation of half the wheel and a section through half the boss. The boss is made of cast iron, and is 8 ft. extreme diameter. Against each face of the boss are two annular steel plates, A, Fig. 292, which are 1 in. thick and 23 in. wide, and split on the diameter. From these plates extend the web-plates, sixteen in number, to the extreme outside diameter of the wheel. Between the plates on the opposite sides of the boss are truss-pieces, 1 in. by 8 in., bolted at the ends with two $\frac{3}{4}$-in. bolts, and having at the centre two $1\frac{1}{4}$-in. bolts as struts. The truss-pieces are put at the joints between the web-plates. Outside the web-plates are cover-plates D, 1 in. thick and 27 in. wide, also split on the diameter. Through the outside cover-plates D, web-plates B, and inside plates A, are forty $2\frac{3}{4}$-in. bolts. In addition there are forty-eight $1\frac{1}{4}$-in. bolts on each side, through the cover-plates and web-plates. The section of the rim between the web-plates consists of thirteen 1-in. steel plates placed side by side and joined on the ends as shown. Outside of the web-plates, on each side of the rim, are 1-in. by 12-in. plates, forming cover-plates around the entire rim. Still outside this is another strip 1 in. by 5 in. all round the wheel. Countersunk rivets $1\frac{3}{4}$ in. diameter hold the plates and rim together.

[1] From the *Railroad Gazette.*

CHAPTER XVII.

ENGINE DETAILS.

Cylinders.—The strength of cylinders, as of all other parts of steam-engines, is initially dependent upon the pressure of the steam to be used. The thickness of the cylinder must be sufficient to safely withstand the maximum steam-pressure and to ensure a safe casting throughout.

The general proportions of the cylinder depend upon the relation between the length of stroke and the diameter of the cylinder. This value varies from 1·5 to 2·0 for ordinary horizontal mill-engines, and from 1·25 to 0·6 for vertical quick-running engines.

The steam-ports are made sufficiently long (generally from 0·6 to 0·8 of the cylinder diameter) to admit the steam promptly and through as large an area as possible when the valve begins to uncover the port, so as to give the piston the full benefit of the maximum steam-pressure from the commencement of the stroke. A long port has the additional advantage of permitting a smaller travel of valve for a given area of port opening.

The dimensions of the port are also governed by the necessity of providing ready egress for the steam during exhaust. Getting the steam out during exhaust is a more difficult problem than getting the steam into the cylinder. Large ports, however, involve large clearance volume and large clearance surface, and, for reasons already given, both of these should be reduced to the lowest possible limits.

The area of steam-port is made sufficient to permit of a velocity of flow not exceeding 6000 ft. per minute ;

$$\text{Area of port} = \frac{\text{area of piston in sq. in.} \times \text{piston speed in ft. per min.}}{6000}$$

By turning the face of the piston in the lathe, and where possible also the inner surface of the cylinder cover, the clearance volume may be more readily reduced to the lowest practical limit than when the castings are left rough.

The clearance space permitted between the piston and cylinder end varies from $\frac{1}{8}$ in. to $\frac{1}{2}$ in., depending on the size of the engine.

Where the clearance space is very small, additional care is necessary in the adjustment of brasses at the various joints between the piston and the crank-pin.

Cylinder-liners and Barrels.—In order that a hard surface shall be presented to the rubbing action of the piston, it is usual to fit a separate working barrel made of hard, close-grained metal, forced or shrunk into the cylinder, or secured by a flange at the bottom end fitted with bolts, as shown in Fig. 294. The cylinder-cover end of the liner is left free to expand. The space between the working-barrel or liner and the cylinder-casting constitutes the steam-jacket, and the joint at the cover end of the liner is made steam-tight and at the same time allowed to expand freely by methods such as that shown in Fig. 294.

FIG. 294.

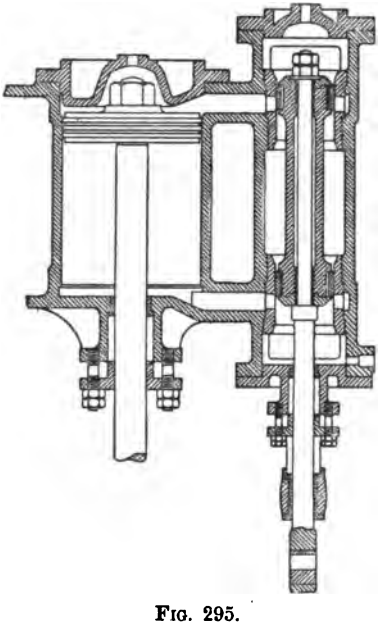


FIG. 295.

Many examples of cylinders are given throughout this book. Fig. 295 shows a cylinder fitted with a piston-valve.

Cylinder Patterns.—Where a great variety of sizes of engines are made, it becomes a matter of prime importance to keep down the number of separate patterns, for a large stock of patterns represents a large capital, which is to a considerable extent unproductive.

In making a series of engines of uniform type but somewhat varying powers, one head pattern can be used for the two ends of the cylinder with but slight alteration, and by varying the length of the barrels the cylinder pattern can be used for a variety of piston strokes.

It is customary in many firms to keep engine beds to standard strokes, and make the total initial pressure and power of tandem

compound cylinders equal to the half of the total initial pressure of a cross-coupled or side-by-side compound engine, or equal to that of the high-pressure cylinder only.

Thus, taking a cross-coupled compound engine, 18 in. and 30 in. cylinder diameters, by 42 in. stroke, to find the compound tandem engine the combined power of whose cylinders is equal to that of the high-pressure cylinder of the 18″ × 30″ × 42″ cross-coupled engine, the stroke to remain the same; then, since the power is proportional to the squares of the cylinder diameters, we have—

$$\frac{18^2}{2} = \frac{324}{2} = 162; \text{ and } \sqrt{162} = 13 \text{ in. nearly}$$

that is, a 13-in. diameter high-pressure cylinder is equal to one half the power of the 18-in. cylinder. By the addition of a suitable low-pressure cylinder to work tandem with the 13-in. high-pressure cylinder, the total power will then be equal to that of the 18-in. high-pressure cylinder, then—

$$\frac{30^2}{2} = 450; \text{ and } \sqrt{450} = \text{about } 22 \text{ in.}$$

that is, the heads of a cross-coupled compound engine 13″ × 22″ × 30″ stroke would be used as a 13″ × 22″ × 42″ stroke tandem compound engine, the beds, rods, bearings, etc., being the same as for a single engine of the 18″ × 30″ × 42″ size.

This gives a well-designed arrangement in both cases, and minimises the number of patterns required.

Low-pressure cylinder patterns of small engines are used for high-pressure cylinders of large engines by simply lengthening the barrel.

The above remarks assume a fairly uniform piston speed in the above engines, varying not more than 10 per cent. of, say, 600 to 660 ft. per minute.

The splitting up of cylinder castings also reduces the risk of loss by defective casting, and if an engine is wanted in a hurry, the cylinder can be treated in several separate machines, and the parts assembled when machined in a much shorter time than is possible if the cylinder is machined as a single casting. This, of course, does not apply to the case where a large number of engines of standard pattern are passing through special machines, or where the time lost in fitting the assembled parts would be greater than that lost in the processes of machining the cylinder as one casting.

Fig. 296 shows a cylinder stuffing-box and gland fitted with Ward's metallic packing. A is the piston-rod, which must be true and free from grooves if the arrangement is to be steam-tight; with this packing a brass bush is not necessary at the bottom of the stuffing-box. B is the stuffing-box, which holds the packing. C is the gland-cover, which has a perfectly true face on the inner side, where the packing-pieces E and F bear upon it and make a steam-tight joint.

The packing-pieces E are made of anti-friction metal, lined on the outside with gun-metal to stiffen them. The pieces F make joints

with the pieces E (see plan of figure), and prevent the passage of steam at the partings of those pieces. The pieces E extend from the face of the gland nearly to the top of the stuffing-box.

A hoop, G, surrounds the packing-pieces. It is bevelled as shown, and fits against a corresponding face on the packing-pieces E. The

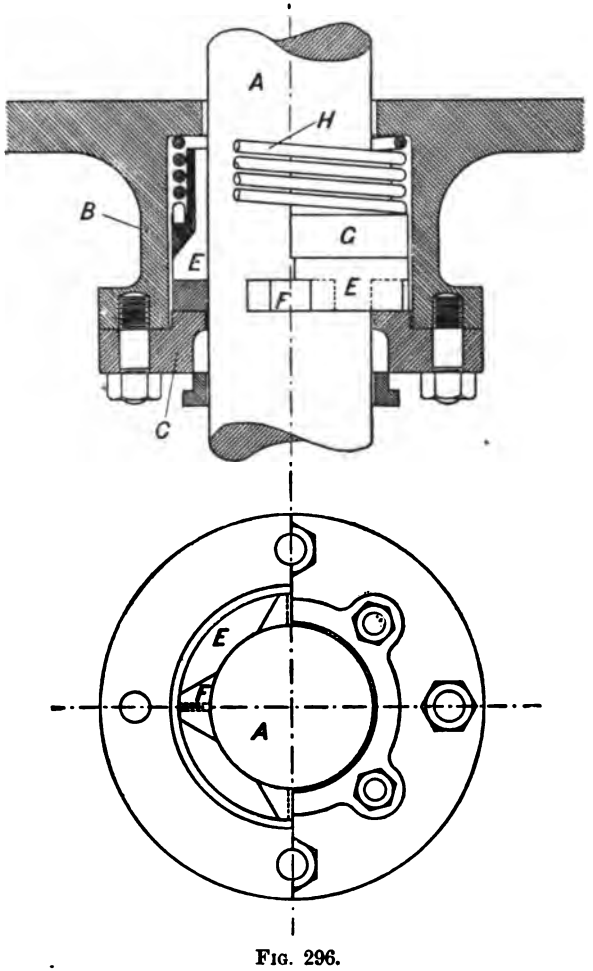


FIG. 296.

hoop G is pressed against by two springs, H, which keep the packing-pieces up to their work on the rod and the face of the gland. There is a further small gland and stuffing-box on the outer side of the main gland-cover, which is sometimes fitted to keep the joint dry; it is packed with ordinary packing.

Pistons.—A perfect piston would be one which was at the same time both steam-tight and frictionless. In practice, in order to make the piston steam-tight, various forms of spring rings are used, which, while rendering the piston steam-tight, also set up more or less friction against the cylinder walls during the stroke of the piston.

The packing-rings of pistons have themselves an initial spring or tendency to open themselves against the cylinder-barrel, by being turned in the first instance as a ring to a slightly larger diameter than the cylinder-barrel, after which the ring is cut obliquely so that the ring may be compressed

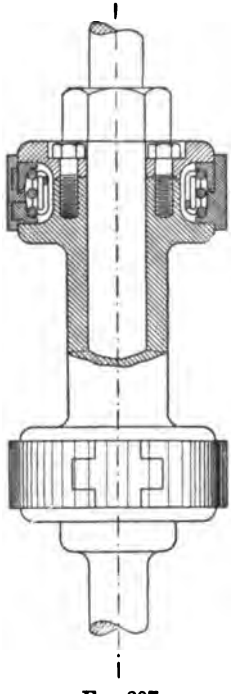


FIG. 297.

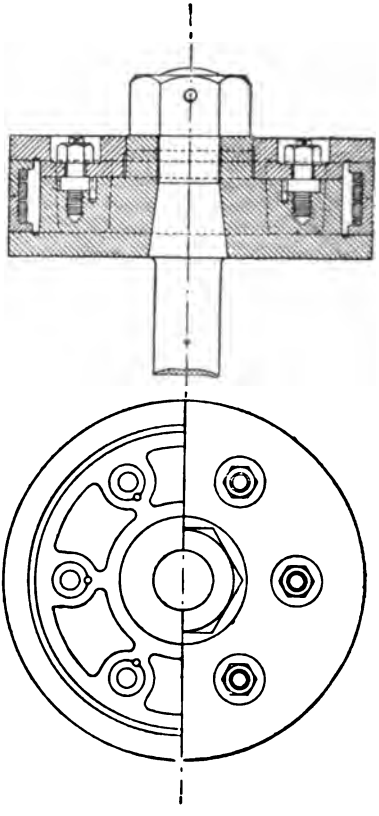


FIG. 298.

and closed to fit the barrel. The steam is prevented from passing through the oblique slit in the ring just made by the insertion of a gun-metal tongue-piece, A, fitting in a groove cut right across the slit (see Fig. 299).

For the high-pressure pistons of marine engines, and also of locomotives, the packing-rings are generally small square spring rings of cast-iron or bronze, without springs behind them.

Fig. 298 is a good type of stationary engine piston.

Figs. 299 and 300 are typical examples of cast-steel pistons as made for marine work. They are much lighter than cast-iron pistons of the older type of the same diameter, and, being conical in shape, they are also stiffer and more rigid.

The small spiral springs behind the packing-ring in Fig. 299 force

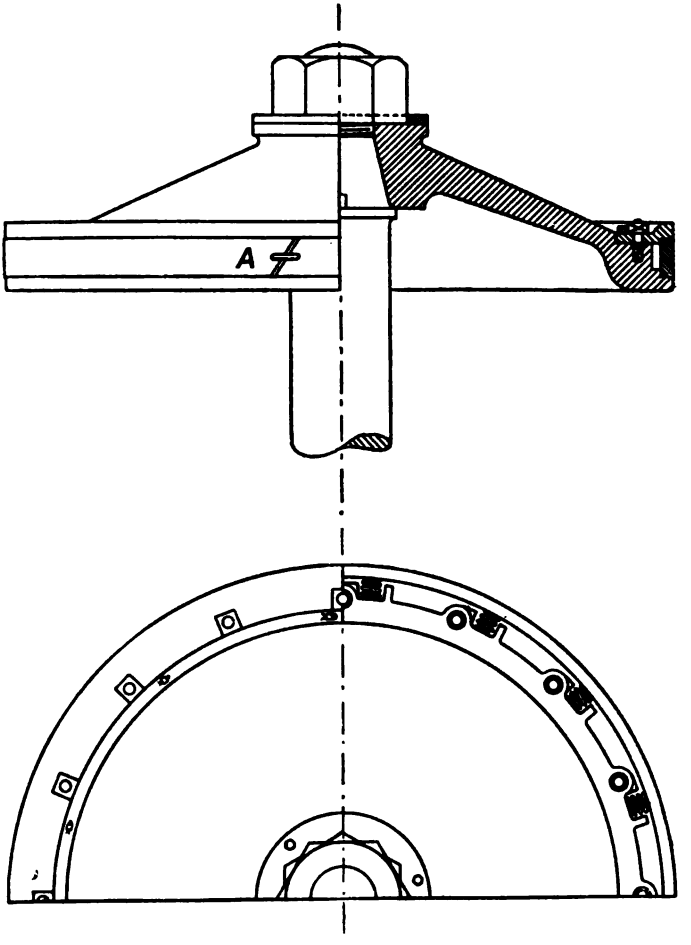


FIG. 299.

the ring against the cylinder-barrel, and they are capable of accurate and uniform adjustment. These springs are compressed so as to exert a pressure of about 2 lbs. per square inch of the bearing surface of the packing-ring.[1]

[1] See Sennett and Oram, "The Marine Steam Engine," p. 231.

Too much care cannot be taken to obtain on the one hand a steam-tight piston, and on the other hand to secure steam-tightness with a minimum of friction. In horizontal engines the friction is further increased by the *weight* of the piston, and in horizontal stationary engines the practice of marine engineers of using light steel pistons might be followed with advantage.

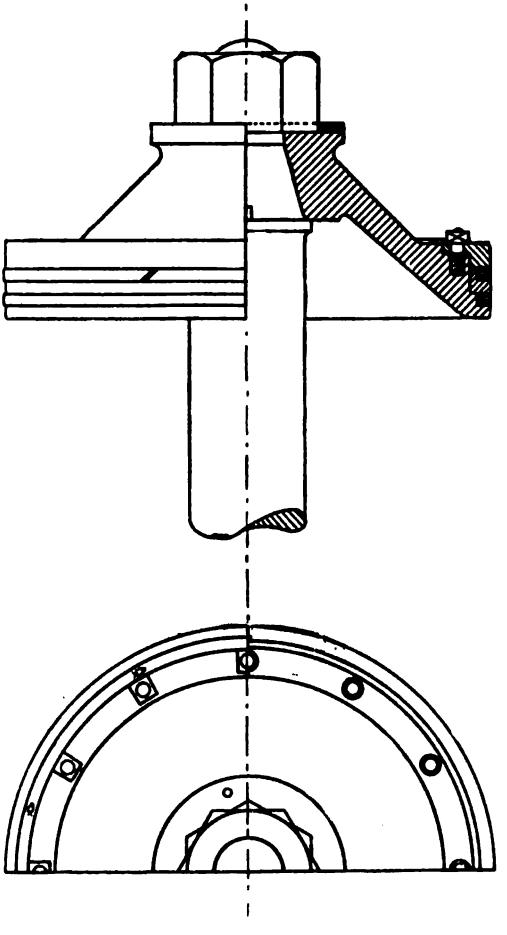


FIG. 300.

Fig. 302 represents views of a piston-packing having a double adjustment, as made by Messrs. Lockwood and Carlisle. The piston-ring is in two parts, and within the two half-rings is a compound spring, one part being helical, as shown in Fig. 302, and tending to press the packing-rings outwards against the cylinder walls; and another part having a tendency to press the rings apart against the internal faces of the piston-flange and the junk-ring. This prevents the steam from passing the piston through the back of the packing-ring.

Fig. 297 is a piston-valve fitted with the same kind of packing and spring-ring.

Piston-speed varies in ordinary practice from about 300 to 400 ft. per minute in small factory engines, to about 800 ft. per minute for marine engines, and over 1000 ft. per minute for the locomotive.

The *piston-rod* is designed to resist safely the stresses due to the maximum load on the piston, and the area of the rod is calculated at its weakest part. This is usually at the cotter end of the rod, where the method of connection is by a cotter to the cross-head (see Fig.

303). Here the stresses change direction each stroke, being compressive during the outward stroke and tensile during the inward stroke; and consequently the factor of safety must be a large one. The safe stress per square inch at this section for steel piston-rods is 8000 lbs. per square inch. At the other end of the piston-rod, where the rod is turned down to take the nut, the weakest part is of course at the bottom of the screw-thread. It will be noticed, however, that this part is subject to tensile stress only.

Cross-heads.—The cross-head forms a head for the purpose of providing a bearing or support at the outer end of the piston-rod, and to which the connecting-rod is attached by a pin passing through the cross-head. This pin is sometimes called the *gudgeon*. The cross-head varies considerably in design, depending on the shape of the guides and on the extent to which adjustments are fitted for taking up wear on the brasses and on the guides.

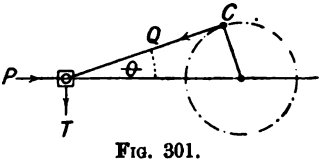


FIG. 301.

The cross-head and guides prevent the oblique thrust or pull of

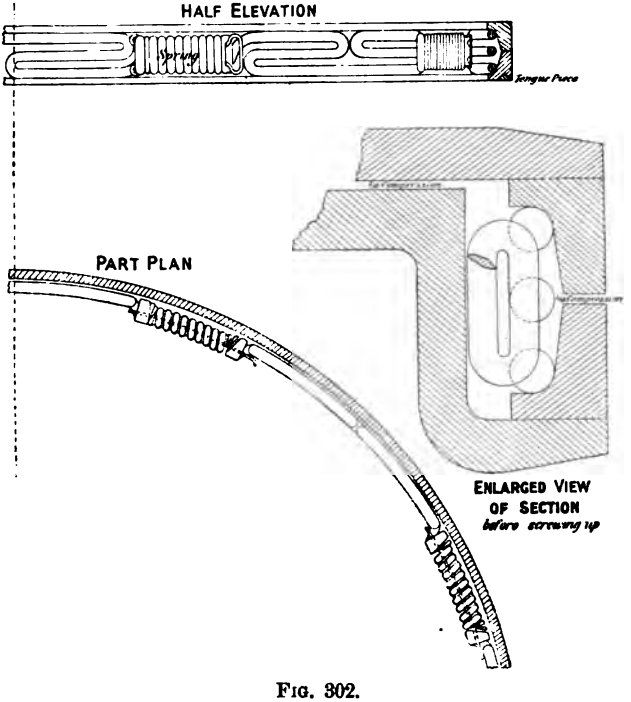


FIG. 302.

the connecting-rod from bending the piston-rod. This can be seen

by reference to Fig. 301. When the piston is being impelled forward so that the rotation of the crank-pin is clockwise, then, if the connecting-rod makes an angle θ with the centre line as shown, the resistance at the crank-pin C causes a backward thrust Q through the connecting-rod, which may be resolved into two forces, one, = P, tending to compress the piston-rod, and the other acting normally to the guides, as shown by T.

$$\text{Then } Q = \sqrt{P^2 + T^2}$$
$$\text{also } P = Q \cos \theta$$
$$\text{and } T = Q \sin \theta$$

Again, when the piston is being driven in the opposite direction by the steam, the resistance of the crank-pin causes a downward pull on the cross-head end of the piston-rod, the tendency again being to cause a downward thrust upon the guides.

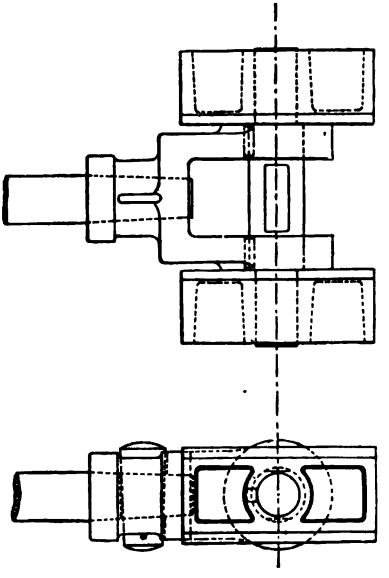


FIG. 303.

If the engines are made to rotate in the opposite direction, the conditions will be reversed, and the thrust T will be always upwards for both strokes of the piston, instead of downwards as before.

It should be noticed, also, that when the crank-pin drags the piston—as it does, for example, when steam is shut off while the engine continues to rotate—the direction of the thrust on the guides is reversed; hence the necessity for a top and bottom guide-bar under all circumstances.

The amount of thrust on the guide-bar, that is, the value of T in Fig. 301, varies according to the angularity θ of the connecting-rod, and to the position of the point of cut-off in the cylinder. The thrust is greatest when the crank is at right angles to the axis of the piston-rod, providing cut-off does not take place before half-stroke, and is reduced to nothing at each end of the stroke; hence the guide-bars wear hollow in the middle, and arrangements should be made for removing the guides and trueing them up.

It is usually important, in horizontal engines, that the engine should rotate in the direction in which the thrusts of the cross-head are taken upon the bottom guide-bar. This is especially so for the sake of efficient lubrication.

When engines are required to rotate in either direction equally,

the surfaces in contact between the block and the guide are made equally large; but when the engine is intended to rotate always in one direction, or nearly so, as in the marine engine, electric light

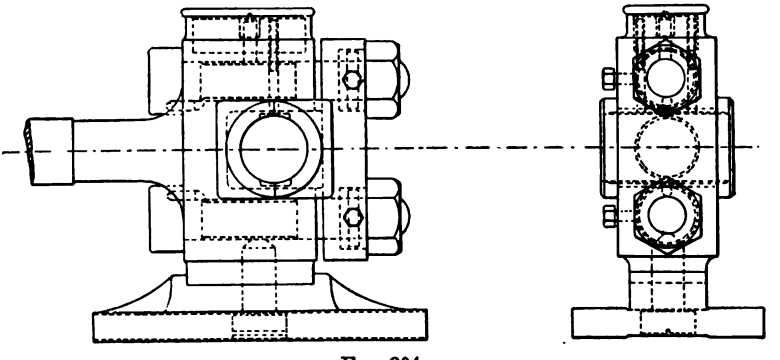


FIG. 304.

engines, and mill engines, the surface on which the thrust comes is made sufficiently large, while the opposite surface may be much reduced, as in the case with the slipper or shoe-guide (Fig. 304), the prevailing direction of the thrust being taken on the largest surface of the block.

It is necessary that the cross-head should overrun the guide a little

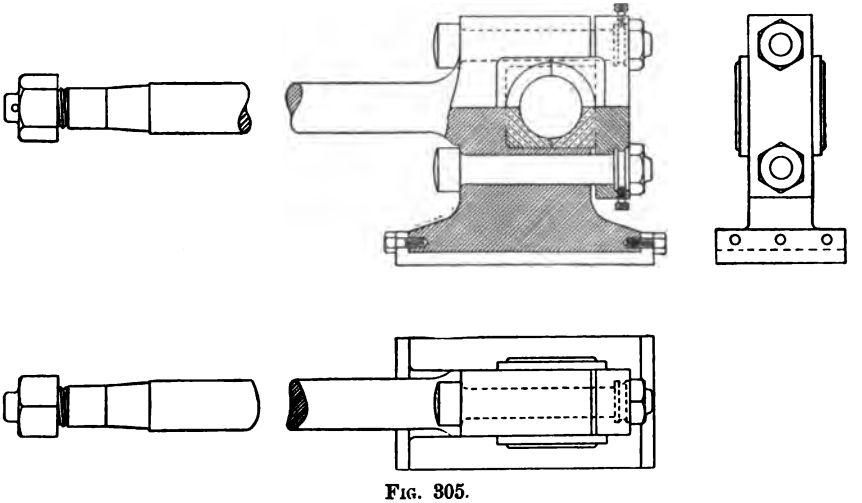


FIG. 305.

at the end of the stroke, so that no ridge may be formed by wear, which would cause trouble if any slight change were made in the length of the connecting-rod due to wear or adjustment of brasses.

Fig. 305 represents one of the most used types of cross-heads and slide-blocks, and one which is only being displaced by the necessity of differently constructed engine frames to meet the greater working stresses due to high steam-pressure and more rapid reciprocation of moving parts, rather than by any inherent defect in construction or performance. It is essentially the locomotive pattern of twenty years ago, and was exclusively used for large fixed engines. The surfaces in contact with the slide-bars can be increased, so as to have very low working pressures without unduly increasing the cross-head and gudgeon.

Figs. 304 and 305 are examples of what might be termed the marine type of cross-head, for it is universally used with the slide-bar attached to the back standard of marine engines. The head is forged solid with the piston-rod. The slipper is made adjustable, and can be packed out from the head; or the slide-bars can be packed up from the standards, and the top strips let down.

Fig. 306. This cross-head is used between channel slide-bars, and also in the Corliss type and with other trunk beds. Adjustment for

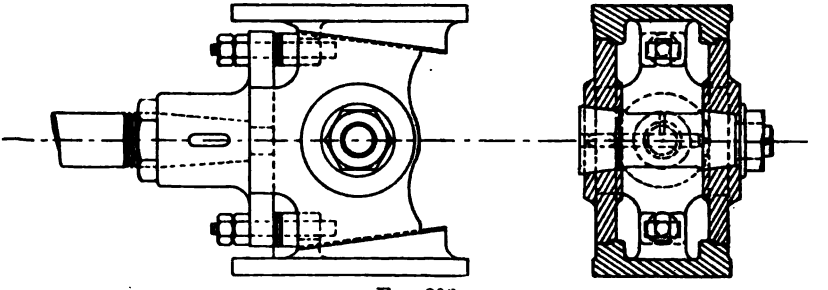


FIG. 306.

wear is obtained by taking out the liners and drawing the slippers up the inclined faces. The cross-head is usually made in cast steel, and the slippers are cast iron.

Fig. 307 is a good example of a light cross-head suitable for high-speed engines. The wearing surfaces of the cross-head are large in proportion to the diameter of the piston-rod. The gudgeon is fitted with an oil-box, which is drop-fed in vertical engines, and wiper-fed for horizontal engines. The gudgeon is cut away at each side so as to form a relief corresponding to the recess in the brasses, and to give the wearing surfaces an over-run, and so prevent the formation of a shoulder when the gudgeon wears.

The slippers are secured by studs, which are riveted on the wearing faces and suitably filed clear so as not to have contact with the slide-bars.

The cone attachment of the gudgeon is a good feature, and makes a very solid arrangement. The split cone allows the gudgeon to be always held true, and any slack to be taken up truly.

The sides of the cross-head are prevented from closing under the

nip of the gudgeon nuts by projecting nipples on the slippers. The slippers can be adjusted by inserting sheet-brass when necessary.

The best designs of cross-heads have low pressures on the slipper face, and if kept below 40 lbs. per square inch, adjustments are almost an unnecessary complication.

The pressure on the guide surface should not exceed 100 lbs. per square inch as a maximum. The maximum pressure on the cross-head pin should not exceed 1200 lbs. per square inch of diameter × length.

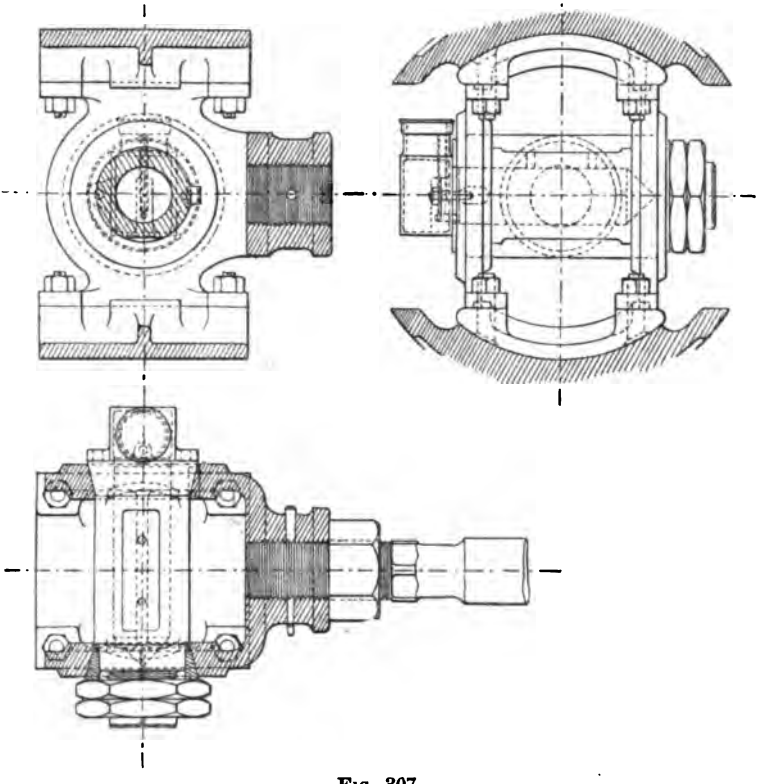


FIG. 307.

The Connecting-rod.—Figs. 308 to 311 show designs for a connecting-rod of the marine type. This design is also largely used for land engines, both horizontal and vertical.

The weight of this type of connecting-rod is less than that of other types suitable for the same size of crank-pin. It is especially suitable for high-speed engines, on account of the smaller amount of crank-balance required.

The interspace between the cap and body of the large end is

usually fitted with brass fillers, as shown at A, Fig. 310; the fillers are retained in place by small studs as shown, and they can be withdrawn when the rod-end requires adjustment by slacking out the main nuts and lifting the fillers off the studs without removing the studs. This saves taking down the whole of the large end, and effects a great saving of the time required to adjust the brasses.

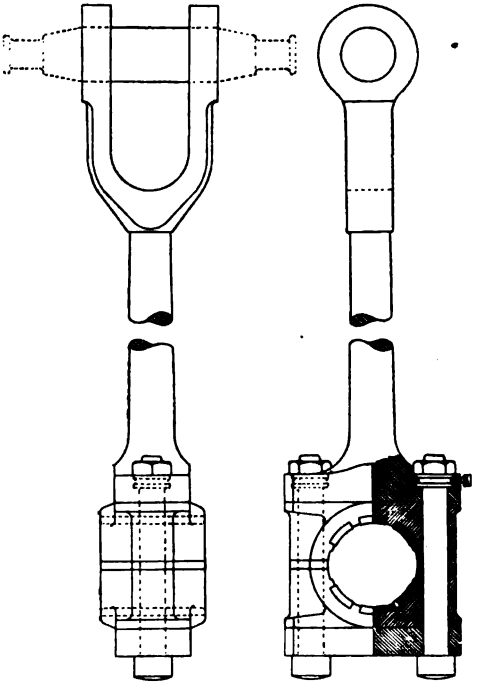


FIG. 308.

All brasses forming a semicircle tend to close upon the pin when heated, unless forcibly prevented. In this design the brasses are held in place by side screws and by the packing between the brasses.

In order to further minimize the risk of closure of brasses upon the pin, it is usual to cast or cut away recesses, as shown at *c*, Fig. 309. The surface need not be cut away through the whole length of the bearing, for the oil is retained better if the recess is stopped at each end about $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ in. from the beginning of the radius of the crank-pin junction with the crank-webs.

In large end connecting-rod brasses for 6-in. crank-pins and upwards, babbit metal strips are fitted in slotted recesses, as shown in Fig. 308. The surface of the babbit strips is usually left projecting $\frac{1}{32}$ in. above the surface of the brass. The bolts bear on each side of the brasses, and are usually relied upon to prevent the brasses from turning when the packing pieces are filed thin.

Fig. 312 shows a fork-ended connecting-rod with outside bearings for attachment to a solid cross-head. It was a type largely used some years ago on Lancashire mill engines, but is now largely displaced by more direct and less expensive forms of connecting-rods. The higher speeds and pressures of to-day necessitate the line of pressure between cylinder and crank-pin being maintained as nearly in a straight line as possible, hence the success of the single-piston rod-brass as against the double set of brasses of the forked connecting-

rod, with the flat beds and wide-spreading gudgeons of some years ago. In the latter type it is almost impossible to maintain the perfect alignment of the connecting-rod, and if the brasses on both sides are not adjusted exactly similarly, the work is liable to be done on one side of the fork only, in which case fracture at the root of the fork may occur.

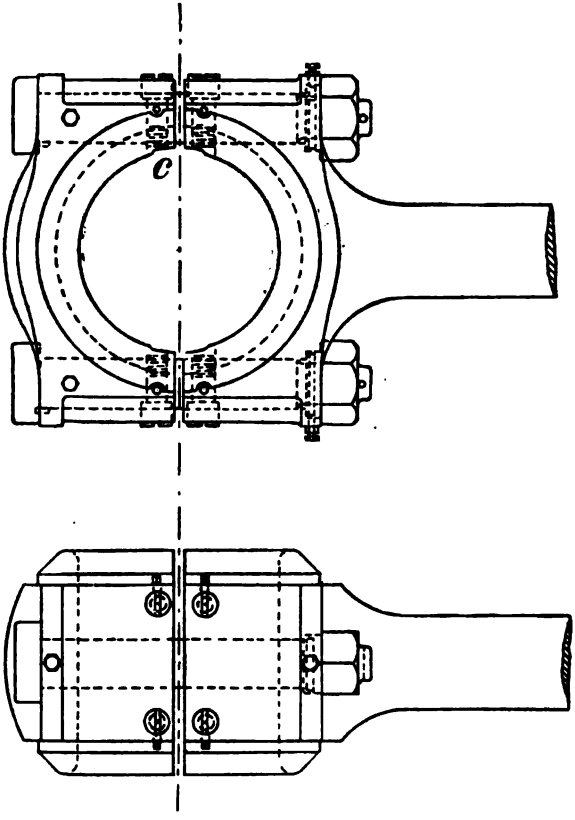


FIG. 309.

Fig. 313 is an example of the best type of forked connecting-rod end, and is used in conjunction with Fig. 311. Great care must be exercised in forging this type of rod end, so that the grain of the iron follows the jaw. If the grain crosses the forked part of the rod end, flaws are often developed, and in view of this it is well to allow a little greater factor of safety at these points.

Fig. 314 shows a connecting-rod suitable for 10″ × 10″ × 16″ double-cylinder portable engine. The large end is a simple form of strap

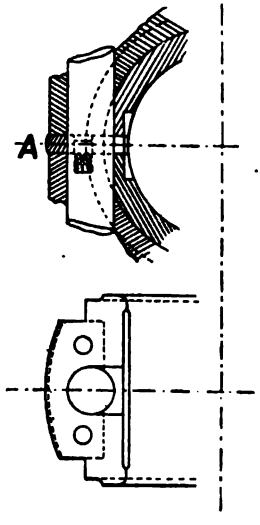


FIG. 310.

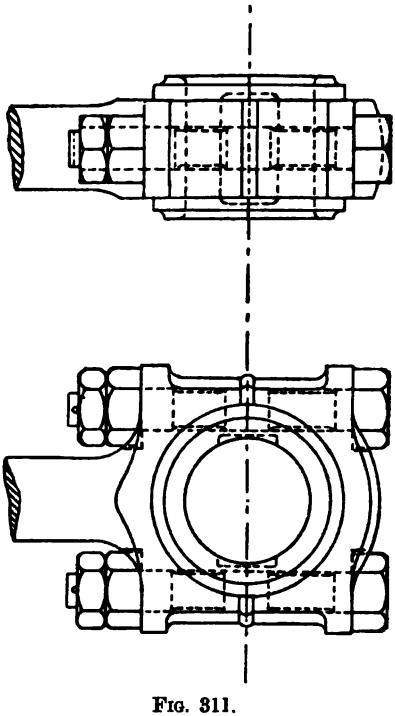


FIG. 311.

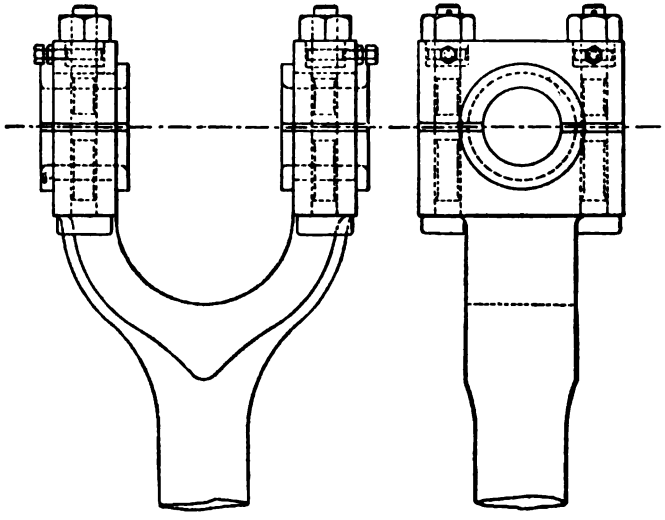


FIG. 312.

type connecting-rod. The taper cotter is used for adjustment in conjunction with an equal-taper gib, which holds the end of the strap and prevents it from opening.

The gib and cotter together form a parallel couple, and in adjustment maintain the alignment of the connecting-rod. Two gibs are sometimes used, one on each side of the cotter, the taper on the cotter in this case being halved, and the gibs being made with the same taper. For very high speeds the strap type is not so good as the marine type, for it has a tendency to bend under the throw of the connecting-rod, and, so opening out, to leave the brasses a slack fit. When the strap type is used the strap must be made extra strong, as in the locomotive connecting-rod, Fig. 315. The small end of the connecting-rod is solid, and suitable for trunk guides.

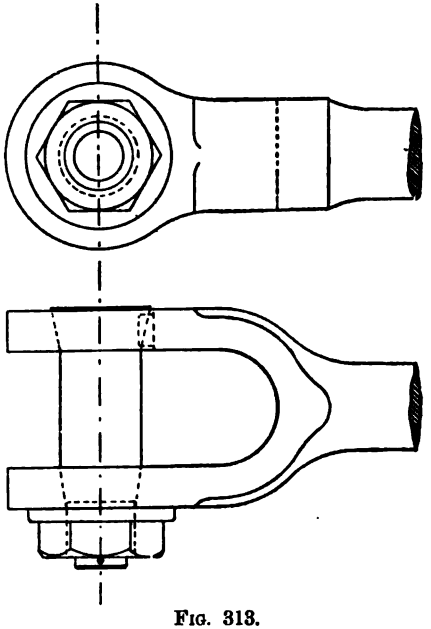


FIG. 313.

The adjustment is by a fine-threaded

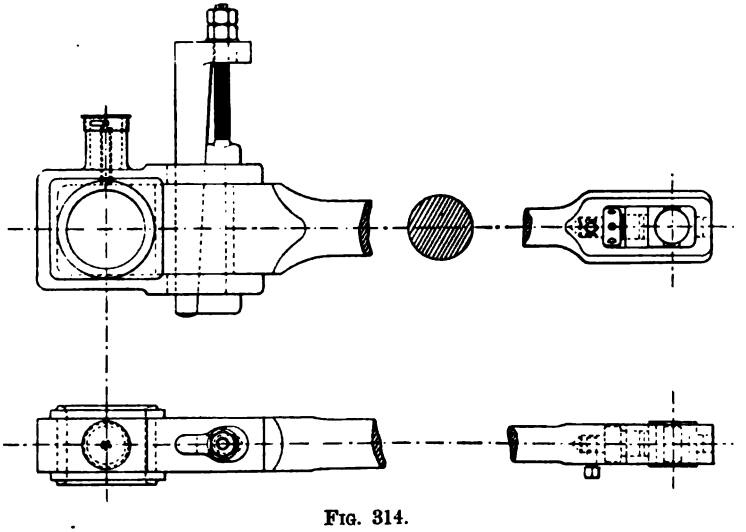


FIG. 314.

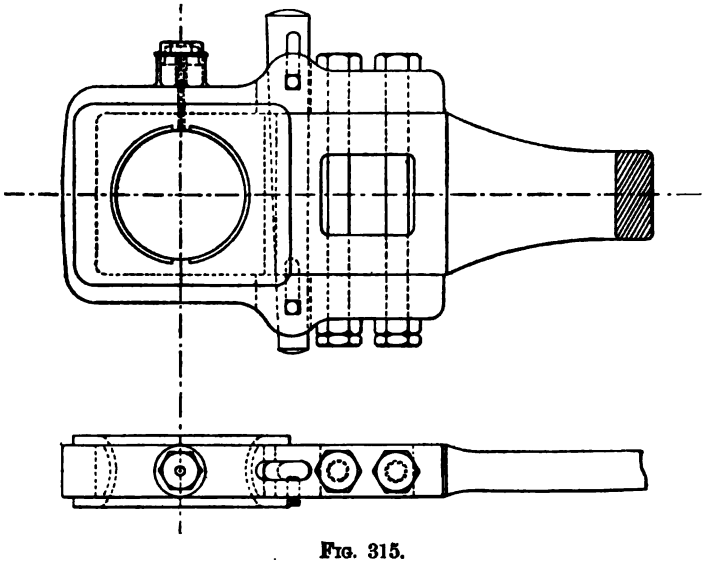


FIG. 315.

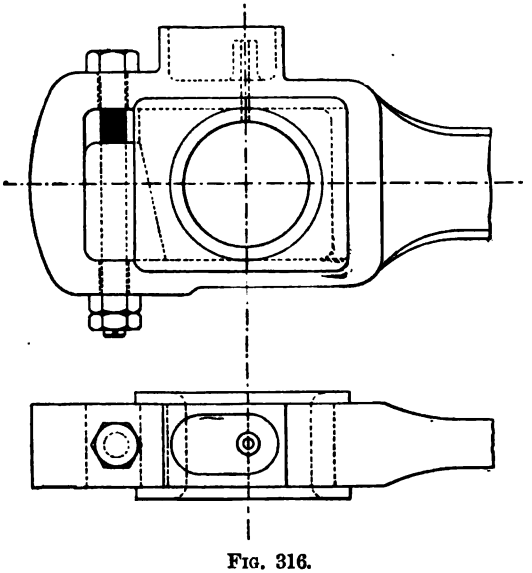


FIG. 316.

screw, and is satisfactory for small engines, but not suitable for very great pressures, owing to the small area of the thread on the screw. The thread must be a fine vee thread, to prevent slacking out under the repeated loadings.

The brasses in all these examples are shown close-fitting at the joint, or, as it is usually termed, metal to metal.

In cheaper classes of machinery it is usual to machine the brasses solid, and when they are fitted, to part them with a narrow tool, and fill the space with wood or leather strips.

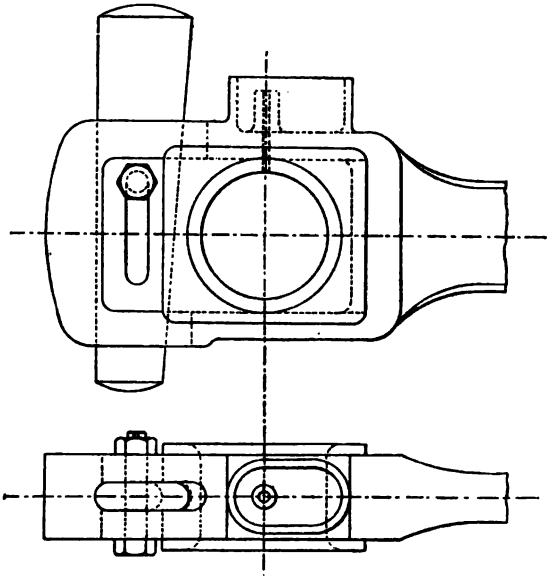


FIG. 317.

Fig. 315 shows a locomotive connecting-rod end of the strap type. It will be noticed that the end is proportionately much stronger than the preceding example, and is the outcome of locomotive experience in actual working. The surfaces of the brass are recessed, and the recesses are filled with babbit metal. The inner surface of the bearing is radiused to suit the crank-pin, which is made of a gradually reducing section to avoid sudden changes of section.

Figs. 316, 317, and 318 show designs for the large end of a connecting-rod suitable for engines having overhung crank-pins, as in the disc type.

The adjustment can be placed at the inner or outer end of the brass, so as to give adjustment in either direction. All connecting-rods should be designed so that the large and small end adjustments act in the same direction, and thus practically maintain the centres of the crank-pin and gudgeon at a constant distance. When the cylinder clearances are cut down to $\frac{1}{8}$ in. or $\frac{3}{16}$ in., the length of connecting-rod must remain approximately constant. When connecting-rods (Figs. 316, 317, and 318) are used, the crank-pin is fitted with a loose cap, having a nipple going into the recess in crank, and held in place by studs and nuts. The connecting-rod end is put together complete and passed sideways into the crank-pin, and the cap then put on the end of the pin.

A great advantage is obtained in having the connecting-rod made

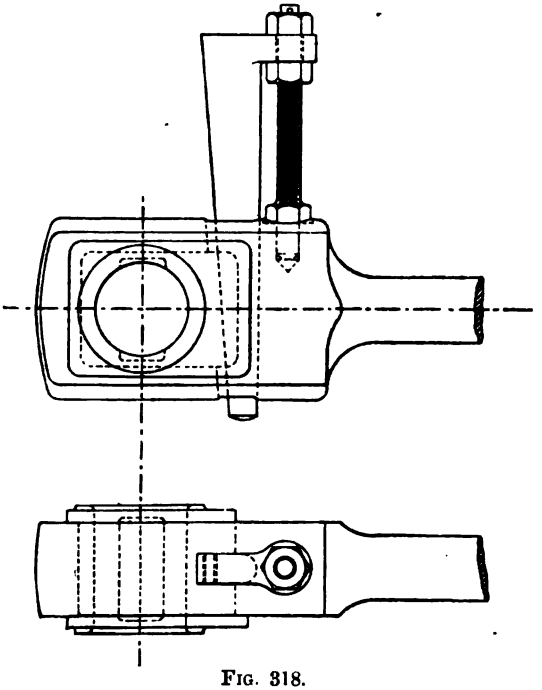


FIG. 318.

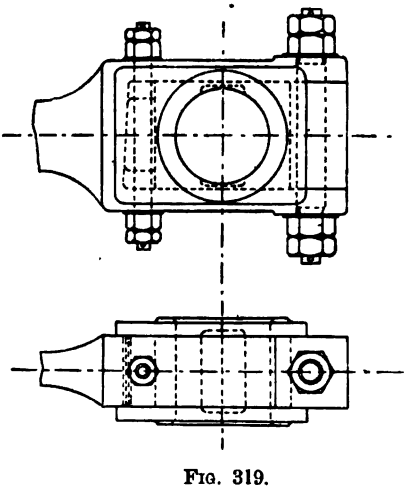


FIG. 319.

all in one piece, without loose attachments, such as caps, straps, etc., for should the adjusting pieces slack back or fly out, the connecting-rod cannot get adrift entirely.

Fig. 319 gives a design of a large end for the connecting-rod used on the inside crank of the Webb Compound locomotive, and competes closely with the marine type connecting-rod end for general adaptability and lightness.

Fig. 320 is the large end of the connecting-rod for Sisson's high-speed double-acting engine, showing a spring self-adjustment, keeping the brasses always up to their work, and enabling the rod to yield in cases of accidental heating.

Main Bearings.—The main bearings carry the crank-shaft, and

through them the stresses due to the steam-pressures on the piston are transmitted to the engine framing.

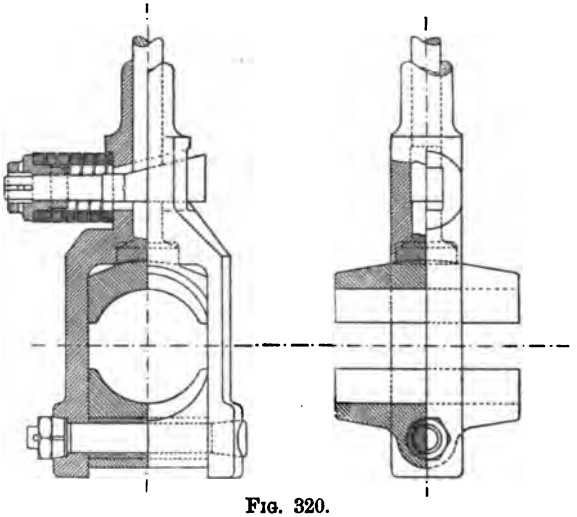


FIG. 320.

It is important that the main bearings should be set so as to maintain the true alignment of the crank-shaft, and they must be so fitted that when wear occurs the brasses may be readily removed and adjusted to prevent distortion of the shaft.

For large main bearings, such as are used in marine work, the bottom brass of the main bearing is preferably made concentric with the shaft, so that it may be revolved round the shaft and removed without taking out the crank-shaft.

To prevent heating of bearings, it is important that the bearing surface should be sufficient to prevent undue load, p, per square inch of bearing surface, reckoned normal to the load, namely, = diameter of journal × length of bearing. The pressure on main bearings varies from 600 lbs. per square inch for slow engines, to 400 lbs. for quick-revolution engines (Unwin).

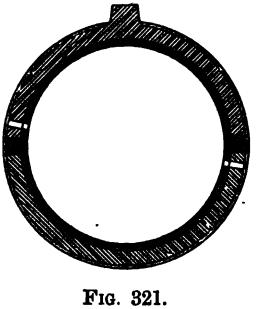


FIG. 321.

The nature of the material of the bearing has much to do with its satisfactory working. The "brasses" should be made of a metal which will easily stand a pressure per square inch greater than that likely to be brought upon the bearing; at the same time it should be a comparatively soft metal, so as to reduce the possibility of injury to the shaft by heating and seizing of the shaft and bearing.

According to experiments made by Mr. J. Dewrance, he concludes

that "the oil should be introduced into a bearing at the point that has to support the least load, and an escape should not be provided for it at the part that has to bear the greatest load."

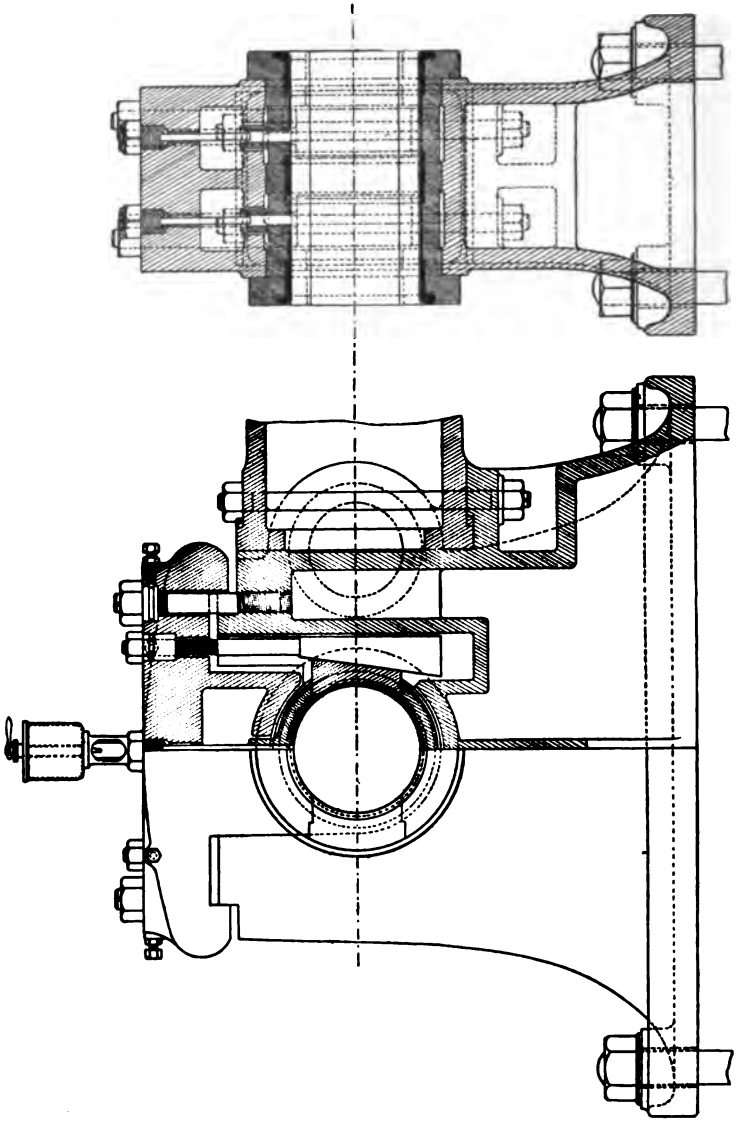


FIG. 322.

"The proper point to introduce the oil is just above the joint of

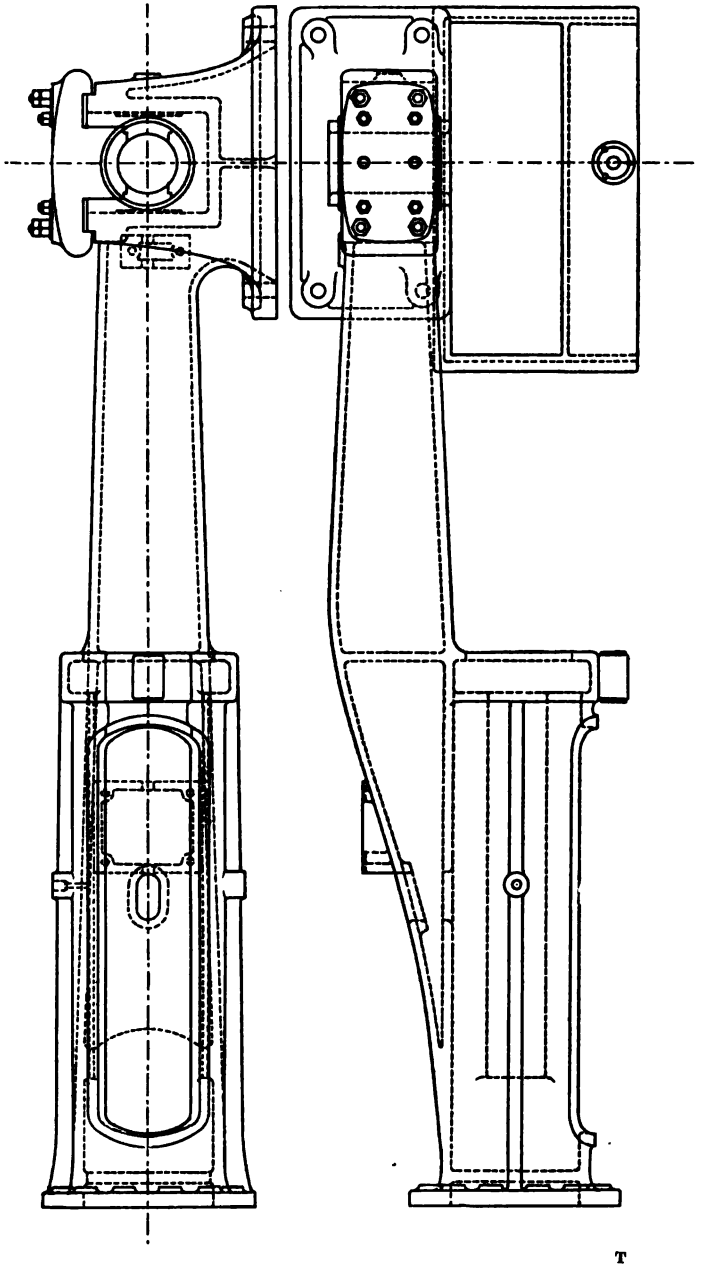


FIG. 328.

the bearing at the side (Fig. 321). There the oil is distributed over the shaft and carried to the point of greatest pressure. . . . It is desirable that each half-bearing should have its own supply of oil." [1]

Fig. 322 is a good example of a main bearing as used on high-class fixed engines.

The main frame of the engine can be cast solid with, or jointed to, the main bearing as shown. The bearing is fitted with Babbit metal in suitable recesses, care being taken that no part of the cast-iron shell is in contact with the shaft.

The bearing is in four parts, and is fitted with two wedges at each side, which permits of a ready adjustment of the bearing after wear.

The cap is clipped over the upstanding jaws of the main pedestal, and when bolted down it makes practically a solid eye, in which the main bearing is gripped.

The bearing is lubricated by visible-drop lubricators. In large bearings the cap is usually cored out so as to form a tallow-box, and the lubricators are attached to a cover, which can be easily removed if desired to inspect the bearing while the engine is in motion.

Engine Frames (Fig. 323).—In designing the frame of an engine, care is taken to distribute the material so as best to deal with the stresses transmitted from the piston to the crank-pin.

Formerly in horizontal engines the cylinder-guides and main bearings were bolted separately on the bed, which was itself out of the line of stress, and was subject to a bending action at each stroke of the engine. The modern engine frame is designed with more regard to the work it has to do, taking the stresses as direct as possible and more nearly in the centre line of the frame. Figs. 323, 324 are details of the engine-bed for a horizontal mill engine.

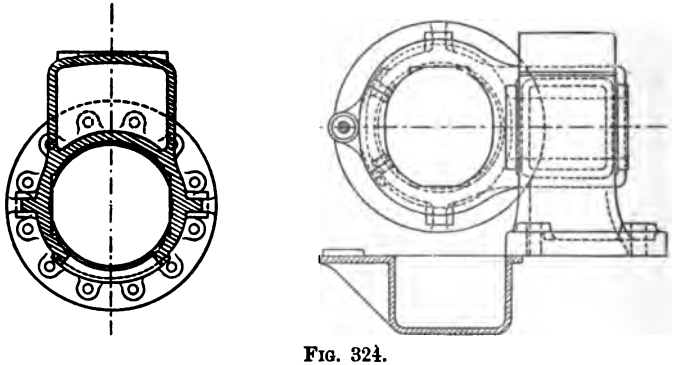


FIG. 324.

In vertical engines, especially for the navy, the dimensions and weight of the engine framing have been greatly reduced compared with the older class of engines (see the chapter on "The Marine Engine"). This has been possible by the introduction of a high quality of steel and steel castings in the place of wrought iron and cast iron.

[1] *Proceedings Inst. C.E.*, vol. cxxv. p. 359.

CHAPTER XVIII.

FRICTION OF ENGINES.

If an indicator diagram be taken when there is no load on the engine, an attenuated diagram will be obtained, enclosing a work-area representing the work required to drive the engine itself against its own friction.

From experiments made by Dr. Thurston, it was shown that, under usual conditions, and at all ordinary speeds and steam-pressures, the friction of the engine remains practically constant, and that the friction-card of the engine when unloaded represents also the friction of the engine when fully loaded.

These conclusions have been frequently confirmed, and the following diagram giving the results of trials of a compound Willans engine illustrates the same fact, namely, that there is practically a constant or a nearly constant difference at all loads between the I.H.P. and the B.H.P. of an engine.

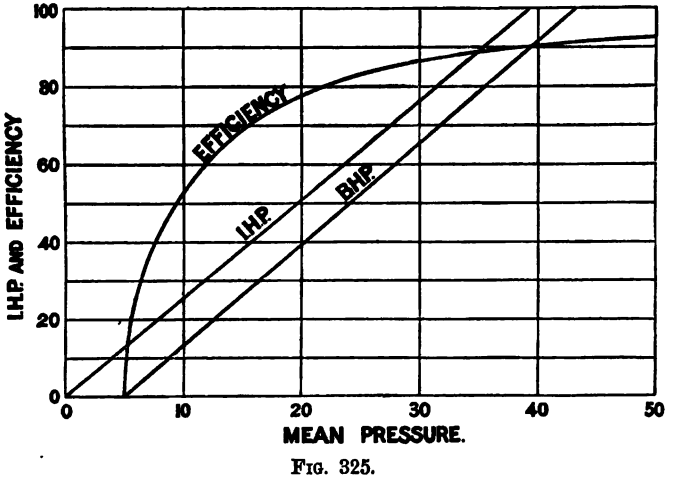


Fig. 325.

The *mechanical-efficiency* curve is drawn for any engine by taking the value of B.H.P. ÷ I.H.P. for various mean pressures, and setting

up the value of the fraction to a vertical scale of percentage. By joining the points thus found the curve is obtained.

From Fig. 325, we see that at a mean pressure of 9 lbs. per square inch (referred to the L.P. piston) the efficiency was only 50 per cent., while at 50 lbs. mean pressure the efficiency was 93 per cent.

It will thus be evident that, so far as the mechanical efficiency is concerned, an engine should be worked up to its full load to obtain the maximum efficiency. The friction of an engine does, no doubt, to some extent increase with the load, but the proportional increase is so small as practically not to affect the result. The above remarks assume perfect efficiency of lubrication.

Dr. Thurston gives the following values for the relative distribution of the friction in an engine with a balanced slide-valve: Main bearings, 47·0 per cent.; piston and rod, 32·9; crank-pin, 6·8; cross-head and wrist-pin, 5·4; valve and rod, 2·5; and eccentric-strap, 5·3 per cent.

The frictional resistance of engines in general varies from about 8 per cent. to 20 per cent. of the full power.

CHAPTER XIX.

BALANCING THE ENGINE.

SINCE the introduction of high rotational speeds, the question of the balancing of engines to prevent vibration has been much considered.

If the moving parts of an engine could be perfectly balanced, then the engine, if suspended, could be made to rotate in mid-air without any motion due to inertia of the moving parts. But ordinary engines are far from being perfectly balanced, and the inertia of the moving parts of high-speed engines causes large and rapidly varying stresses in the frame and foundation of the engine.

By the application, however, of properly placed and properly proportioned balance-weights, combined with care in the general design, much can be done to reduce vibration to a minimum.

Effect of Inertia of Reciprocating Parts.—Considering first the effects on vibration of the inertia of the reciprocating parts.

In Fig. 326, suppose the piston to be at the end A of the stroke, and the crank to be on the dead centre; then if steam be admitted,

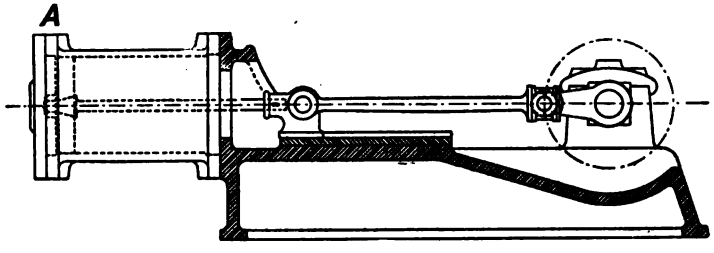


FIG. 326.

and the total force on the piston is equal to 4000 lbs., this force acts pressing on the cylinder-cover and piston equally. There is then a stress of 4000 lbs. acting in the bed-plate, the pressure on the cover pressing the engine to the left, and the pressure on the piston pressing the engine to the right, acting through the crank on the main bearing. The forces are equal and opposite, and cause a stress in the engine, but do not tend to move it upon its foundation.

But when the piston moves, part of the steam-pressure acting on the piston will be absorbed (as we have previously seen) in accelerating the piston and the other reciprocating parts, and will not be felt on the crank-pin. Suppose that the amount of such pressure absorbed is 500 lbs.; then we have 4000 lbs. acting on the cylinder-cover, pressing the engine in one direction, and 4000 − 500 = 3500 lbs. pressing against the crank-pin in the opposite direction, making a net stress in the bed-plate of 3500 lbs., and a further pressure of 500 lbs. tending to press the engine to the left.

The difference between the pressure on the cylinder-cover in one direction, and the pressure on the crank-pin in the opposite direction, gradually diminishes up to about half-stroke—depending on the length of the connecting-rod—where it becomes zero, and beyond this point the force is in the opposite sense, owing to retardation of the reciprocating parts; and the tendency now is to push the engine to the right, owing to excess of pressure on the crank, the difference gradually increasing to the end of the stroke.

On the return stroke the excess of pressure on the bed owing to the acceleration of the piston is still towards the right, and remains so, though to a gradually decreasing extent, to mid-stroke, when the force again changes in sense, gradually increasing to a maximum to end of stroke. These effects are clearly shown by the diagrams which follow.

The effect of *compression* or cushioning of the steam in the cylinder during the retardation of the reciprocating parts is to remove the retarding force (acting as driving force) from the crank-pin and transfer it to the cylinder, where we now have, however, the same net result on the engine frame, only the stress is applied to the cylinder-cover instead of to the crank-pin. In this way the stress due to retardation is removed from the crank-pin at a time when the force so acting is not acting as turning effect, and the work of retardation is stored up instead in the compressed steam ready to act on the piston during the return stroke.

Effect of Unbalanced Rotating Parts.—A further cause of tendency to rocking of the engine and vibration of the foundations is the centrifugal force of the rotating parts acting at the main bearings, consisting of the unbalanced portions of the crank-shaft itself, and including a portion of the weight of the connecting-rod.

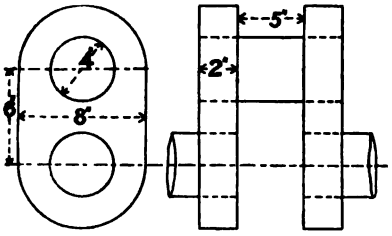


FIG. 327.

Dealing first with the crank-shaft itself, the extent of the centrifugal force $= \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r$, where r = radius in feet of centre of gravity of unbalanced parts about axis of rotation, ω = velocity in radians per second.

To take an actual example, Fig. 327 is a sketch of a small crank.

$$\left.\begin{array}{r}\text{Weight of one arm, including holes as solid}\end{array}\right\} = \{(8^2 \times 0{\cdot}78) + (6 \times 8)\} 2 \times 0{\cdot}28 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$= 55 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$\text{Weight of two arms} = 110 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$\left.\begin{array}{r}\text{Weight of pin enclosed by end of connecting-rod}\end{array}\right\} = (4^2 \times 0{\cdot}78 \times 5) \times 0{\cdot}28 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$= 17{\cdot}6 \text{ lbs.}$$

To find centre of gravity x of unbalanced portion of crank (Fig. 328)—

$$(110 \times 3) + (17{\cdot}6 \times 6) = 127{\cdot}6 \times x$$
$$x = 3{\cdot}4 \text{ inches}$$

Referring this to the crank-pin, that is, finding the equivalent weight (x) acting at a radius of rotation equal to that of the crank-pin—

$$127{\cdot}6 \times 3{\cdot}4 = x \times 6$$
$$x = 72{\cdot}3 \text{ lbs.}$$

The centrifugal force F acting on engine bed at three hundred revolutions

$$= \frac{72{\cdot}3}{32} \omega^2 r$$
$$= \frac{72{\cdot}3}{32} \times \left(2\pi \frac{n}{60}\right)^2 \times \tfrac{1}{2}$$
$$= 1114 \text{ lbs.}$$

Secondly, if a portion of the mass of the connecting-rod be considered as concentrated at the centre of the crank-pin, then the total centrifugal force is increased in direct proportion to the increase of mass.

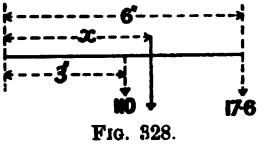


FIG. 328.

The forces producing the effects above referred to may be approximately balanced, so far as concerns the stresses parallel to the line of stroke, by addition of rotating counterbalancing masses, so arranged that the forces set up by them during rotation are together equal and opposite in their effects to the forces they are intended to balance.

The balance cannot be obtained by means of a single mass, because it could not be placed directly opposite the centre of the crank-pin, and if the balancing mass is not in the plane of the force to be balanced, an unbalanced couple is produced which itself sets up vibration on a plane at right angles to that of the original force.

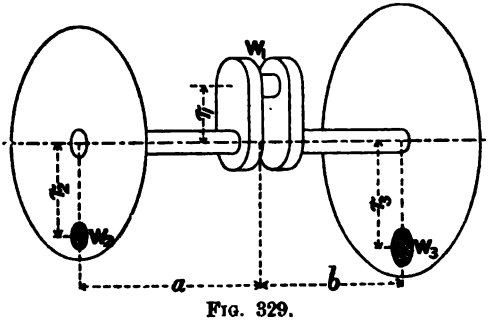


FIG. 329.

This difficulty is overcome by dividing the balancing mass and distributing it on each side of the crank in accordance with the following principles:—

The extent to which balancing masses should be added depends upon circumstances, to be more fully considered presently; but suppose it is decided to balance the mass W_1, which is equivalent to the following masses, all supposed to be concentrated at the crank-pin and to rotate at the crank radius, namely, unbalanced part of crank-webs + crank-pin + a proportion (say 80 per cent.) of the mass of the connecting-rod + half mass of reciprocating parts.

Let balancing masses W_2 and W_3 be placed on the wheel rims, opposite the crank, so that—

$$W_1 r_1 = W_2 r_2 + W_3 r_3$$

This secures a balance of the centrifugal forces; also—

$$W_2 r_2 \times a = W_3 r_3 \times b$$

This prevents the formation of a couple tending to turn the engine about an axis in a plane at right angles to the engine-shaft.

For the case of a two crank-engine, as a locomotive (Fig. 330), the same principles are applied. Thus, let W′ and W″ (Fig. 331) represent the mass at the respective crank-pins requiring to be balanced. Then, taking each crank separately, the two balancing masses w_2 and w_3 are placed in the wheels so that $W'r' = w_2 r_2 + w_3 r_3$, also so that $w_2 r_2 a = w_3 r_3 b$.

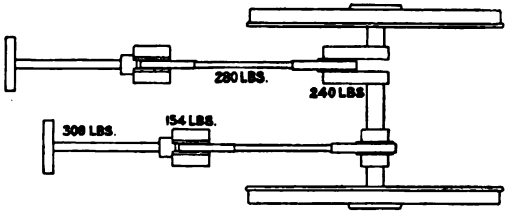


FIG. 330.

It will be seen from the last equation that the heaviest balancing mass is placed in the wheel nearest to the crank to be balanced.

Similarly, balancing masses w_4 and w_5 will be placed one in each wheel respectively, and opposite to the mass W″, and these weights are proportioned as already explained. Thus in each wheel there are two balancing masses, the heavier belonging to the near crank, and the lighter to the far crank.

Instead of having two separate masses in one wheel, a single resultant mass may be substituted. Thus, suppose that in an actual example the large mass required is 252 lbs., and the small mass 92 lbs., then the resultant mass is found graphically as shown in Fig. 332, both in magnitude and direction, and—

$$R^2 = (252)^2 + (92)^2$$
$$R = 268 \text{ lbs.}$$

As a design which reduces the necessity for counterbalancing masses in the wheels of the locomotive, may be mentioned that for

the Glasgow and South-Eastern Railway by Mr. Manson, which

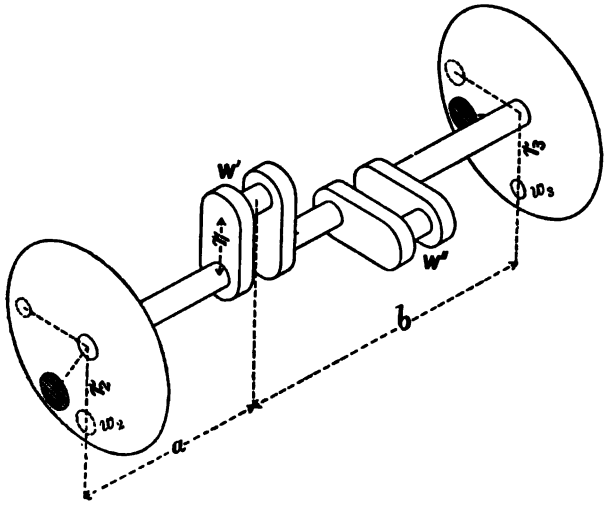


FIG. 331.

consists of four high-pressure cylinders all working on one axle. Two placed inside under the smoke-box, driving on the cranked axle, and two outside, driving on crank-pins on the driving-wheels. On each side the outside crank is opposite the inside crank, so that the reciprocating masses balance each other (except for the effect of the shortness of the connecting-rod).

FIG. 332.

Diagrams of Unbalanced Forces for a Single-crank Engine.[1]—The following diagrams illustrate the means of representing by a curve the direction and magnitude of the forces acting on the engine-bed of a single-crank engine.

1. The centrifugal force due to the rotation of the unbalanced portion of the crank-shaft :—

Draw a circle from centre A with radius AB (Fig. 333), the length of AB representing to scale the centrifugal force due to the unbalanced portion of the crank-shaft itself $= \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r$, where W = weight of unbalanced portion of crank-shaft referred to crank-pin, and r = radius of crank-pin path in feet.

Taking the same values for W and r as are given for Fig. 327, then—

$$\text{Length of AB} = \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r$$
$$= \frac{72{\cdot}3}{32} \times \frac{(2\pi \times 300)^2}{(60)^2} \times \tfrac{1}{2}$$
$$= 1114$$

[1] See also "Graphic Methods of Engine Design," by A. H. Barker.

This length is then measured from the scale shown by the side of the figure, and the circle through B is drawn. The numbers marked on this circle represent the several positions of the crank-pin during its rotation about centre A. It is important that these figures should be marked on the drawing, in order to follow the operation clearly.

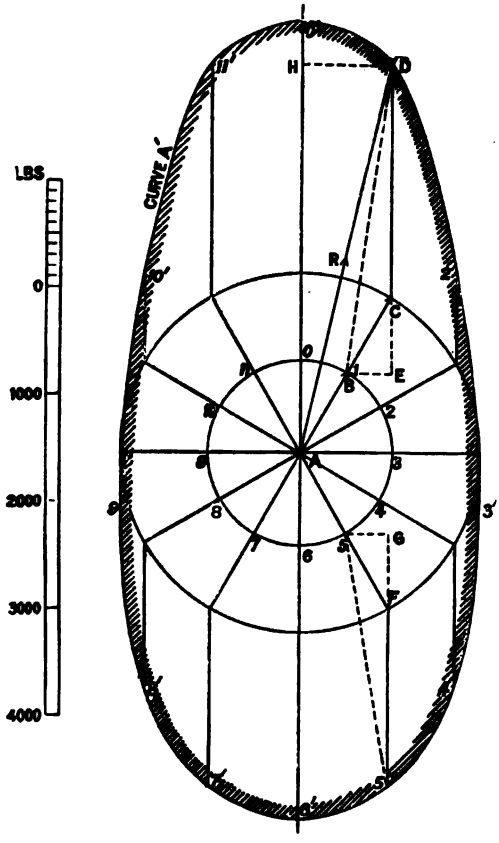


FIG. 333.

2. The force required to accelerate the connecting-rod may be estimated by a separate construction; but it is convenient in practice to consider part of the connecting-rod as concentrated at the crank-pin, causing a proportional increase of centrifugal force in the crank, and part at the cross-head, as addition to the mass of the reciprocating parts. The proportional distribution of the weight of the connecting-rod is determined by finding the centre of gravity, G, of the rod, as at Fig. 334, and dividing the mass so that $M\frac{GP}{BP}$ is centred at the crank-pin, and $M\frac{BG}{BP}$ at the cross-head.

In accordance with this method, a distance BC, Fig. 333, is set off from B equal to the centrifugal force of the added weight $= \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r$, where $W = \frac{GP}{BP}$ of the mass of the connecting-rod, and r = the crank-pin radius in feet.

Thus, for the engine under consideration the mass of the connecting-rod = 80 lbs., and (Fig. 334) if $\frac{GP}{BP} = 0{\cdot}8$, then $80 \times 0{\cdot}8 =$ 64 lbs.; also, since $n = 300$ revolutions per minute—

$$\frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r = \frac{64}{32} \times \left(2\pi\frac{n}{60}\right)^2 \times \tfrac{1}{2} = 986$$
$$= \text{length of BC to scale}$$

and the circle of radius AC (Fig. 333) is drawn representing the total constant centrifugal force acting through the crank and in the direction of the crank on the main bearing.

3. The force required to accelerate the reciprocating parts of the engine is represented for crank position AB (Fig. 333) by the vertical line CD, and the vertical lines throughout the figure beyond the circle through C represent this force for the various crank-pin positions during a complete revolution, being a maximum at crank positions 0 and 6, and zero at or near crank positions 3 and 9 depending on the length of the connecting-rod.

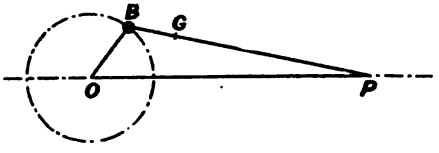


FIG. 334.

To obtain the value of this force CD for any position AB of the crank, the construction due to Klein, and published in the *Journal of the Franklin Institute*, vol. 132, September, 1891, is very convenient. Thus, if OC (Fig. 335) = the position of the crank, and CP = that of the connecting-rod, then, if OC represents to scale the radial acceleration of the crank-pin $C = \omega^2 r$, the acceleration of the reciprocating mass at P is obtained by the following construction: Produce PC to meet the perpendicular through O in N; draw a circle on PC as diameter; with centre C and CN as radius, draw a circle to cut the circle on PC in BB, and produce if necessary the line BB to cut OP in E. Then OE represents the acceleration of P to the same scale as OC represents the radial acceleration of C. To find the length of CD, Fig. 333, by the scale of force for position AB of the crank—

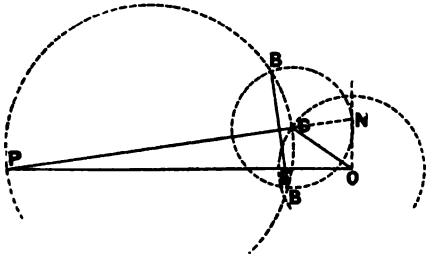


FIG. 335.

Let mass of reciprocating parts, including 20 per cent. of connecting-rod } = 136 lbs.

$$\text{Force to accelerate reciprocating parts} = \frac{W}{g}\left(2\pi\frac{n}{60}\right)^2 r \times \frac{OE}{OC}$$
$$= 2218 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$= \text{CD (Fig. 333)}$$

In the same way this force may be calculated for all points of the crank-pin path, taking in each case the respective values for

OE ÷ OC obtained by Klein's method. In Fig. 336 the diagram is drawn for another position of the crank. The reference letters

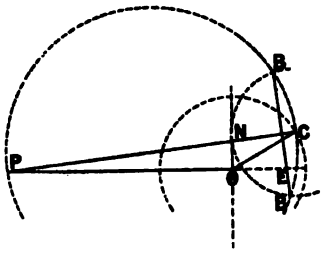


FIG. 336.

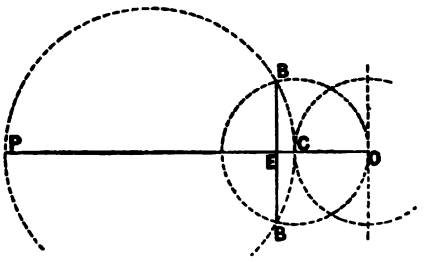


FIG. 337.

are common to both figures. When the crank is on the dead centre, the construction becomes as shown in Fig. 337.

If the respective values of OE at various positions of the piston stroke are set off above and below a horizontal base, as at OE' (Fig. 338), then a curve AB of acceleration of reciprocating parts is obtained, which is the same as that already described on p. 242.

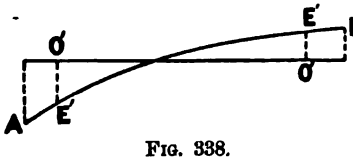


FIG. 338.

An algebraic expression which is very nearly exact for the force accelerating the piston is—

$$\frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r\left(\cos\theta + \frac{1}{n}\cos 2\theta\right)$$

in which n is the ratio of the length of the connecting-rod to the crank radius, and θ is the angle turned through by the crank-shaft measured from the inner dead centre.

Applying this formula to find the length CD (Fig. 333) when the crank is at 30°—

$$\text{Acceleration at } 30° = \left(\cos 30° + \frac{1}{n}\cos 60°\right)\omega^2 r$$

$$= \left\{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + (\tfrac{2}{3} \times \tfrac{1}{2})\right\}\omega^2 r$$

$$= 0{\cdot}977\omega^2 r$$

$$\text{Then CD} = \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r \times 0{\cdot}977$$

Prof. Dunkerley gives[1] the following useful geometrical construction exemplifying this formula :—

Let the outer circle (Fig. 339 be drawn to scale, with radius AB $= r$, and let this represent to a force scale $\frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r$, where W = weight

[1] *Engineering*, June 2, 1899.

of the reciprocating parts. Draw two small circles touching at the centre A, having their diameters along the line of stroke, and so that their radius $AE = \frac{1}{n}$ times the crank radius.

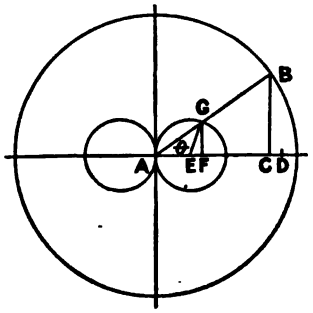


FIG. 339.

Then angle GEF = 2(angle GAE)
$= 2\theta$
and CD is made = EF

$$r\left(\cos\theta + \frac{1}{n}\cos 2\theta\right) = AC + EF = AD$$

that is, the force of acceleration of the reciprocating parts for any crank position $B = \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r \times \frac{AD}{AB} = AD$ to the force scale.

Mr. J. W. Kershaw gives the following convenient geometrical construction for obtaining six points in the curve (Fig. 340):—

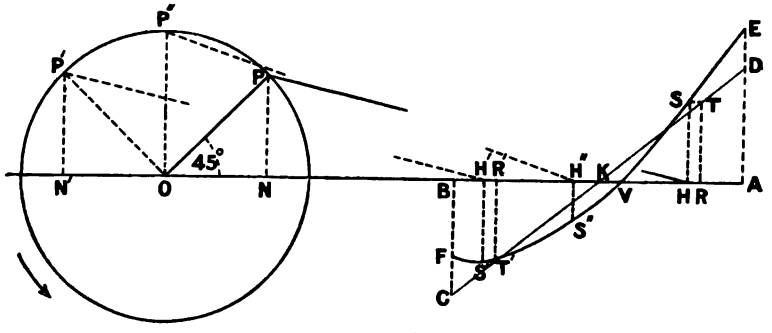


FIG. 340.

The inertia line CD is first drawn in the usual way for the infinitely long connecting-rod, making $AD = BC = \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r$.

Points E and F in the curve are obtained by making DE = CF $= \frac{1}{n}$AD, where n = ratio of connecting-rod to crank radius = 3 : 1 in this case.

To find two more points, namely, for positions 45° and 135° of the crank: first find the piston position R for crank at 45° with an infinite connecting-rod—that is, make KR = ON; then find true position H of piston with short connecting-rod—that is, make PH = OK. But force due to inertia at R for infinite connecting-rod is known, and is equal to RT. Draw a perpendicular from H, and make HS = RT; then S is a point in the curve. The same construction is followed to find S′.

Point S″ is obtained by drawing crank position OP′ at 90°, and

finding corresponding piston position H″ for short connecting-rod; then draw H″S″ perpendicular to AB, making H″S″ = ED.

The point V is obtained as in Fig. 283.

Then the six points E, S, V, S″, S′, F are found, and a free curve is drawn through them.

Then for any crank position P′, P″, P, etc., the force due to inertia is obtained by measuring the height HS for the corresponding piston position H, and finding the value of $\frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r \times \frac{HS}{AD}$.

The proof of this construction for the positions of points S, S″, S′ respectively is as follows: Using for the force F due to inertia for any angle θ of the crank the formula $F = \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r\left(\cos\theta + \frac{1}{n}\cos 2\theta\right)$, then for 45°, since $\cos 2\theta = \cos 90° = 0$, the last term disappears, and F is now $= \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r \cos\theta$, which is the same as for the infinitely long connecting-rod; therefore HS = RT. Similarly, H′S′ = R′T′ at 135°.

When $\theta = 90°$, as for crank position OP″, then—

$$F = \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r\left(\cos 90° + \frac{1}{n}\cos 180°\right)$$
$$= \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r\left(0 - \frac{1}{n}\right)$$

because $\cos 90° = 0$; and $\cos 180° = -1$. Therefore for crank position 90°—

$$F = \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r\left(-\frac{1}{n}\right) = FC = DE = H''S''$$

Having obtained, by any of the above methods, the value of the forces for the several points in the crank-pin path, and the direction and magnitude of the resultant at each point, then by joining the extremities of the resultants, as at 1′, 2′, 3′, etc., Fig. 333, we obtain the full curve A′.

This curve shows very clearly what are the magnitude and direction of the resultant forces acting throughout the revolution; thus, supposing the engine to be vertical, and the crank to be turning clockwise about centre A, then the vertical components acting upwards upon the engine-bed are seen to be a maximum when the piston is at the top of the stroke, gradually decreasing to zero at about mid-stroke, and again gradually increasing in a downward direction towards the bottom of the stroke. On the return of the piston from bottom to top of the stroke, the vertical forces still continue in the same downward direction, gradually decreasing to zero at about mid-stroke, after which they change direction and again become a maximum in the upward direction at the top of the stroke.

The gradual way in which these changes take place is shown by the smoothness of the contour of the curve.

Effect of Addition of Balancing Masses.—Suppose masses added to the crank, as shown in Fig. 341, which will produce forces equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the unbalanced portion of the

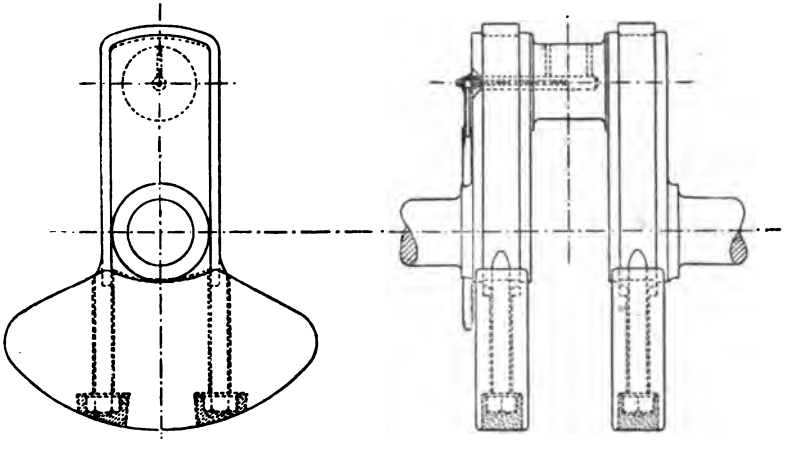


FIG. 341.

crank-shaft. The effect of this will be that the force represented by AB, Fig. 333, will be neutralized, and this circle will therefore disappear from the figure.

The remaining forces BC, CD (Fig. 333) are set off in magnitude and direction as before (Fig. 342), commencing with BC = the centrifugal force due to the portion of the connecting-rod supposed concentrated at the crank-pin, and which is measured from the centre, and drawing CD as before, for the acceleration due to the reciprocating parts.

The original curve A′ will thus be reduced to curve B′ by finding the new resultants for magnitude and direction, and setting them off from the centre B of Fig. 342 for the successive crank positions. By joining the extremities of the new resultants, the reduced curve of forces, curve B′, is obtained.

To carry the balancing still further, suppose balancing masses added sufficient to balance not only the unbalanced portion of the crank, but also the whole mass of the connecting-rod.

Referring to Fig. 343, the balancing force now required will be = AB, which represents the amount required to balance the crank-shaft itself, plus BC, the portion of the connecting-rod supposed to be concentrated at the crank-pin, plus CE, the further force required to balance the remainder of the connecting-rod.

The conditions are now as follows: AD (Fig. 343) is the resultant, as before, of the original forces for position AB of the crank; and we have now to find the resultant effect of two forces, namely AD

and that due to the balancing mass, whose centrifugal force = AE acting in a direction opposite to the crank.

This resultant is obtained by joining E to D. Then ED is the resultant required for crank position AB. In the same way the resultant may be found for successive positions of the crank.

If now lines be laid off from centre A, equal and parallel to the respective resultants, in the same way that A1 is drawn equal and

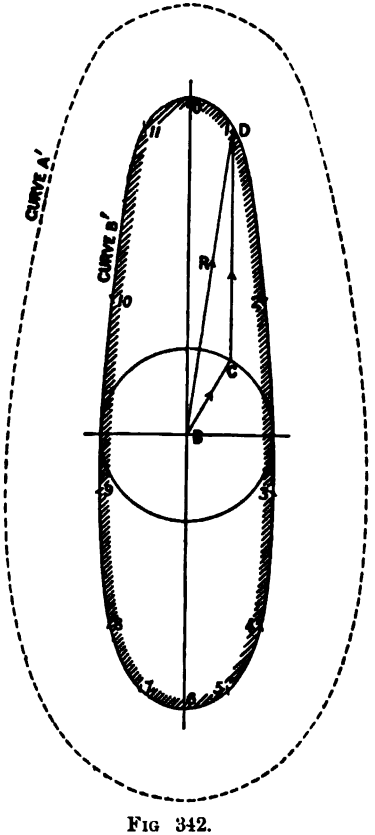


FIG 342.

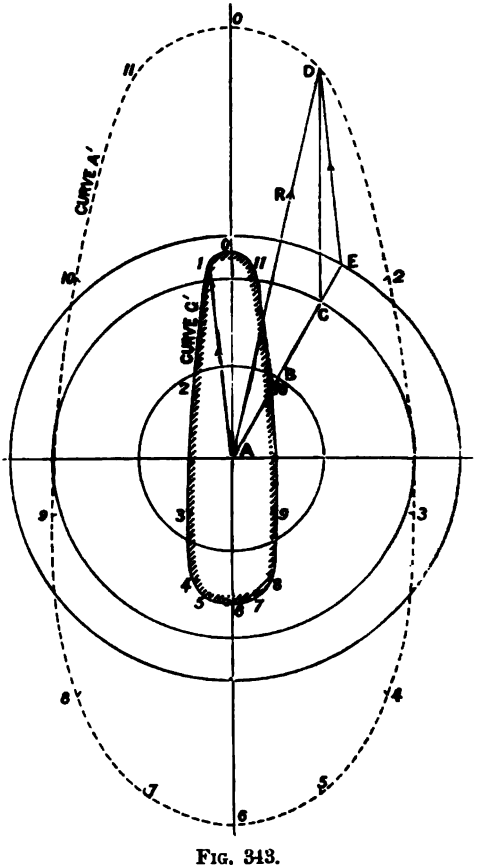


FIG. 343.

parallel to ED, the successive points 1, 2, 3, etc., will be obtained through which to draw the force curve C'. Care must be taken to work round the crank positions in successive order, and to mark the corresponding crank number on the force curve. It will be noticed that the numbers on the force curve C'—when drawn in accordance with the direction of the resultant—have changed sides, and that

they proceed round the figure in the opposite direction to those on curve A′ (Fig. 343). From this it will be evident that if any further balancing mass is added, the result will be that curve C will become flatter vertically and more extended horizontally (see curve D′, Fig. 344). The extent to which such balancing should be carried will depend upon the judgment of the designer.

Curve D′ (Fig. 344) has been drawn for a balance weight whose centrifugal force is represented by the radius of the circle M. These diagrams show how the problem of balancing is affected by the speed of rotation, for since all the forces are proportional to $\omega^2 r$, they increase in magnitude as the square of the angular velocity, and only directly as the radius, and therefore an increase of revolutions per minute rapidly increases the magnitude of the force curve.

The ordinary quick-revolution engine for electric lighting runs at from two hundred to six hundred revolutions per minute according to size, hence the great importance of attention to balancing in such engines.

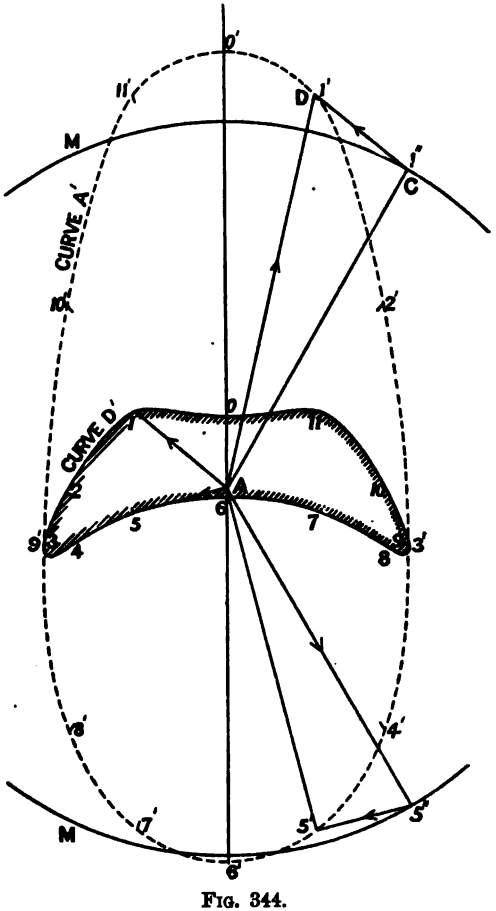


FIG. 344.

Curves showing Vertical Components of Unbalanced Forces on Foundations of Vertical Engines due to Inertia of Moving Parts.—The diagrams constructed in the form of an ellipse in Figs. 333, 342, 343, and 344 may be drawn on an extended base (representing the unfolded crank-pin path), the vertical resultants of the forces for each successive position of the crank being used as ordinates, which when joined form a series of wave-like curves.

By this form of representation, the net upward or downward

pressure on the foundations resulting from combinations of engines on one crank shaft may be well seen.

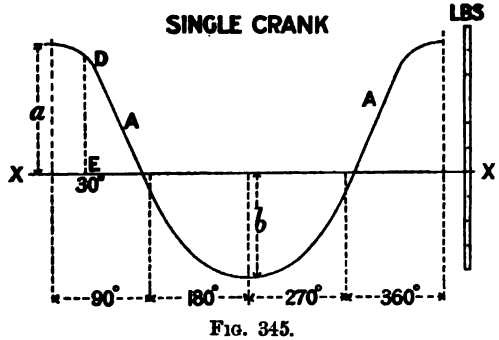


FIG. 345.

Single-crank Vertical Engines. — Fig. 345 shows a curve, AA, which is drawn by first taking a horizontal line, XX, to represent the unfolded crank-pin path, and dividing it in a scale of degrees. Then for any number of positions of the crank, a vertical line is set up representing the vertical component of the unbalanced force whose height a above the base line, or of b below the base line, is equal to the vertical component of the resultant force for the corresponding crank position as found on the elliptical diagrams Fig. 333, etc.

Thus, comparing Figs. 333 and 345, the position AB of the crank (Fig. 333) corresponds to the 30° position (Fig. 345), and, considering the case of a single crank at a time, the vertical height DE (Fig. 345) depends upon the amount of balancing, by the addition of balance weights, which has been employed. Thus, if there are no balancing weights, then the vertical component of the resultant AD (Fig. 333) for the crank position AB = AH, and ED at crank position 30° (Fig. 345) = AH (Fig. 333).[1] If the crank itself is balanced, then ED (Fig. 345) = the vertical component of the resultant BD = ED (Fig. 333).[1] Or if the balancing by addition of weights has been carried so far as to balance the crank and the portion of the connecting-rod assumed as rotating with the crank-pin, then there is no vertical resultant due to BC, that part being balanced, and the height ED (Fig. 345) = the vertical CD (Fig. 333).[1]

The maximum range of vertical forces for a single-crank engine = the maximum value of $a + b$. It will be noticed that the length a, Fig. 345, is greater than that of b, and these lengths are in the proportion—

$$\frac{Wv^2}{gr}\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right) : \frac{Wv^2}{gr}\left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right)$$

This difference between the maximum upward and downward vertical stresses on the foundation due to inertia of the moving parts is sufficient in itself to cause appreciable and even considerable vibration, and accounts for many of the troubles in engines which were otherwise supposed to be well balanced.

Two Cranks 180° apart.—Fig. 346 shows a pair of curves, A and B, for two engines working on the same crank-shaft with reciprocating

[1] The figures are drawn to different scales.

parts of *equal weight* and with cranks opposite. Curve B is, of course, merely a repetition of curve A, and set 180° ahead of A, but the vertical dimensions are the same for both curves.

So far as vertical forces due to inertia are concerned, the direction of the cranks being always opposite, the forces acting on the foundation due to each set of moving parts are also opposite, and they therefore tend to neutralize each other. If the obliquity of the short connecting-rod were neglected, then the vertical component for the two engines would exactly neutralize one another, and the resultant vertical force would be *nil*. But in high-speed vertical engines the connecting-rod is usually exceptionally short, and the result is that a large difference occurs between the inertia effects in the upper and lower halves of the revolution. The difference may amount to many tons in large high-speed, short-stroke engines.

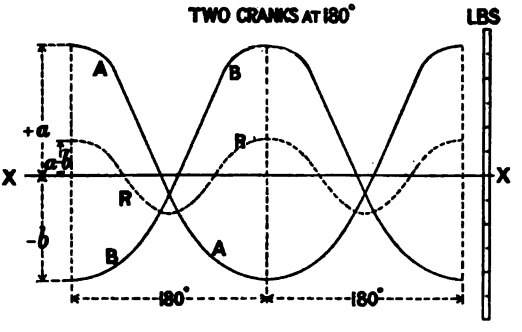


FIG. 346.

When these curves, A and B, Fig. 346, are combined as shown, the net resultant vertical force, shown by the dotted line R, is obtained by taking the algebraic sum of the upward forces a and the downward forces b for successive positions of the crank $= (a - b)$, and setting off the result above or below the line XX, according as the result is positive or negative.

Fig. 346 shows by the dotted line R that the maximum range of vertical force upon the foundation is much reduced when two cranks at 180° are used instead of a single crank, and when the weights of the moving parts are equal in each engine. It is thus clear that a pair of simple engines will work more smoothly on cranks at 180° than a pair of compound engines, unless the weight of the moving parts of each engine of the compound is made equal by increasing, say, the weight of the high-pressure piston.

Two Cranks at 90°.—Fig. 347 shows curves A and B representing the vertical components of the forces for a pair of engines of equal weight of moving parts and with cranks at right angles. The curve B is the same as curve A, and is set 90° ahead of it. The dotted line R gives the resultant vertical forces of the combined cranks on the foundation, and is shown in this case to be considerable. If the weight of the moving parts of engine B were greater than those of engine A, then the maximum vertical forces due to inertia would be still greater than before. Hence, for the purpose of balancing quick-revolution engines, two cranks opposite, with pistons of equal weight,

are much to be preferred to two cranks at 90° and pistons of unequal weight. With the former arrangement, however, it is necessary to increase somewhat the diameter of the crank-shaft to secure sufficient strength (see Fig. 268). With cranks at 90°, it is specially important that the range of vertical forces on the foundation should be reduced by the use of balance weights.

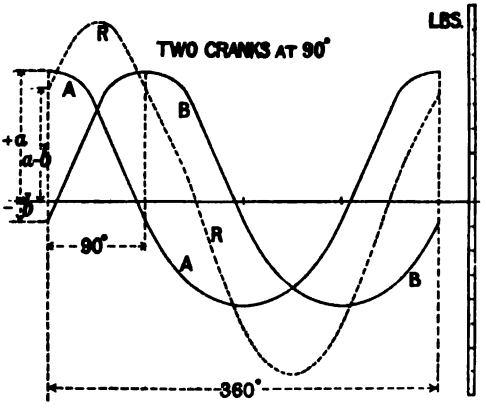


FIG. 347.

Three Cranks at 120°.—Fig. 348 shows three curves of vertical forces, A, B, and C, for a set of triple engines, of equal weights of reciprocating parts, and with cranks 120° apart.

It will be found in this case that the resultant curve obtained by taking the sum of the three forces at any crank position, and shown dotted (R) in Figs. 346, and 347, now disappears, and the tendency to vibration due to the vertical effect of the inertia of moving parts is eliminated, notwithstanding the difference between the acceleration and retardation of the moving parts in the upper and lower halves of the revolution.

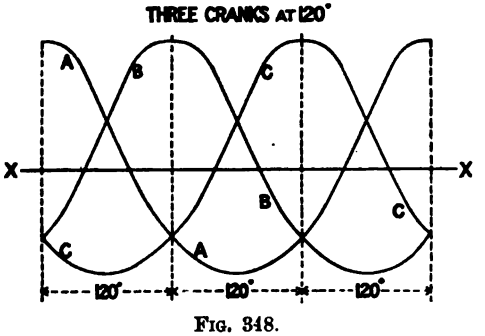


FIG. 348.

The fact that the sum of the inertia effects is zero, whatever the length of the connecting-rod, was first pointed out by M. Normand, of Havre. The proof is as follows:—

Let F_1 = force due to inertia in one cylinder; F_2 for the second cylinder, etc.; W = the weight of the reciprocating parts; and the other terms as before; then—

$$F_1 = \frac{W}{g}\left(\cos\theta + \frac{1}{n}\cos 2\theta\right)\omega^2 r$$

$$F_2 = \frac{W}{g}\left\{\cos(\theta + 120°) + \frac{1}{n}\cos 2(\theta + 120°)\right\}\omega^2 r$$

$$F_3 = \frac{W}{g}\left\{\cos(\theta + 240°) + \frac{1}{n}\cos 2(\theta + 240°)\right\}\omega^2 r$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_1 + F_2 + F_3 &= \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r\{\cos\theta + \cos(\theta + 120°) + \cos(\theta + 240°)\} + \frac{W\omega^2 r}{gn}\{\cos 2\theta \\
&\quad + \cos(2\theta + 240) + \cos(2\theta + 480°)\} \\
&= \frac{W\omega^2 r}{g}(\cos\theta + \cos\theta\cos 120° - \sin\theta\sin 120 + \cos\theta\cos 240° \\
&\quad - \sin\theta\sin 240°) + \frac{W\omega^2 r}{gn}(\cos 2\theta + \cos 2\theta\cos 240° - \sin 2\theta\sin 240° \\
&\quad + \cos 2\theta\cos 480° - \sin 2\theta\sin 480°) \\
&= \frac{W\omega^2 r}{g}\left(\cos\theta - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos\theta - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\sin\theta - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos\theta + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\sin\theta\right) \\
&\quad + \frac{W\omega^2 r}{gn}\left(\cos 2\theta - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\sin\theta - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\sin 2\theta\right) \\
&= \frac{W\omega^2 r}{g}(0) + \frac{W\omega^2 r}{gn}(0) \\
&= 0
\end{aligned}
$$

The removal of the vertical component of the inertia effects by the combination of three cranks at 120°, with equal weights of reciprocating parts, is an important point in favour of such an arrangement of cranks.

Four Cranks in Pairs of Two Cranks opposite.—In this case also, as in that of the triple engine, the resultant vertical force R disappears when the weights of the moving parts of each engine are equal.

Effect of Couples.—So far no account has been taken of the effect of the "couple" tending to rock the engine endwise, or to alternately lift and depress the opposite ends of the engine-bed on the line of the crank, each stroke, but obviously such a couple exists with engines of two or more cranks.

In the case of a two-crank engine with cranks opposite, the moment of the couple tending to turn the engine endwise, first in one direction and then in the other, is equal to the moment $(F \times a) = (F \times c) - (F \times b)$, tending to turn the engine about point d. A similar force on the alternate stroke tends to turn the engine round e.

Where the value of F at the top position of the piston is greater than at the bottom, as when a short connecting-rod is used, then the disturbing force is greater still, as has already been seen.

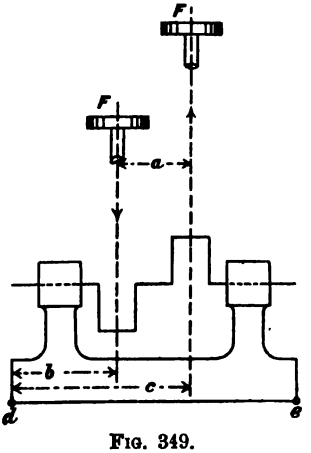


FIG. 349.

This tendency to end vibration may be neutralized by the addition of another pair of similar engines working on a common bed-plate tending to produce an opposite couple, and arranged so that the two inside cranks coincide in one direction, and the two outside cranks coincide in the opposite direction (Fig. 350). Here the opposing tendencies to rocking are borne by the bed-plate, and are therefore self-contained,

and so long as the bed-plate is sufficiently strong no vibration is transmitted to the foundation.

The above four-engine arrangement is equivalent to the following (Fig. 351), which is a triple engine with the middle crank carrying reciprocating parts whose weight is twice that of the moving parts of the outside

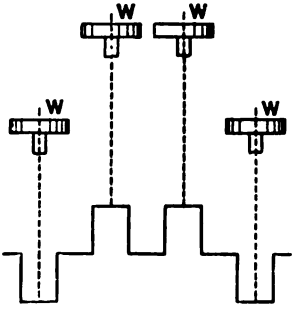


FIG. 350.

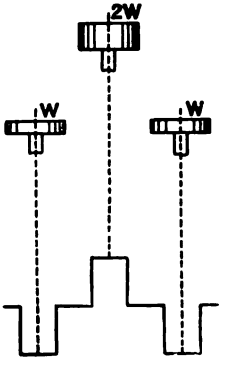


FIG. 351.

engines. Here, as in the previous figure, the couples are balanced, though owing to the short connecting-rod the vertical forces are not balanced.

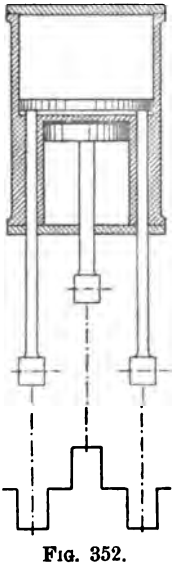


FIG. 352.

Fig. 352 is a design which accomplishes the same result as in Fig. 351, but with two cylinders only. In this design the low-pressure piston works in the opposite direction to the high-pressure piston. The high-pressure piston is connected to the central crank, and the low-pressure piston to the two outside cranks, by means of two piston-rods which work through bushes passing through the metal of the low-pressure cylinder. The weights of the moving parts for both high and low pressure engines are made equal.

In a triple engine with equal weights of reciprocating parts and cranks at 120°, the couple is not balanced, though the engine may be balanced in other respects.

To get over this difficulty, it was first suggested by Mr. Robinson, of Messrs. Willans and Robinson, to combine two sets of triple-crank engines on the same single rigid bed-plate, and arrange the cranks so that each of the two sets of engines tended to set up opposite couples to its neighbour. Thus, if the cranks are numbered 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, then if 3 and 4 are vertical, 2 and 5 will point to the right and be 30° below the horizontal, and 1 and 6 will point to the left and be also 30° below the horizontal. Then these two separate, unbalanced couples neutralize each other, and as there is no tendency to vibration

from vertical forces in each of the two triple engines, the engine is free from vibration.[1]

Vibration due to the couple, in engines for light vessels, such as torpedo-boats, may be to some extent modified by strong diagonal fore-and-aft bracing-stays connecting the after cylinders with the forward part of the bed-plate (Fig. 353). By this means the engines are made more rigid, and the vertical couple of moment M × D, which would give to the hull of a light vessel a vertical undulatory motion, is replaced and absorbed by a horizontal moment, N × E, the length E being the vertical distance between the longitudinal deck stays, and the fastenings of the bed-plates with the bottom of the ship.

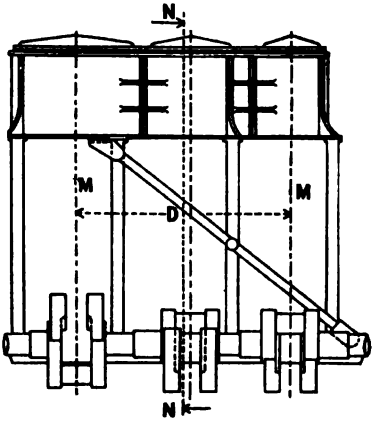


FIG. 353.

M. Normand points out[2] that without a complete system of strong diagonal, longitudinal bracing of the engines, and horizontal stays at the top and bottom, the equalization of the weights of the reciprocating parts (though decreasing the net vertical stress) would *increase* the rocking motion due to the couple, and the more so the longer the distance D between the fore and aft cylinders.

The Use of a Plane of Reference.[3]—If a loaded crank rotate about the axis of a crank-shaft, the outward force or pull acting radially through the centre of mass = $F = \frac{W}{g}\omega^2 r$.

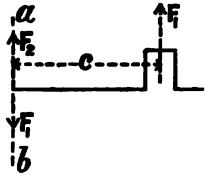


FIG. 354.

But if the effect of this radial pull is considered in relation to some plane *ab* at right angles to the axis, but at some distance *c* from the crank, and which we will call the plane of reference, then the effect of the single force F_1 (Fig. 354) acting at the crank is equal to—

(1) A force, F_2, acting in the plane equal and parallel to F_1, together with

(2) A couple of moment, $F_1 \times c$, tending to turn the shaft round in a plane at right angles to the reference plane.

If several cranks rotate in the same shaft at any angle with each

[1] See a paper by Mr. Robinson and Captain Sankey, *Proc. Inst. Naval Architects*, 1895.

[2] *Engineering*, October 27, 1893.

[3] For the method which follows, dealing with the balancing of four-crank engines, the author is indebted to Prof. Dalby's valuable paper on the "Balancing of Marine Engines:" *Proc. Inst. Naval Architects*, 1899.

other, and at various distances from the reference plane, then each separate radial force, when referred to a common plane of reference, is equivalent to a force acting in that plane, equal and parallel to the original force, and to a couple the moment of which is equal to the force at the crank multiplied by its distance from the reference plane.

Reciprocating Masses.—If masses M_1 and M_2 on the respective cranks of a two-crank engine with cranks opposite are equal, then the cranks are balanced in all positions, so far as moments about the crank shaft axis are concerned (neglecting the effect of the short connecting-rod, and the couple).

Also, for all positions of the opposite cranks, the engine is similarly in balance if, for the equal rotating masses, equal reciprocating masses are substituted, each driven from its respective crank; and thus the result as to balance is the same whether the masses are reciprocated or rotated. Hence, if masses balance as a rotating system, they balance also as a reciprocating system.

Similarly for any number of cranks, at any angles, if the rotating masses balance, the reciprocating masses will also balance, provided they are respectively arranged in the same proportion to each other as the rotating masses.

The conditions of balance may now be stated thus:

(1) If, in the plane of reference, lines taken in order be drawn parallel to the respective crank radii and proportional to the *forces* (or to the masses when the cranks are of equal radius) acting at the respective crank-pins, the figure obtained is a closed polygon.

(2) If, in the plane of reference, lines taken in order be drawn parallel to the respective crank radii and proportional to the *moments of the forces* (or of the masses when the cranks are of equal radius) acting at the respective crank-pins *about the origin at the plane of reference*, the figure obtained is a closed polygon.

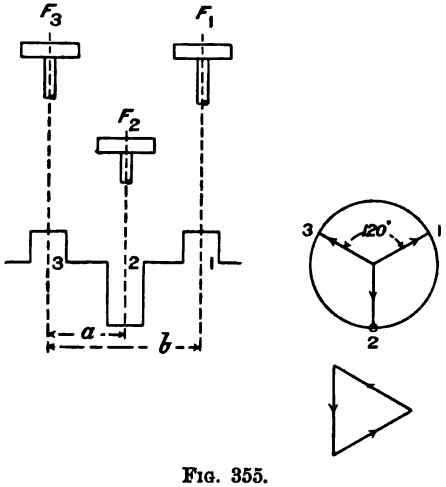


Fig. 355.

These conditions apply equally whether the masses are reciprocating or rotating, the reciprocating masses being considered, for the purpose of solving the problem of balance, as if they were rotating masses.

For a *triple-crank* engine (Fig. 355), with cranks at 120°, if a plane of reference be taken through one of the end cranks (say No. 3) and the crank positions be projected on the plane, then condition (1) may be fulfilled, so far as the forces acting at the respective crank-pins

are concerned, when those forces are equal, because a closed figure may be drawn whose sides are equal to each other and parallel to the crank radii.

But it is evident that when the forces at the crank-pins are unequal and the cranks are at 120°, the condition of balance of forces is not fulfilled, because it is not possible to close the force polygon.

It is also evidently impossible to fulfil condition (2) for a three-crank engine, as the moment of the force acting on crank 3 about the origin at the reference plane is zero, and the two remaining moments ($F_1 \times b$) and ($F_2 \times a$) do not form a closed figure; unless the cranks are as shown in Fig. 351, which fulfils all conditions of balance, except for the disturbing effects of the short connecting-rod. It will be observed that the conditions here laid down for perfect balance ignore the effect of the short connecting-rod, which effect, as has been already explained, may in itself cause considerable vibration, though the engine is balanced in all other respects. The influence of the short connecting-rod is more serious in quick-revolution engines, as its disturbing effect varies with the square of the angular velocity of the crank.

Applying the previous conditions of balance to the case of a four-crank engine, suppose the respective distances between the cylinder centre lines are chosen (Fig. 356), and the weights of reciprocating parts for three of the engines are approximately fixed, it is required to find (1) the relative crank positions, (2) the reciprocating mass for the fourth crank necessary to balance the mass of the other three cranks.

Take a plane of reference through one of the end cranks, namely, crank 1, whose relative angular position and weight of moving parts are not yet fixed.

Then the data may be conveniently set out in a tabulated form as shown thus:

No. of crank.	Distance of centre of crank from reference plane.	Mass at crank.	Ratio of masses.	Mass moment about reference plane.
1	0	(1720)	(0·57W)	0
2	3 ft.	3000	W	9000
3	5 ft.	4500	1·5W	22,500
4	7 ft.	3000	W	21,000

The figures in the brackets are, in the first instance, unknown, and have to be determined by the construction which follows.

NOTE.—If the radii of the several cranks were different, then it would be necessary to multiply each mass in column (3) and each mass moment in column (5) by its respective crank radius; but in ordinary engines the crank radius is the same throughout, and the proportional result is not affected.

First, draw the polygon of mass moments about the origin in the

reference plane. In this case, since one of the cranks is in the reference plane, only three cranks have moments about the plane, and the polygon is therefore a triangle.

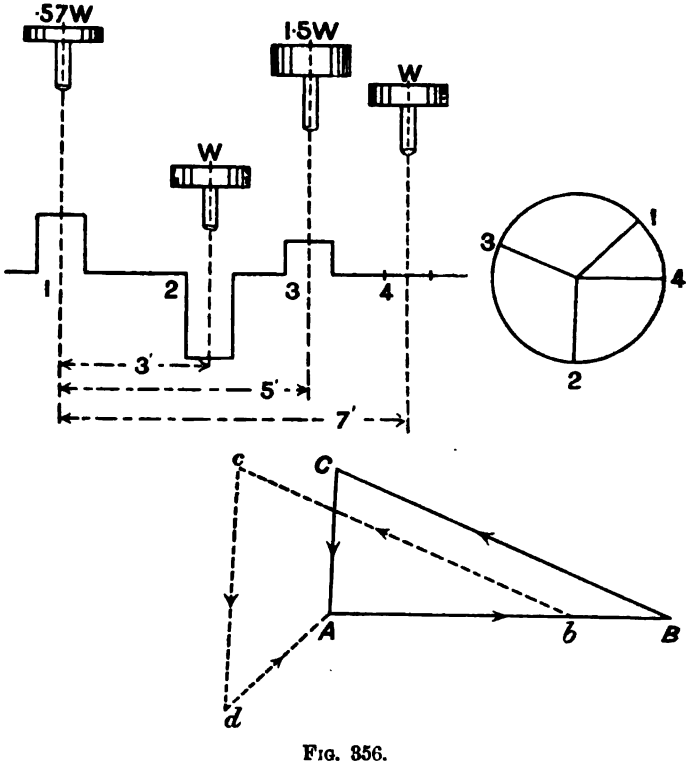


FIG. 356.

First, for crank 4, draw AB horizontal = 3000 × 7 = 21,000 to any convenient scale of units;

For crank 3, draw BC = 4500 × 5 = 22,500

For crank 2, draw CA = 3000 × 3 = 9000

These lines form a closed triangle of *mass-moments*, and the cranks are in balance if made parallel to the lines AB, BC, and CA, namely, cranks 4, 3, and 2 parallel to AB, BC, and CA respectively. These directions of the cranks are then drawn as shown in Fig. 356.

It now remains to find the direction of the crank No. 1 relatively to the remaining cranks, and to find the mass rotating at the crank-pin, in order to complete the balance.

This will be obtained in the next process by finding the direction and magnitude of the line required to close the mass polygon. Whatever position crank No. 1 may have will not affect its mass-moment

balance, as the crank is in the reference plane, and its moment is = 0.

Secondly, draw the mass polygon to some other scale of units, making the lines representing the *mass* at each crank parallel to the respective cranks.

The figure may be partly superposed upon the moment polygon, and the mass lines, for each crank, drawn parallel to the moment lines. Thus A*b* = 3000 = mass at crank 4; *bc* = 4500 = mass at crank 3; *cd* = 3000 = mass at crank 2. Then the line *d*A required to close the mass polygon gives in magnitude the mass of the rotating or reciprocating parts, whichever may be under consideration, and the direction *d*A, when transferred to the end view of the crank-shaft, gives the angular direction of crank 1.

To check the accuracy of the work, it is well to take a new reference plane through crank 4, and to draw a new mass-moment triangle, composed of the moments of cranks 1, 2, and 3 about the origin at crank 4. If the figure again closes, the work is correct.

This diagram (Fig. 356) is given as illustrating method of procedure, and is, of course, subject to the modification as to weights and centre distances to suit practical requirements.

CHAPTER XX.

STEAM-ENGINE PERFORMANCE.

In the early days of engine-testing, it was usual to express the performance of the engine in terms of the number of pounds of coal used per indicated horse-power per hour.

If the object were to express the performance of the whole plant—engine and boiler included—and if the heat value of 1 lb. of coal were a constant quantity, then there would be no objection to this unit of measurement, and it was, and is still, in fact a useful, if not an exact method.

But as a scientific measure of the performance of the engine itself it was valueless, because it included also the performance of the boiler, which latter might be either good or bad; and thus two engines of equal merit, the one attached to a good and the other to a bad boiler, might show widely different results.

The more usual system at present is to express the performance of the engine in pounds of steam used per hour per indicated horse-power. But this unit also is not satisfactory, because the number of heat-units employed to generate a pound of steam is not uniform, but depends upon the pressure of the steam, the temperature of the feed-water, and, if superheated, the degree of superheat employed.

The error is comparatively unimportant when saturated steam within the ordinary limits of pressure is being considered, but for superheated steam the case is very different. Thus the total heat from 32° Fahr. per pound of saturated steam at 50 lbs. absolute pressure is 1167 heat-units, and at 150 lbs. pressure it is 1190 heat-units, while the total heat of steam at 150 lbs. pressure superheated 300° Fahr. is 1334; and since it is the heat that does the work, and not the steam, the weight of steam used as a measure of relative efficiency is very misleading. In each of the above cases 1 lb. of steam may be used, but in the last case—that of the superheated steam—it contains 14·3 per cent. more heat than the 1 lb. of saturated steam at 50 lbs. pressure.

A committee of the Institution of Civil Engineers has recently considered this question, and issued a report containing the following recommendations:—

"1. That 'thermal efficiency,' as applied to any heat-engine, should

mean the ratio between the heat utilized as work on the piston by that engine, and the heat supplied to it.

"2. That the heat utilized be obtained by measuring the indicator diagrams in the usual way.

"3. That in the case of a steam-engine, the heat supplied be calculated as the total heat of the steam entering the engine, less the water-heat of the same weight of water at the temperature of the engine exhaust, both quantities being reckoned from 32° Fahr.

"4. That the temperature and pressure limits, both for saturated and superheated steam, be as follows:—

"Upper limit: the temperature and pressure close to, but on the boiler side of, the engine stop-valve, except for the purpose of calculating the standard of comparison in cases when the stop-valve is purposely used for reducing the pressure. In such cases the temperature of the steam at the reduced pressure shall be substituted. In the case of saturated steam the temperature corresponding to the pressure can be taken.

"Lower limit: the temperature in the exhaust-pipe close to, but outside, the engine. The temperature corresponding to the pressure of the exhaust steam can be taken.

"5. That a standard steam-engine of comparison be adopted, and that it be the ideal steam-engine working on the Rankine cycle between the same temperature and pressure limits as the actual engine to be compared.

"6. That the ratio between the thermal efficiency of an actual engine and the thermal efficiency of the corresponding standard steam-engine of comparison be called the efficiency ratio.

"7. That it is desirable to state the thermal economy of a steam-engine in terms of the thermal units required per minute per I.H.P., and that, when possible, the thermal units required per minute per B.H.P. be also stated.

"8. That, for scientific purposes, there be also stated the thermal units required per minute per H.P. by the standard engine of comparison."[1]

The steam-engine was taken to include everything between the boiler side of the engine stop-valve and the exhaust flange. The condenser was not included.

In accordance with the above recommendations, it is probable that in future steam-engine performance will be expressed in terms of thermal units required per minute per I.H.P.

To convert pounds of steam per I.H.P. into B.T.U. supplied per I.H.P.—

$$\text{B.T.U.} = \frac{\text{weight of steam per minute} \times \text{heat-units per pound}}{\text{I.H.P.}}$$

As the ideal standard of comparison, the Committee of the Inst. C.E. recommend a perfect engine working on the Rankine cycle, which is understood to mean an engine receiving steam at its upper limit of pressure and temperature equal to that measured close to but

[1] *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vol. cxxxiv.

on the boiler side of the engine stop-valve, and continuing this pressure and temperature up to cut-off. Beyond cut-off the steam is assumed to expand adiabatically in the cylinder down to a pressure equal to the back pressure against which the engine is working. The steam is then exhausted from the cylinder at constant pressure corresponding with the lower limit of temperature. The above cycle, which has hitherto been called the Clausius cycle, it is now proposed to call the Rankine cycle.

The B.T.U. required per minute per I.H.P. for the standard engine of comparison is given by dividing 42·42 by the efficiency of the cycle.

1. The efficiency of the Rankine cycle for saturated steam is given in the report above referred to as—

$$= \frac{(T_a - T_e)\left(1 + \frac{L_a}{T_a}\right) - T_e \text{ hyp. log } \frac{T_a}{T_e}}{L_a + T_a - T_e}$$

See equation (1), p. 54, where T_a and T_e = absolute temperature of saturated steam at stop-valve and exhaust respectively.

2. For superheated steam the efficiency becomes—

$$\frac{(T_a - T_e)\left(1 + \frac{L_a}{T_a}\right) + 0{\cdot}48(T_s - T_a) - T_e\left(\text{hyp. log } \frac{T_a}{T_e} + 0{\cdot}48 \text{ hyp. log } \frac{T_s}{T_a}\right)}{L_a + T_a - T_e + 0{\cdot}48(T_s - T_a)}$$

where T_s = absolute temperature of superheated steam at stop-valve.

If expression (1) above be = a, and expression (2) be = b, then $42{\cdot}42 \times \frac{1}{a}$ = B.T.U. per I.H.P. per minute for the standard engine of comparison for saturated steam, and $42{\cdot}42 \times \frac{1}{b}$ for superheated steam.

To facilitate the use of the standard, and to avoid calculation, the following diagram (Fig. 347), prepared in the first instance by Captain Sankey, may be used, from which the number of B.T.U.'s per I.H.P. per minute may be read directly for the case of the ideal engine working between known limits of temperature T_a and T_e.

EXAMPLE.—Suppose an engine working between the temperature limits of 350° for initial steam and 140° for exhaust steam, then where the vertical through the 350° point on the base line cuts the curve through the 140° point on the right-hand scale, we find the horizontal line which, when traced to the left-hand scale, gives 180 as the number of B.T.U.'s per I.H.P. per minute required by the ideal engine working between these temperature limits.

Boulvin's Method of Transferring Indicator Diagrams to the Temperature-Entropy Chart.—The following diagram, first devised

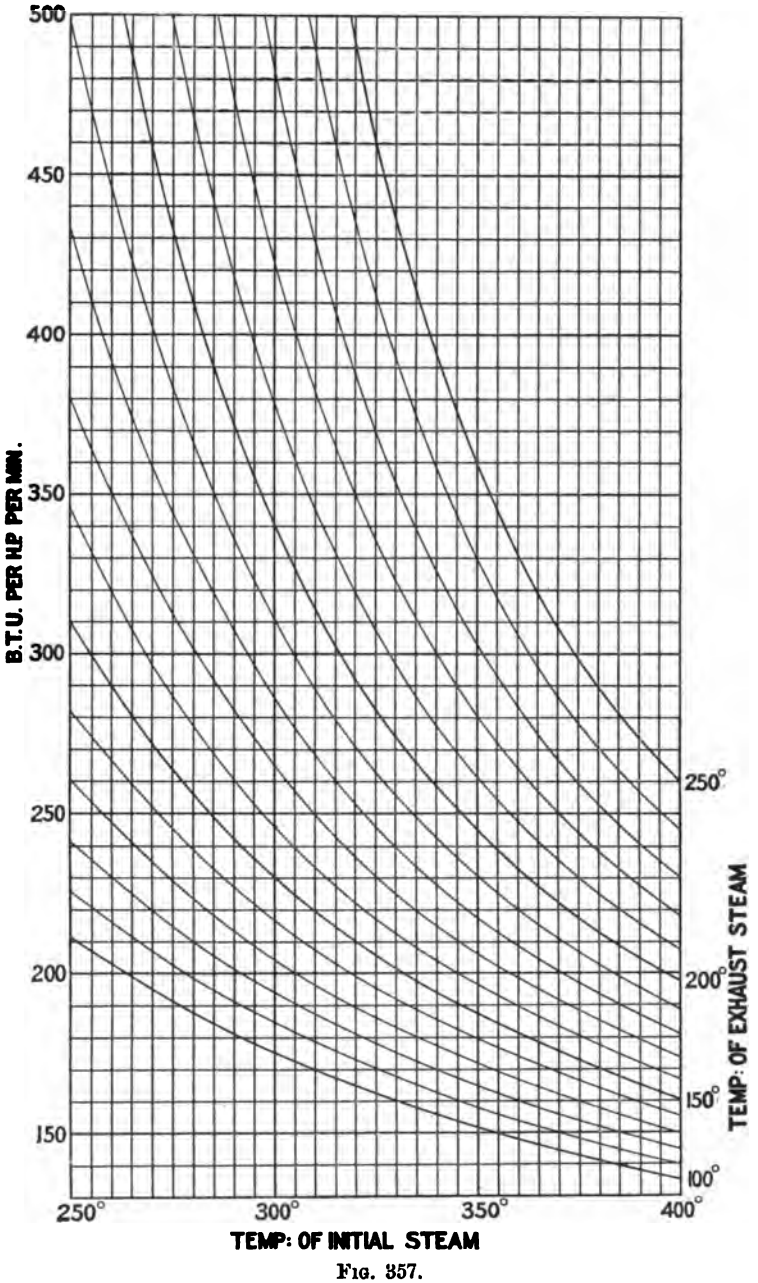

500
450
400
350
300
250
200
150
B.T.U. PER H.P. PER MIN.
250°
300°
350°
400°
TEMP: OF INITIAL STEAM
250°
200°
150°
100°
TEMP: OF EXHAUST STEAM

Fig. 357.

by Professor Boulvin, illustrates a useful method of transferring in full the indicator-diagram to the $\theta\phi$ chart. By means of such transfer it is readily seen where the losses in any engine or combination of engines occur.

It shows for any engine what use it makes of the heat-units supplied

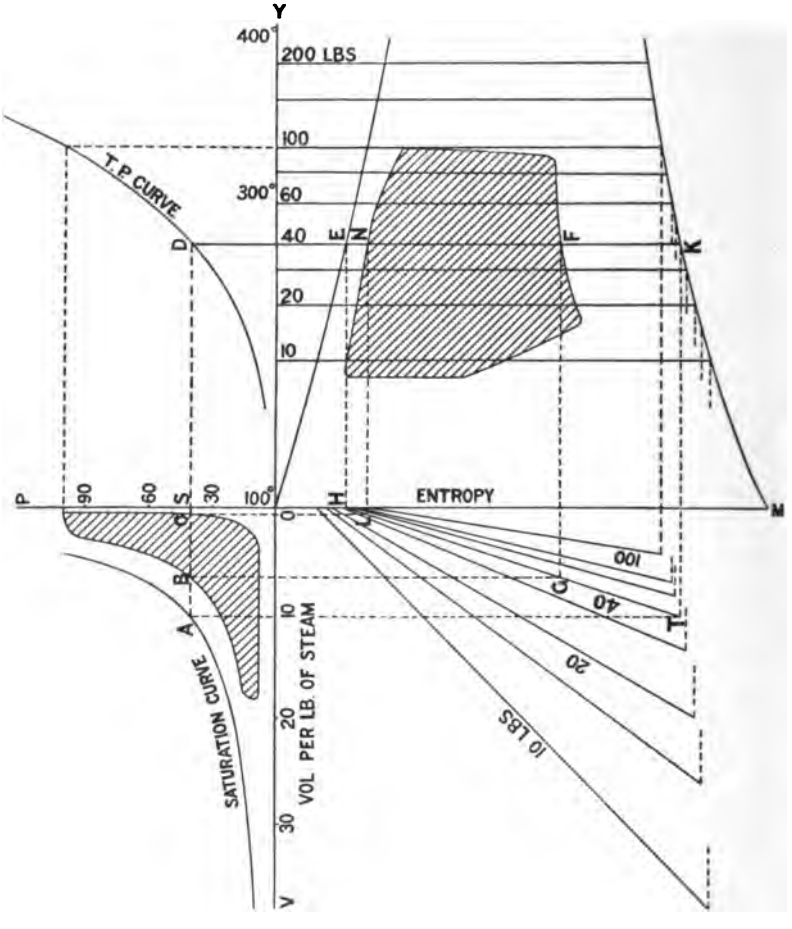


FIG. 358.

to it per pound of steam, and by plotting diagrams from separate engines whose performance it is desired to compare one with the other, it is easily seen where and in what respect one engine is superior to another in efficiency as a heat-engine.

Four axes are drawn from centre O, in Fig. 358, namely OP, OY,

OM, and OV, which represent respectively lines of pressure, temperature, entropy, and volume to any convenient scales.

Set off on OY a scale of temperatures, and on OP a scale of pressures; a temperature-pressure curve is then drawn in YOP by joining the intersections of the projections from corresponding pressure and temperature values for steam, as obtained by reference to the Steam Tables.

The temperature-entropy portion YOM of the diagram between the axes of temperature and entropy may be drawn, as already described on p. 43, or the respective lines of the diagram may be transferred from the chart, Plate I.

For the line of volumes, set off along the OV, to any convenient scale, a scale of cubic feet, and make its length at least equal to that of the volume of 1 lb. of steam at the lowest pressure used. With the scales of volume and pressure now fixed, draw from the Steam Tables the saturated steam curve.

To place the indicator diagram in the pressure-volume portion POV of the figure, it is necessary to already know the relation of the indicator diagram to the clearance line and the saturation line (see p. 116), in which case it can be transferred directly by plotting it to the new scales of pressure and volume.

To transfer the indicator diagram to the temperature-entropy portion of the figure by means of the graphical method, it is necessary to draw lines relating volume and entropy, as shown in the volume-entropy portion VOM of the diagram. To draw these lines, take any convenient point A on the saturation curve, say through 40 lbs. on the pressure scale; draw the vertical line AD to the temperature-pressure curve, and the horizontal line DK cutting the temperature-entropy lines in E and K. Project EH vertically to meet OM in H, and project KT vertically to meet the horizontal line AT in T. Join HT. From B draw a horizontal BG to cut HT in G, and from G draw the vertical GF to cut EK in F. Then the point B on the indicator diagram is transferred to the point F on the temperature-entropy chart. Any further number of points may be transferred in a similar manner.

Weight of Steam used by the Engine.—1. When the engine exhausts its steam into a surface-condenser, then if the condensed steam be collected and weighed, and at the same time the power of the engine be determined from indicator diagrams, the weight of steam per I.H.P. per hour may be directly determined. The weight of condensed steam should correspond with the weight of feed-water supplied to the boiler during the same period.

2. When the engine exhausts into a jet condenser, it is more difficult to determine the steam consumption at the condenser end, and it will usually be obtained by measurement of the boiler-feed. It may, however, be found with approximate accuracy by passing the combined condensing-water and condensed steam over a weir or tumbling-bay, or through a number of orifices (say twenty) bored out to gauge, and fixed level in the end of the tank receiving the

contents of the condenser. The tank should be provided with baffles to steady the flow of the current. If, then, the contents flowing from one of these orifices be collected separately and weighed, and the result multiplied by the number of orifices, the total weight of water passing away per unit of time will be obtained.

If S = weight of condensed steam, and W = weight of injection water, then total water weighed = W + S per minute.

If t_1 and t_2 = initial and final temperature of the injection water obtained by delicate thermometers, then $W(t_2 - t_1)$ = heat carried away by injection water. Let t_2 also equal temperature of feed.

Heat supplied by steam = $S(H - h_2)$, where H is total heat of the steam, and h_2 = (temperature of feed − 32). Then—

$$S(H - h_2) = (\text{work done in heat-units per minute}) + W(t_2 - t_1)$$

Or, if temperature t_3 of feed is not the same as that of the condensed steam, then—

$$S(H - h_2) = \text{work done} + S(t_3 - t_2) + W(t_2 - t_1)$$

We have now two equations—(1) as above, and (2) equal to the numerical value in pounds of W + S by weight during the test.

By combining these equations the value of S, or the weight of steam per minute, can be obtained.

Then S ÷ I.H.P. = weight of steam per I.H.P. per minute

On the Increase of Initial Steam-pressure.—The economy of engines in regard to steam and coal consumption per unit of power will always be a most, if not the most, important factor in determining the relative value of different types and combinations of engines and boilers.

If this condition is to be fulfilled regardless of any other condition, then the direction in which such economy must be looked for is by the adoption of the highest practicable steam-pressures by the use of water-tube boilers—which are now working as high as from 250 to 300 lbs. per square inch and even more—and by the further adoption of superheating both in the first and again in the succeeding cylinders, combined, of course, at the other end of the scale with the most perfect condensing arrangements.

A study of the temperature-entropy diagram will show at once that in the directions above indicated must be sought the maximum theoretical efficiency of the steam-engine, and that with a constant minimum loss at exhaust, a maximum work area per pound of steam can only be obtained (1) by increased initial pressure, and (2) by reduced loss by cylinder condensation, which is the object of superheating; the amount of superheating employed being so much as will secure dry saturated steam at cut-off, and not such an amount as will result in the actual presence of superheated steam after cut-off in the cylinder. The amount of superheat in the initial steam to secure this result has already been given in the chapter on Superheating.

The above requirements for maximum efficiency of the steam are to some extent ideal, and there are many practical difficulties which yet remain to be overcome, but they represent the direction towards which

the more progressive engineering will continue to aim; and where maximum power per unit of weight of machinery is the primary consideration, regardless of cost in other directions, the maximum possible pressures will be employed, and superheating, though at present in abeyance, will probably follow, at least in some degree.

But where other conditions than the above obtain, that is, where cost of maintenance, attendance, repairs, depreciation, loss through stoppages, etc., all have to be considered, as is the case in most stationary work, in estimating the real commercial economy, it is doubtful whether even the most up-to-date stationary engineering will adopt the extremely high pressures used by marine engineers for the sake of maximum *steam* economy as such, and as distinguished from all-round economy, though probably superheating will continue to increase in favour. In a recently published pamphlet giving the result of two-cylinder-compound engine trials, Messrs. Hick, Hargreaves & Co., of Bolton, say—

"At the present time there is a strong and increasing tendency towards compound engines working at a high boiler pressure (about 160 lbs.), in preference to triple and quadruple expansion engines for millwork. . . . Experience has shown that whilst two cylinder compound engines have great advantages in the way of simplicity and reliability, they can compete very closely even in steam-engine economy per I.H.P. with the best triple-expansion engines, and that they actually afford the least expensive and most satisfactory method of driving a factory when all the items of expense are taken into account. The use of superheating will tend strongly in the same direction by reducing the loss by cylinder condensation, the reduction of which is the one excuse for multiplying the stages of expansion in separate cylinders. Mill engines are fitted with valve gear capable of giving any desired ratio of expansion in each cylinder. This factor is frequently overlooked when comparing mill engines with marine engines, in which the valve gear employed will only allow of a limited amount of expansion in any one cylinder."

An investigation was recently (1897) carried out by Mr. Dugald Drummond on "the use of progressive high-pressures in non-compound locomotive engines," to ascertain the increase of efficiency derived from raising the boiler pressure. The following table shows some of the results obtained:—

Original pressure.	Raised to	Gain per cent. steam-consumption.
lbs. per sq. in.	lbs. per sq. in.	
140	160	11 to 13
150	175	15
150	200	31
175	200	11·92

Mr. Drummond concludes that, all things considered, for non-compound locomotives, pressures should not be less than 150 lbs. nor more than 170 lbs. per square inch.[1]

As already pointed out, the numerical value of the thermal efficiency obtained by increasing initial pressures is proportional to the range of *temperature* worked through by the engine divided by the

[1] *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vol. cxxvii. p. 225.

initial temperature (absolute). Also the initial temperatures do not increase at the same rate as the pressures; on the contrary, while the initial pressures rise very rapidly, the temperature increase is comparatively small, especially so at the higher pressures. Thus, for steam at 170 lbs. absolute pressure, the temperature is 368° Fahr., while for steam at 250 lbs. absolute pressure the temperature is 400° Fahr. If in both cases the steam is exhausted at a temperature of 150° Fahr., which is equivalent to a pressure of about 4 lbs. absolute, then it will be seen by measurement from Fig. 357 that in the case of the 170 lbs. initial pressure the B.T.U.'s per I.H.P. per minute required for the ideal engine = 175, and for 250 lbs. pressure the B.T.U.'s = 160, that is, a gain of $\frac{175 - 160}{175} \times 100 = 8{\cdot}6$ per cent., or in practice a gain of about 6 per cent. of heat expended per I.H.P., for an increase of 47 per cent. in the steam-pressure, which gain seems hardly likely to tempt engineers in the direction of an indefinite increase of pressure from the point of view of economy of heat, especially when the higher pressures are accompanied by difficulties such as—

(1) Increased strength, weight, and initial cost of boilers, steam-pipes, engine cylinders, and fittings.

(2) Increased losses by radiation throughout the whole plant, including boiler, steam-pipes, and engines.

(3) Increased cost for repairs and maintenance.

But, as already stated, there are other considerations, besides thermal efficiency, which leads to the adoption of the highest steam-pressures, especially that of the *increase of power per unit weight of engines*, which follows the increase of steam-pressure. For it will be remembered that in a given engine the power increases directly in proportion to the increase of initial pressure, the point of cut-off in the first cylinder being assumed constant.

Hence the reason for providing warships, for example, with the highest available working pressure regardless of difficulties.

Reduction of Pressure by Reducing-Valves.—It is now usual in water-tube boilers to reduce the pressure from 300 lbs. in the boiler to 250 lbs. at the engine. This permits of the initial pressure on the engine being kept more consistently constant than would be the case if there were no reducing-valve between the boilers and the engine; it is also equivalent to increasing the volume of the steam space of the boiler without increasing the size of the boiler. It is often stated that this wire-drawing of the steam, by reducing the pressure from 300 to 250 lbs. per square inch, is a convenient means of supplying superheated steam to the engines. But unless the steam supplied by the boiler is perfectly dry, or nearly so, which is a large assumption, there can be no superheating: thus, the total heat of steam at 300 lbs. pressure = 1209·3, and at 250 lbs. pressure = 1204·2—that is, 5·1 units of heat are liberated when the steam is wiredrawn from 300 lbs. to 250 lbs. pressure. Assuming the boiler steam to contain 2 per cent. of moisture, then on passing through the reducing-valve the liberated

heat-units will evaporate $\frac{5{\cdot}1}{L}$ lbs. of water (moisture) into steam, where L = latent heat per pound of steam at 250 lbs. pressure. $\frac{5{\cdot}1}{829{\cdot}5} = 0{\cdot}006$ lb. of water evaporated. Therefore the steam wetness is now reduced from 0·02 lb. per pound to (0·02 − 0·006) lb. per pound, or the wetness is reduced from 2 per cent. to 1·4 per cent. But there has been no superheating of the steam.

If the steam from the boiler were perfectly dry, then on passing through the reducing-valve from 300 to 250 lbs. pressure 5·1 units of heat are liberated, and taking 0.48 as the specific heat of steam, then 5·1 ÷ 0·48 = 10·6 degrees of superheat.

Steam-consumption. The Willans Straight-line Law.—It was first pointed out by P. W. Willans that if the total steam-consumption per hour of a throttling or constant expansion engine be plotted as ordinates on a horse-power or mean-pressure base, the result is an oblique straight line, as shown in Fig. 359. That this must be so theoretically will be obvious from the following illustration.

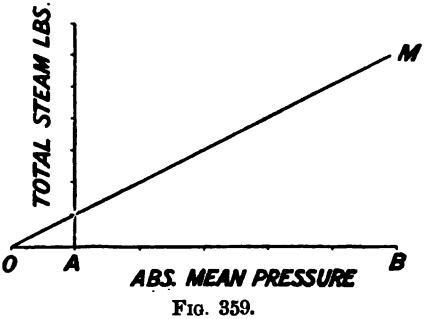


FIG. 359.

In Fig. 360 cut-off at 0·5 or two expansions is taken, and an initial pressure of 90 lbs. The mean pressure is = 76·2 lbs. (found by means of the formula $p_m = p\left(\frac{1 + \text{hyp.log } r}{r}\right)$), and the terminal pressure is 45. At an initial pressure of 45 lbs. the mean pressure is 38·1 lbs., and the terminal pressure 22·5 lbs.

In Fig. 361, the terminal pressures are set up vertically as ordinates, and the mean pressures are drawn horizontally as abscissæ; and the

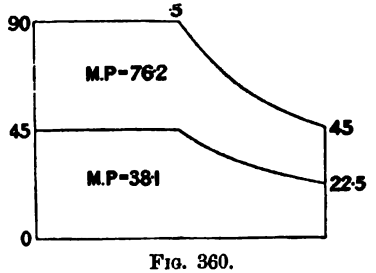


FIG. 360.

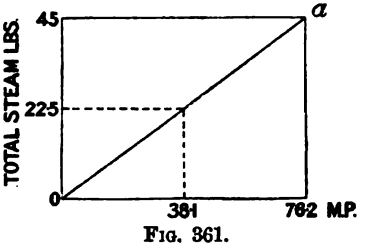


FIG. 361.

intersections give the straight line of steam-consumption *oa*, because the steam-consumption per stroke is proportional to the terminal pressure in theoretical engines.

If the term I.H.P. be substituted for "mean pressure," as may be done when the speed of any given engine is constant at all powers.

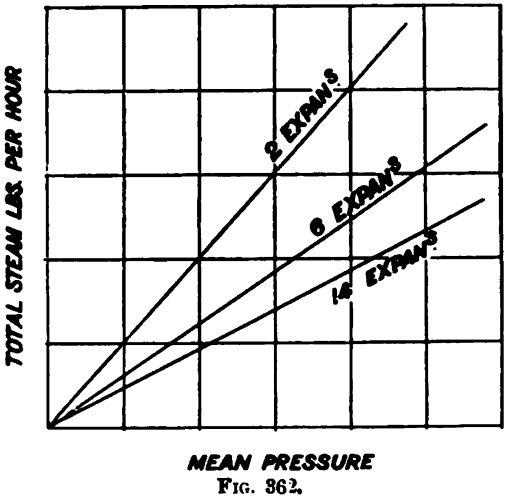


FIG. 362.

then it may be stated that the total weight of steam used varies directly as the I.H.P., or, in other words, the weight of steam per I.H.P is constant at all powers when back pressure, friction, and all other losses are neglected.

The oblique straight line obtained by plotting the steam-consumption as explained above would not be quite straight, but slightly curved if adiabatic expansion had been used, instead of hyperbolic. By choosing various cut-off points a *series* of oblique lines may be drawn (Fig. 362), each separate straight line representing the steam-consumption for a separate fixed cut-off with variable initial pressure at that cut-off.

The Curve of Steam-consumption for Variable Expansion.—If a scale

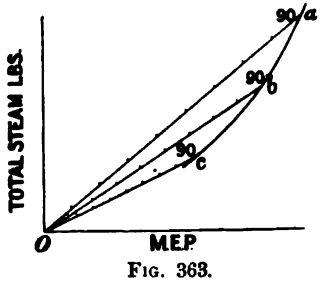


FIG. 363.

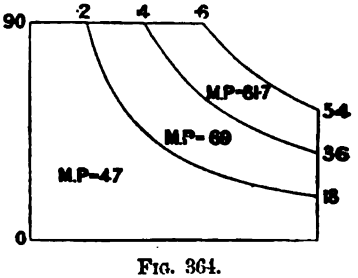


FIG. 364.

of absolute initial steam-pressures be marked along the oblique lines in each case, and a free curve be drawn by joining the corresponding

pressure-points on the respective oblique lines, then the curves obtained will give—by an ordinate measured to them from the base—the steam-consumption for a variable cut-off with a constant initial pressure; thus Fig. 363, line O*a* is drawn as a line of steam-consumption for a cut-off in the cylinder at 0·6, and at various initial pressures; line O*b* is drawn similarly for a cut-off at 0·4; and line O*c* for a cut-off at 0·2, and a pressure scale is marked upon each line respectively. By joining points *a*, *b*, *c* at the common pressure-points of 90 lbs., a curve of steam-consumption *abc* is obtained. If the vertical ordinate be measured to the curve for any point of cut-off from 0·2 to 0·6 of the stroke, the total steam-consumption is obtained at a constant initial pressure of 90 lbs. per square inch. The same result may be obtained by measurement from a theoretical indicator diagram, as follows:—

Draw indicator diagrams (Fig. 364) showing the variable expansion-curves for constant initial pressure with cut-off at 0·2, 0·4, 0·6 of the stroke, and find by measurement or calculation the mean pressure for each case reckoned to zero back pressure.

Then plot on squared paper the terminal pressures as ordinates, and the mean pressures as abscissæ (Fig. 365). The terminal pressures are proportional to the weight of steam exhausted, and the vertical scale may thus be made to represent steam-consumption.

Thus in Fig. 364, with cut-off at 0·6 of the stroke, the mean pressure is 81·7 lbs., and the terminal pressure 54 lbs.; at points of cut-off 0·4 and 0·2 the mean pressures are 69 and 47 respectively, and the terminal pressures 36 and 18.

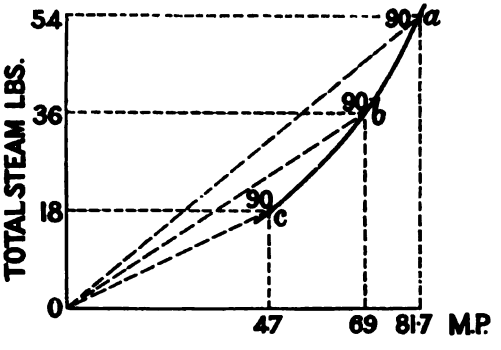


FIG. 365.

In Fig. 365 the mean pressures are plotted on a base-line, and the terminal pressures on the vertical scale to represent proportional steam-consumption. By joining the intersections of the corresponding mean and terminal pressures, the curve *abc* is obtained as before (Fig. 363).

It will be seen that this curve falls below the straight line *oa*, joining the origin *o* with the point *a* of maximum power, and if an ordinate be measured from the base-line at a given mean pressure, the vertical height measured to the curve is less than that measured to the straight line *oa*, and the difference between the two heights is the relative difference between the total steam-consumption under the two systems; the straight lines representing the varying steam-

consumption at fixed points of cut-off, when the power is regulated by throttling, either by hand or by a governor; and the curve representing the steam-consumption at constant initial pressure when the power is regulated by varying the point of cut-off by hand or by a governor.

In the same way, lines and curves have been drawn (Fig. 366) showing the relation between the steam-consumption when the two methods of varying the power are compared. Thus, taking three different cases of constant cut-off engines, namely, two, six, and fourteen expansions respectively, and comparing them with three variable expansion engines having the same cut-off at maximum power. If each starts with the same initial pressure and the same cut-off, as at *d*, *e*, and *f*, and the mean pressure is reduced (in the straight-line or throttling engine, by reducing the initial pressure; and in the variable expansion engine by keeping the initial pressure constant and increasing the number of expansions), then if the absolute terminal pressure of the theoretical indicator diagram, or the steam-consumption per stroke, be set up as verticals, it will be found that their height is less with the variable expansion than with the throttling engine.

It will be seen by the figure (Fig. 366) that the difference is much greater for the simple two-expansion engines than for engines with

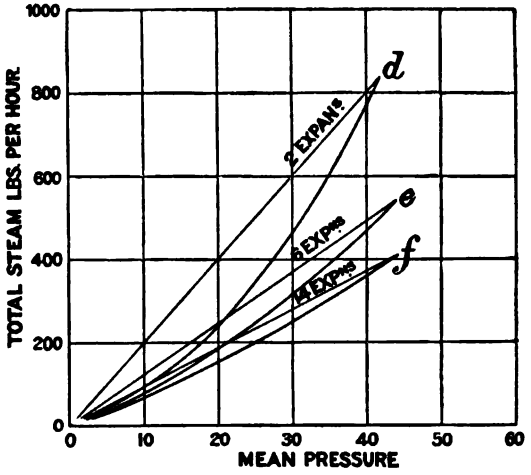


FIG. 366.

many expansions, such as triple-expansion engines, in which the possible difference between the two systems of regulating the power is small, as seen by the nearness of the curve to the straight line *of*.

If the engine considered is a theoretical non-condensing engine, then the oblique line OM (Fig. 359) is the line of steam-consumption; and OA is the back pressure of the atmosphere. In practical cases

the length OA represents the equivalent loss of effective mean pressure due to back pressure, condensation, leakage, radiations, etc.

Taking now a practical case in which the friction of the engine is included.

It will be noticed that in the theoretical cases taken so far, all the throttling straight lines and all the variable expansion-curves pass through the origin O of the diagram; that is to say, in a theoretical engine there is zero steam-consumption at zero mean pressure.

But in practice that is not the case, and if the oblique line drawn from an actual engine test be produced, it will be found not to pass through the origin O, but to cut the vertical line at some point above it, which will represent to scale the steam-consumption of the engine at zero mean pressure. The Willans oblique line for an actual throttling engine takes the form of—

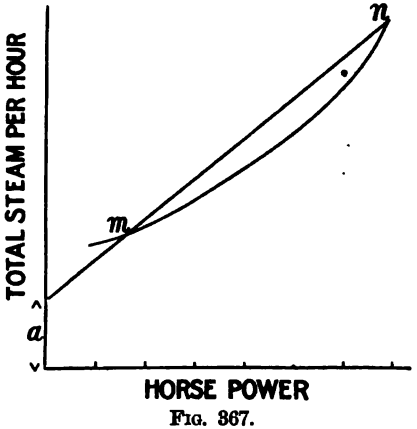


FIG. 367.

$$W = a + bP$$

where W is the total weight of steam used per hour; P is the indicated horse-power; a is the weight of steam used at zero mean pressure, and depends upon the extent of the back pressure and on the losses inherently due to the engine itself while running; b is a constant, depending also on the type of engine.

It will thus be understood that with a throttling engine *the full load is the most economical load*, because the effect of the constant a is proportionally less at high powers, and that as the power of a throttling engine is reduced, the consumption of steam per horse-power is increased.

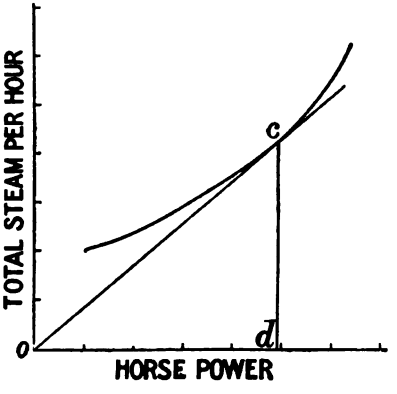


FIG. 368.

If the actual consumption lines be plotted for an engine working through its full range of power, first with variable initial pressure, and secondly with variable cut-off and constant initial pressure, it will be seen that over a certain range, *mn* (Fig. 367), the variable expansion is

the more economical; but if the cut-off is carried beyond a certain point, *m*, the throttling method becomes the more economical of the two.

To find the mean pressure corresponding with the lowest steam-consumption per I.H.P., draw a tangent, O*c*, to the curve of steam-consumption from the point O; then a vertical, *cd*, through the point of contact gives by its intersection with the horizontal base the mean pressure, *od*, required; that is, (*cd* ÷ *od*), or (steam-consumption ÷ I.H.P.), is a minimum when the power is represented by *od*.

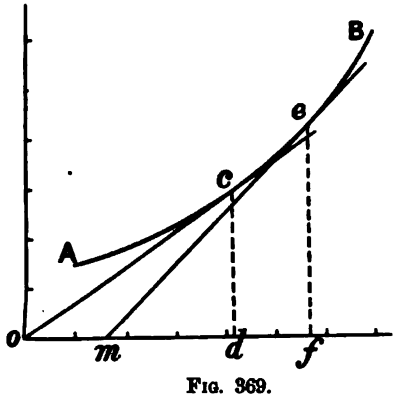


FIG. 369.

To find the mean pressure corresponding with the lowest steam-consumption per B.H.P., which is usually more important to know than that for the I.H.P.

Let AB (Fig. 369) be the curve of total steam-consumption for the engine, and let O*m* represent to the scale of mean pressure the pressure required to drive the engine itself.

From point *m* draw a tangent *me* to the curve; then *ef* is the most

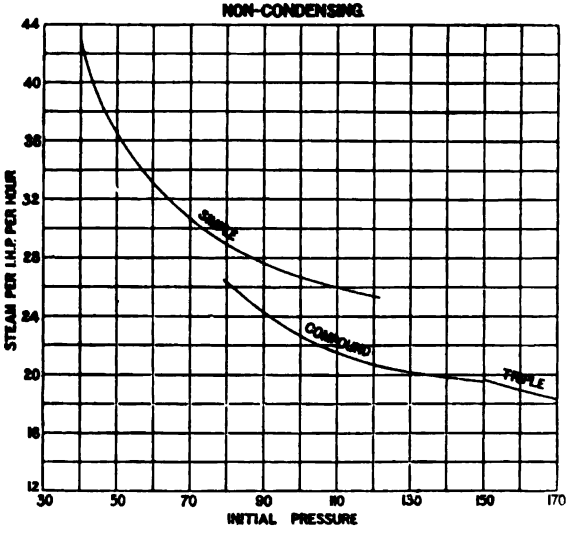


FIG. 370.

economical mean pressure to adopt when considered with reference to the brake or effective horse-power, while if only the indicated

horse-power had been considered, a lower mean pressure would have been chosen.

Such a diagram shows why, in electrical work, the rated mean effective pressure is always chosen high, namely, from 40 to 45 lbs. per square inch referred to the low-pressure piston, the reason being that when the most economical point is considered with reference to the effective horse-power, instead of the indicated horse-power, it is found possible to work economically at the higher mean pressures, and the advantage of doing so is that the same power may be obtained with a smaller engine, and therefore also one which may be run at higher rotational speeds.

In mill engines the rated mean effective pressure is usually about 28 lbs., but there is a tendency all round in the direction of raising the value of the rated mean pressure.

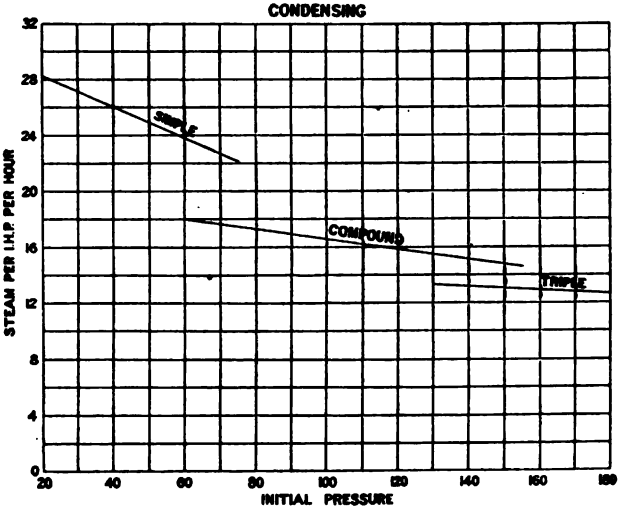


FIG. 371.

Curves of Steam-consumption per I.H.P. per Hour.—The effect on the rate of steam-consumption of various changes in the conditions of working may be best shown by plotting curves of engine performance as shown in Figs. 370 and 371. These figures show the relative performance of simple, compound, and triple engines, condensing and non-condensing, and they should be carefully studied by the student. The data for these curves have been taken from the Willans trials.[1]

Fig. 372 shows the characteristic curves of steam-consumption for engines of various types and various degrees of loading, the fractions along the base-line representing the proportion of the rated load at which the engine is worked. The *rated load* is the load at which the engine gives the best all-round results, the principal factor in the problem

[1] *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vols. xciii. and cxiv.

being the maximum economical working load. Usually engines may be worked about 25 per cent. above this load as a maximum.

The *load-factor* is the ratio of the average working load to the maximum working load.

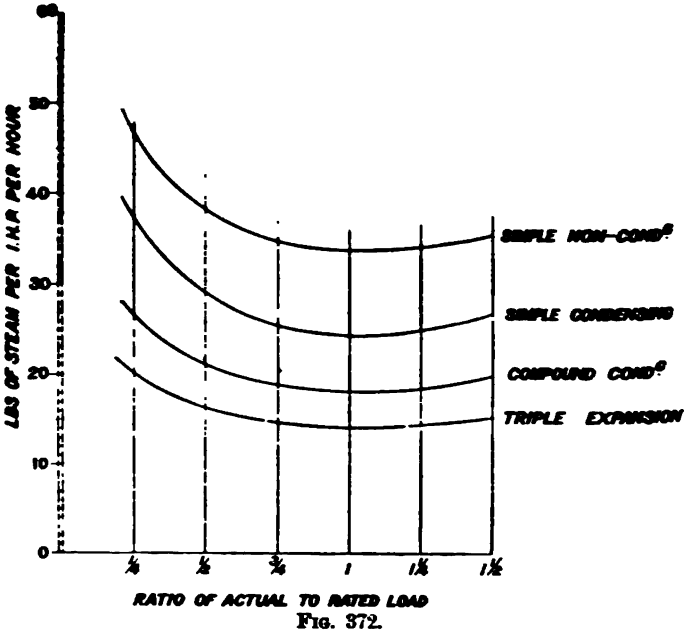


FIG. 372.

The following results of a series of trials with a Westinghouse compound short-stroke engine were given by Mr. Arthur Rigg.[1] The cylinder diameters were 14 in. and 24 in., with a 14-in. stroke; cranks opposite; piston speed 290 ft. per minute; variable expansion governor.

WATER-CONSUMPTION PER BRAKE HORSE-POWER.

Condensing.

1	2	3	4	5	6
Brake H.P.	Average pressure, pounds per square inch.	Boiler-pressure, pounds per square inch.			
		120	100	80	60
		lbs.	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.
200	50·0	19·62	22·53	—	—
160	40·0	18·86	20·02	23·17	—
130	32·0	18·38	19·56	21·32	24·30
100	25·0	19·14	19·44	20·34	20·10
70	17·5	19·80	20·05	21·43	22·57
40	10·0	22·90	23·12	24·75	22·55

[1] *Proc. Inst. C.E*, vol. cxiv.

Non-condensing.

1	2	3	4	5	6
Brake H.P.	Average pressure, pounds per square inch.	Boiler pressure, pounds per square inch.			
		120	100	80	60
		lbs.	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.
200	50·0	23·94	—	—	—
160	40·0	23·50	25·20	—	—
130	32·0	24·32	26·42	27·70	—
100	25·0	25·57	27·75	29·80	—
90	23·0	26·51	28·30	29·80	31·70
70	17·5	29·40	30·77	32·48	36·00
40	10·0	40·05	39·30	42·75	45·82

From a paper [1] by Mr. Henry Davey, read before the Institution of Civil Engineers, the following average results of long-stroke engines using *saturated* steam are deduced—

	Initial pressure.	Ratio of expansion.	Steam per I.H.P. per hour.	B.T.U. per I.H.P. per min.
Single cylinder condensing ...	76·7	3·95	23·51	432
Compound condensing engines	84·3	7·73	18·53	358
Triple-expansion engines ...	138·3	14·51	14·88	288

Performance of Engines using Highly Superheated Steam.—The following steam-consumption is guaranteed by the Schmidt Stationary Engine Co., London, the temperature of the steam employed in all cases being 350° C., or 662° F.

Type of engines.	Indicated horse-power.	Pounds of feed-water per I.H.P. per hour.	B.T.U. per I.H.P. per min., feed temp. 100° F.
Single cylinder double-acting non-condensing	50 to 300	16·8 to 15·5	403 to 373
Single cylinder double-acting condensing	50 to 300	13·5 to 12·4	325 to 298
Compound double-acting condensing	50 to 800	11·5 to 9·8	277 to 236
Single crank single-acting tandem compound condensing	50 to 350	11 to 10	265 to 241

NOTE.—In each case the consumption of steam decreases as the power increases.

The **effect of speed of rotation** on economy is to somewhat reduce the weight of steam used per indicated horse-power per hour as the

[1] *Proc. Inst. C.E*, vol. cxxii. p. 17.

speed of rotation increases. This is probably due to the reduced loss by cylinder condensation at high speeds.

The following results are from experiments by P. W. Willans : [1]—

Revolutions per minute	...	401	301	198	116
Steam per I.H.P. per hour	...	17·3	17·6	18·9	20·0

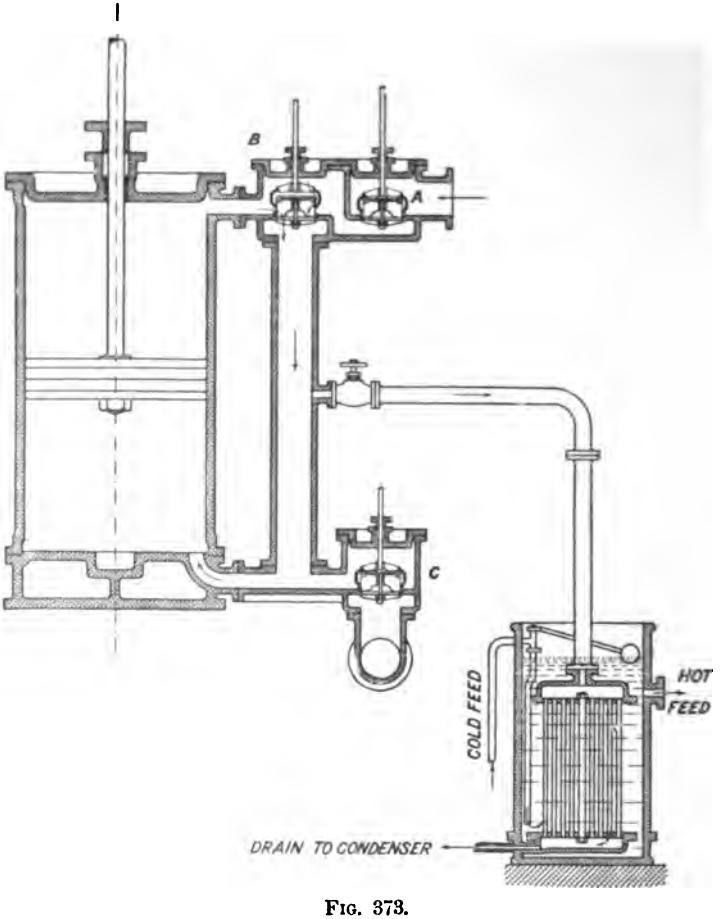


FIG. 373.

The Cornish Cycle.[2]—In the Cornish single-acting pumping-engine (see Fig. 373), the steam passes into the cylinder through valve A, and acts on the top of the piston to drive it downwards, valve B being

[1] *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vol. cxiv.

[2] See a paper by Mr. Henry Davey on the Birmingham Waterworks, *Proc. Inst. Mechanical Engineers*, 1897, p. 297.

closed; the space below the piston being at the same time in communication with the condenser through the valve C.

At the end of the down-stroke the valve B opens to exhaust, and the valves A and C are closed. The steam now passes from above the piston to the space below the piston through the valve B, and not directly to the condenser.

The piston then ascends in a condition of equilibrium.

The reason for the economy obtained by this arrangement is that the clearance surface above the piston is never put in direct communication with the condenser, the range of temperature above the piston being from admission to release only, while below the piston the range of temperature is from release to exhaust, the fall of temperature from admission to exhaust thus occurring in two stages. This cycle is now adopted by some single-acting high-speed engine makers, notably in the Willans engine.

CHAPTER XXI.

TYPES OF STEAM-ENGINES—THE MILL ENGINE.

Horizontal and Vertical Engines.—The choice of type depends in some measure on the space at disposal in which the engine is to be fixed, and also on the speed of rotation desired.

Where floor space is limited, and height will permit, the vertical type is the only alternative; but where space is not so limited, the question of speed of rotation desired will more probably decide the type, for slow speeds the horizontal being generally preferred.

The horizontal type is more convenient of access, while the vertical is often most inconvenient in this respect. The stresses are spread over a larger floor area in the horizontal type, and the engine is therefore more likely to be free from vibration.

It is usually more difficult to keep vertical engines clean, because of leakage of water and oil from stuffing-box glands and other parts falling directly among the working parts.

Vertical engines are lighter for the same power, because they are made of a shorter stroke, and run at a higher rotational speed than horizontal engines.

In horizontal engines the cylinders are liable to wear down and to become oval in consequence of the weight of the piston wearing a bed for itself on the bottom of the cylinder. This objection is absent in vertical engines, though of course the weight is carried on the crank-pin instead. To reduce the wear in horizontal cylinders, the piston is sometimes supported by a tail-rod, which is a prolongation of the piston-rod carried out through the back cover.

With the long-stroke horizontal engine extreme care must be taken in the construction of the foundation, to ensure the prevention of uneven "settling down."

The Horizontal Mill Engine.—Figs. 374 and 382 give details for a horizontal trip-gear engine, 15-in. diameter, 36-in. stroke, suitable for a working pressure of 100 lbs.

The steam admission is affected by double-beat drop valves A, operated by a detachable trigger, the point of release being determined by the governor.

The exhaust valves B are of the double-beat type, worked by a cam on the side shaft C.

The cylinder is a cored casting of tough cast iron, which must be

free from blow-holes and other imperfections, and has suitable recesses into which the steam and exhaust valve seats are forced.

The steam is admitted by the side and at the centre of the cylinder, and passes up a belt to the steam-passage on the top of the cylinder, which again communicates with the steam-valves A at either end.

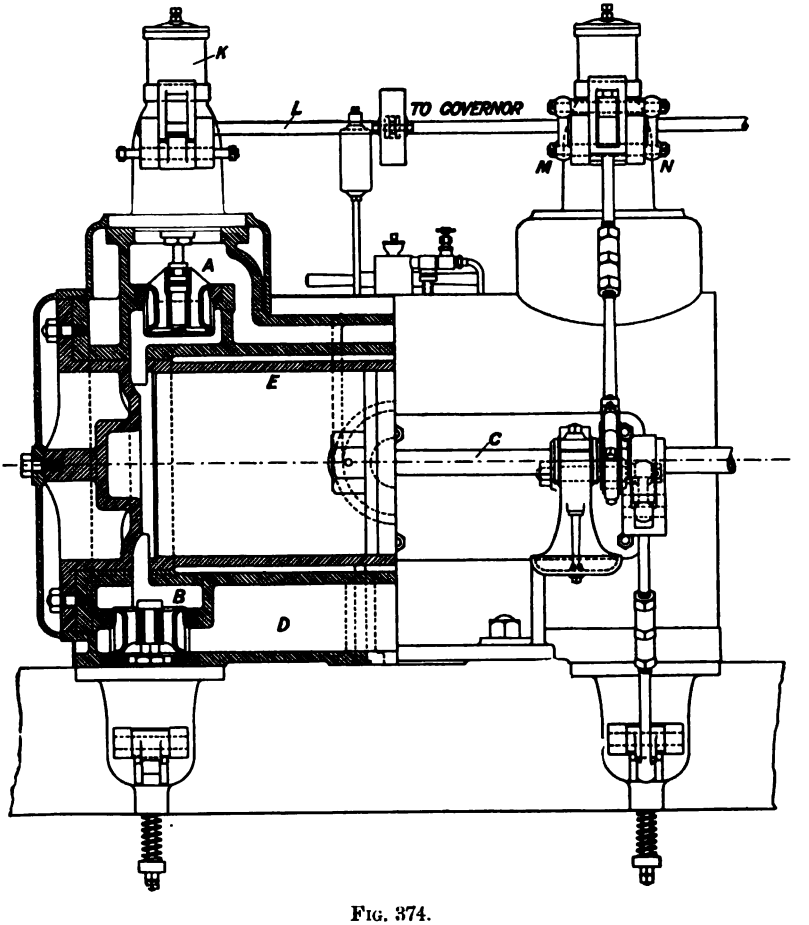


FIG. 374.

When the steam is exhausted from the cylinder it escapes into a cored chamber, D, common to both exhaust valves, and from thence to the exhaust pipe.

A separate working barrel or liner, E, is forced into the cylinder casing. The parallel part is $\frac{1}{16}$ in. larger at one end than at the other, to facilitate putting in and fixing of the barrel.

The valve seats and valves are cast off a specially strong hard mixture of cold-blast and hematite irons.

The upper and lower beats of valve faces are tangents to two spheres, which have their common centre in the point of suspension (see Fig. 376). The effect of this special arrangement of valve seats is to maintain true contact between valves and seats. When the valve

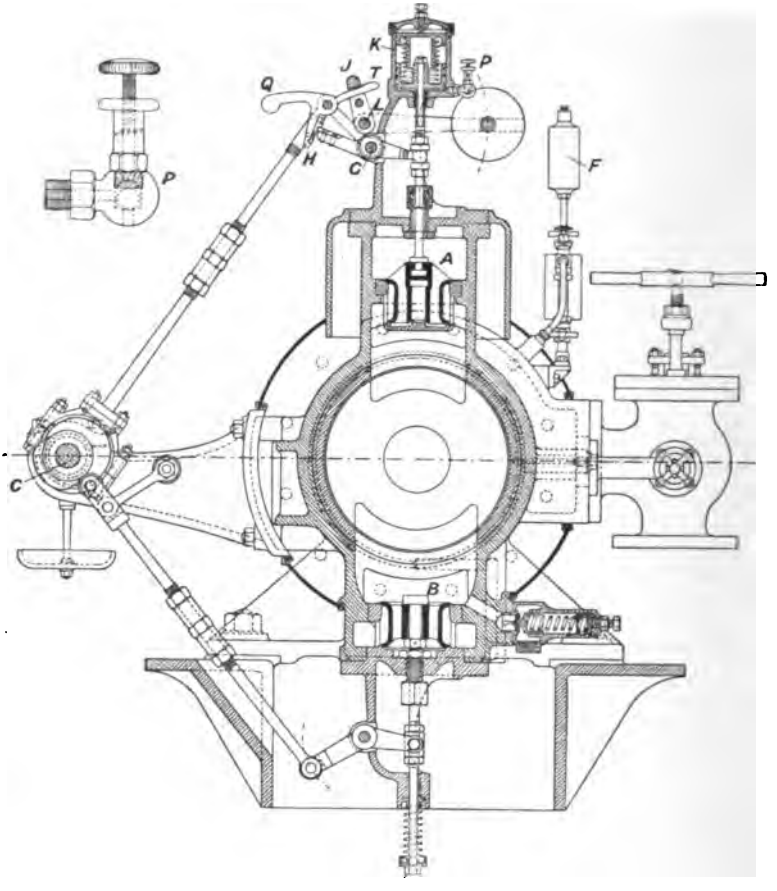


FIG. 375.

seats are both the same angle, the lower valve seat wears larger than the valve and causes leakage.

It is usual to finally grind the valve seats together when they have been heated, so as to make them steam-tight after they have been expanded by the hot steam. All castings have more or less internal stress in them as delivered from the foundry, and when

such castings are subjected to heat, they sometimes twist and go out of shape.

In small castings it is possible to get rid of the initial stress, by placing them in a furnace and heating them to a blood-red heat, closing the dampers and leaving the furnace and castings to slowly cool together.

Where castings cannot be so heated, it is very necessary to carefully examine and "let down" the wearing parts which are to be a working fit under steam pressure and temperature, and with more complicated valves, this must be done several times before the necessary steam-tightness is attained.

The steam-jacket is supplied with high-pressure steam by a small steam-valve placed alongside of the stop-valve, and the condensed water is drained through a passage (drilled at right angles) which connects the lowest point of the jacket to a suitable facing on the side of the exhaust passage on the underside of the cylinder.

The cylinder is automatically drained by the separate exhaust valves each exhaust stroke, and in order to prevent the danger of an excess of water under pressure trapped between piston and cover when the exhaust valves have closed, relief valves are fitted to each end of the cylinder.

A sight-feed lubricator, F, is provided, and connected to the steam-supply passage.

The cylinder is coated with a fibrous non-conductor, such as asbestos or slag wool, and cased in sheet steel secured by screws fitting under the cylinder cover and stuffing box as shown.

The cylinder cover is a strongly ribbed casting, having proper recess for piston nut and giving $\frac{3}{16}$ in. clearance. A polished cover is fitted, which forms an efficient air-jacket and helps to keep the lagging in place.

The lifting lever of the steam-valve is fitted with a hardened-steel tip, which is engaged by the trigger-piece H, provided with similar hardened-steel tip. The maximum amount of contact is $\frac{3}{16}$ in., and is determined by an extending tail, T, which limits the extent of engagement.

The motion to lift the steam-valve is derived from an eccentric mounted on a side shaft, C, driven by bevil gears from the crank-shaft. The upper end of the eccentric-rod is connected by two side links, MN, to the lifting lever-pin (see Fig. 374), and when the trigger is engaged, the lifting-lever, trigger, and side links form a locked triangle. The upper portion of the trigger is curved towards the buffer-box K, and rides under a detaching pad, which is formed on the detaching lever J, keyed on the cut-off spindle L.

The cut-off spindle is arranged to give the lever J a movement approximately the same in direction as the tail of the trigger T, and the inclined tail runs under the detaching pad and detaches the trigger from the valve-lifting lever.

In all mechanical cut-off gears it is of the highest importance for the governor to regulate the point of cut-off with the smallest possible

resistance to its movement from the gear itself, and it should be free to adjust its position during steam admission. The above arrangement is a good example of a detaching-valve gear, suitable for governing on a low percentage of variation.

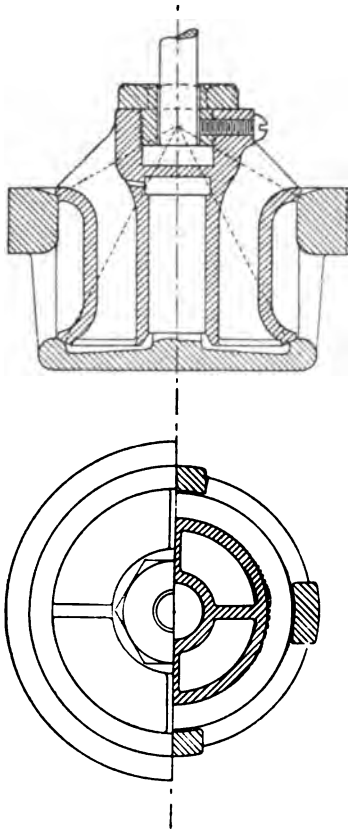


FIG. 376.

The steam-valve spindle is extended beyond the lever attachment, and is connected to a piston having turned Ramsbottom grooves (not rings) fitting in an air-buffer box. The piston has about $\frac{1}{32}$ in. clearance when the valve is seated. When the valve is lifted the piston draws in air freely through the ball-valve P (shown enlarged, Fig. 375), and when the valve is released the ball seats itself, and the air is forced out through the holes (regulated in area by the fine screw) in the upper part of the air-valve.

A spring is provided to supplement the rush of the steam and ensure the prompt closing of the valve when the lever is released.

By suitably regulating the air-valve, the valve can be made to seat itself rapidly and without noise.

An extension-piece, Q, is made on the trigger to overbalance the other portions of the trigger and ensure engagement with the lever.

A double bearing is placed on the side of the cylinder to carry the side shaft C driving the valve gear.

Two cams are used to open the exhaust-valves B, and the springs fitted to the extension of the exhaust-valve spindles ensure the valves returning to their seats when the cams release.

The separation of the steam and the exhaust valves possesses many advantages; it lends itself to the perfect adjustment of the steam-cycle, the exhaust valve opening and closing being no longer inter-dependent as in the ordinary slide-valve, but the compression and exhaust opening can be regulated independently of each other.

Adjustments are provided in the steam and exhaust valve coupling-rods and also in the valve spindles, which enable the lead and cut-off to be varied, and the exhaust valve to be slightly adjusted.

A lever and weight is placed on the cut-off spindle L to ensure

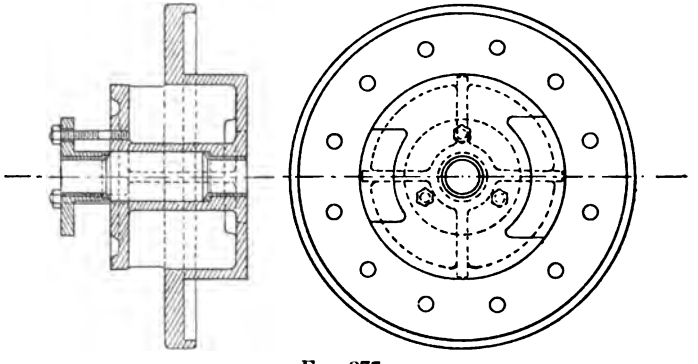


FIG. 377.

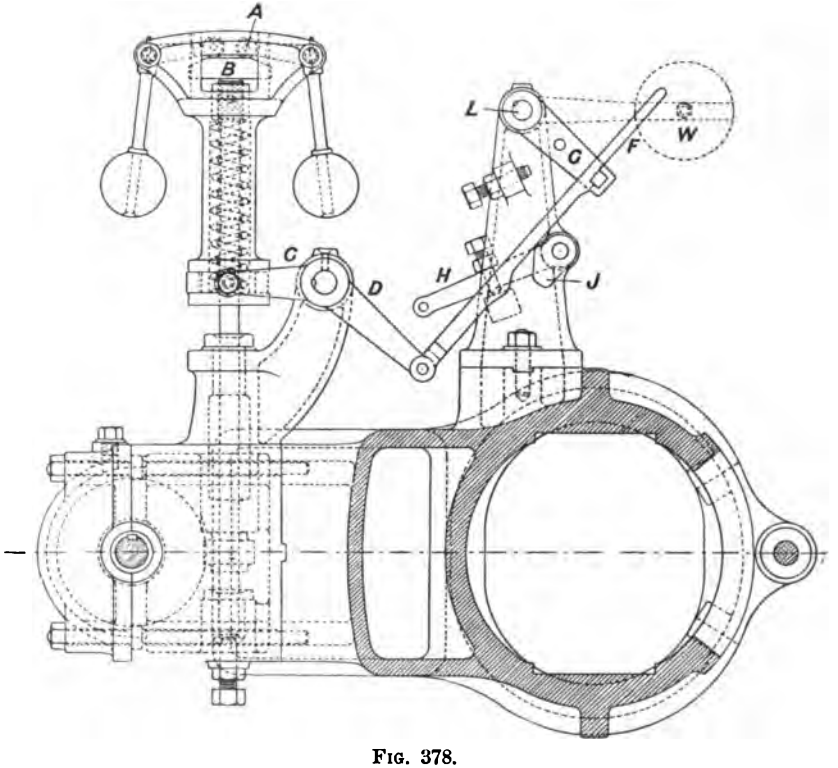


FIG. 378.

the trip being held out of action in the event of any accident happening to the governor or driving-gear, or when the safety device to stop the engine is operated.

The cylinder is securely seated on two planed sole-plates let down on either side of the pit in which the exhaust valves work.

Figs. 378 and 379 show an inverted arrangement of the Hartnell spring governor. The bell-cranks carrying the governor-balls are fitted with rollers, A, in the ends of the short arms, and push on the T-headed governor spindle B. The centrifugal force of the governor-balls has to overcome the spring resistance plus the dead weight of

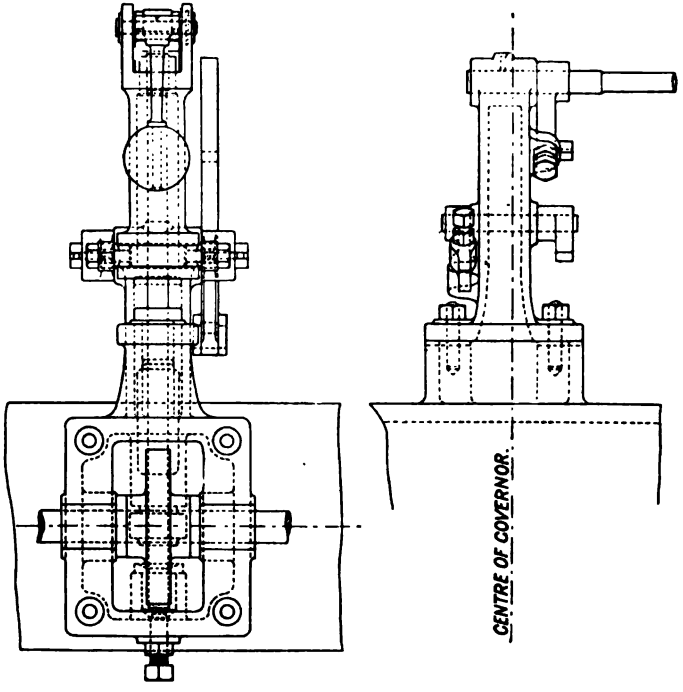


FIG. 379.

the complete head, which includes the box surrounding the spring and the double-ended bracket carrying the centres of the ball arms. A heavier governor is obtained by this arrangement than the simple spring Hartnell governor, which is liable to hunt when working on a fine variation.

The added dead weight of the inverted head tends to check the inter-revolution variation of the governor due to the varying angular velocity arising from irregular turning effort on the crank-pin.

The governor spindle is of steel, and is hardened at the bottom where it rests on an adjustable toe-piece, also hardened.

The governor is driven by skew-gearing, the driving wheel of which is keyed on the side shaft.

The gearing is cased in and flooded with oil, so that constant lubrication is ensured.

A cast-iron die-piece is held by set screws between the side levers, and the governor motion is transmitted therefrom to the cut-off gear.

The communicating mechanism between the lifting levers C and D and the cut-off spindle L is arranged so that the valve gear is disconnected from the governor in the event of an accident happening to the governor, or of its being inoperative.

When the governor falls below its normal working position, the notch in the catch-link

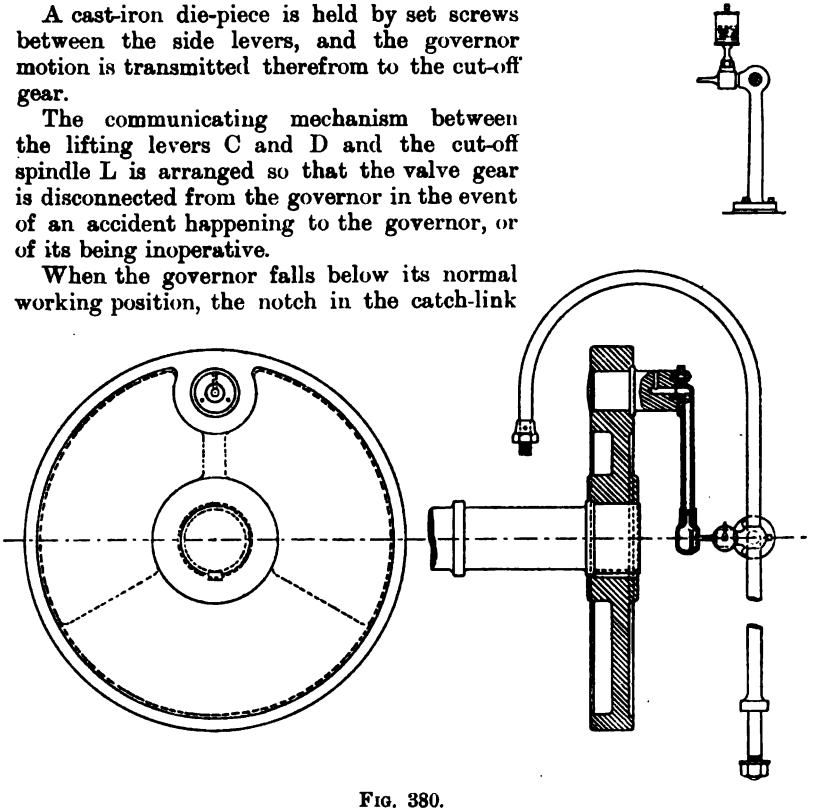


FIG. 380.

F comes into contact with the small inclined lever G and moves the detaching lever so that the trigger cannot engage the trip lever, and the engine is stopped.

Another lever, H, is also provided, to the end of which a cord is attached, which is connected electrically or otherwise to the various floors of the mill. In the event of urgent necessity arising to immediately stop the engine, the lever H is raised, and the small knock-out lever J lifts the catch-link F, the weight falls, and the engine stops.

Fig. 377 shows the piston-rod stuffing-box. It is arranged with the front flange fitting into a bored portion of the bed, the flange being bolted up to the end of the bed, thereby forming an efficient air-jacket for the front end of the cylinder. The stuffing-box is fitted

with a long neck bush of brass, and the gland is also brass bushed. The edge of the flange projects over the cylinder and holds the lagging in place.

Figs. 323 and 324 show the girder bed for the same engine, which is cored out and planed to receive the cross-head. The flange is faced for attachment to the cylinder. Suitable facings are also provided to receive the side shaft and governor brackets.

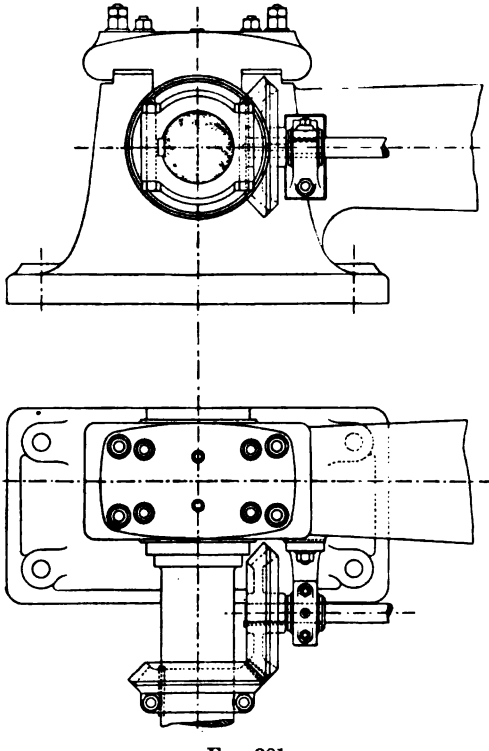


FIG. 381.

A large cast-iron oil receiver is sunk into the ground to catch all oil from main bearings and crank disc when standing.

Bosses and facings are provided to receive the handrail and pillar.

Fig 380 shows a cast-iron disc crank which is forced on shaft, and into which the crank-pin is also forced and afterwards riveted over. The crank-pin is oiled from a visible drop lubricator, carried by a column by means of a centrifugal oiler. The oil is applied in the centre line of the shaft, and flows outwards to the surface of the pin through the pipe by centrifugal force.

The ball which receives the oil is divided at the centre, so that if the crank stops on its top centre the oil will be retained in the cavity behind the rib, and not run out on the floor.

Fig. 298 shows a piston, with studded junk plate designed for this engine.

The studs have a collar, which is let into a recess, and a small pin driven into the side to prevent it turning.

The piston block is coned on a swelled end on piston-rod with a 1-in-8 taper.

The rings are of L section, and the spring is of the usual plain coil type.

Fig. 381 shows the arrangement of side shaft driving in conjunction with main girder.

The remaining details for the same engine may be completed from the examples given in the previous chapter on Engine Details.

Proell Valve Gear.—Fig. 382 represents a section of a cylinder fitted with the Proell valve gear, as made by Messrs. Marshall of Gainsborough. The gear consists of two equilibrium admission valves, A, one to each end of the cylinder. These are alternately

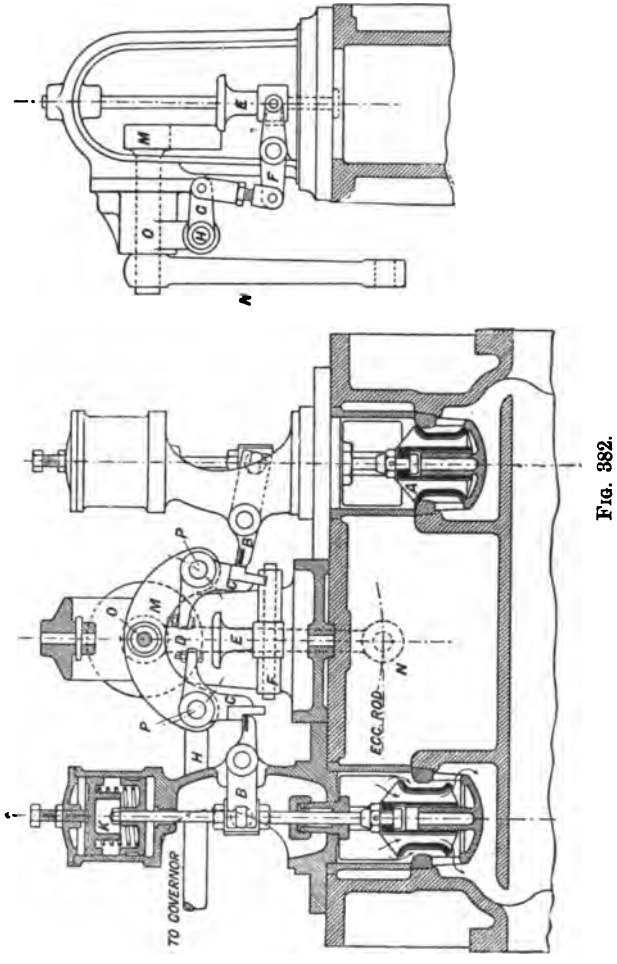


Fig. 382.

lifted by means of the valve spindles, which are each connected with trip levers, B. The trip levers are depressed by means of the bell-crank levers C, which hang on pins, PP, on opposite ends of the rocking-lever M. This rocking-lever is keyed to the same spindle, O, as the lever N, which is driven by the eccentric.

The ends D of the bell-crank levers, projecting inwards towards the centre, are brought into contact at each stroke with the trip pad E. The trip pad is connected with the governor through the medium of the levers F and G and the shaft H, and the height of the trip pad determines the moment of cut-off of the steam, for as soon as the end D of the bell-crank lever reaches the trip pad, any further movement of the rocking-lever disengages the bell-crank lever from the trip lever B, and the valve immediately closes. The closing speed of the valve can be very readily regulated by means of the spring K, which causes the valve to close rapidly and quietly. The Proell governor to work with this gear has already been described on p. 217.

CHAPTER XXII.

THE CORLISS ENGINE.

THIS engine was the invention of the American engineer Geo. H. Corliss, and first appeared in 1850. It has been much used since, especially for the larger sizes of high-class mill engines in all countries, and very generally for ordinary mills and factories in America.

The Corliss valve gear possesses the following important advantages :—

1. Reduced clearance volume and clearance surface, owing to the shortness of the admission and exhaust passages obtained by placing the valves close to the ends of the cylinders. In such cylinders the clearance will vary from 3 to 5 per cent. of the piston displacement.

2. Separate valves are used for steam and exhaust, the steam-valves being at the top corners of horizontal cylinders and the exhaust valves at the bottom corners, by which means, during the flow of the steam from the cylinder, the exhaust surfaces are swept clear of water and a natural system of drainage is thus provided. This advantage applies more especially to horizontal cylinders.

3. It maintains a wide opening during admission of steam with a sudden return of the valve at cut-off, thus preventing wire drawing of the steam during admission.

4. It permits of independent adjustment of admission and cut-off, release and compression.

It is frequently claimed for the employment of separate steam and exhaust valves that condensation is reduced because the entering steam coming through a separate passage, and not through that through which the steam is exhausted, does not come into contact with surfaces which have just been cooled down by the comparatively cold exhaust steam, as is the case when the port is common to both admission and exhaust; but this claim is only valid if the area of clearance surface is reduced by the arrangement of separate valves, because in any case, all the surface up to the exhaust valve must be heated up each stroke whether the steam is admitted through the same or through a separate port. One important objection to the Corliss valve gear is the limitation of the speed of rotation of engines fitted with it owing to its action being dependent upon the engagement and tripping of catches.

About 120 revolutions per minute is probably nearly the limit of speed. To avoid this limitation, the valve gear is now made for high

rotational speeds without the trip-gear, the connection between the wrist-plate and the steam-admission valve being direct, and the regulation of the cut-off being obtained by varying the travel of the wrist-plate motion through a governor and link.

Fig. 383 is an illustration of the general arrangement of a Corliss engine with a single eccentric for both admission and exhaust valves.

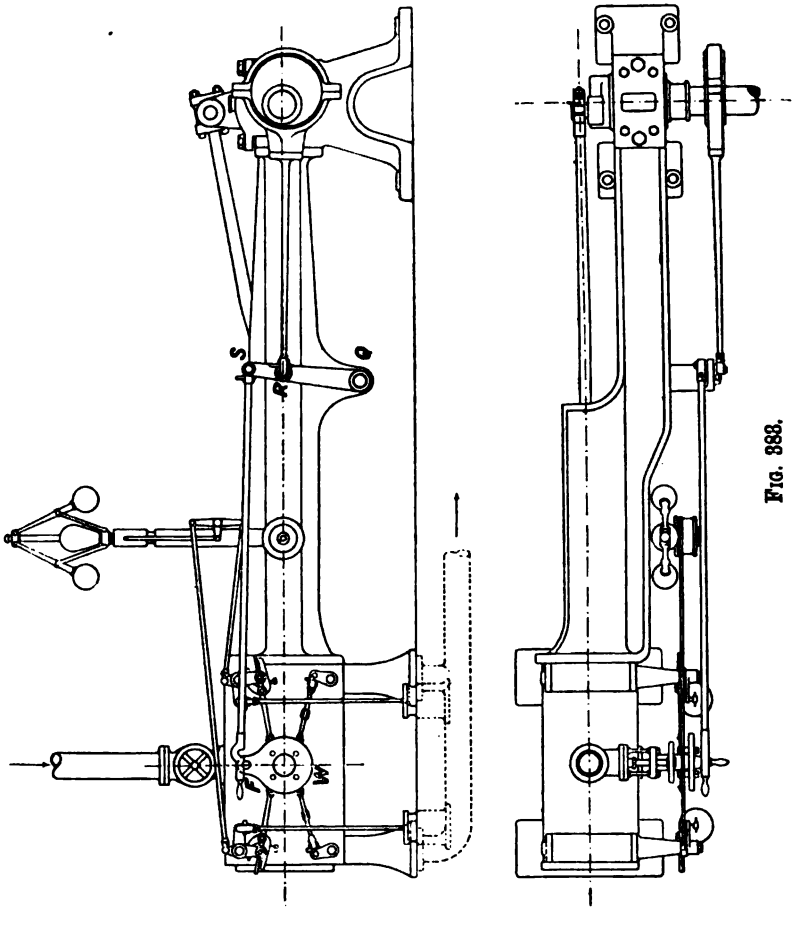


Fig. 383.

Fig. 384 shows in skeleton the arrangement of levers by which the valves are driven. Motion is obtained in the first place from an eccentric on the crank-shaft which is connected by its rod to a vertical rocker-arm, QRS. Attached to the rocker-arm is the hook rod or lever FS which drives the wrist-plate W, and causes it to oscillate about its centre of motion O.

Attached to the wrist-plate are four valve rods, two marked BB,

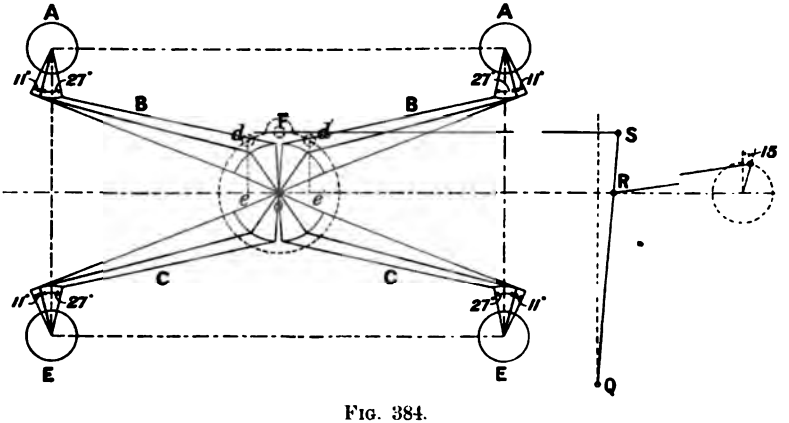


FIG. 384.

attached to the two upper or steam-admission valves AA, and two marked CC, to the two lower or exhaust valves EE. The valve rods and levers are shown in three positions—in the middle, and at the two ends of their stroke.

The exhaust-valve rods are connected directly to the exhaust-valve spindles, but the admission-valve rods work loosely on the bosses of the valve-stem brackets. These levers engage the admission valve by means of a trip or catch, and the steam-port is thereby opened during the first portion of the piston path, after which the trip disengages the lever and the valve suddenly closes the port by means of the weight or spring of the dash-pot plunger.

The admission valve remains closed and at rest during the remainder of the stroke, also during the return or exhaust stroke, until it is again engaged by the catch so as to move the valve in time for the new stroke of the piston.

Fig. 385 is a longitudinal and sectional view of a Corliss steam valve.

Fig. 386 illustrates the trip-gear as used on the early Corliss engines, and as still used by many American engineers, and which is known as the "crab-claw gear."

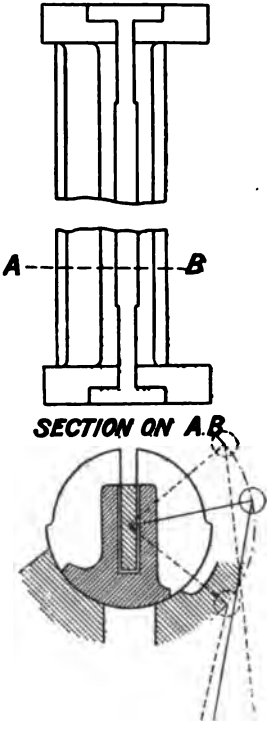


FIG. 385.

The valve-rod B (Fig. 386) is driven from the wrist-plate. The bell-crank lever AA is securely attached to the valve spindle C. A square-headed bolt D, with a hole through the square head, is attached to the lower lever of the bell-crank A. The valve-rod B passes freely through the hole in the pivoted nut D. To the rod B a fork EE is pinned at F, and the lower limb of the fork is kept up to its work by a spring G as shown. A steel plate H is fixed in the upper face of the lower limb of EE, by which it catches the sleeve D of the lever A.

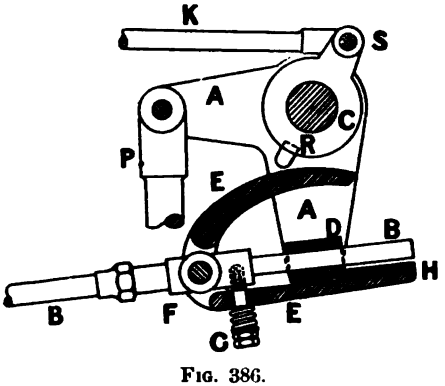


FIG. 386.

When the catch H and sleeve D are engaged, as shown in Fig. 386, then the movement of the valve-rod B to the left pulls also the bell-crank lever AA, and turns the valve on its spindle C, so as to open the steam-admission port. Cut-off at any required point is obtained by means of a disengagement of the catch H which liberates the bell-crank lever, and the valve is suddenly closed by the pull of the lever P.

Disengagement of the catch is effected by means of a projecting pin, R, on a separate lever, S, which rides loose on the valve spindle C, and which is connected to the governor by the rod K.

At a given speed the position of the projecting pin R remains constant, and as the lever A is pulled by the catch H towards the left, the curved upper limb of the lever EE comes into contact with the pin R and is depressed, and the catch H is disengaged from D.

The valve spindles are rectangular where they pass through the valves (Fig. 385). The valves may thus be easily twisted as required, and at the same time be free to move outwards relatively to the spindle as wear takes place.

Fig. 387 shows an arrangement of Corliss valves for a vertical engine. S, S are the steam-admission valves, and E, E are the exhaust valves. The steam enters the cylinder through the port *a*, and leaves the cylinder through the opening *b*, when the exhaust valve uncovers the exhaust port *c*. The valves are here shown for mid-position of the eccentric, that is, the exhaust valves are just about to open or to close their respective ports, and the steam-admission valves overlap the ports, the amount of overlap in this position being the true "lap" of the valve as in the ordinary slide-valve. In addition to this lap, the valve, when liberated by the trip gear, swings further and covers the port by an amount greater than the lap, as shown by the dotted positions in the figure. This additional movement is called the "seal" of the valve, or the "dwelling angle."

To set the Valves of a Corliss Engine.—Usually marks are placed on the ends of the valves and on the valve-box, showing the relative positions of the working edge of the valve and of the port. Thus in Fig. 387, 2 is the working edge of the steam-valve and 3 of the steam-port; also 4 is the working edge of the exhaust valve and 5 the working edge of the exhaust port. A centre line is drawn on the boss of the wrist-plate, and three lines are drawn on the periphery of the wrist-plate support, corresponding with the middle and two end positions of the wrist-plate centre line (see Fig. 390).

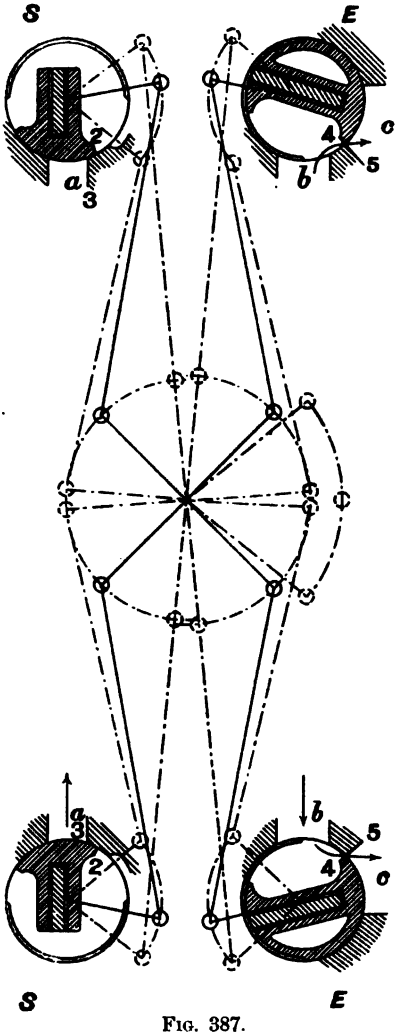


Fig. 387.

First the wrist-plate is set in its middle position with its centre line vertical. The steam-valves are then set so that they each have the required amount of lap. In the Fig. 387, the amount by which the edge 2 of the valve overlaps the edge 3 of the port when the wrist-plate is in mid position, is the lap of the valve.

The amount of lap given depends upon the size of the engine, and may vary from $\frac{1}{8}$ in. to $\frac{1}{4}$ in. in small engines, to $\frac{5}{8}$ in. or more in larger engines.

The amount of lap can be varied by shortening or lengthening the valve rods by means of the adjustable nuts on the valve rods.

Similarly, when the wrist-plate is in mid position, the exhaust valve edges 4 are adjusted equally in both exhaust valves to the exhaust-port edges 5. When the exhaust valves have no lap, as is often the case, then the edges 4 and 5 coincide for both the exhaust valves when the wrist-plate is in mid position.

The rocker arm—to which the eccentric rod and wrist-plate lever are attached—stands vertical for horizontal engines (see QRS, Fig. 383), or horizontal for vertical engines, when the wrist-plate is in mid position.

Fig. 388 gives a wrist-plate diagram. OD and OB show the extreme positions of the levers and OC mid position. This is a case in which a double reversal of stress takes place in the levers and pins during each forward and backward stroke of the wrist-plate. This is shown by the passing of the levers AB and OB outside the dotted line joining the centre O of the wrist-plate, and drawn tangent to the valve-lever arc, thus reversing the angle between the radius of the wrist-plate and the valve-rod. This is an objectionable arrangement, and should be avoided where possible.

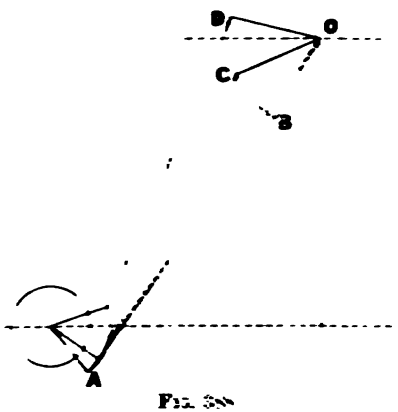


Fig. 388.

Setting of the Eccentric, for a single eccentric and one wrist-plate working both admission and exhaust valves. If the steam-valves and the exhaust valves have no lead, that is, admission and release take place at end of the stroke, and there is no compression, then the eccentric is set at right angles to the crank and it has zero angular advance. In this case the latest point of cut-off possible is at half-stroke of the piston, because the eccentric controls the valve during 90° rotation of the shaft as a maximum, past the point of opening of the valve. At or before the end of the valve stroke the trip gear, which is worked by the governor, liberates the valve, which suddenly closes and cuts off the steam-supply. The trip gear can only act during the movement of the gear through some portion of this angle. In order to obtain lead of the valve, an early release, and moderate compression, the eccentric is given angular advance. This still further reduces the number of degrees during which the eccentric has control of the valve, and the maximum point of cut-off is at some point earlier than half-stroke.

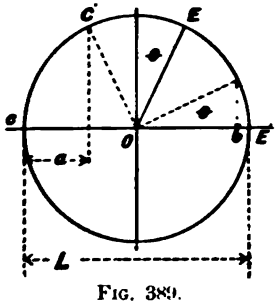


Fig. 389.

Thus, if the eccentric, Fig. 389, is set with an angular advance θ, then the eccentric is at E when the crank is at C.

When the crank has moved through an angle COC', the eccentric has reached E', the position of maximum opening of the valve, and the trip gear must have acted at or before this point. Hence crank position C', that is, cut off at $\frac{a}{L}$ of the stroke, represents the latest point of cut-off possible with this arrangement.

If the valve lever were connected to the wrist-plate without any

trip gear, then the valve would gradually return and the port be closed when the piston is at some point, *b*, near the end of the stroke as with an ordinary slide-valve without lap, but in that case the special feature of the Corliss gear would disappear, as it was designed to provide an efficient means of obtaining a range of early cut-off points to secure economical expansion of the steam in the cylinder.

If a larger range of expansion is required than that provided as above, it is possible to secure it by the use of two eccentrics and a

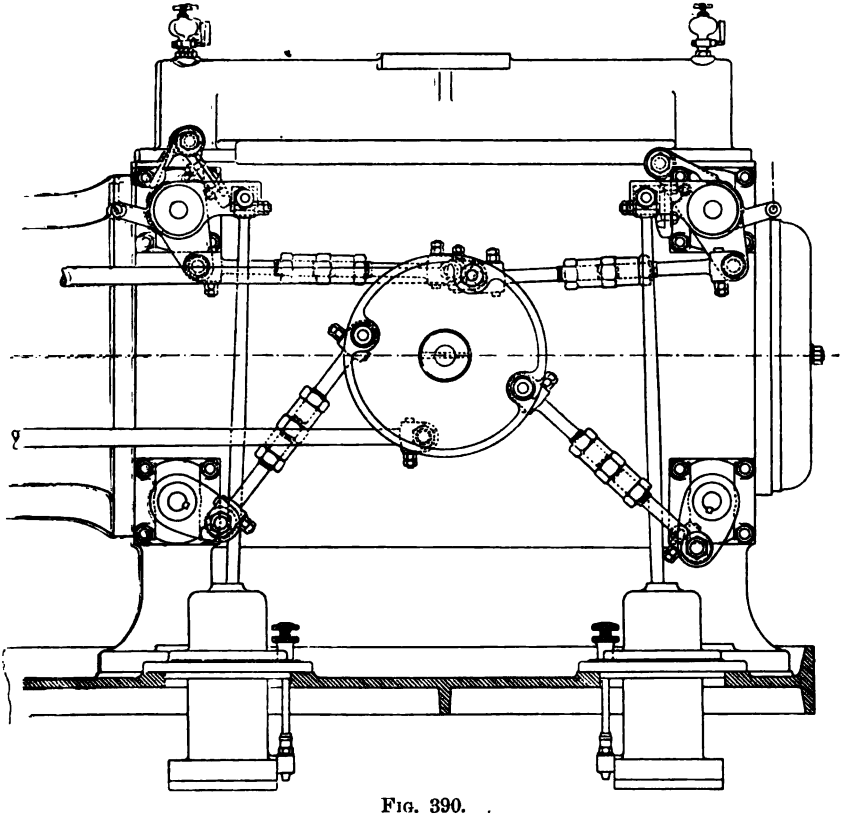


FIG. 390.

double wrist-plate: one for the admission valves and the other for the exhaust valves, as shown in Figs. 390 *et seq.*

Considering further the case of the single eccentric, from Fig. 384, it will be seen that the wrist-plate pin, F, travels through an arc *dd'* about its centre *o*, this angle being bisected by the vertical centre line through *o*. If vertical lines be projected from points *dd'* to the horizontal centre line through *o*, and cutting it at *ee'* respectively,

then ee' is the diameter of the virtual or equivalent eccentric giving the movement dd' to the wrist-pin, and the throw of the actual eccentric $= ee' \times \frac{QR}{QS}$

The movement at the edge of the valve, for a given angular movement of the valve lever, is measured on the valve circumference.

An important point to notice is the means which the wrist-plate

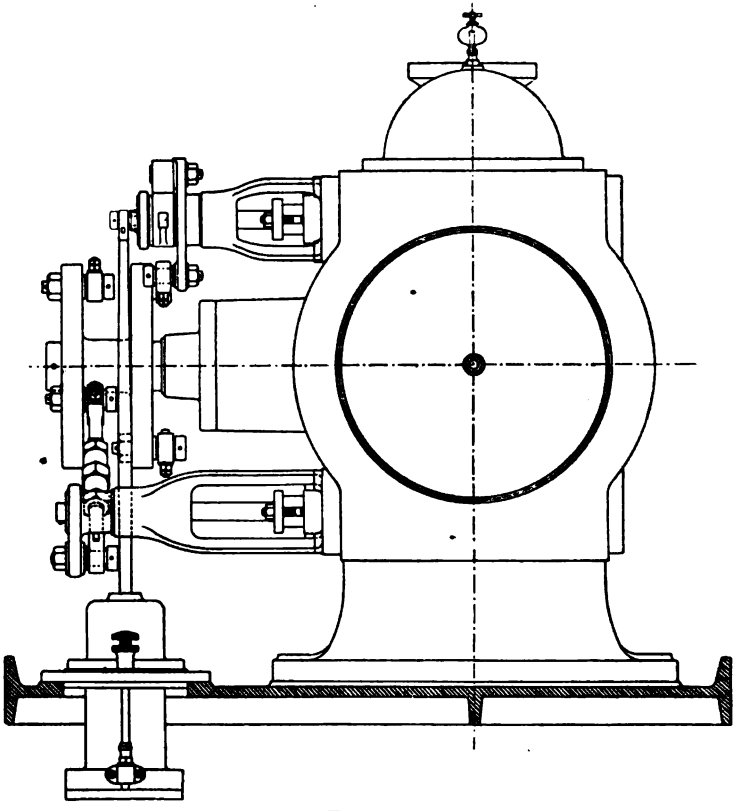


FIG. 391.

provides for giving the valve small movements when closed, and large, and therefore quick, movements when the port is open. This reduces the power required to drive the valve gear to a minimum. Thus, in the example, Fig. 384, during the movement of the wrist-plate through the first and second half of its total arc, the steam-admission valve moved through 11° and 27° respectively, and the exhaust valve 11° and 27° respectively. For ordinary engines of

the type illustrated in Fig. 383, the angular advance of the eccentric is made about 15°.

The diameter of the valve = $\frac{1}{4}$ diameter of cylinder. The length of the steam-admission port = diameter of cylinder, and the width of the port, as for all ordinary engines of the slide-valve type, =

$$\frac{\text{area of piston in square feet} \times \text{piston speed in feet per minute}}{6000 \times \text{length of port in feet}}$$

The width of the exhaust port is made about $1\frac{1}{2}$ times that of the admission port.

Figs. 390 to 393 show Corliss cylinders in elevation and section

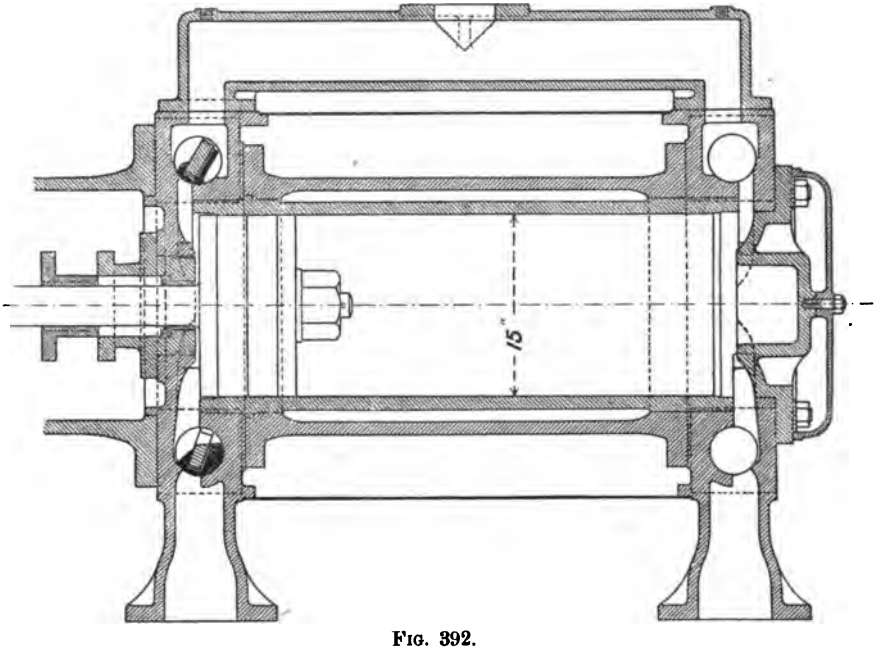


FIG. 392.

for a 15 in. × 28 in. × 36 in. cross-coupled compound engine, main bearings 9 in. × 16 in., running at 105 revolutions per minute, developing 340 I.H.P. as a regular load, and 425 I.H.P. with an overload, 160 lbs. boiler pressure, 26 in. vacuum.

Figs. 392 and 393 are longitudinal and transverse sections of the high-pressure cylinder; the low-pressure cylinder is of similar design, but of larger diameter, and is not shown.

The Corliss valve gear, shown in Figs. 390 and 391, has a double wrist-plate, one for operating the steam-valves and one for the exhaust valves. This arrangement allows the steam to be admitted with a suitable lead, and it provides a range of cut-off which may be

varied from 0 to $\frac{5}{8}$ of the stroke. It also enables the compression to be adjusted to the varied requirements of the speed and load of the engine without interfering with the steam-admission arrangements.

We have already seen that with the ordinary single wrist-plate gear, driven by one eccentric, when we have a small amount of lead and moderate compression, the point of cut-off cannot be later than about $\frac{1}{3}$ of the stroke. But for smartly handling considerable changes of load with minimum change of speed, the ordinary single eccentric gear is not so good as the double wrist-plate gear.

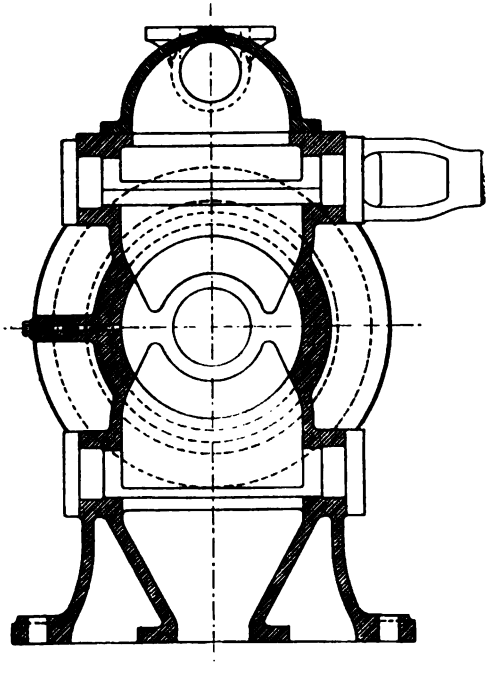


FIG. 393.

In the latest examples of Corliss engines for central-power stations, double wrist-plates are used on both high- and low-pressure cylinders, and the cut-off in both cylinders is regulated by the governor. By cutting off early in the low-pressure cylinder at light loads, as well as in the high, and by having a large receiver volume, the pressure in the receiver may be maintained practically constant and kept fairly high, by which means this storehouse of steam is instantly available for duty in the low-pressure cylinder to promptly take up any large increment of load that may occur at any moment, without any serious change of speed; whereas, in an ordinary engine with a small receiver and a cut-off on the high-pressure cylinder only, the steam in reserve for the low-pressure cylinder is practically nothing at light loads, and time would elapse before the low-pressure cylinder could help to deal with a sudden increase of load, and this would necessarily result in the mean time in considerable falling off of speed.

Details of Trip Motion (Fig. 394).—The trip arrangement consists essentially of four pieces: (1) the valve-driving lever A, keyed direct to the valve spindle C, and which carries a hardened steel block, B, on which the trip catch D engages; (2) the double-armed driving-lever EE receiving motion from the wrist-plate through rod J, and mounted loosely on the overhanging wrought-iron tube in valve

bracket, and which has a stud in the upper boss carrying (3) the hanging trip catch DD. The trip catch is arranged to fall in its place by gravity when the lever EE, on which it is mounted, moves into its extreme forward (anti-clockwise) position, and on the return (clockwise) stroke of the lever the catch then engages with the hardened steel block B on the valve-driving lever A, the effect of which is to move the valve on its own axis, C, and open the steam-admission port.

The catch is liberated by coming into contact with a detaching cam (4), marked F, which is formed on a ring working loose on the boss of the driving-lever, and having an extended arm, which is attached by a rod K to the governor. The upper arm of the trip catch DD is shaped to a suitable angle, and slides up against the detaching cam, F, by which means the hardened edge D of the catch is disengaged from the block B, the valve spindle is liberated, and the valve is immediately returned by the pull of the dash-pot lever M to its position of rest, closing and overlapping the steam-port.

A supplementary spring, H, is placed behind the trip catch to assist gravity and to make engagement certain. The governing cam is moved as required by the governor through rod K, and it varies the point of cut-off by varying the position of the point of contact F from zero to the maximum capacity of the gear. The period of impact of the detaching mechanism is very short, and a moderately powerful governor is unaffected by it. The governor is free to move during the admission of steam, and can be made extremely sensitive, say within 1 per cent. variation.

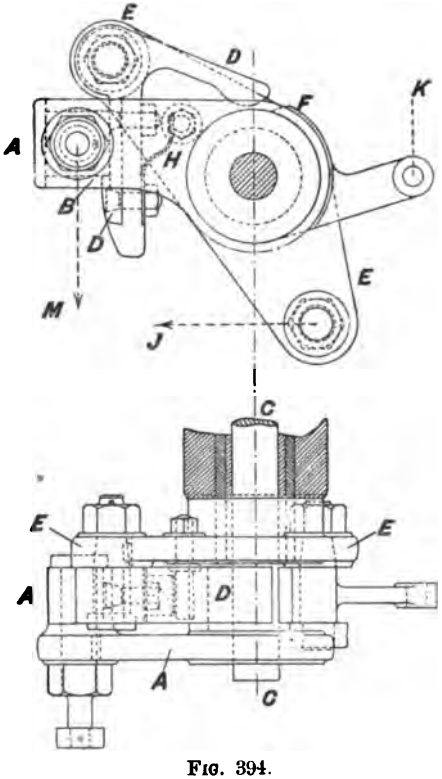


FIG. 394.

The Dash-pot.—The function of the dash-pot is to return the steam-valve quickly and noiselessly when the governor releases the trip catch. The dash-pot piston is sometimes pressed down by atmospheric pressure, a vacuum being formed under the piston as it is

raised by the valve-gear during steam admission. The dash-pot (Fig. 395) is controlled by a spring in preference to depending on vacuum. The speed of closing can be accelerated or retarded by regulating the air-escape plug A, which gives a less or greater compression of air as the escape plug is opened or closed.

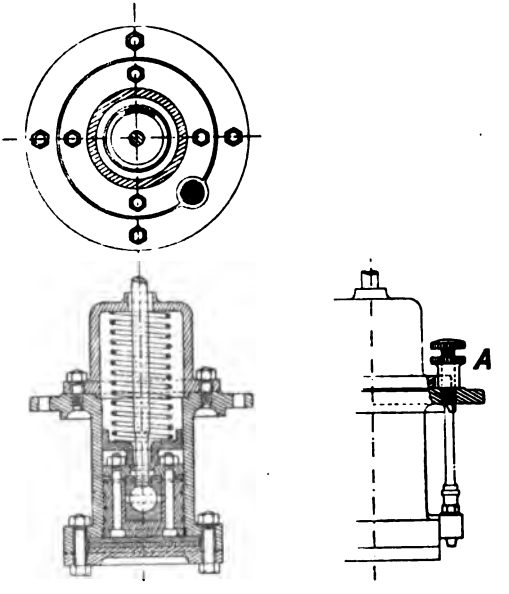


FIG. 395.—DASH-POT DETAILS.

The lower cover of the dash-pot holds in place two pieces of leather which form a pad or buffer, and finally bring the valve and dash-pot piston to rest.

The ball-joint is provided so that the connection between the pin in the steam-valve lever and the dash-pot piston can adjust itself to the line of least resistance, that is, the line of least friction.

Fig. 396 shows an enlarged view of the air-escape plug. The details of the other parts of the gear explain themselves.

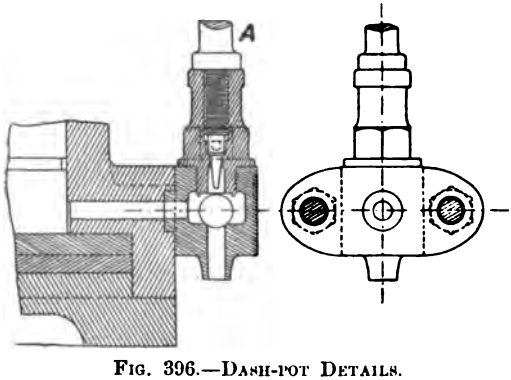


FIG. 396.—DASH-POT DETAILS.

Diagram of Steam-valve Movements. — Fig. 397 shows a geometrical analysis of the movements of the steam-admission valve gear. Arcs A, B, C, and D represent respectively clearance movement of valve lever to effect engagement of trip with valve lever, steam-lap, lead, and admission.

The point of cut-off is determined by the governor, and the maximum is made as great as is consistent with the certain disengagement of the trip. The relation of crank-pin to eccentric is seen by following the successive positions of the periods A, B, C, and D from the valve-lever, through the top and

bottom pins of the wrist-plate, to the circle of the eccentric path.

It will be seen that the eccentric has negative angular advance θ, that is, the eccentric has not moved through 90° from its extreme position when the crank is on the dead centre, but through an angle θ less than 90°.

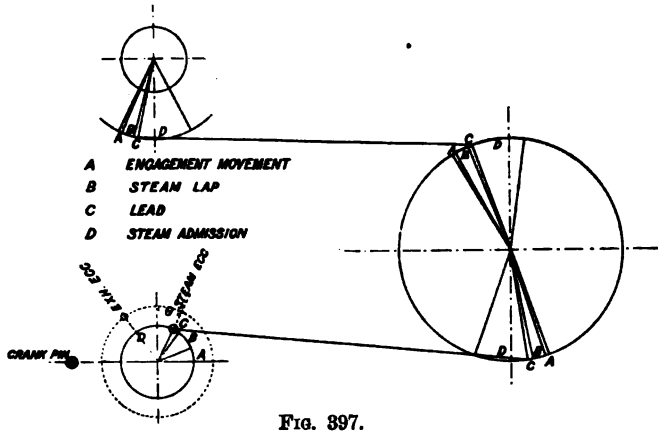


FIG. 397.

Diagram of Exhaust-valve Movements.—The theoretical indicator diagram, Fig. 398, is first drawn to decide upon the points of release and compression, and the respective position of these points is projected to the crank-pin circle below the indicator diagram.

Radial lines are drawn showing the crank positions at release and compression, that is, when the exhaust port opens and closes. If the angle between these crank positions be bisected, the crank position is obtained at which the exhaust valve is at the extreme end of its travel; in other words, this is the crank position when the eccentric is on the dead centre, or *vice versâ* it is the eccentric position when the crank is on the dead centre, and thus the relative positions of crank and eccentric are as shown in Fig. 398.

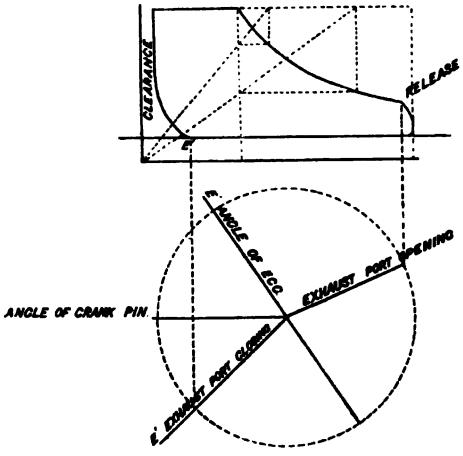


FIG. 398.

Fig. 399 is a diagram showing the respective positions of crank eccentric, wrist-plate, valve-rods, and levers for the exhaust valve.

The circle of eccentric travel is first drawn on centre A, and the circumference divided into any number of equal parts numbered consecutively. These points are projected to the centre line, and with the length of the eccentric rod as radius corresponding points

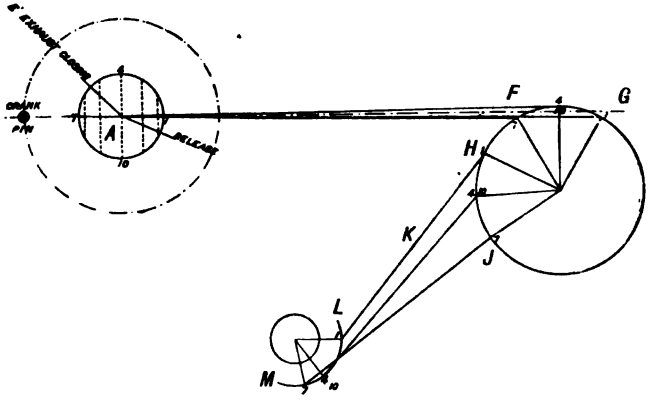


FIG. 399.

are transfixed on the travel arc FG on the wrist-plate. The distances thus obtained are then marked on the path of the pin HJ, and with the length of the exhaust valve-rod K as radius the movement of the exhaust pin on wrist-plate is marked off on the path of the pin of the exhaust valve-lever LM. It will be noticed that the

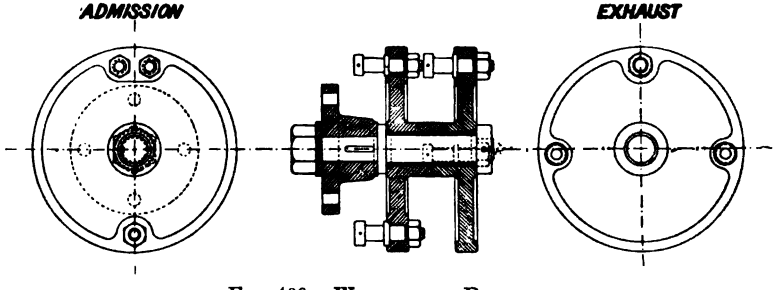


FIG. 400.—WRIST-PLATE DETAILS.

movement of the valve during the half-period from 4 to 7 position (see valve lever arc LM) is much less than that during the half-period from 1 to 4.

The pin on the vibrating lever from which the wrist-plate is driven is taken to represent the travel of the valve. The real travel of the eccentric is proportionately less, depending on the length of the lever connections.

Fig. 400 is a drawing of the wrist-plate details, showing the admission and exhaust wrist-plates on the same spindle.

Fig. 401 shows details of valve spindle gland and bracket. Fig. 402 shows in detail the adjustable head of the valve-rods.

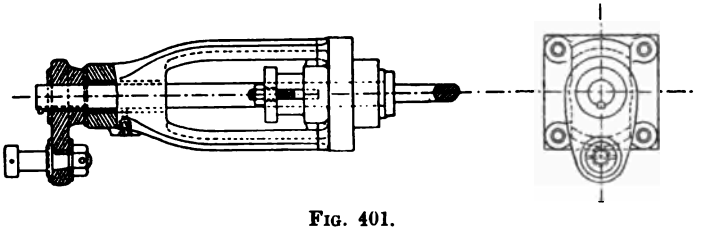


FIG. 401.

As an example of the performance of engines of the compound Corliss class, the following results are given from a test of a pair of

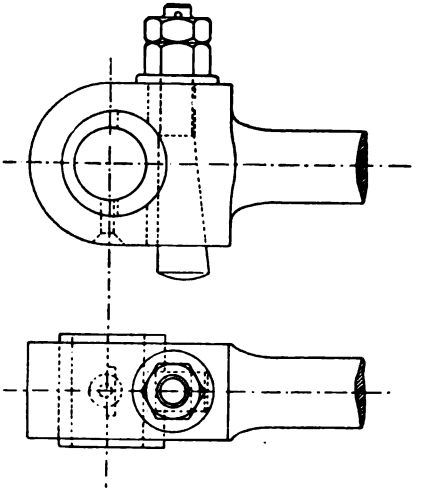


FIG. 402.

compound horizontal Corliss engines, made by Messrs. Hick, Hargreaves & Co., of Bolton.

Diameter of piston, high pressure	30 in.
„ low pressure	56 „
Diameter of piston-rods	6 „
Stroke	5 ft.
Clearance of high-pressure cylinder	4 per cent.
Clearance of low-pressure cylinder	5 „
Diameter of air-pump	25½ in.
Stroke of air-pump	20 „
Diameter of air-pump rod	3½ „

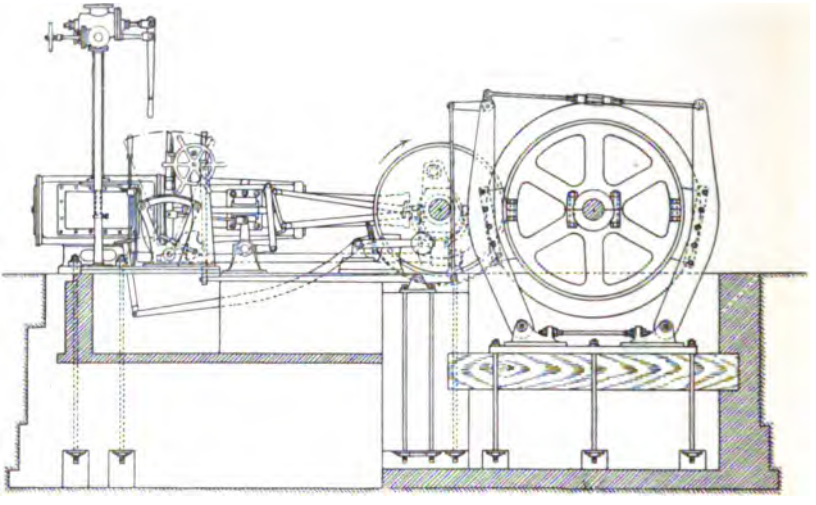


FIG. 403.

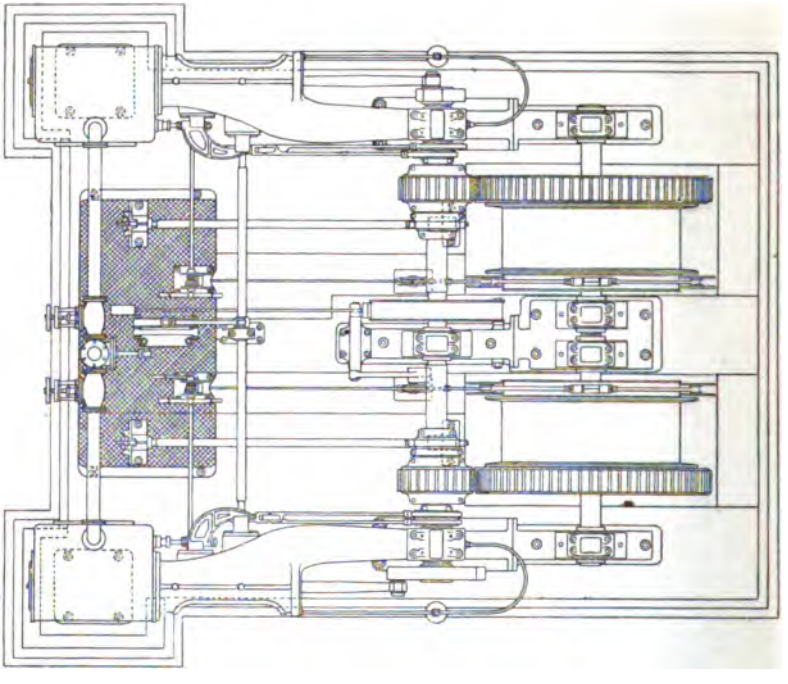


FIG. 404.

Diameter main steam-pipe	12 ft.
Flywheel diameter, grooved to receive 30 ropes ...	26 „
Volume of receiver between high-pressure exhaust valves and low-pressure admission valves ...	117·12 cubic ft.
Boiler pressure	112 lbs.
Piston speed	606 ft. per min.
Total I.H.P.	882·2
Dry steam per I.H.P. per hour	14·42 lbs.
Dry coal per I.H.P. per hour	1·74 „

Figs. 403 and 404 are the elevation and plan of a pair of 13-in. × 26-in. coupled geared winding engines suitable for sinking and winding in auriferous countries.

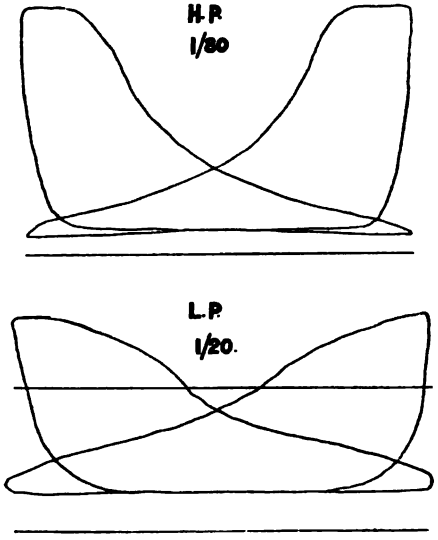


FIG. 405.

Fig. 405 gives reduced copies of the indicator diagrams.

CHAPTER XXIII.

QUICK-REVOLUTION ENGINES.

CONSIDERABLE hesitation is often felt by engineers accustomed to slow rotational speeds to the introduction of engines running at speeds so high that the separate working details become almost indistinguishable. But experience—and by this time a very large experience—has shown that such hesitation is unnecessary, and that with a design suitable for the purpose, such as is now supplied by several firms making a speciality of high speeds, no trouble need be expected on the score of rate of revolution.

The quick-revolution direct-coupled steam-engine is the result, in the first instance, of the urgent demand for such engines for the direct driving of dynamos.

In order to combine high speeds with large power, it is necessary to make the piston area large as compared with the length of stroke, and this suggests the probability of loss of efficiency by excessive clearance. The volume of the clearance in any cylinder varies nearly with the area of the piston, and is independent of the length of stroke, and when expressed as percentage of piston displacement, the proportion of clearance will obviously increase as the length of stroke decreases.

In the long-stroke engine the clearance may be from 3 to 7 per cent., while in the short-stroke type it may range from 10 to 20 per cent. or more. Where the compression does not reach initial pressure, the loss by clearance may thus be large, but this loss is reduced when the engine is compounded, hence the special value of compounding in the short-stroke type of engine.

Apart from the application of such engines for direct driving of dynamos, some advantage of the high rotational speeds are (1) that such engines may be smaller for a given power. (2) They give a more even turning moment than the slower engine of the same power. (3) There is a gain in steam economy at the high rational speeds, owing to the maintenance of a higher mean temperature of cylinder-walls, and a consequent reduction in the amount of condensation in the cylinder, when compared with the long-stroke engine.

Single-acting Engines. *The Willans Engine.*—This famous engine is the design of the late P. W. Willans. It has been the subject of most exhaustive trials and experiments, the results of which are

published in the *Proceedings* of the Institution of Civil Engineers,[1] and form classical studies on steam-engine performances and economy. The arrangement of the engine will be understood from Fig. 406.

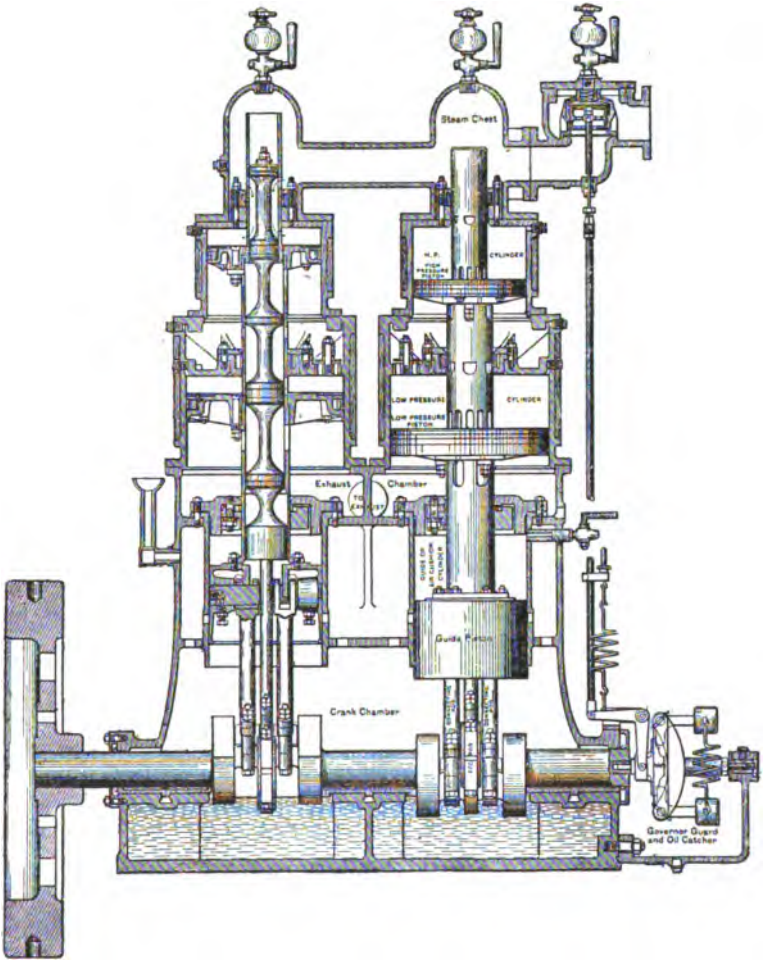


FIG. 406.—THE WILLANS ENGINE.

In the first place, it is a "single-acting" engine, that is, the steam acts upon one side of the piston only. A disadvantage of this arrangement is that for a given power the cylinder capacity must be

[1] *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vols. xciii., xcvi., and cxiv.

twice as great as in a double-acting engine, or else the engine must run twice as many revolutions per minute. The advantage of making the engine single-acting is that it may be run at the highest speeds comfortably, without any danger of knocking, and without the necessity for frequent adjustment of brasses, because in the single-acting engine the working parts are in a condition of *constant thrust*, that is, the piston-rod is pressed against the crosshead-pin, and the connecting-rod against the crank-pin, not only during the working stroke, but during the return stroke also. There is no tendency to knock, because there is no change of direction of force transmitted. In order to secure that the condition of constant thrust is maintained, and that the connecting-rod and piston-rod are not flung away from their respective pins on the upper portion of the up-stroke, an amount of compression must be provided (either by the steam or by other means) which shall always cause a downward pressure in excess of the upward accelerating force. In the Willans engine, the requisite compression is obtained by means of an air-chamber above the guide-piston—the lowest piston on the rod. This piston on the up-stroke compresses the air contained in the chamber above the piston, and thus any amount of compression can be obtained according to the clearance allowed. The work expended in compressing the air is given out again by expansion on the succeeding down-stroke.

The slide-valves are of the piston type, all on one rod, and work inside the hollow piston-rod, the valves moving over ports cut in the form of elongated passages in the hollow piston-rod as shown. This arrangement reduces clearance volume to a minimum, and serves as an excellent means of draining the cylinders of water, the water being swept out with the exhaust steam when the valve uncovers the port.

Steam is admitted above the top piston through ports in the hollow piston-rod, and is exhausted to under side of same, in each case entering and leaving the cylinders through ports in the piston-rod.

Each line of pistons is connected to its corresponding crank by two connecting-rods, with a space between them, in which works an eccentric forged solid on the crank-pin.

The reason the eccentric is on the crank-pin, and not on the shaft, as usual, is that the valve-face (*i.e.* the inside surface of the hollow piston-rod) moves with the piston; consequently the valve-motion required is a motion relative to the piston, and this is obtained by mounting the eccentric on the crank-pin.

The cranks dip bodily into the lubricant in the crank chamber every revolution. In doing so they splash the oil over the main bearings and other portions requiring lubrication.

The engine is governed by a throttling governor.

References are made to the high economical performance of this engine elsewhere (see pp. 314 and 315).

The Peache engine (Fig. 407) is another example of a good type of single-acting engine. The excess pressure is maintained on the pistons, in the direction of the crank-shaft, during the up-stroke, so

that a constant thrust is maintained on all bearings both on up and down strokes, by means of the compression and subsequent expansion

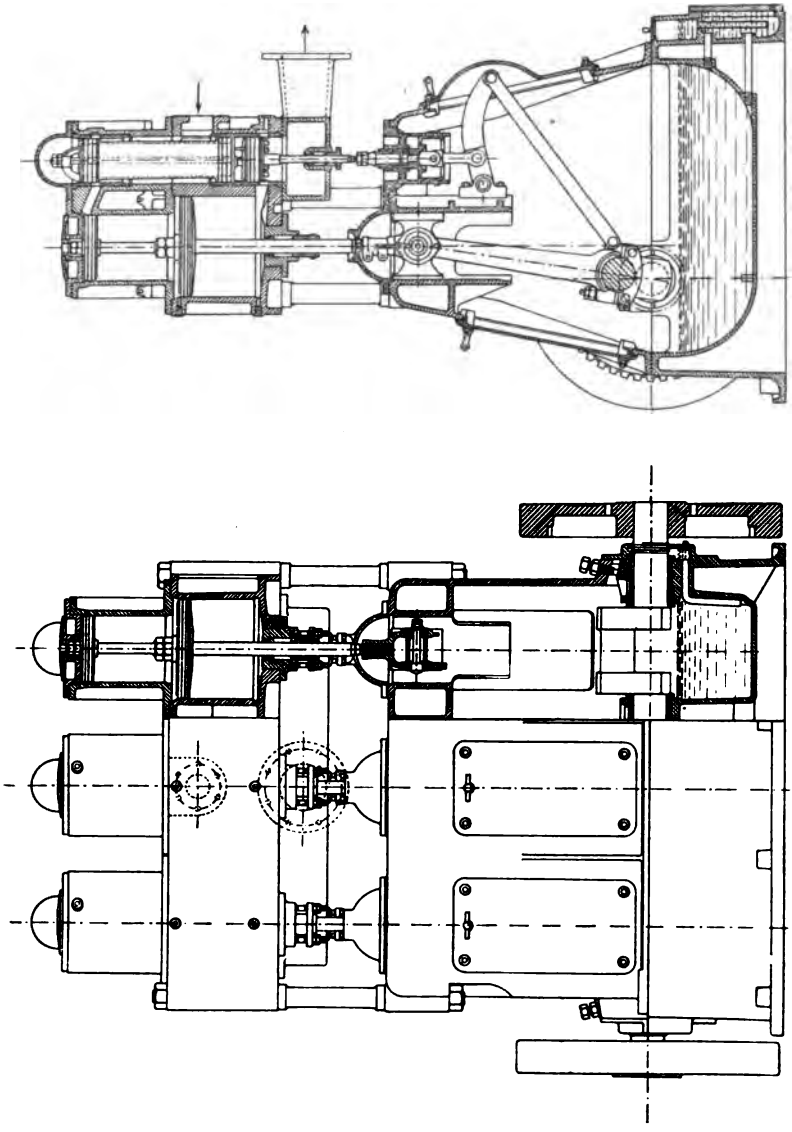


FIG. 407.—THE PEACHE ENGINE.

of steam in the space between the high-pressure and low-pressure pistons. Distribution of the steam is effected by a valve gear deriving

its motion from a point on the connecting-rod. This valve motion provides for the placing of the valves in a convenient position at the back of the cylinders. There are no eccentrics on the crank-shaft, and therefore room is left for long and well-supported crank-shaft bearings. The crank-shaft and other working parts run in a bath of oil and water. The engine consists of three tandem compound engines combined and working on cranks at 120°. The steam is distributed to the two cylinders of each engine by a single piston valve. The steam enters by a branch on the low-pressure cylinder-casting, and at the centre-line of the steam-chest, and passes right and left by passages formed in the casting to the other two steam-chests. At the top of the stroke the high-pressure piston uncovers two small bye-pass ports which communicate with the space underneath that piston, and thus for an instant at the top of each stroke the space called the controlling-cylinder is placed in communication with the high-pressure cylinder, and by this means the initial pressure of steam in the controlling cylinder is maintained at a constant proportion to that in the high-pressure cylinder.

In the condensing type engines, in which the ratio of expansion and range of temperature is large, a steam-jacket is applied to the controlling cylinder, so that the steam in the controlling cylinder becomes a medium for the transfer of heat from the steam-jacket to the working surfaces of the high-pressure and low-pressure cylinders.

To maintain a constant thrust on the valve-motion an air-buffer is adopted.

A feature of this engine is the position of the crank-shaft, which is placed in front of the cylinder-axis. This position is adopted to obviate reversal of pressure of the cross-head on the guides, which occurs in a single-acting engine with the usual position of crank-shaft. It will be seen that the connecting-rod is nearly vertical during the down-stroke, when the heaviest pressures are being transmitted by it, and that during the up-stroke, when the angle the connecting-rod makes with the piston-rod is large, the pressures transmitted are small, but the angle of the connecting-rod being always towards the back cross-head guiding surface, the resultant pressure is always on the back guide.

RESULTS OF TRIALS OF 150 HORSE-POWER PEACHE COMPOUND ENGINE.

	Condensing.	Non-condensing.
Steam-chest pressure	94 lbs.	119 lbs.
Revolutions	438	438
M.E.P.	40·01	42·96
I.H.P.	141	150·5
E.H.P.	124·3	128·0
Efficiency per cent.	88·3	85
Steam per I.H.P. per hour	18·4	22
„ E.H.P. „	20·9	25·8

The Belliss Engine.—This engine well illustrates the possibility of running double-acting engines at high rotational speed without fear of excessive wear and knocking. It is claimed for it that its success

COMPARATIVE TRIALS OF BELLISS 250-H.P. HIGH-SPEED SELF-LUBRICATING ENGINE, CONDENSING, WHEN GOVERNING BY EXPANDING AND BY THROTTLING.[1]

Cylinders 12 *and* 20 *in. diameter, with* 10-*in. stroke. Boiler pressure,* 150 *lbs. per square inch above atmosphere.*

Governing by expansion governor or by throttling.		EXPANDING. Expansion governor *in* action.				THROTTLING. Expansion governor *out of* action.			
Load		Full.	Five eighths.	One third.	One quarter.	Full.	Five eighths.	One third.	One quarter.
Mean effective pressure per square inch reduced to low-pressure cylinder	lbs.	41·0	27·0	16·4	12·4	40·1	25·9	15·7	10·9
Mean revolutions per minute	revs.	370	373	380	380	370	370	380	382
Mean indicated horse-power	I.H.P.	240·9	161·0	99·0	75·3	235·4	152·2	95·0	66·2
Mean electric horse-power	E.H.P.	213·0	132·8	77·8	53·0	213·0	132·2	77·8	53·0
Combined efficiency, $\frac{\text{E.H.P.}}{\text{I.H.P.}}$	per cent.	88 3	82·4	78·5	70·3	90·4	86·8	81·9	80·0
Water per hour, total	lbs.	4579	3041	2209	1818	4473	2871	1992	1505
„ „ per E.H.P.	lbs.	21·5	22·9	28·5	34·3	21·0	21·7	25·6	28·4

[1] From *Proc. Inst. Mech. Engineers*, 1897.

is chiefly due to the application of *forced lubrication*, that is, supplying the lubricant to the moving parts under pressure. The pressure required for this purpose is not the maximum pressure on the bearing, but only a pressure sufficient to force the oil into the bearing on the

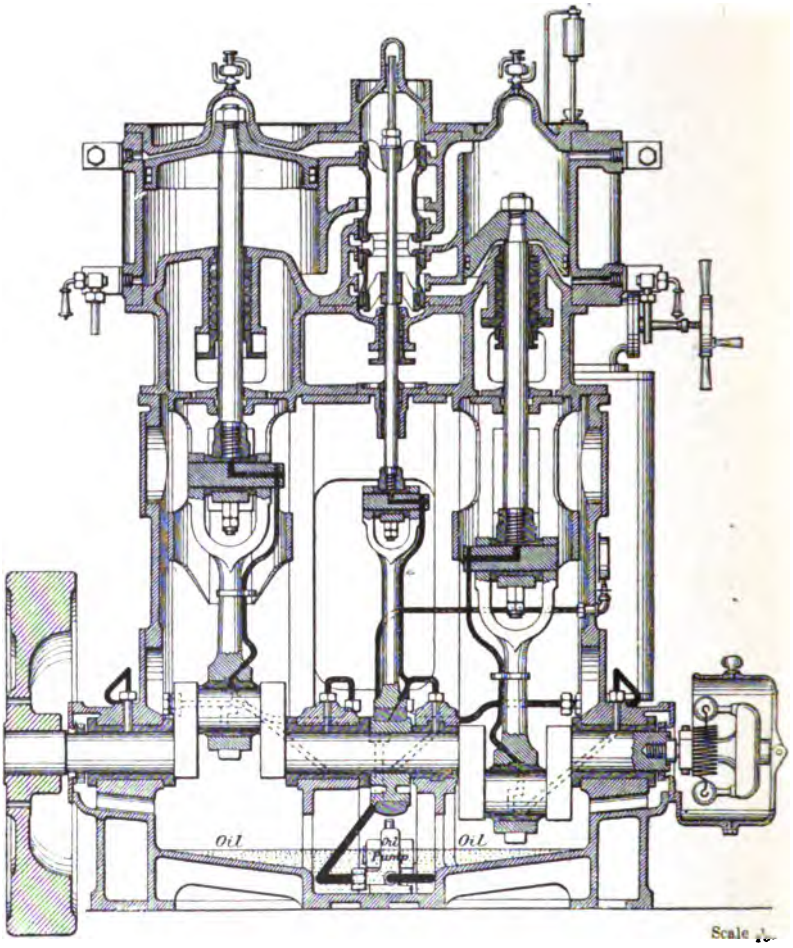
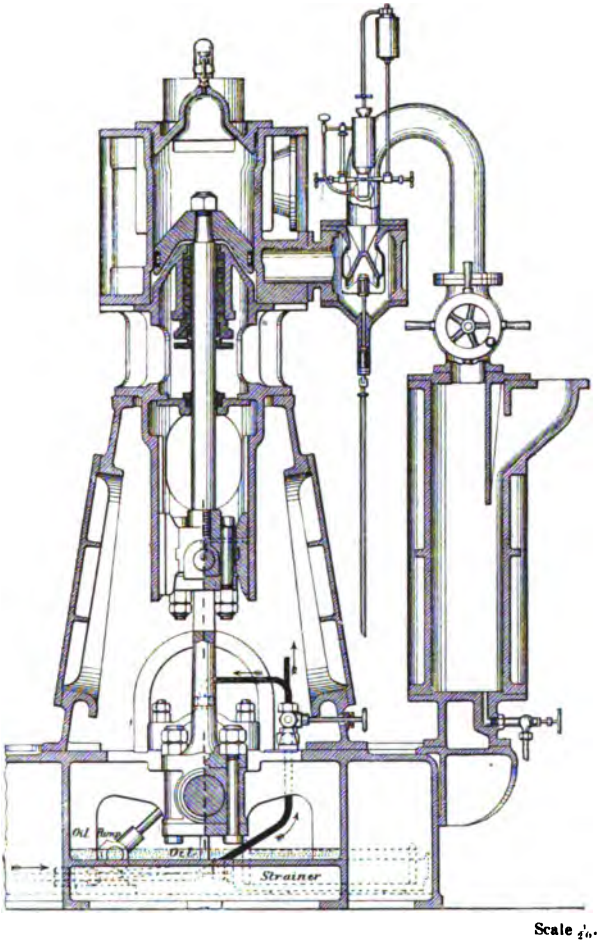


FIG. 408.—THE BELLISS ENGINE.

return stroke, when the pressure is reduced on one side of the pin; while on the driving stroke the time is not sufficient to squeeze the oil from between the surfaces, before the pressure is again reduced and the supply renewed.

The difficulty felt in running double-acting engines at high rotational

speeds arises from the known necessity of close adjustment of brasses to avoid audible knock and ensure quiet running; and this necessary closeness of adjustment renders the pin and its bearing liable to get hot and the pin to seize. The liability to seize arises from the fact



Scale $\frac{1}{40}$.

FIG. 409.—THE BELLISS ENGINE.

that, owing to the necessary closeness of fit, any small increase of temperature in the pin causes sufficient expansion to make it overtake the small clearance permissible when cold, and trouble immediately follows from seizure of the pin.[1]

[1] See Dales on "High-speed Engines," *Proc. Inst. C.E.*, vol. cxxxvi.

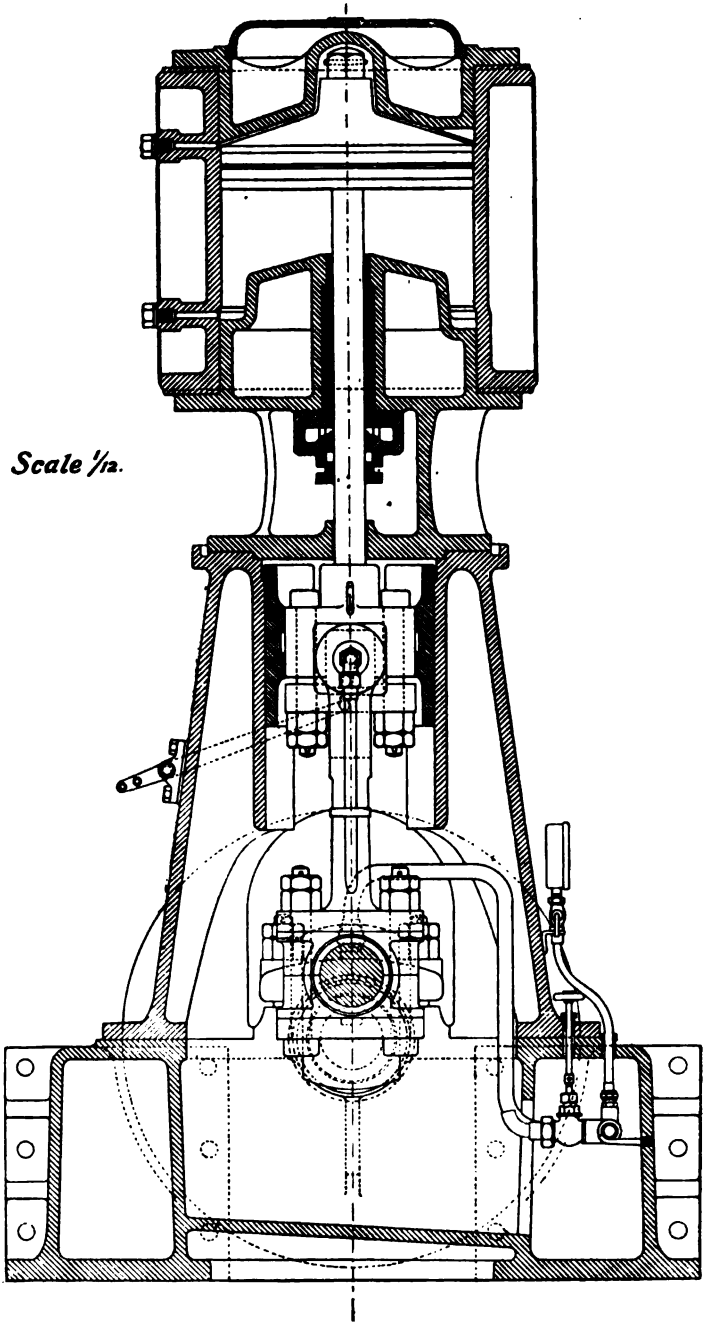


FIG. 410.

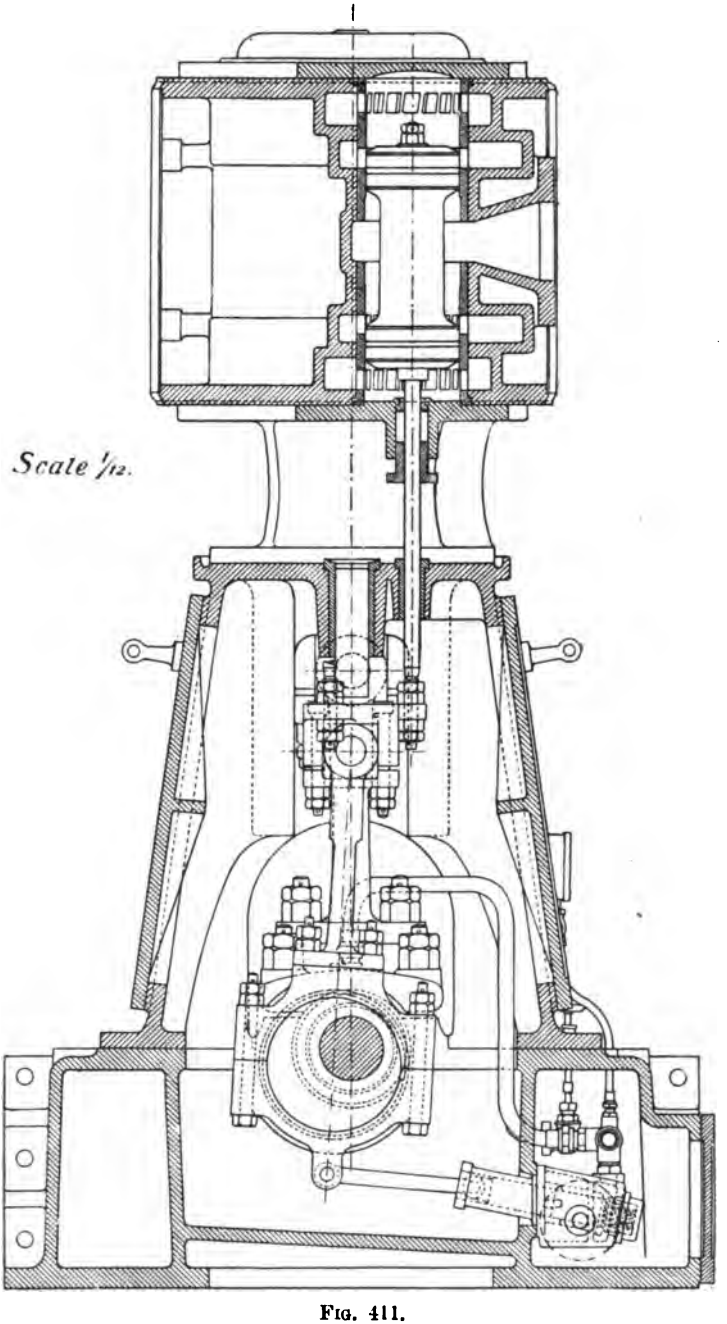


FIG. 411.

There cannot, however, be any increase of temperature in the pin so long as the pin and its bearing are well supplied with oil between the surfaces, hence the value of forced lubrication.

In the Belliss engine the forced lubrication is supplied to all the bearings by means of a simple pump without valves or packing, discharging the oil at a pressure of about 15 lbs. per square inch through a specially arranged system of oil-distributors shown in Fig. 408, which is a sectional elevation of the Belliss engine. Fig. 409 is a side elevation of the same engine.[1]

It will be seen that the steam is supplied to the engine after first passing it through a large separator, where water-particles in the steam due to priming in the boiler or condensation in the pipes are separated, and the steam is passed forward in a drier condition to the engine.

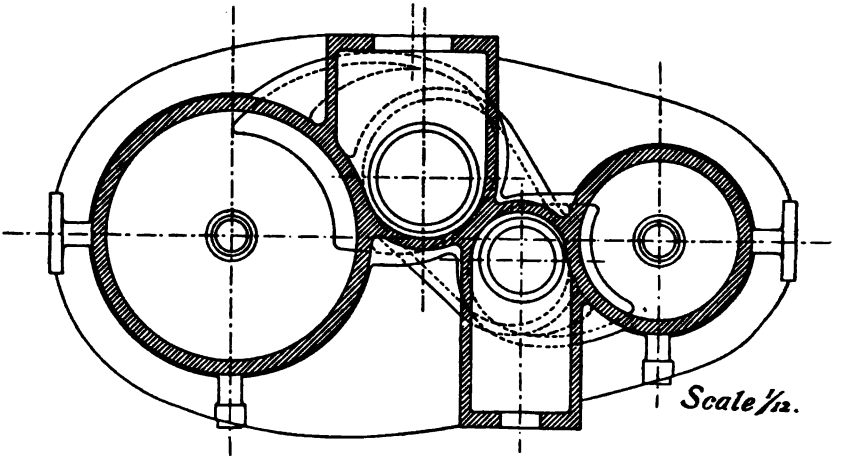


FIG. 412.

There is only one slide-valve for the two cylinders placed between the high and low pressure cylinders. It is of the piston type, and is driven by a single eccentric as shown.

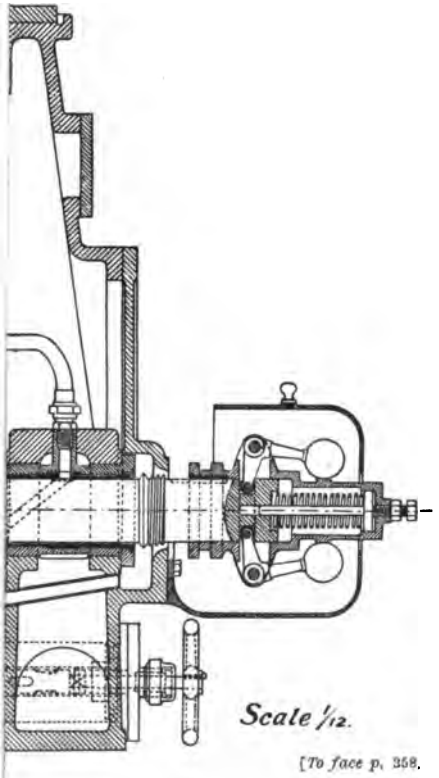
The governor is of the throttling type, working an equilibrium throttle-valve (Fig. 409), and is adjustable by hand while the engine is running.

The table shows the performance of this engine under two different systems of governing.

Plate II. and Figs. 410, 411, 412 are sectional drawings of a high-speed double-acting compound engine specially designed for this book by Mr. T. Scott-King.

The engines have 10 in. × 16 in. cylinder × 8 in. stroke; the cranks are opposite.

[1] From the *Proceedings of the Inst. of Mech Engrs.*



Scale 1/12.

[To face p. 358.

It will be noticed from the plan (Fig. 412) that the centres of the cylinders are kept as close as possible by arranging the high-pressure valve somewhat in front of, and the low-pressure valve behind, the centre line of the two cylinders.

The slide-valves are driven by one eccentric only, the valve-rods being connected to separate arms extending from the eccentric rod. Both of the valves are of the piston type; they are therefore in equilibrium.

The weight of the moving parts of the two engines is made equal, by increasing the thickness of the high-pressure piston.

Exceptionally long metallic-packed piston-rod stuffing-boxes are provided.

The engine is fitted with a very complete system of forced lubrication to all the bearings, the lubricant being forced by means of a simple pump driven from the eccentric strap. Advantage is taken of centrifugal force to distribute the oil to the crank-pins and eccentric.

A throttle-valve governor is attached, as shown, and the working parts of the engine are completely enclosed.

Figs. 413 and 414 are illustrations of the ***Sissons high-speed engine.*** The special features of the engine are (1) the self-adjusting crank-pin brasses in the large end of the connecting rod already shown in Fig. 320.

(2) The arrangement of the cylinders so that the centre-lines of the engines may be kept as close together as it is possible to get them. The object of this is to reduce the rocking moment; the high-pressure piston and its long piston-rod are together made equal in weight to the low-pressure piston and its rod. The rocking moment of the couple is as nearly as possible counteracted by balance weights attached to the outer crank webs. The cranks are opposite, and the engine runs very steadily.

(3) The slide-valves are both of the piston type; the high-pressure valve has *inside* steam-admission, and the low-pressure valve has *outside* steam-admission; thus there is simply a plain neck connecting the high-pressure cylinder exhaust with the low-pressure cylinder, and no stuffing-box is required there. The only valve-spindle stuffing-box is at the lower part of the low-pressure cylinder, where it is exposed to the pressure and temperature of receiver steam. The valve-spindle is provided with an air-cushion cylinder, thus reducing the load on the valve-gear to a minimum.

(4) This engine lends itself well to the use of superheated steam, first because of the absence of a valve-spindle stuffing-box in the initially superheated steam, and secondly because of the length of the bush of the high-pressure piston-rod, which removes any possibility of difficulty occurring with the high-pressure stuffing-box.

(5) This engine is fitted with a governor (not shown) which acts on the cut-off, varying the number of expansions during the fall from full-load to medium load, and afterwards completing the governing of the engine by throttling. This system of governing

is in accordance with the teaching to be deduced from Fig. 367, from which it is seen that below a certain load throttling governing is

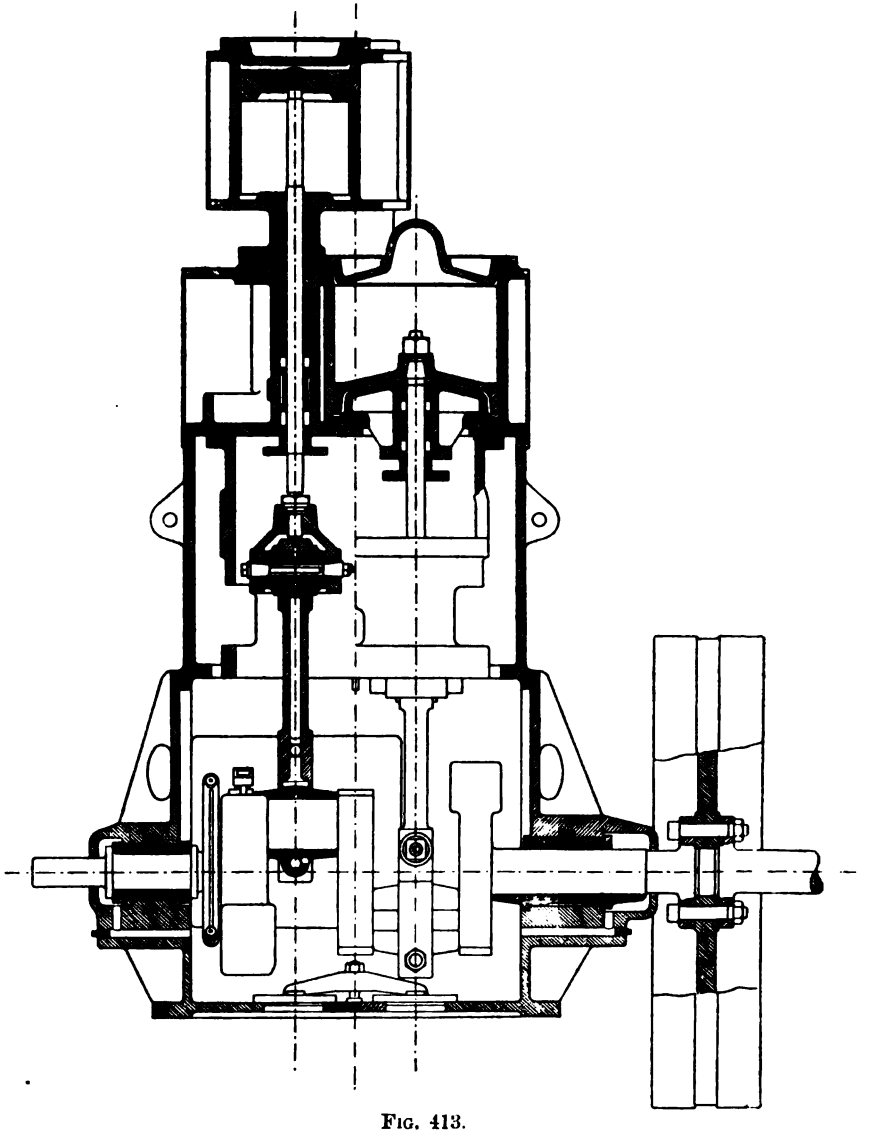


FIG. 413.

the more economical; above that load, governing by variable expansion has the advantage.

Direction of the Stresses in Single- and Double-acting Engines.—In the single-acting engine there is in every revolution—

(1) A reversal of the twisting stress in the crank-shaft, the piston driving the crank during the down-stroke, and the crank lifting the piston during the up-stroke.

(2) A reversal of the mean direction of the bending stresses on the crank-pin. This will be seen by considering the diagram (Fig. 415). Thus, suppose the circle 1 2 3 4 to represent the crank-pin travelling round the circular crank-pin path of a vertical engine. Here, when the piston is at the top of its stroke, there is a vertical bending stress on the crank-pin in the direction 1 to 3; at half-stroke downwards, the bending is in the direction 4 to 2; at the bottom position, the bending at end of stroke is in the direction 3 to 1. The mean bending is in the direction 4 to 2.

On the return stroke the crank lifts the moving parts, and the mean bending stress is now in the direction 2 to 4, which is opposite to that in the downward stroke.

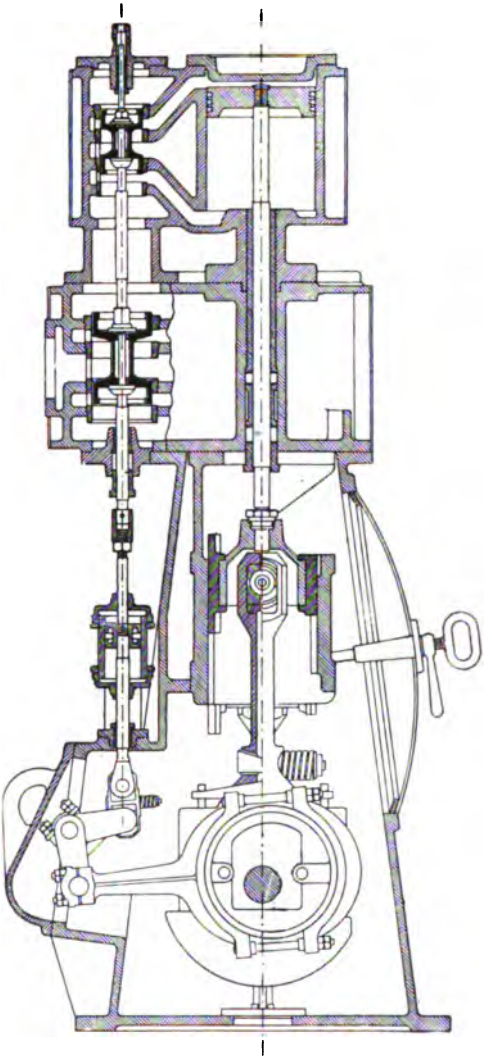


FIG. 414.

In the double-acting engine the twisting stress on the crank-shaft and the mean bending action on the crank-pin are not reversed, and in these respects the advantage is with the double-acting engine.

On the other hand, in the double-acting engine there is—

(1) A reversal of the stress in the piston-rod and connecting-rod, these rods being in compression on the down-stroke and in tension on the up-stroke.

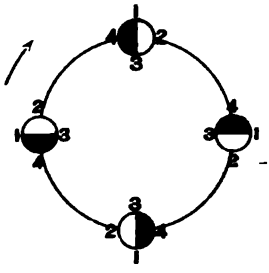


FIG. 415.

(2) A reversal of the bending stress on the cross-head pin.

In the single-acting engine there is no reversal of stress in the piston-rod and connecting-rod, these rods being always in compression for both strokes; and the bending stress on the cross-head pin is always in one direction. In these latter respects the single-acting engine has the advantage. It will also be noticed—

(1) That in the double-acting engine the wear on the cross-head pin is on both its top and bottom surfaces, and on both the top and bottom cross-head pin brasses—hence the tendency to knock; while in the single-acting engine the wear is on the upper portion only of the cross-head pin, and on the top cross-head brass only.

(2) That in the double-acting engine the wear is on both the top and bottom of the crank-pin brasses, causing a tendency to knock; while in the single-acting engine the wear is on the top crank-pin brass only.

(3) The pressure on the brasses in single-acting engines being never entirely relieved, the lubricating arrangements require to be carefully designed.

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE MARINE ENGINE.

FIGS. 416, 417, 418 illustrate types of triple-expansion marine engines showing various arrangements of cylinders. The letters of reference

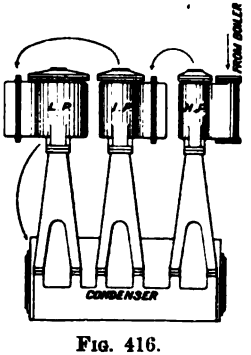


FIG. 416.

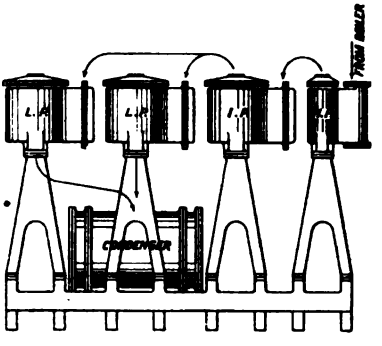


FIG. 417.

on the cylinders—H.P., high-pressure cylinder; I.P., intermediate-pressure cylinder; and L.P., low-pressure cylinder—indicate the progress of the steam from admission to the high-pressure steam-chest to leaving the engine on its way to the condenser.

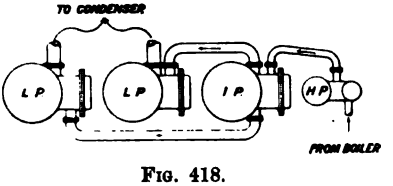


FIG. 418.

Fig. 418 shows two low-pressure cylinders. This arrangement is adopted where a single low-pressure cylinder casting becomes too large. It is also convenient for the purpose of more effectually balancing the engine.

Fig. 419 is given as illustrating a good example of a modern marine engine of the four-crank triple-expansion type. Each of the two low-pressure cylinders has half the piston area of the one large low-pressure cylinder which would otherwise be required.

The engines are capable of developing about 660 I.H.P.

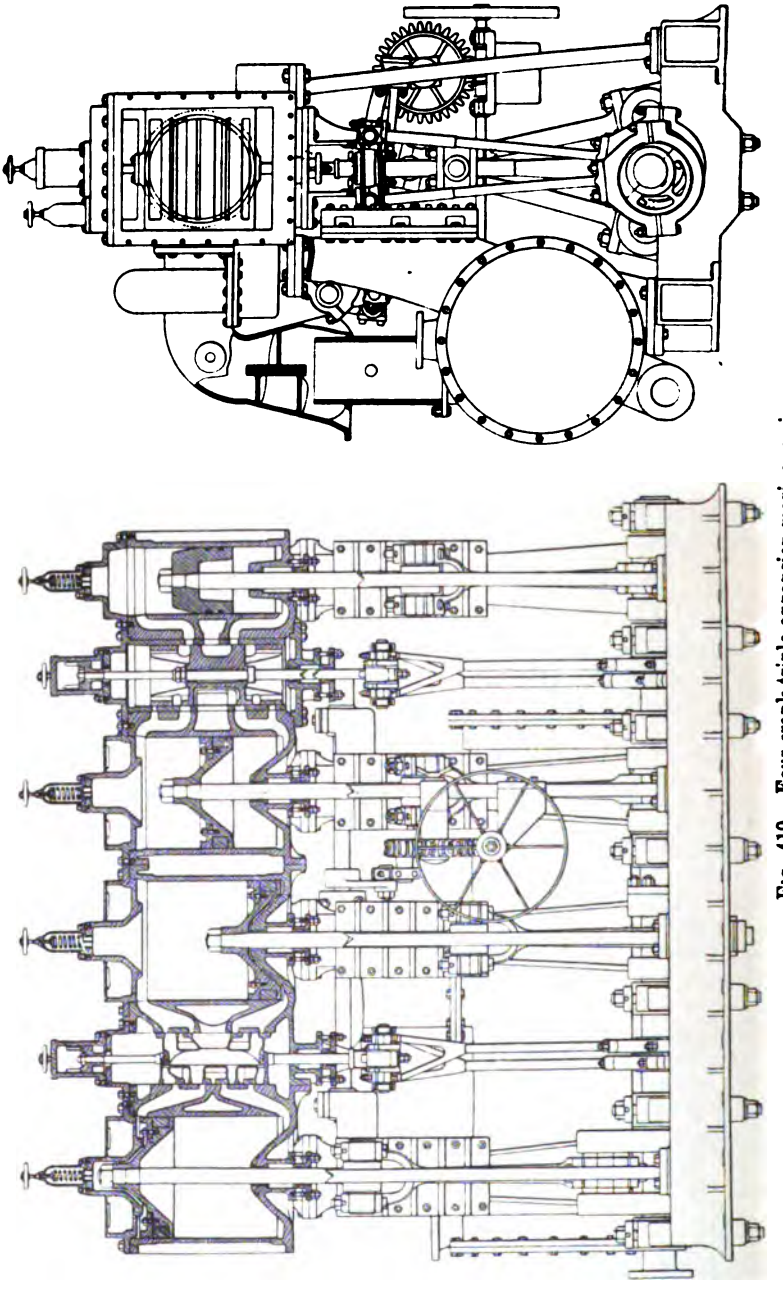


Fig. 419.—Four-crank triple-expansion marine engine.

The dimensions and other particulars are as follows:—

Diameter of H.P. cylinder			13 in.
„ L.P. „			22 „
„ F.L.P. „			23½ „
„ A.L.P. „			23½ „
Stroke			21 „
Boiler pressure			170 lbs.
Revolutions per minute			166
Piston speed „			581 ft.
Vacuum			26 in.
Indicated horse-power—			
H.P. cylinder	213		
I.P. „	212		
F.L.P. „	107		
A.L.P. „	128		
	—	660	

The two forward cranks are placed directly opposite each other, and the two after cranks in the same relative position to each other, but at right angles to the two forward ones. The pistons working in opposite directions are made of equal weights.[1]

The engines are fitted with only two sets of slide-valves and valve gear, and in each case one valve regulates the steam-distribution to two cylinders.

Plate III. illustrates the engines of the s.s. *Inchmona*, which is constructed with the special object of high steam economy and freedom from vibration. These engines are built with five cranks, and the boiler pressure is 255 lbs. per square inch, the steam being generated in cylindrical boilers of the ordinary multitubular type. This is probably the first instance of so high a pressure being carried in a large boiler of this type. The boilers were tested by Lloyd's surveyors to 510 lbs. per square inch hydraulic pressure.

The engines are quadruple expansion, with two low-pressure cylinders, making five cylinders connected to five cranks. The cranks are set at equal angles. The engine is designed so as to have light reciprocating parts, equal weights of reciprocating parts on each crank-pin, to divide the total work between five cranks, thus reducing initial stresses on the bearings, and distributing the total power at five equal points round the crank circle.

The boilers are fitted with a battery of steam-drying tubes through which the steam passes on its way to the engines, and the cylinders are very thoroughly steam-jacketed. The feed-water resulting from condensation is taken up at a low temperature due to the adoption of a high vacuum, and is passed first through feed-heaters heated by exhaust steam, and then through a further series of feed-heaters working at successively higher pressures and temperatures with steam taken from successive steam-chests, so that before the feed enters the boilers it is at a temperature about 400° Fahr.

The boilers are fitted with the induced draught system of Messrs.

[1] From a paper by Mr. John Thom, read before the Inst. of Engineers and Shipbuilders, Scotland.

John Brown & Co., of Sheffield, by means of which a rate of combustion can be maintained of 40 lbs. of coal per square foot of fire-grate.

Trials of these engines resulted in a consumption of 1·07 lb. of North country coal per I.H.P. per hour.

In the series of marine engine trials conducted by a committee of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers,[1] the following results were obtained :—

	Boiler pressure.	Revolutions.	Stroke.	Feed-water per I.H.P. per hour.	Fuel per I.P.H. per hour.
Compound engines—			in.		
Fusi Yama ...	56·8	55·6	33	21·2	2·66
Colchester	80·5	86·6	36	21·7	2·90
Ville de Douvres ...	105·8	36·82	72	20·8	2·32
Triple expansion—					
Meteor	145·2	71·8	48	15	2·01
Tartar	143·6	70·0	42	—	1·77
Iona	165·0	61·1	39	13·3	1·46

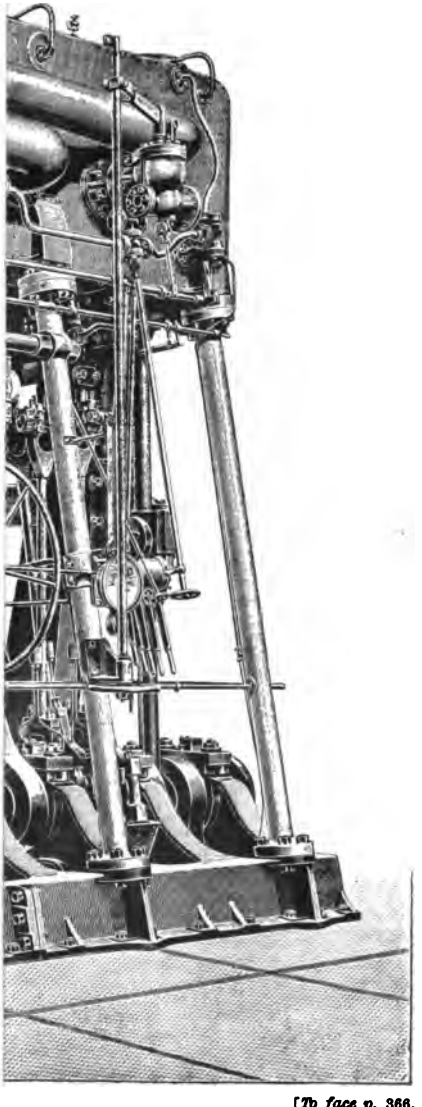
Reduced consumption of fuel per unit of power has steadily followed the gradual increase of steam-pressures, as will be seen from the following table of marine-engine performance :—

Year.	Boiler-pressure by gauge.	Type of engine.	Consumption of coal per I.H.P. per hour.
	lbs.		lbs.
1830	2 to 3	Simple	9·0
1840	8	„	5·5
1850	14	„	4·0
1860	30	„	3·0
1870	50	„	2·6
1880	80	Compound	2·2
1886	160	Triple	1·5
1896	255	Quadruple	1·07

Particulars of some War-ship Engines and their Performance.—*Battleships :* Indicated horse-power, 18,000 ; twin engines, cylinders, 33½ in., 54½ in., 63 in., 63 in. ; stroke, 48 in. ; revolutions, 120 ; piston speed, 960 ft. per min. ; working steam-pressure, 300 lbs. to 250 lbs. ; Belleville boilers, 24 ; heating surface, 43,260 sq. ft. ; grate area, 1375 sq. ft. ; heating surface per I.H.P., 2·4 sq. ft. ; I.H.P. per square foot of grate area, 13·1. The boilers are worked with natural draught.

Cruisers : Indicated horse-power, 30,000 ; twin engines, cylinders, 43½ in., 71 in., 81½ in., 81½ in. ; stroke, 48 in. ; revolutions, 120 ; piston speed, 960 ft. per min. ; working steam-pressure, 300 lbs. to

[1] *Proc. Inst. Mech. Engrs.*, 1894, p. 33.



[*To face p.* 366.

)NA."

250 lbs.; Belleville boilers, 43; heating surface, 71,970 sq. ft.; grate surface, 2310 sq. ft.; I.H.P. per ton of machinery, 12; heating surface per I.H.P., 2·4 sq. ft.; I.H.P. per square foot of grate, 13·0.

The following are particulars and data of trials of H.M.S. *Amphitrite*:—

	Low power.	Medium power.	Maximum power.
Steam-pressure in boilers ...	226	252	279
„ at engines ...	212	240	254
Mean pressures, high ...	37·3	89·5	102·8
„ intermediate	15·5	36·3	44·2
„ forward low	5·5	13·1	16·9
„ aft low ...	5·5	13·3	16·9
Revolutions	72·5	111·1	121·8
I.H.P. starboard engine ...	1899	6898	9171
„ port engine	1852	6797	9058
I.H.P. total	3751	13,695	18,229
Coal per I.H.P. per hour ...	1·54	1·43	1·57
Coal burnt per square foot of grate per hour ... lbs.	9·84	—	19·8
Cut off per cent., high ...	—	64	66
„ „ intermediate	—	65	—
„ „ low	—	70	—

CHAPTER XXV.

THE LOCOMOTIVE.

FIG. 420 illustrates the general arrangement and construction of an express passenger locomotive engine.

It is necessary that the locomotive shall be self-contained, that is, it must consist of a boiler and an engine, and the whole machine must be placed upon one carriage. The problem for locomotive engineers is how to obtain the greatest possible power for the least possible weight. This is done by using small boilers of great strength, maximum heating surface, and maximum grate area, working at a high rate of evaporation, using steam of high pressures in small cylinders and running at high rotational speeds. The question of economy of steam is compromised for the sake of power combined with greatest possible reduction of weight. The engine and boiler are each bolted to the frame of the carriage. The frame is self-contained, and through it the whole of the stresses due to the pressure on the pistons and the pull on the draw-bar due to the load are transmitted.

It will be noticed that the axle of the trailing wheels is placed just behind the boiler, the axle of the driving-wheels just in front of the fire-box, leaving clearance for the cranks and connecting-rod heads.

The bogie carriage works on a pivot beneath the cylinders. The bogie wheels guide the engine and prepare the rails to receive the weight of the large driving-wheels; the hind, or trailing wheels, steady the engine, while the driving-wheels transmit the power of the engine to the rail, and they are placed as nearly as possible under the centre of gravity of the whole. The example has the slide-valve chest between the cylinders, and is fitted with the Stephenson link motion.

Plate IV. is a drawing [1] of a four-wheeled coupled express passenger engine for the Lancashire and Yorkshire Railway, and designed by Mr. J. A. F. Aspinall. Figs. 421, 422 and 423 are various views of the same engine. The cylinders are 18 in. in diameter by 26 in. stroke, the diameter of the bogie-wheels being 3 ft. $0\frac{3}{8}$ in., and the driving-wheels 7 ft. 3 in. The dimensions of the various parts of the engine are given on the drawings. The weight loaded on the bogie is 13 tons 16 cwt.; on the driving-wheels 16 tons 10 cwts.:

[1] From the *Mechanical Engineer*, June 25, 1898.

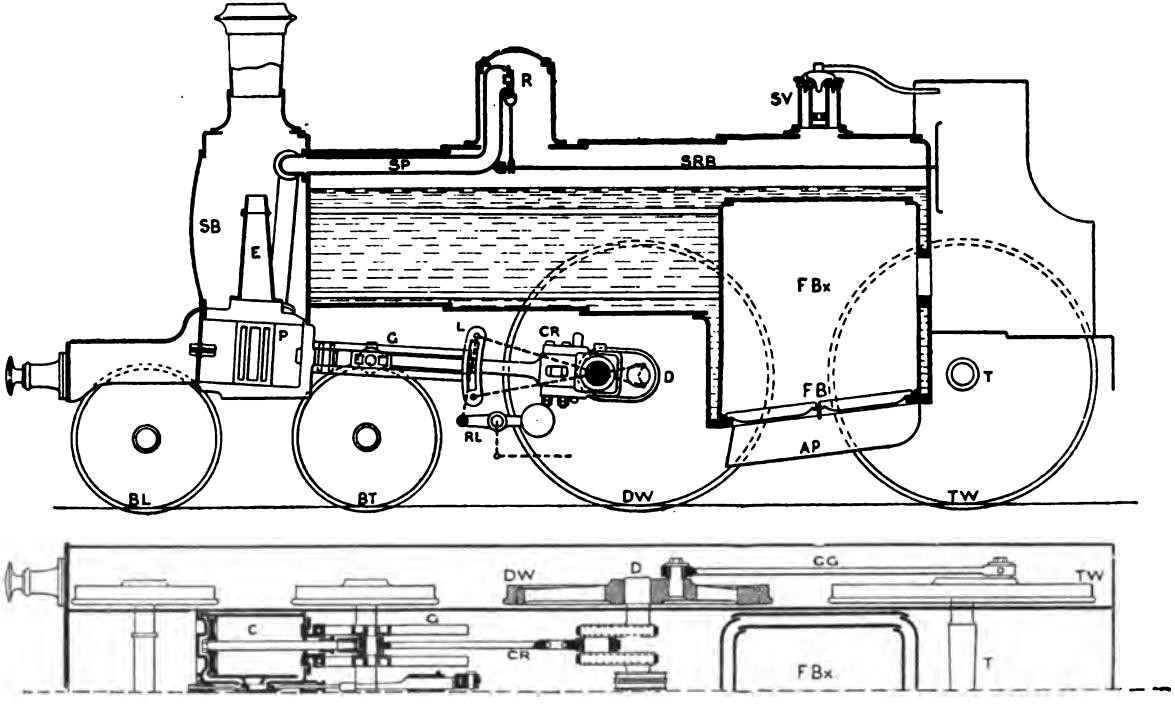


FIG. 420.—FBx, fire box; FB, fire bars; AP, ash pan; SB, smoke box; SV, safety-valve; R, steam regulator valve; SRB, steam regulator valve bar; SP, steam-pipe; E, exhaust pipe; P, steam-ports: G, guides; L, link motion; RL, reversing-lever; CR, connecting rod; C, cylinder; D, driving axle; T, trailing axle; DW, driving wheel; TW, trailing wheel; BL, bogie leading wheel; BT, bogie trailing wheel; CG, coupling rod.

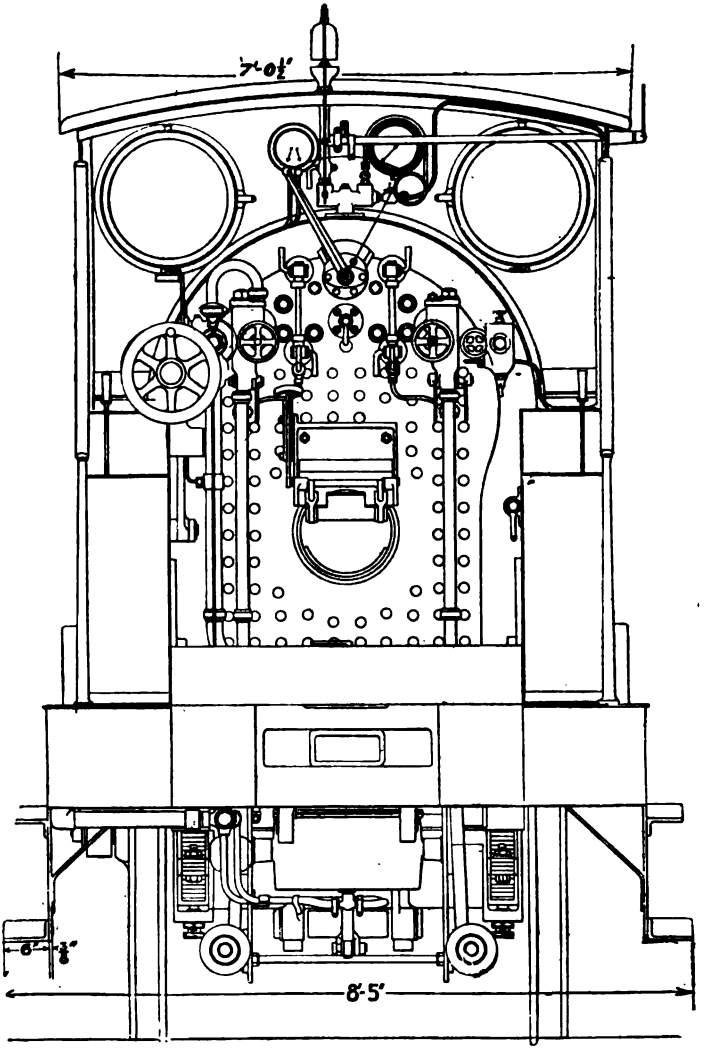


FIG. 421.

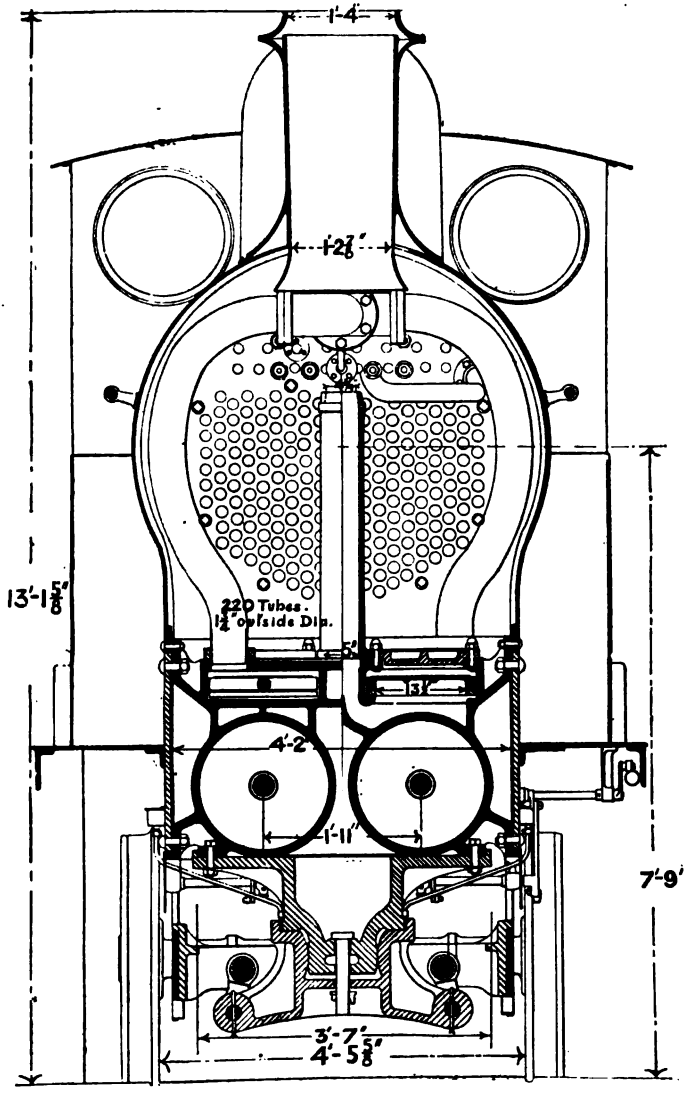


FIG. 422.

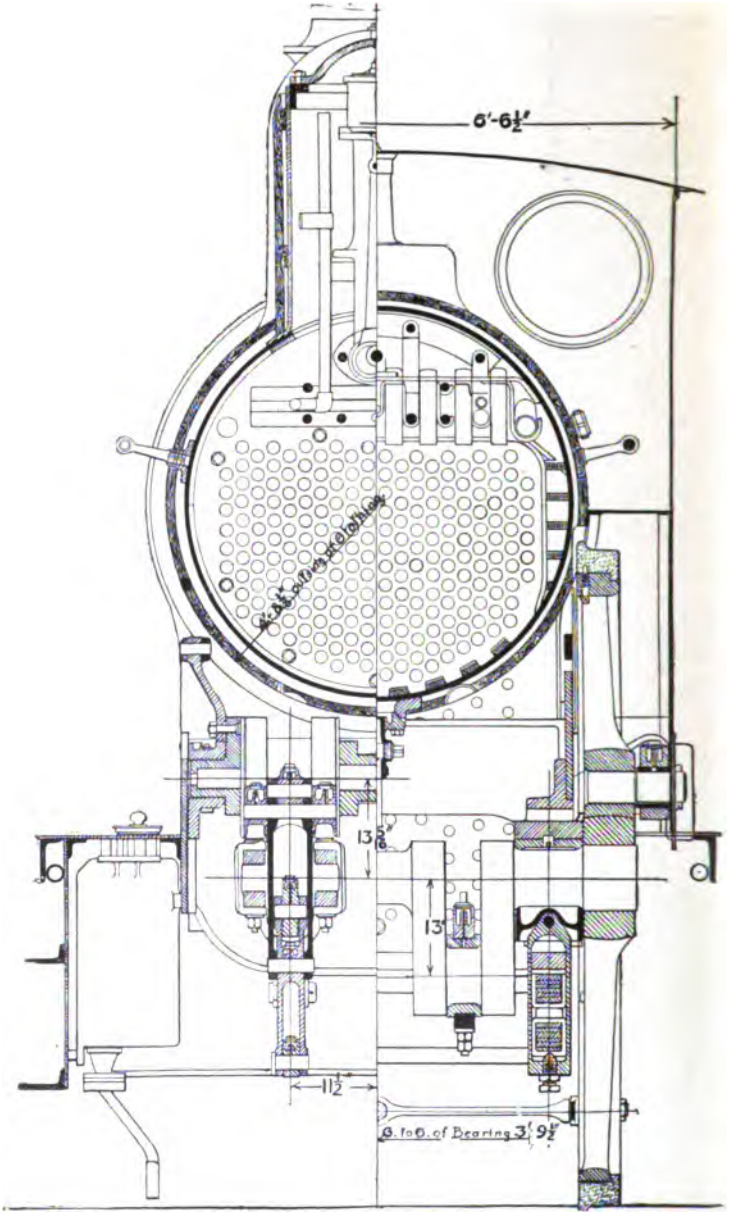


FIG. 423.

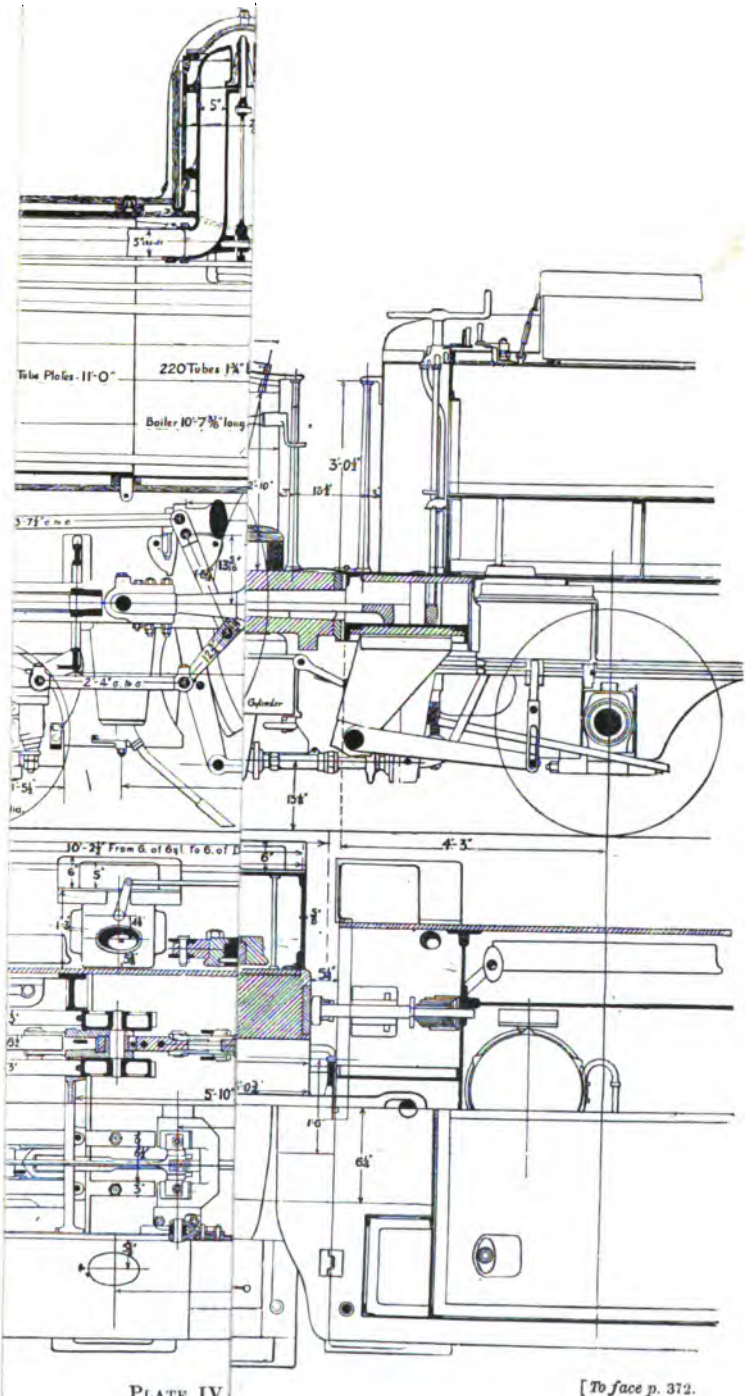


PLATE IV.

[To face p. 372.

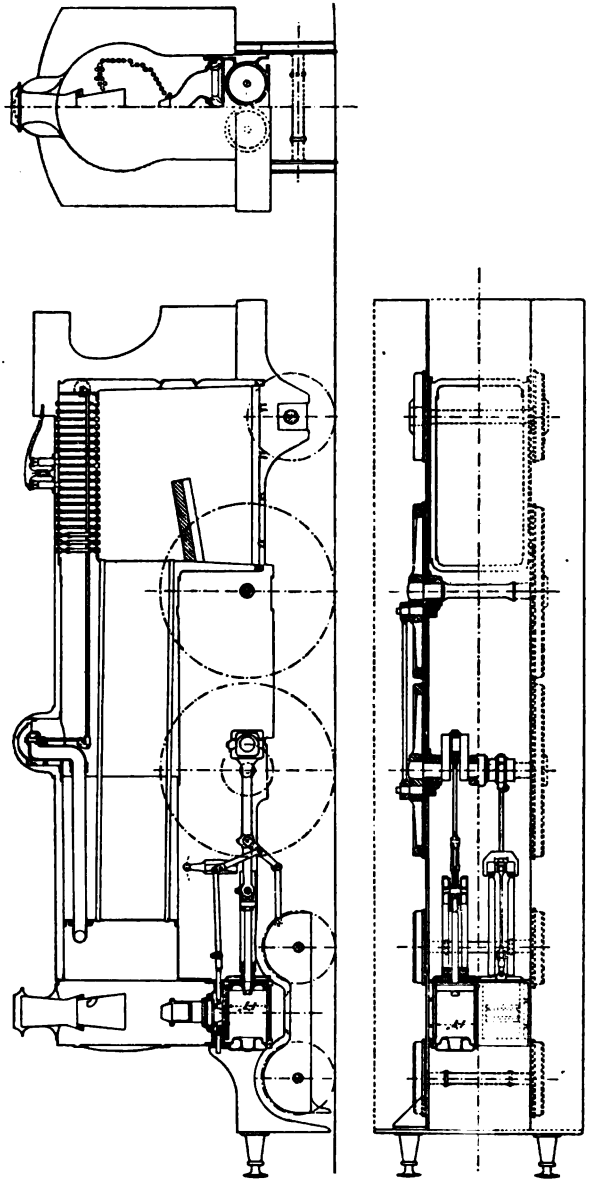


FIG. 424.—Express passenger engine, L. and Y. Railway.

and on the trailing wheels 14 tons 10 cwt.; making a total weight, exclusive of tender, of 44 tons 16 cwt.

The fire-box is of the ordinary type, the roof being carried by bridge-bars, supported by sling-stays from the crown of the fire-box casing. The sides are supported with copper-screwed stays having eleven threads to the inch and riveted over on the ends. The area of the fire-grate is $18\frac{3}{4}$ sq. ft. The barrel of the boiler is arranged in three plates telescopically, and measures 4 ft. 3 in. in diameter by 11 ft. between the tube-plates, there being two hundred and twenty tubes with an external diameter of $1\frac{3}{4}$ in.

The total heating surface of the tubes is 1108 sq. ft., and of the fire-box 107·6 sq. ft. There are two Ramsbottom duplex safety-valves fitted on the cover of the manhole mouthpiece, at the top of the fire-box casing. The valve gear is of the Joy's type. The slide-valve chests are above the cylinders, and thus permit of a maximum diameter for the cylinders.

Fig. 424 is an outline drawing of an exceptionally powerful type express passenger engine built for the Lancashire and Yorkshire Railway by Mr. J. A. F. Aspinall.

The special feature is the boiler, which is much larger than usual. The heating surface is 2052 sq. ft.; the grate area is 96·06 sq. ft.; driving-wheels 7 ft. diameter, coupled. The cylinders are 19 in. diameter by 26 in. stroke; length of steam-ports, 1 ft. 5 in.; width of steam-ports, $1\frac{5}{8}$ in.; lap of slide-valve, 1 in.; maximum travel of slide-valve, 5 in.; lead of slide-valve (constant), $\frac{3}{16}$ in. The valve-gear is Joy's.

Fig. 425 is an outline drawing of a North-Eastern express passenger engine by Mr. W. Worsdell. The engine has inside cylinders 20 in. diameter and 26 in. stroke.

Fig. 426 is an enlarged drawing of link-motion details for a locomotive.

Joy's Valve Gear.—This gear, as fitted to locomotives, is illustrated in Fig. 427. From point A in the connecting-rod, preferably about the middle motion is imparted to a vibrating link, B, constrained at its lower end to move in a vertical plane by the radius rod C. From a point D on this vibrating-link a lever, E, is attached to a centre or fulcrum, F. The lever E is extended beyond centre F to K, from which point the valve spindle is driven through the link G. The fulcrum F partakes of the vertical movement due to the oscillation of the connecting-rod in a vertical plane. To guide the centre or pin F in its vertical movement, it is carried by a block working in a slot, J, which is curved to a radius equal to the length of the link G. The slot itself is formed in a disc or block, which is pivoted on a centre which coincides with the centre F of the lever E at the moment when that lever is in the position due to the piston being at either end of the stroke. The disc or block containing the slot is capable of being partially rotated on its centre or pivot, so as to incline the slot over to either side of the vertical by means of the lever M, thereby causing the curved path traversed by the centre F of the lever E

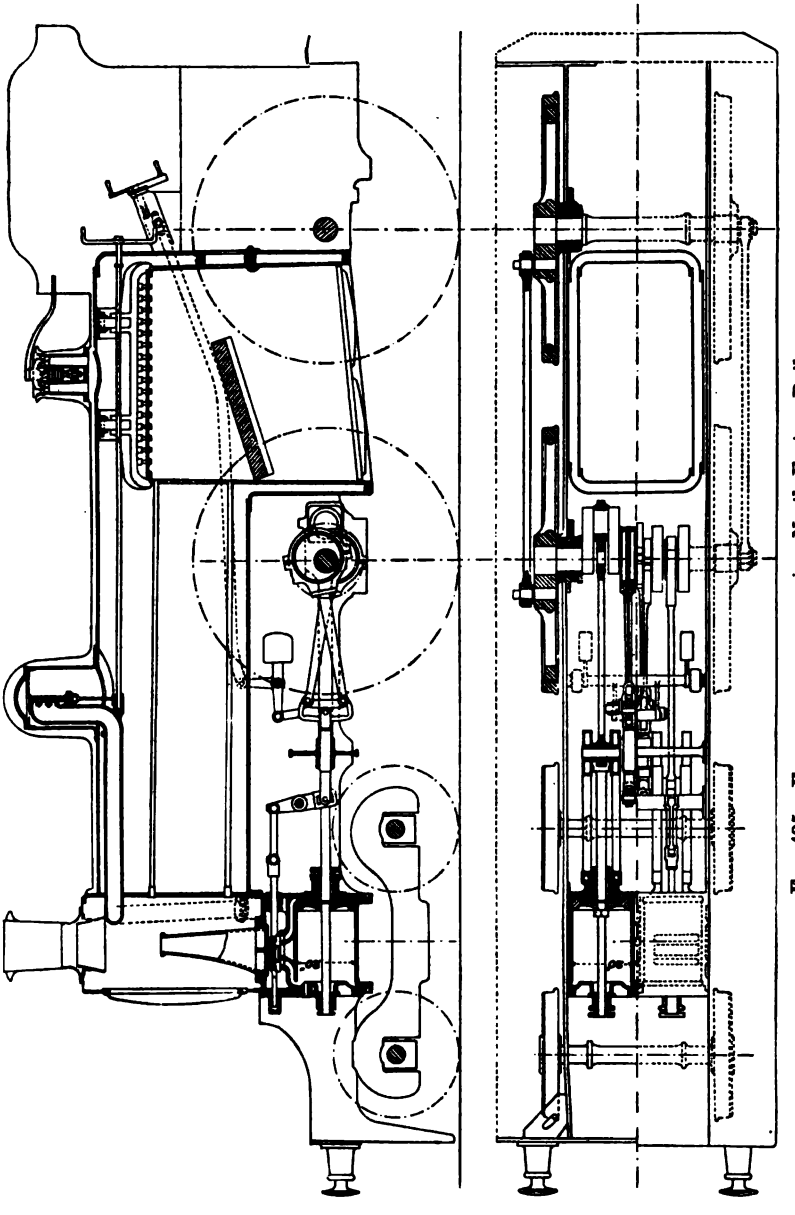


FIG. 425.—Express passenger engine, North-Eastern Railway.

to cross the vertical arc, and thereby give the valve spindle the required horizontal movement.

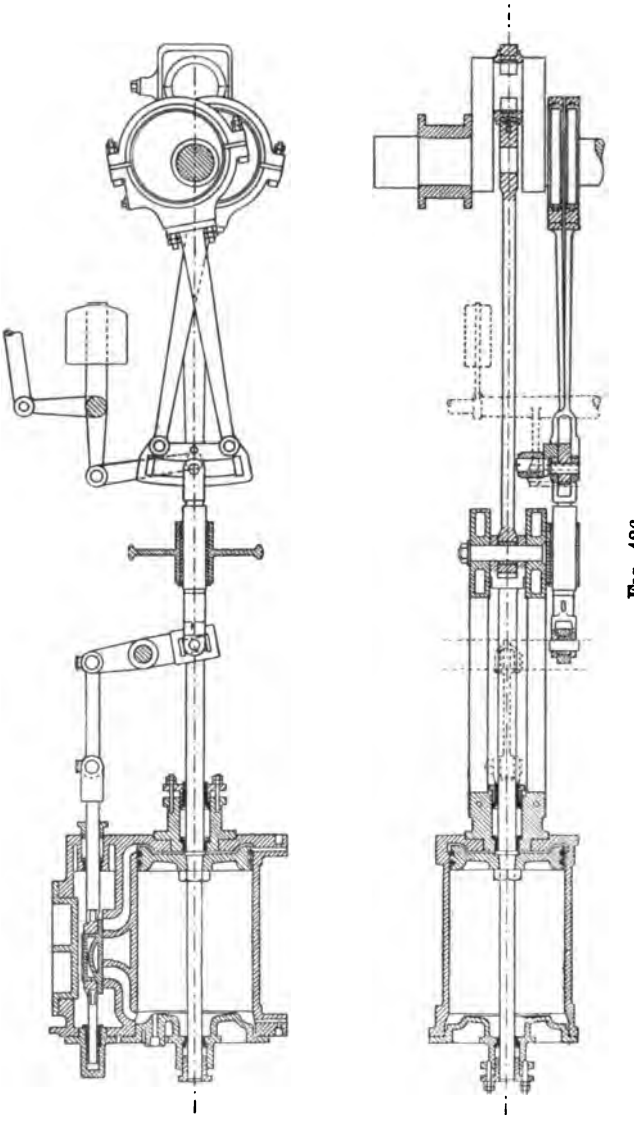


FIG. 426.

The forward or backward motion of the engine is determined by

giving the slot an inclined position on one or other side of the vertical line as required.

When the slot is in an exactly central position, this position is mid-gear travel of the valve, and the steam is admitted at each end of the stroke through a port-opening equal to the amount of the lead. With this gear the lead is constant for forward and backward strokes, and for all degrees of expansion. For when the engine-crank is set at the end of the stroke, either way, the centre F of the valve lever E coincides with the centre of the slot, and therefore the slot may be rotated on its pivot from forward to backward gear without affecting the position of the valve.

Fig. 428 is an enlarged view of the steam regulator-valve of the equilibrium type, as used for admitting steam to the engine.

Fig. 429 is an enlarged detail drawing of a Ramsbottom safety-valve as used on locomotives.

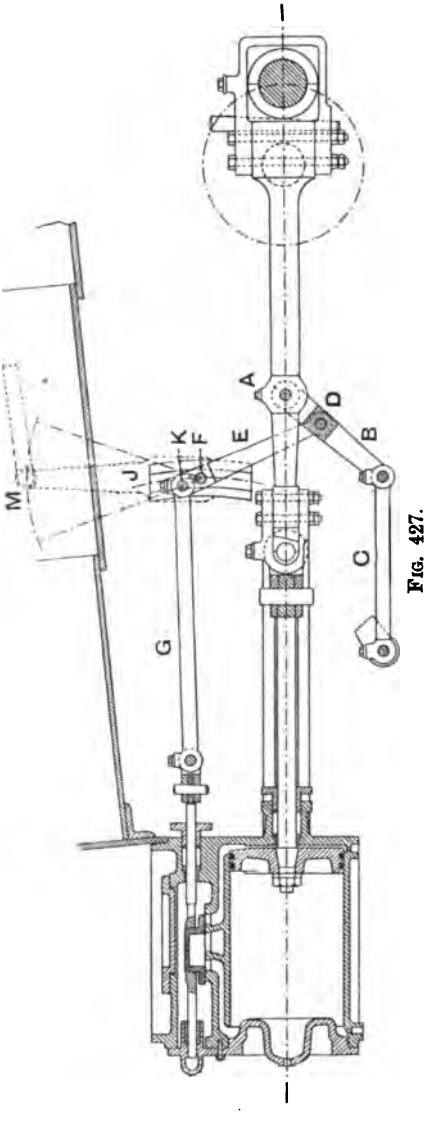


FIG. 427.

Train resistance consists of (1) Resistance due to friction —this is much modified by the effect of wind and curves; (2) resistance due to gravity.

A formula for *train resistance due to friction*, based on the results of experiments, is given by Messrs. Pettigrew and Ravenshear[1] as follows:—

$$R = 9 + 0{\cdot}007\ V^2$$

where R = resistance in lbs. per ton, and
V = velocity in miles per hour.

[1] "Manual of Locomotive Engineering," p. 77.

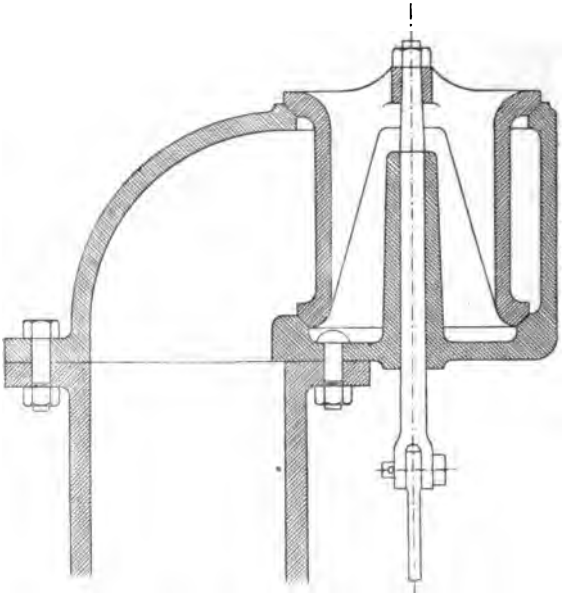


FIG. 428.

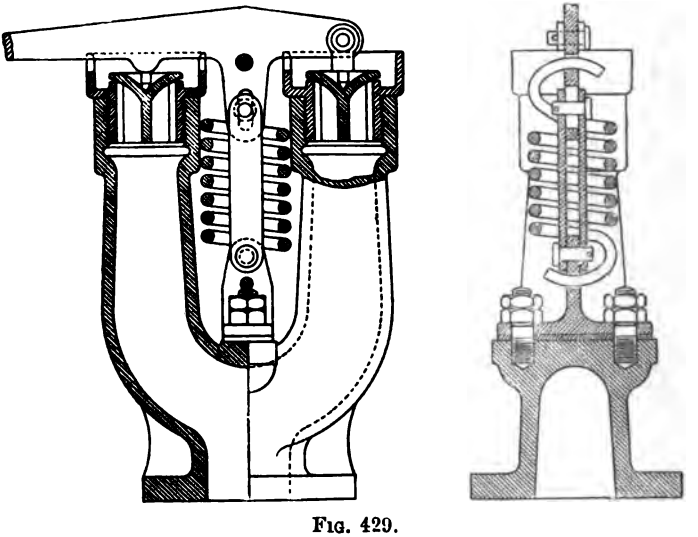


FIG. 429.

Resistance due to Gravity.—The work done by a locomotive in climbing an incline is found thus: Let the line *de* (Fig. 430) make an angle θ with the horizontal line *fe*. Draw a vertical line *ab* through the centre of gravity of the weight = W, and draw *ac* at right angles and *cb* parallel to *de*. Then *ac* is the reaction of the plane, and *cb* is the tractive force required. But triangles *def* and *bac* are similar;

$$\text{therefore } \frac{df}{de} = \frac{bc}{ab} = \frac{\text{tractive force}}{\text{load}}$$

$$\text{or, tractive force} = \text{resistance} = \text{load} \times \sin\theta$$

The total resistance R′ to be overcome is equal to the sum of the resistances due to friction and gravity respectively; thus:

$$R' = (9 + 0{\cdot}007\,V^2) + 2240 \sin\theta$$

where $\sin\theta = \dfrac{\text{vertical rise}}{\text{length of incline}}$

and R′ = lbs. per ton of load.

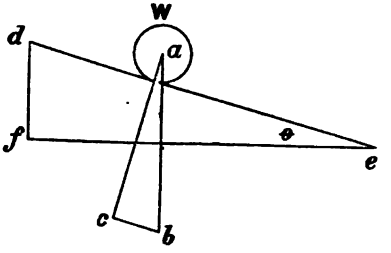


FIG. 430.

Tractive Force of Locomotives.—The power of the pair of engines with cylinders of equal diameter and stroke, such as are used in non-compound locomotives, is estimated as for any ordinary case, but the tractive force which can be transmitted will depend upon the diameter of the driving-wheel and the force of adhesion of the wheel and rail.

$$\text{Work done in one cylinder during one revolution} = 2\left(\frac{\pi}{4}d^2Lp\right)$$

where d = diameter of cylinder in inches;
L = length of stroke in feet;
p = effective mean pressure of steam per square inch.

$$\text{Work done in two cylinders during one revolution} = \pi d^2Lp$$

And this work per revolution is equal to the tractive force T × circumference πD of driving-wheel;

$$\text{therefore } \pi d^2Lp = T\pi D$$

$$\text{or, } T = \frac{d^2Lp}{D}$$

where the values of L and D are both in the same terms. This is the formula for the tractive force exerted by an engine; thus, for cylinder of 18 in. diameter, 26 in. stroke, and 7 ft. driving-wheels—

$$\text{Tractive force} = \frac{18 \times 18 \times 26}{84} = 100{\cdot}28 \text{ lbs.}$$

per 1 lb. mean effective pressure of steam on the pistons.

The force which can act through the wheel depends upon the adhesion of the wheel to the rail, and this is proportional to the weight W on the driving-wheel, other things being equal. W is

the share of the weight of the engine carried by the driving-wheels, in a single driving-wheel engine, but by coupling the driving-wheels to two or more wheels on each side of the engine, the adhesion will be due to the sum of the weights on the coupled wheels.

Performance of Locomotives.—The following particulars are from tests recently made of a London and South-Western express engine :[1]—

Class of engine	4 wheels coupled
Diameter of driving-wheels	85 in.
„ cylinders	19 „
Stroke	26 „
Mean boiler-pressure	167·5 lbs.
Grate area	18·14 sq. ft.
Coal burnt per square foot of grate area per hour	62·54 lbs.
„ „ I.H.P. per hour	2·31 „
Calorific value of 1 lb. of coal	13,903 B.T.U.
Water evaporated per pound of coal	9·232 lbs.
„ „ from and at 212°	11·35
Feed temperature	61° F.
Maximum I.H.P.	684·1
Mean I.H.P.	490·6
Maximum vacuum at base of chimney	8·5 in.
Mean „ „ „	4·93 „
Maximum temperature of smoke-box gases ...	585° F.
Mean „ „ „ ...	488·9° F.
Mean „ air-box gases	68°
Back pressure at maximum I.H.P.	10 lbs. per sq. in.
„ „ „ speed	5·38 „

The average steam-consumption given in Mr. Drummond's trials of non-compound locomotives are—

24 lbs. per I.H.P. per hour at 150 lbs. pressure.
18·3 lbs. per I.H.P. per hour at 200 lbs. pressure.

Mr. S. Johnson[2] gives particulars of a trial of a single driving-wheel locomotive on the Midland Railway, showing that the engine burns 2·9 to 3·1 lbs. of coal, and uses 29 lbs. of water per I.H.P. per hour when the horse-power is 400.

Some extremely interesting experiments with a locomotive have been performed at the experimental laboratory of the Purdue University by Professor W.F.M. Goss and his staff. The locomotive used was built at the Schenectady Locomotive Works, and it has cylinders 17 in. diameter and 24 in. stroke.

The power of this engine while running under a full throttle and with a boiler-pressure of 130 lbs. is shown by the following table :—

[1] *Proceedings Inst. C.E.*, vol. cxxv. See also Messrs. Pettigrew and Ravenshear's "Manual of Locomotive Engineering."
[2] Presidential address, Inst. Mech. Engrs., 1898.

INDICATED HORSE-POWER AT DIFFERENT SPEEDS AND DIFFERENT CUT-OFFS. BOILER-PRESSURE, 130 LBS.; THROTTLE FULLY OPEN.

Speed in miles.	Revolutions per minute.	Indicated Horse-power at the following cut-offs :—		
		6 in.	8 in.	10 in.
15	81	190	270	—
25	135	223	368	455
35	188	298	431	501
45	242	302	437	—
55	296	292	438	—

"The power of any locomotive is limited at low speed by its adhesion; at higher speeds by the capacity of its boiler."

An important point to which Professor Goss calls attention is the relation between the speed of a locomotive and its effect upon the mean effective pressure in the cylinder. This is shown in the following table:—

MEAN EFFECTIVE PRESSURE AT DIFFERENT SPEEDS AND DIFFERENT CUT-OFFS. BOILER-PRESSURE, 130 LBS.; THROTTLE FULLY OPEN.

Speed in miles.	Revolutions per minute.	Mean effective pressure at the following cut-offs :—		
		6 in.	8 in.	10 in.
15	81	43·5	61·9	—
25	135	30·5	51·2	63 3
35	188	29·6	42·4	48·0
45	242	23·2	33·2	—
55	296	18·3	27·4	—

These two tables show "that the power of the engine tested increases with increase of speed up to about 35 miles per hour (188 revolutions per minute). Above this limit the power remains practically constant."

The reason of this is, of course, that as the speed increases the mean pressure of the steam in the cylinder at the same time falls, and the product of mean pressure and piston speed is about constant above a certain speed.

With regard to the steam-consumption of locomotives, Professor Goss gives the following table:—

STEAM-CONSUMPTION PER INDICATED HORSE-POWER PER HOUR AT DIFFERENT SPEEDS AND DIFFERENT CUT-OFFS.

Speed in miles.	Revolutions per minute.	Steam-consumption in pounds per I.H.P. per hour.		
		Cut-off in inches of stroke.		
		6 in.	8 in.	10 in.
15	81	28·93	27·66	—
25	135	28·06	26·60	28·6
35	188	26·93	26·28	30·1
45	242	28·60	28·45	—
55	296	30·64	32·00	—

The **compound locomotive** has made some progress in recent years, especially on the Continent and in Amercia, but it has not, so far, been very generally adopted in this country.

The most notable exceptions to this statement are the engines built by Mr. Webb for the London and North-Western Railway, and those by Mr. T. W. Worsdell for the Great Eastern and North Eastern Railways.

Fig. 431 illustrates the **Webb compound** three-cylinder engine, consisting of two outside high-pressure cylinders 14 in. diameter and 24 in. stroke, which drive outside cranks on the trailing wheels; and one large low-pressure inside cylinder 30 in. diameter and 24 in. stroke, placed between the frames and below the smoke-box, driving on to the single crank-axle of the middle pair of wheels.

More recently Mr. Webb has designed an engine with four cylinders (Fig. 432), two outside high-pressure cylinders 15 in. diameter, and two inside low-pressure cylinders 16½ in. diameter. All the cylinders are 24 in. stroke. These are all situated in a line below the smoke-box, and all drive on to one axle. There are two coupled pairs of wheels 7 ft. 1 in. diameter.

Various experiments have been carried out, proving generally the superior economy of the compound engine, varying in amount of from 9 to 17 per cent. or more. But less convenience and promptness in handling, are stated as reasons for the general preference for the simple type.

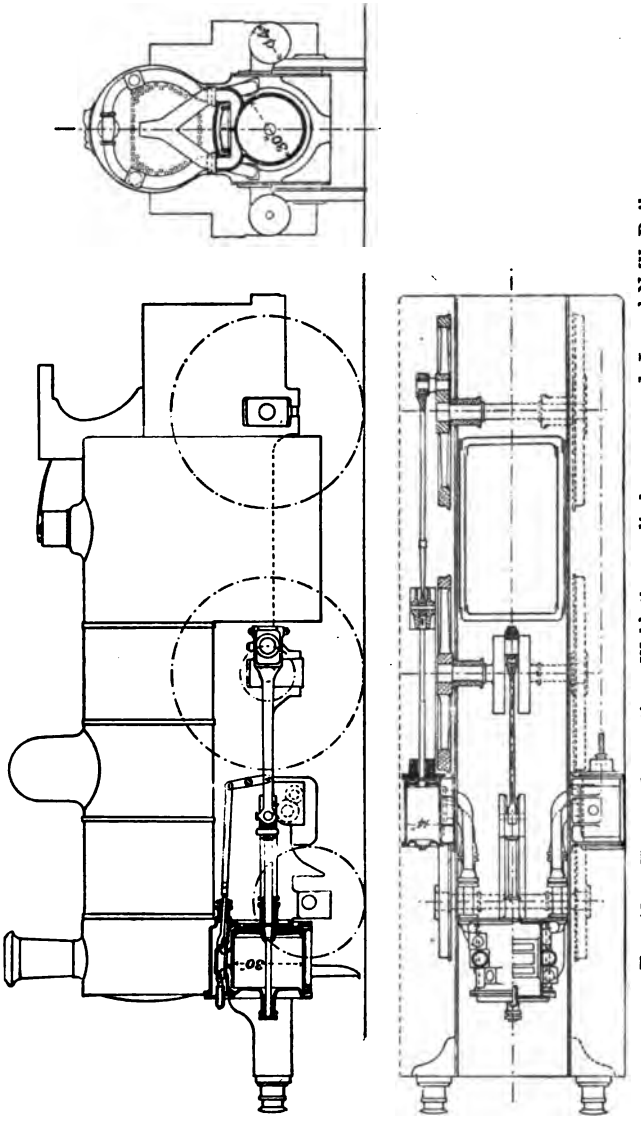


FIG. 431.—Express locomotive—Webb three-cylinder compound, L. and N. W. Railway

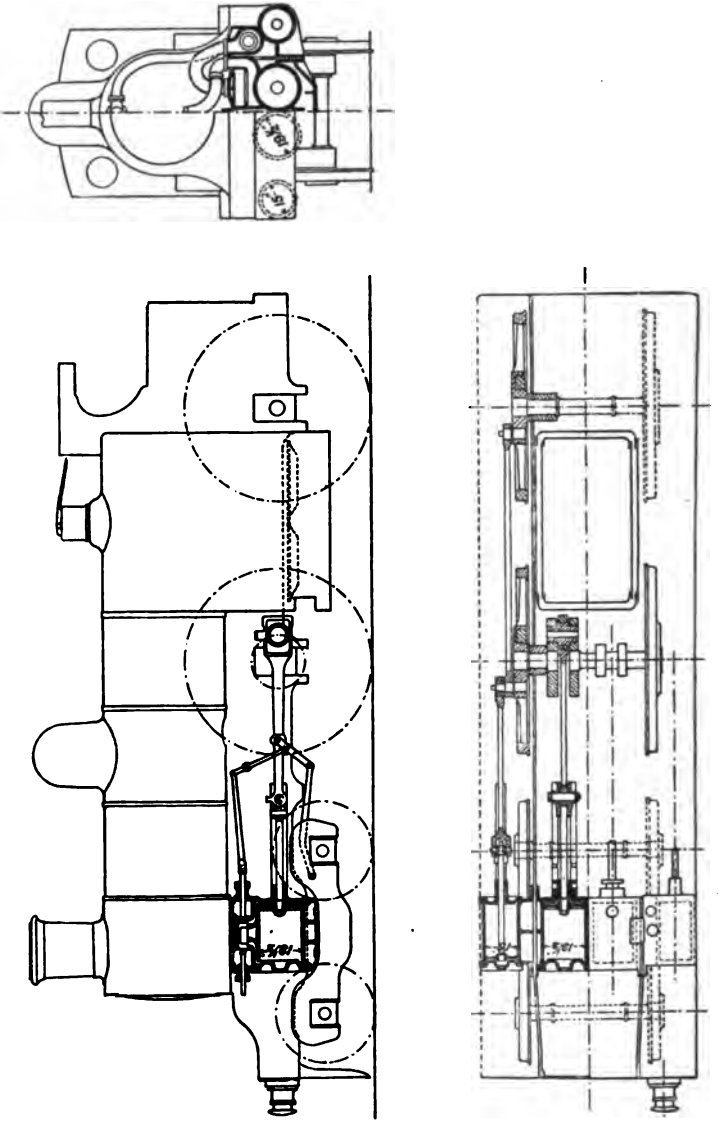


FIG. 432.—Express locomotive.—Webb four-cylinder compound, L. and N.W. Railway.

APPENDIX

I.

RIPPER'S MEAN-PRESSURE INDICATOR.

THE object of the mean-pressure indicator here described (Fig. 433) is to indicate (1) on one pressure-gauge the mean result of the forward or driving steam-

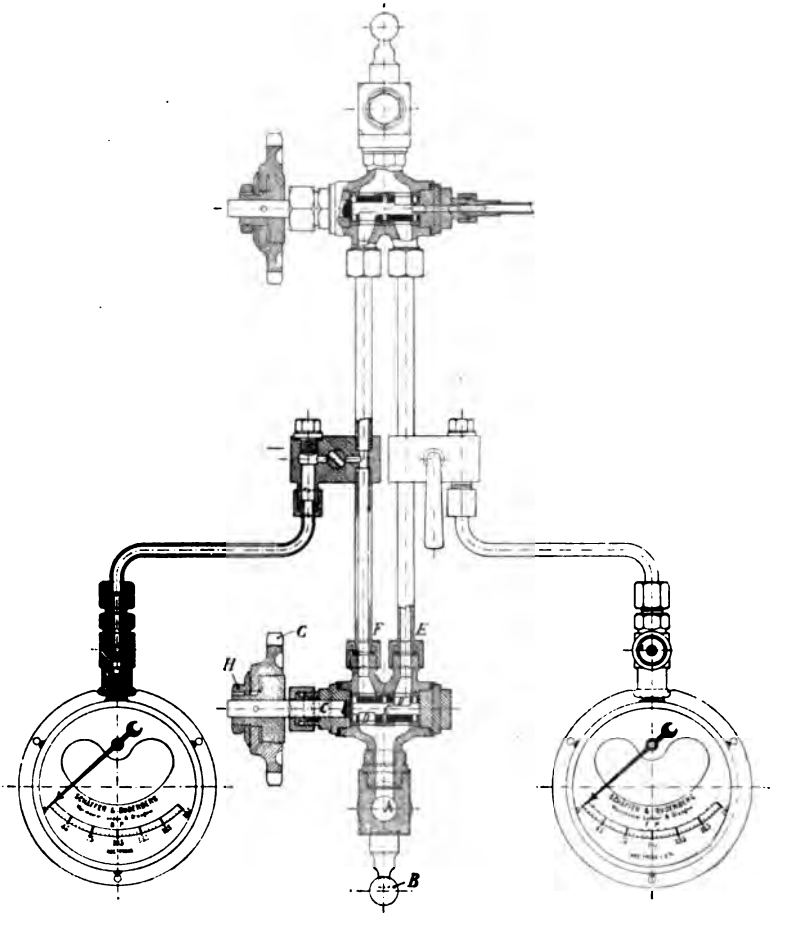


FIG. 433.

pressure on the piston, and (2) on another pressure-gauge the mean result of the

back or exhaust pressure on the piston. Then, by taking the difference between the two readings, the net result is the mean effective pressure on the piston per unit of time.

The result obtained by this means is not exactly the same as that obtained with the ordinary indicator, because the indicator gives the mean effective pressure per unit of distance. There is, however, a definite ratio between the two kinds of mean pressure, and this ratio is allowed for by increasing the mean-pressure reading of the forward or driving-pressure gauge by 3 per cent. This correction is the average correction found by experiment to be necessary, and it is made upon the scale of the gauge. So that the reading obtained is the correct reading, and is within a very small percentage of the reading given by the best ordinary indicators.

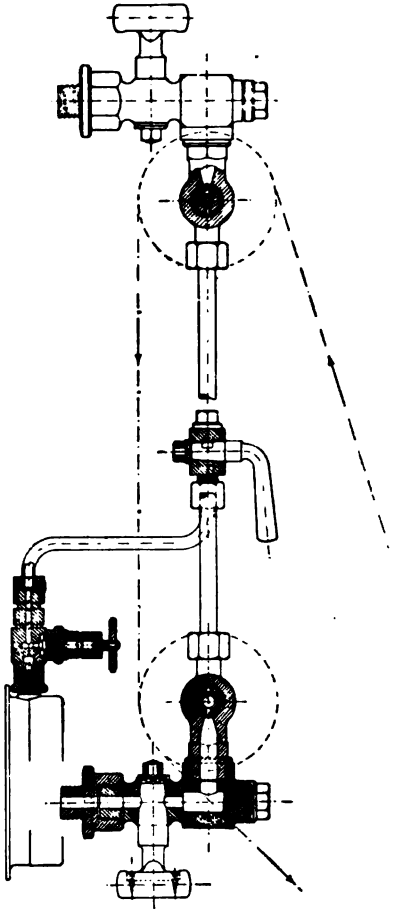


FIG. 434.

The construction of the instrument will be seen from the accompanying figures. Fig. 433 is a front section, and Fig. 434 a side section.

The instrument consists of two valve-boxes, one for each end of the cylinder, joined by connecting pipes, each pipe being in communication with a pressure-gauge. Each valve-box contains a rotating valve, hollow in the middle, with ports constructed as shown in the figure, so that, supposing the engine piston of a vertical engine to be at the bottom of its stroke, then, referring to the bottom valve box, the valve has just opened to steam, and remains open during the whole of the stroke. The steam enters the instrument at A, Fig. 433, passes through the ports D, D, which are open, and fills pipe E and communicates its pressure to the gauge on the right, which is the driving-pressure gauge. Meantime the valve of the top instrument is closed to this gauge.

At the same time, while the engine piston is ascending, the exhaust steam is passing through the upper valve during the whole of the stroke into the pipe F, from which the pressure is transmitted to the back-pressure gauge on the left. Meantime the valve of the bottom instrument is closed to exhaust.

During the down-stroke the process is reversed, and the driving-steam from the top of the piston again passes to the driving-pressure gauge, and the exhaust steam from the bottom of the engine piston again passes to the exhaust-pressure gauge.

The gauges thus receive a continuous series of impulses, one gauge receiving driving pressures only, and the other back pressures only.

The finger of the gauge gives a steady reading of the mean effect by the use of two throttling cocks, one at each end of the syphons, which by careful adjustment can be made to reduce the oscillations of the finger to a very small arc of motion without affecting the accuracy of the reading.

II.

TO DRAW A CURVE OF THE FORM PV^n = CONSTANT.

Having given the values of V to find P for successive values of V.
Let p = 100 lbs. per square inch when volume V = 1.
P = 100 × 144 = 14,400 lbs. per square foot.

Then $PV^{1\cdot4} = C$
$\log P + 1\cdot4 \log V = \log C$
When V = 1, then $1\cdot4 \log V = 0$
and $\log P = \log C$
or $\log C = \log 14{,}400$
$= 4\cdot1584$

(1) Let V = 2 cub. ft.

Then $\log P = \log C - 1\cdot4 \log 2$
$= 4\cdot1584 - 1\cdot4(0\cdot3010)$
$= 3\cdot737$
$P = 5458$
$p = \frac{5458}{144} = 37\cdot9$ lbs. per square inch

(2) Let V = 3 cub. ft.

$\log P = \log C - 1\cdot4 \log 3$
$= 4\cdot1584 - 1\cdot4(0\cdot4771)$
$= 3\cdot4905$
$P = 3094$
$p = 21\cdot5$ lbs. per square inch

(3) Let V = 4 cub. ft.

$\log P = \log C - 1\cdot4 \log 4$
$= 4\cdot1584 - 1\cdot4(0\cdot6021)$
$= 3\cdot3155$
$P = 2068$
$p = 14\cdot3$ lbs. per square inch

And so on for any values of V.

III.

SATURATED-STEAM TABLES.

Absolute pressure, pounds per sq. inch.	Temperature of boiling-point, degrees F.	Heat of the liquid from 32° F.	Total heat from 32° F.	Latent heat.	Heat to overcome internal resistance.	Heat to overcome external resistance.	Thermal units actually contained in the steam above 32° F.	Weight of a cub. ft. in pounds.	Cub. ft. per pound.
p	t	A	H	L	ρ	E	$I = H - E$	w	V
1·0	102·0	70·0	1113·1	1043·0	981·1	61·9	1051·2	0·00299	334·6
2·0	126·3	94·4	1120·5	1026·1	961·9	64·2	1056·3	0·00576	173·6
3·0	141·6	109·8	1125·1	1015·3	949·5	65·8	1059·3	0·00844	118·4
4·0	153·1	121·4	1128·6	1007·2	940·4	66·8	1061·8	0·01107	90·31
5·0	162·3	130·7	1131·5	1000·8	933·1	67·7	1063·8	0·01366	73·22
6·0	170·1	138·6	1133·8	995·2	926·7	68·5	1065·3	0·01622	61·67
7·0	176·9	145·4	1135·9	990·5	921·4	69·1	1066·8	0·01874	53·37
8·0	182·9	151·5	1137·7	986·2	916·5	69·7	1068·0	0·02112	47·07
9·0	188·3	156·9	1139·4	982·5	912·4	70·1	1069·3	0·02374	42·13
10·0	193·2	161·9	1140·9	979·0	908·4	70·6	1070·3	0·02621	38·16
11·0	197·8	166·5	1142·3	975·8	904·8	71·0	1071·3	0·02866	34·88
12·0	202·0	170·7	1143·6	972·9	901·5	71·4	1072·2	0·03111	32·14
13·0	205·9	174·6	1144·7	970·1	898·4	71·7	1073·0	0·03355	29·82
14·0	209·6	178·3	1145·8	967·5	895·5	72·0	1073·8	0·03600	27·79
14·7	212·0	180·7	1146·6	965·8	893·5	72·3	1074·2	0·03758	26·64
15·0	213·0	181·8	1146·9	965·1	892·6	72·5	1074·4	0·03826	26·15
16·0	216·3	185·1	1147·9	962·8	890·0	72·8	1075·1	0·04067	24·59
17·0	219·4	188·3	1148·9	960·6	887·6	73·0	1075·9	0·04307	23·22
18·0	222·4	191·3	1149·8	958·5	885·3	73·2	1076·6	0·04547	22·00
19·0	225·2	194·1	1150·7	956·6	883·2	73·4	1077·3	0·04786	20·90
20·0	227·9	196·9	1151·5	954·6	881·0	73·6	1077·9	0·05023	19·91
21·0	230·5	199·5	1152·3	952·8	879·0	73·8	1078·5	0·05259	19·01
22·0	233·1	202·0	1153·0	951·0	877·0	74·0	1079·0	0·05495	18·20
23·0	235·5	204·5	1153·7	949·2	875·0	74·2	1079·5	0·05731	17·45
24·0	237·8	206·8	1154·4	947·6	873·2	74·4	1080·0	0·05966	16·76
25·0	240·0	209·1	1155·1	946·0	871·5	74·5	1080·6	0·06199	16·13
26·0	242·2	211·2	1155·8	944·6	869·9	74·7	1081·1	0·06432	15·55
27·0	244·3	213·4	1156·5	943·1	868·2	74·9	1081·6	0·06666	15·00

[1] The above steam data are for the most part taken from Prof. Peabody's valuable "Saturated Steam Tables," by kind permission of the author and publishers (Messrs. John Wiley and Sons, New York), and the same values are used throughout the text.

Absolute pressure, pounds per sq. inch.	Temperature of boiling-point, degrees F.	Heat of the liquid from 32° F.	Total heat from 32° F.	Latent heat.	Heat to overcome internal resistance.	Heat to overcome external resistance.	Thermal units actually contained in the steam above 32° F.	Weight of a cub. ft. in pounds.	Cub. ft. per pound
p	t	A	H	L	ρ	E	$I = H - E$	w	v
28·0	246·4	215·4	1157·1	941·7	866·7	75·0	1082·1	0·06899	14·4
29·0	248·3	217·4	1157·7	940·3	865·1	75·2	1082·5	0·07130	14·0
30·0	250·3	219·4	1158·3	938·9	863·6	75·3	1083·0	0·07360	13·5
31·0	252·1	221·3	1158·8	937·5	862·0	75·5	1083·3	0·07590	13·1
32·0	254·0	223·1	1159·4	936·3	860·7	75·6	1083·8	0·07821	12·7
33·0	255·8	224·9	1159·9	935·0	859·2	75·8	1084·1	0·08051	12·4
34·0	257·5	226·7	1160·4	933·7	857·8	75·9	1084·5	0·08280	12·0
35·0	259·2	228·4	1161·0	932·6	856·6	76·0	1085·0	0·08508	11·75
40·0	267·1	236·4	1163·4	927·0	850·3	76·7	1086·7	0·09644	10·37
45·0	274·3	243·6	1165·6	922·0	844·8	77·2	1088·4	0·1077	9·287
50·0	280·8	250·2	1167·6	917·4	839·7	77·7	1089·9	0·1188	8·419
55·0	286·9	256·3	1169·4	913·1	834·9	78·2	1091·2	0·1299	7·70
60·0	292·5	261·9	1171·2	909·3	830·7	78·6	1092·6	0·1409	7·09
65·0	297·8	267·2	1172·7	905·5	826·5	79·0	1093·7	0·1519	6·58
70·0	302·7	272·2	1174·3	902·1	822·7	79·4	1094·9	0·1628	6·14
75·0	307·4	276·9	1175·7	898·8	819·1	79·7	1096·0	0·1736	5·76
80·0	311·8	281·4	1177·0	895·6	815·5	80·1	1096·9	0·1843	5·42
85·0	316·0	285·8	1178·3	892·5	812·1	80·4	1097·9	0·1951	5·12
90·0	320·0	290·0	1179·6	889·6	808·9	80·7	1098·9	0·2058	4·86
95·0	323·9	294·0	1180·7	886·7	805·8	80·9	1099·8	0·2165	4·62
100·0	327·6	297·9	1181·9	884·0	802·8	81·2	1100·7	0·2271	4·40
105·0	331·1	301·6	1182·9	881·3	799·9	81·4	1101·5	0·2378	4·20
110·0	334·6	305·2	1184·0	878·8	797·1	81·7	1102·3	0·2484	4·02
115·0	337·9	308·7	1185·0	876·3	794·4	81·9	1103·1	0·2589	3·862
120·0	341·0	312·0	1186·0	874·0	791·9	82·1	1103·9	0·2695	3·711
125·0	344·1	315·2	1186·9	871·7	789·4	82·3	1104·6	0·2800	3·572
130·0	347·1	318·4	1187·8	869·4	786·9	82·5	1105·3	0·2904	3·444
135·0	350·0	321·4	1188·7	867·3	784·7	82·6	1106·1	0·3009	3·323
140·0	352·8	324·4	1189·5	865·1	782·3	82·8	1106·7	0·3113	3·212
145·0	355·6	327·2	1190·4	863·2	780·2	83·0	1107·4	0·3218	3·107
150·0	358·3	330·0	1191·2	861·2	778·1	83·1	1108·1	0·3321	3·011
155·0	360·9	332·7	1192·0	859·3	776·0	83·3	1108·7	0·3426	2·919
160·0	363·4	335·4	1192·8	857·4	774·0	83·4	1109·4	0·3530	2·833
165·0	365·9	338·0	1193·6	855·6	772·0	83·6	1110·0	0·3635	2·751
170·0	368·3	340·5	1194·3	853·8	770·1	83·7	1110·6	0·3737	2·676
175·0	370·6	343·0	1195·0	852·0	768·2	83·8	1111·2	0·3841	2·603
180·0	373·0	345·4	1195·7	850·3	766·4	83·9	1111·8	0·3945	2·535
185·0	375·23	347·8	1196·4	848·6	764·6	84·0	1112·4	0·4049	2·470
190·0	377·4	350·1	1197·1	847·0	762·9	84·1	1113·0	0·4153	2·408
195·0	379·6	352·4	1197·7	845·3	761·1	84·2	1113·5	0·4257	2·349
200·0	381·7	354·6	1198·4	843·8	759·5	84·3	1114·1	0·4359	2·294
250·0	401·0	374·7	1204·2	829·5	744·5	85·0	1119·2	0·5393	1·854
300·0	417·4	391·9	1209·3	817·4	732·0	85·4	1123·9	0·6440	1·551
400·0	444·9	419·8	1217·7	797·9	712·3	86·2	1131·5	0·8572	1·167

IV.

HYPERBOLIC LOGARITHMS.

No.	Hyp. log.	No.	Hyp. log.	No.	Hyp. log.	No.	Hyp. log.
1·1	0·0953	3·7	1·3083	6·3	1·8405	8·9	2·1861
1·2	0·1823	3·8	1·3350	6·4	1·8563	9·0	2·1972
1·3	0·2624	3·9	1·3610	6·5	1·8718	9·1	2·2083
1·4	0 3365	4·0	1·3863	6·6	1·8871	9·2	2·2192
1·5	0·4055	4·1	1·4110	6·7	1·9021	9·3	2·2300
1·6	0·4700	4·2	1·4351	6·8	1·9169	9·4	2·2407
1·7	0·5306	4·3	1·4586	6·9	1·9315	9·5	2·2513
1·8	0·5878	4·4	1·4816	7·0	1·9459	9·6	2·2618
1·9	0·6419	4·5	1·5041	7·1	1·9601	9·7	2·2721
2·0	0·6931	4·6	1·5261	7·2	1·9741	9·8	2·2824
2·1	0·7419	4·7	1·5476	7·3	1·9879	9·9	2·2925
2·2	0·7885	4·8	1·5686	7·4	2·0015	10·0	2·3026
2·3	0·8329	4·9	1·5896	7·5	2·0149	10·5	2·3513
2·4	0·8755	5·0	1·6094	7·6	2·0281	11·0	2·3979
2·5	0·9163	5·1	1·6292	7·7	2·0412	11·5	2·4430
2·6	0·9555	5·2	1·6487	7·8	2·0541	12·0	2·4849
2·7	0·9933	5·3	1·6677	7·9	2·0669	12·5	2·5262
2·8	1·0296	5·4	1·6864	8·0	2·0794	13·0	2·5649
2·9	1·0647	5·5	1·7047	8·1	2·0919	13·5	2·6027
3·0	1·0986	5·6	1·7228	8·2	2·1041	14·0	2·6391
3·1	1·1314	5·7	1·7405	8·3	2·1163	15·0	2·7081
3·2	1·1632	5·8	1·7579	8·4	2·1282	16·0	2·7726
3·3	1·1939	5·9	1·7750	8·5	2·1401	17·0	2·8332
3·4	1·2238	6·0	1·7918	8·6	2·1518	18·0	2·8904
3·5	1·2528	6·1	1·8083	8·7	2·1633	19·0	2·9444
3·6	1·2809	6·2	1·8245	8·8	2·1748	20·0	2·9957

Absolute pressure, pounds per sq. inch.	Temperature of boiling-point, degrees F.	Heat of the liquid from 32° F.	Total heat from 32° F.	Latent heat.	Heat to overcome internal resistance.	Heat to overcome external resistance.	Thermal units actually contained in the steam above 32° F.	Weight of a cub. ft. in pounds.	Cub. ft. per pound.
p	t	h	H	L	ρ	E	$I = H - E$	w	V
28·0	246·4	215·4	1157·1	941·7	866·7	75·0	1082·1	0·06899	14·49
29·0	248·3	217·4	1157·7	940·3	865·1	75·2	1082·5	0·07130	14·03
30·0	250·3	219·4	1158·3	938·9	863·6	75·3	1083·0	0·07360	13·59
31·0	252·1	221·3	1158·8	937·5	862·0	75·5	1083·3	0·07590	13·18
32·0	254·0	223·1	1159·4	936·3	860·7	75·6	1083·8	0·07821	12·78
33·0	255·8	224·9	1159·9	935·0	859·2	75·8	1084·1	0·08051	12·41
34·0	257·5	226·7	1160·4	933·7	857·8	75·9	1084·5	0·08280	12·07
35·0	259·2	228·4	1161·0	932·6	856·6	76·0	1085·0	0·08508	11·75
40·0	267·1	236·4	1163·4	927·0	850·3	76·7	1086·7	0·09644	10·37
45·0	274·3	243·6	1165·6	922·0	844·8	77·2	1088·4	0·1077	9·287
50·0	280·8	250·2	1167·6	917·4	839·7	77·7	1089·9	0·1188	8·414
55·0	286·9	256·3	1169·4	913·1	834·9	78·2	1091·2	0·1299	7·696
60·0	292·5	261·9	1171·2	909·3	830·7	78·6	1092·6	0·1409	7·096
65·0	297·8	267·2	1172·7	905·5	826·5	79·0	1093·7	0·1519	6·583
70·0	302·7	272·2	1174·3	902·1	822·7	79·4	1094·9	0·1628	6·144
75·0	307·4	276·9	1175·7	898·8	819·1	79·7	1096·0	0·1736	5·762
80·0	311·8	281·4	1177·0	895·6	815·5	80·1	1096·9	0·1843	5·425
85·0	316·0	285·8	1178·3	892·5	812·1	80·4	1097·9	0·1951	5·125
90·0	320·0	290·0	1179·6	889·6	808·9	80·7	1098·9	0·2058	4·858
95·0	323·9	294·0	1180·7	886·7	805·8	80·9	1099·8	0·2165	4·619
100·0	327·6	297·9	1181·9	884·0	802·8	81·2	1100·7	0·2271	4·403
105·0	331·1	301·6	1182·9	881·3	799·9	81·4	1101·5	0·2378	4·206
110·0	334·6	305·2	1184·0	878·8	797·1	81·7	1102·3	0·2484	4·026
115·0	337·9	308·7	1185·0	876·3	794·4	81·9	1103·1	0·2589	3·862
120·0	341·0	312·0	1186·0	874·0	791·9	82·1	1103·9	0·2695	3·711
125·0	344·1	315·2	1186·9	871·7	789·4	82·3	1104·6	0·2800	3·572
130·0	347·1	318·4	1187·8	869·4	786·9	82·5	1105·3	0·2904	3·444
135·0	350·0	321·4	1188·7	867·3	784·7	82·6	1106·1	0·3009	3·323
140·0	352·8	324·4	1189·5	865·1	782·3	82·8	1106·7	0·3113	3·212
145·0	355·6	327·2	1190·4	863·2	780·2	83·0	1107·4	0·3218	3·107
150·0	358·3	330·0	1191·2	861·2	778·1	83·1	1108·1	0·3321	3·011
155·0	360·9	332·7	1192·0	859·3	776·0	83·3	1108·7	0·3426	2·919
160·0	363·4	335·4	1192·8	857·4	774·0	83·4	1109·4	0·3530	2·833
165·0	365·9	338·0	1193·6	855·6	772·0	83·6	1110·0	0·3635	2·751
170·0	368·3	340·5	1194·3	853·8	770·1	83·7	1110·6	0·3737	2·676
175·0	370·6	343·0	1195·0	852·0	768·2	83·8	1111·2	0·3841	2·603
180·0	373·0	345·4	1195·7	850·3	766·4	83·9	1111·8	0·3945	2·535
185·0	375·23	347·8	1196·4	848·6	764·6	84·0	1112·4	0·4049	2·470
190·0	377·4	350·1	1197·1	847·0	762·9	84·1	1113·0	0·4153	2·408
195·0	379·6	352·4	1197·7	845·3	761·1	84·2	1113·5	0·4257	2·349
200·0	381·7	354·6	1198·4	843·8	759·5	84·3	1114·1	0·4359	2·294
250·0	401·0	374·7	1204·2	829·5	744·5	85·0	1119·2	0·5393	1·854
300·0	417·4	391·9	1209·3	817·4	732·0	85·4	1123·9	0·6440	1·554
400·0	444·9	419·8	1217·7	797·9	712·3	86·2	1131·5	0·8572	1·167

IV.

HYPERBOLIC LOGARITHMS.

No.	Hyp. log.	No.	Hyp. log.	No.	Hyp. log.	No.	Hyp. log.
1·1	0·0953	3·7	1·3083	6·3	1·8405	8·9	2·1861
1·2	0·1823	3·8	1·3350	6·4	1·8563	9·0	2·1972
1·3	0·2624	3·9	1·3610	6·5	1·8718	9·1	2·2083
1·4	0·3365	4·0	1·3863	6·6	1·8871	9·2	2·2192
1·5	0·4055	4·1	1·4110	6·7	1·9021	9·3	2·2300
1·6	0·4700	4·2	1·4351	6·8	1·9169	9·4	2·2407
1·7	0·5306	4·3	1·4586	6·9	1·9315	9·5	2·2513
1·8	0·5878	4·4	1·4816	7·0	1·9459	9·6	2·2618
1·9	0·6419	4·5	1·5041	7·1	1·9601	9·7	2·2721
2·0	0·6931	4·6	1·5261	7·2	1·9741	9·8	2·2824
2·1	0·7419	4·7	1·5476	7·3	1·9879	9·9	2·2925
2·2	0·7885	4·8	1·5686	7·4	2·0015	10·0	2·3026
2·3	0·8329	4·9	1·5896	7·5	2·0149	10·5	2·3513
2·4	0·8755	5·0	1·6094	7·6	2·0281	11·0	2·3979
2·5	0·9163	5·1	1·6292	7·7	2·0412	11·5	2·4430
2·6	0·9555	5·2	1·6487	7·8	2·0541	12·0	2·4849
2·7	0·9933	5·3	1·6677	7·9	2·0669	12·5	2·5262
2·8	1·0296	5·4	1·6864	8·0	2·0794	13·0	2·5649
2·9	1·0647	5·5	1·7047	8·1	2·0919	13·5	2·6027
3·0	1·0986	5·6	1·7228	8·2	2·1041	14·0	2·6391
3·1	1·1314	5·7	1·7405	8·3	2·1163	15·0	2·7081
3·2	1·1632	5·8	1·7579	8·4	2·1282	16·0	2·7726
3·3	1·1939	5·9	1·7750	8·5	2·1401	17·0	2·8332
3·4	1·2238	6·0	1·7918	8·6	2·1518	18·0	2·8904
3·5	1·2528	6·1	1·8083	8·7	2·1633	19·0	2·9444
3·6	1·2809	6·2	1·8245	8·8	2·1748	20·0	2·9957

V.

TABLE OF MEAN-PRESSURE RATIOS.

The mean pressure p_m is obtained for any given number of expansions by multiplying the initial absolute pressure by the factor given. Thus, for adiabatic expansion with a cut-off at $\frac{1}{3}$, the initial pressure = 100 lbs. absolute—

$$p_m = p_1 \times \text{factor for five expansions} = 100 \times 0{\cdot}496$$
$$= 49{\cdot}6 \text{ lbs.}$$

$R = \frac{V_2}{V_1}$ ratio of expansion.	$\frac{p_m}{p_1} = \frac{1 + \text{hyp. log } r}{r}$ hyperbolic curve.	$\frac{p_m}{p_1} = 17r^{-1} - 16r^{-\frac{17}{16}}$ saturation curve.	$\frac{p_m}{p_1} = 10r^{-1} - 9r^{-\frac{10}{9}}$ adiabatic curve.
1·0	1·00	1·00	1·00
1·5	0·937	0·934	0·931
2·0	0·847	0·840	0·834
2·5	0·766	0·756	0·748
3·0	0·700	0·688	0·678
3·5	0·644	0·631	0·620
4·0	0·597	0·583	0·571
4·5	0·556	0·542	0·530
5·0	0·522	0·506	0·496
5·5	0·492	0·477	0·464
6·0	0·465	0·450	0·438
7·0	0·421	0·405	0·393
8·0	0·385	0·370	0·357
9·0	0·355	0·340	0·328
10·0	0·330	0·314	0·303
11·0	0·309	0·294	0·283
12·0	0·290	0·275	0·264
13·0	0·274	0·259	0·248
14·0	0·260	0·245	0·234
15·0	0·247	0·232	0·221
16·0	0·236	0·221	0·211
17·0	0·226	0·211	0·201
18·0	0·216	0·202	0·192
19·0	0·208	0·193	0·183
20·0	0·200	0·186	0·177
21·0	0·192	0·178	0·169
22·0	0·186	0·172	0·163
23·0	0·180	0·167	0·158
24·0	0·174	0·160	0·151
25·0	0·169	0·155	0·146

VI.

TABLE OF ENTROPY.

Temperature Fahrenheit. t.	Specific heat of water. c.	Entropy of 1 lb. of water from 32°. ϕ_w	Entropy of 1 lb. of steam. $\phi_s = \frac{L}{T}$	Entropy of 1 lb. of steam from 32° F. $\phi = \phi_w + \phi$	$\frac{d\phi}{dt}$
32	1		2·2189	2·2189	
50	1	0·0359	2·1163	2·1522	0·00370
60	1	0·0553	2·0621	2·1174	0·00348
70	1·001	0·0744	2·0100	2·0844	0·00330
80	1·001	0·0931	1·9598	2·0529	0·00315
90	1·002	0·1115	1·9115	2·0230	0·00299
100	1·002	0·1296	1·8649	1·9945	0·00285
110	1·003	0·1473	1·8200	1·9673	0·00272
120	1·004	0·1648	1·7766	1·9414	0·00259
130	1·004	0·1819	1·7346	1·9165	0·00249
140	1·005	0·1988	1·6940	1·8928	0·00237
150	1·006	0·2154	1·6547	1·8701	0·00227
160	1·007	0·2318	1·6167	1·8485	0·00216
170	1·008	0·2479	1·5799	1·8278	0·00207
180	1·009	0·2638	1·5442	1·8080	0·00198
190	1·010	0·2795	1·5096	1·7891	0·00189
200	1·011	0·2949	1·4760	1·7709	0·00182
250	1·017	0·3690	1·3220	1·6910	0·00160
300	1·026	0·4385	1·1880	1·6265	0·00129
350	1·034	0·5042	1·0698	1·5740	0·00105
400	1·044	0 5665	0·9649	1·5314	0·00085

INDEX

A.

Absolute temperature, definition of, 8
Acceleration of reciprocating parts, 238
—— diagrams, 242
——. ——, Klein, 283
Adiabatic curve, to draw, 386
—— expansion, 13
Advance, angle of, 65
Automatic expansion v. throttling, 312

B.

Balance weights, 287
Balancing of engines, 277
—— ——, Dalby on, 295
Bearings, main, 271
——, Dewrance on, 271
Belliss engine, 353
Boulvin's temperature-entropy diagram, 302
Boyle's law, 7
Brake horse-power, definition of, 2
British thermal unit, 5

C.

Calorimeters, 34
Carnot's cycle, 19
Charles, law of, 8
Clausius cycle, 58
Clearance, 101
—— surface, polished, 165
Combining indicator diagrams, 144
Compound engine, 125
—— ——, distribution of work in, 128
—— ——, indicator diagrams, 144
—— ——, ratio of cylinders, 139
—— ——, size of, 137
Compounding, methods of, 126
Compression, 101, 103
——, work done during, 18
Condensation, 168
Condensers, 179
Condensing-water coolers, 188
Connecting-rod, obliquity of, 67, 228
Connecting-rods, 263
—— ——, Sisson's, 271
Corliss engine, 331
—— ——, performance of, 345
—— ——, trip gear, 334, 341
—— —— valves, to set, 335
Cornish cycle, 318
Crank-pin, tangential pressures, 229
Crank-shaft, turning effort in, 227
Cranks, combination of, effect on twisting moment, 233
Cross-heads, 259
Curves, adiabatic, 39
——, constant-volume, 45
——, hyperbolic, 39
—— of steam-consumption, 314
——, saturation, 39
Cylinder liners, 253
—— patterns, 253
Cylinders, 252
——, internal surface of, 164

D.

Davey on steam-engine performance, 317
Dewrance on bearings, 271
Diagram factors, 136
Drummond on high pressures in locomotives, 307
Dry-steam fraction, 115

E.

Eccentric, 65
Economical load, the most, 313
Efficiency, 2, 275
——, mechanical, 275
——, thermal, report of Committee Inst. C.E., 300
Ejector condenser, the, 186
Electrical units, 2
Engine frames, 274

Entropy, 41
—— chart, Plate I.
——, table of, 393
Equivalent eccentric, 81
Evaporation, equivalent, 33
Evaporative condenser, the, 187
Expansion, adiabatic, 13
——, isothermal, 12
—— regulator, 79
——, useful limit of, 105
—— valve gear, 76
—— ——, Meyer, 84

F.

Feed heating from receiver, 192
—— water filters, 196
—— —— heaters, 191
Five-crank engine, 365
Flywheels, 245
——, weight of, 246
Frames of engines, 274
Friction, 275
——. distribution of, 276

G.

Gases, specific heat of, 10
Goss on locomotive performance, 380
Governors, 200

H.

Hartnell governor, 216
Heat, efficiency of, 23
—— energy areas, 15
—— exchange areas, 123
Hirn's analysis, 120
Horse-power, definition of, 2
Hyperbolic logarithms, 391

I.

Inchmona's engines, 365
Increase of initial steam-pressures, 306
Independent condenser, 184
Indicated horse-power, 2, 106
Indicator, the, 90
—— diagrams, 98, 134
—— ——, correction for inertia, 237, 243
——, reducing motions, 95
Inertia, definition of, 237
——, effects on crank effort, 239
——, balancing effects, 277
Initial condensation, 111, 168
Injector, the, 172
——, efficiency of, 176
——, automatic, 177
Internal energy, 9
Isothermal expansion, 12

J.

Jacket. *See* Steam-jacket
Joule's law, 9
Joy's valve gear, 374, 377

K.

Kershaw's acceleration curve, 285
Klein's diagram of acceleration, 283

L.

Lap of valve, 60
Latent heat, 28
Lead of valve, 60
Liners of cylinders, 253
Link motion, 77, 376
Load factor, 316
——, rated, 315
Locomotive, the, 368
——, compound, 382
Logarithms, hyperbolic, 391
Lubrication, Dewrance on, 271
Lubricator, sight-feed, 198

M.

Marine engine, 363
Mean pressure, 107
—— —— indicator, 385
—— —— ratios, 392
Mechanical efficiency, 275
Metallic gland-packing, 255
Meyer expansion valve, 84
Mill engines, 363

P.

Patterns for cylinders, 253
Peache engine, 351
Performance of steam-engines, 300, 345, 366, 380
Pickering governor, 218
Piston-valves, 256
—— velocities, 227
Pistons, 256
Power, definition of, 2
Pressures, increase of, on the, 306
Proell governor, 217
—— valve gear, 329

Q.

Quality of steam, 110
Quick-revolution engines, 348

R.

Rankine cycle, 58
Rated load, 315
Reciprocating parts, acceleration of, 238
Reducing valves, reduction of pressure by, 308
Re-evaporation, 112
Regulator valve, 378
Reuleaux diagrams, 71, 88
Reversibility, 22
Rigg, tests of Westinghouse engine, 316
Ripper's mean-pressure indicator, 385
Rotation, effect of speed of, 317

S.

Safety-valve for locomotive, 378
Saturated steam pressure and temperature, 26
Saturation curve applied to indicator diagram, 116
Scott-King design for high-speed engines, 357
Separator, the, 111
Shaft governor, 218
Short-stroke cylinder surface, 164
Sight-feed lubricator, 198
Single-acting engines, 348, 351
—— and double-acting engines, stresses on pins, 361
Sisson's connecting-rod, 271
—— engine, 360
Slide-valve, 60
——, balanced, 63
——, double-ported, 62
——, piston, 63
Specific heat, definition of, 5
—— —— of gases, 10
Speed of rotation, effect of,
Springs, 221
Steam, condensation due to expansion of, 114
——, consumption curves of, 314
——, density and volume of, 32
——, dryness tests for, 34
—— engine performance, 300
——, flow of, 56
——, formulæ for work done per pound, 54
—— jacket, 166
—— pressure, increase of, 306
Steam, properties of, 25
——, specific heat of, 27
——, "state point" of, 53
——, superheated, 146
—— tables, 390
——, total heat of, 28
——, weight of, accounted for by indicator, 115
——, ——, used by the engine, 305
Superheated steam, 146
—— ——, efficiency of, 148
—— ——, gain by, 151
—— ——, lubrication with, 151
—— ——, performance of, 317
—— ——, regulation of, 162
—— ——, specific heat of, 147
—— ——, total heat of, 147
Superheaters, 158

T.

Tangential pressure on crank, 229
Temperature, absolute, 8
——, definition of, 6
——, mean, of cylinder walls, 113
——, range of, 113
Temperature-entropy diagrams, 41, 118, 148
—— ——, applications of, 46
Thermal efficiency of engines, 56
—— —— injector, 176
—— ——, report of Committee of Inst. C.E., 300
Thermal unit, British, 5
Thermodynamics, first law of, 6
—— of gases, 5
——, second law of, 7
Thom on marine engines, 365
Tractive force of locomotive, 379
Train resistance, 379
Turning effort on crank-shaft, 227
Twisting moment, 230

U.

Unit of heat, definition of, 5,
—— work, 1

V

Vacuum gauge, 183
Valve diagram, ellipse, 73
—— ——, Reech, 71
—— ——, Reuleaux, 71
—— ——, Zeuner, 67

Valve displacement, 66
—— gear, 329
—— gears, expansion, 76
Valves, double-beat, 324
Velocities, piston, 227
Volume, pressure, and temperature, relation between, 14

W.

Water, volume per pound, 25
——, specific heat of, 27
Westinghouse engine, results of trials, 316
Willans engine, 349
—— straight-line law, 303
Winding engine, 347
Work, definition of, 1
——, unit of, 1
—— during expansion, 11

Z.

Zeuner, valve diagram, 67

THE END.

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BECCLES.

A

CLASSIFIED CATALOGUE

OF

SCIENTIFIC WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

MESSRS. LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO.

LONDON: 39 PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

NEW YORK: 91 & 93 FIFTH AVENUE.

BOMBAY: 32 HORNBY ROAD.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Advanced Science Manuals	30	Mineralogy	14
Agriculture	27	Natural History	18
Astronomy	14	Naval Architecture	13
Bacteriology	25	Navigation	14
Biology	25	Optics	8
Botany	26	Photography	8
Building Construction	10	Physics	5
Chemistry	2	Physiography	17
Dynamics	6	Physiology	25
Electricity	11	*Practical Elementary Science Series*	32
Elementary Science Manuals	30	*Proctor's (R. A.) Works*	15
Engineering	12	Sound	8
Geology	17	Statics	6
Health and Hygiene	18	Steam, Oil and Gas Engines	9
Heat	8	Strength of Materials	12
Hydrostatics	6	Technology	17
Light	8	Telegraphy	12
London Science Class-Books	32	Telephone	12
Longmans' Civil Engineering Series	13	*Text-Books of Science*	29
Machine Drawing and Design	13	Thermodynamics	8
Magnetism	11	*Tyndall's (John) Works*	28
Manufactures	17	Veterinary Medicine, etc.	24
Mechanics	6	Workshop Appliances	14
Medicine and Surgery	19	Zoology	25
Metallurgy	14		

CHEMISTRY.

CROOKES.—SELECT METHODS IN CHEMICAL ANALYSIS, chiefly Inorganic. By Sir WILLIAM CROOKES, F.R.S., etc. Third Edition, Rewritten and Enlarged. With 67 Woodcuts. 8vo., 21*s.* net.

FURNEAUX.—ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY, Inorganic and Organic. By W. FURNEAUX, F.R.C.S., Lecturer on Chemistry, London School Board. With 65 Illustrations and 155 Experiments. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

GARRETT AND HARDEN.—AN ELEMENTARY COURSE OF PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By F. C. GARRETT, M.Sc. (Vict. et Dunelm.), Assistant Lecturer and Demonstrator in Chemistry, the Durham College of Science, Newcastle-on-Tyne; and ARTHUR HARDEN, M.Sc. (Vict.), Ph.D., Assistant Lecturer and Demonstrator in Chemistry, the Owens College, Manchester. With 14 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.*

JAGO.—Works by W. JAGO, F.C.S., F.I.C.

INORGANIC CHEMISTRY, THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL. With an Introduction to the Principles of Chemical Analysis, Inorganic and Organic. With 63 Woodcuts and numerous Questions and Exercises. Fcp. 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

AN INTRODUCTION TO PRACTICAL INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. Crown 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

INORGANIC CHEMISTRY, THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL. A Manual for Students in Advanced Classes of the Science and Art Department. With Plate of Spectra and 78 Woodcuts. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

KOLBE.—A SHORT TEXT-BOOK OF INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By Dr. HERMANN KOLBE. Translated and Edited by T. S. HUMPIDGE, Ph.D. With 66 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 8*s.* 6*d.*

MENDELÉEFF.—THE PRINCIPLES OF CHEMISTRY. By D. MENDELÉEFF. Translated from the Russian (Sixth Edition) by GEORGE KAMENSKY, A.R.S.M., of the Imperial Mint, St. Petersburg; and Edited by T. A. LAWSON, B.Sc., Ph.D., Fellow of the Institute of Chemistry. With 96 Diagrams and Illustrations. 2 vols. 8vo., 36*s.*

MEYER.—OUTLINES OF THEORETICAL CHEMISTRY. By LOTHAR MEYER, Professor of Chemistry in the University of Tübingen. Translated by Professors P. PHILLIPS BEDSON, D.Sc., and W. CARLETON WILLIAMS, B.Sc. 8vo., 9*s.*

MILLER.—INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By W. ALLEN MILLER, M.D., LL.D. With 71 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

CHEMISTRY—*Continued.*

MUIR.—A COURSE OF PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. By M. M. P. MUIR, M.A., Fellow and Prælector in Chemistry of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. (3 Parts.)

Part I. Elementary. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

Part II. Intermediate. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

Part III. [*In preparation.*

NEWTH.—Works by G. S. NEWTH, F.I.C., F.C.S., Demonstrator in the Royal College of Science, London; Assistant Examiner in Chemistry, Science and Art Department.

CHEMICAL LECTURE EXPERIMENTS. With 224 Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

CHEMICAL ANALYSIS, QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE. With 100 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

A TEXT-BOOK OF INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. With 146 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. With 108 Illustrations and 254 Experiments. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

OSTWALD.—SOLUTIONS. By W. OSTWALD, Professor of Chemistry in the University of Leipzig. Being the Fourth Book, with some additions, of the Second Edition of Oswald's 'Lehrbuch der allgemeinen Chemie'. Translated by M. M. PATTISON MUIR, Fellow and Prælector in Chemistry of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

REYNOLDS.—EXPERIMENTAL CHEMISTRY FOR JUNIOR STUDENTS. By J. EMERSON REYNOLDS, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry, University of Dublin. Fcp. 8vo., with numerous Woodcuts.

Part I. Introductory. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

Part II. Non-Metals, with an Appendix on Systematic Testing for Acids. Fcp. 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

Part III. Metals, and Allied Bodies. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

Part IV. Carbon Compounds. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.*

SHENSTONE.—Works by W. A. SHENSTONE, Lecturer on Chemistry in Clifton College.

THE METHODS OF GLASS-BLOWING. For the use of Physical and Chemical Students. With 42 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

A PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO CHEMISTRY. Intended to give a Practical acquaintance with the Elementary Facts and Principles of Chemistry. With 25 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.*

CHEMISTRY—*Continued.*

THORNTON AND PEARSON.—NOTES ON VOLUMETRIC ANALYSIS. By ARTHUR THORNTON, M.A., Senior Science Master, Bradford Grammar School; and MARCHANT PEARSON, B.A., Assistant Science Master, Bradford Grammar School. Medium 8vo., 2*s.*

THORPE.—Works by T. E. THORPE, B.Sc. (Vict.), Ph.D., F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the Royal College of Science, South Kensington. Assisted by Eminent Contributors.

A DICTIONARY OF APPLIED CHEMISTRY. 3 vols. 8vo. Vols. I. and II., 42*s.* each. Vol. III., 63*s.*

QUANTITATIVE CHEMICAL ANALYSIS. With 88 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

THORPE AND MUIR.—QUALITATIVE CHEMICAL ANALYSIS AND LABORATORY PRACTICE. By T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., D.Sc., F.R.S., and M. M. PATTISON MUIR, M.A. With Plate of Spectra and 57 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

TILDEN.—Works by WILLIAM A. TILDEN, D.Sc. London, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the Royal College of Science, South Kensington.

A SHORT HISTORY OF THE PROGRESS OF SCIENTIFIC CHEMISTRY IN OUR OWN TIMES. Crown 8vo., 5*s.* net.

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF CHEMICAL PHILOSOPHY. The Principles of Theoretical and Systematic Chemistry. With 5 Woodcuts. With or without the ANSWERS of Problems. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. The principles of Qualitative Analysis. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

HINTS ON THE TEACHING OF ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY IN SCHOOLS AND SCIENCE CLASSES. With 7 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.*

WHITELEY.—Works by R. LLOYD WHITELEY, F.I.C., Principal of the Municipal Science School, West Bromwich.

CHEMICAL CALCULATIONS. With Explanatory Notes, Problems and Answers, specially adapted for use in Colleges and Science Schools. With a Preface by Professor F. CLOWES, D.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C. Crown 8vo., 2*s.*

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY: the Fatty Compounds. With 45 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

PHYSICS, ETC.

EARL.—THE ELEMENTS OF LABORATORY WORK: a Course of Natural Science. By A. G. EARL, M.A., F.C.S., late Scholar of Christ's College, Cambridge. With 57 Diagrams and numerous Exercises and Questions. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

GANOT.—Works by PROFESSOR GANOT. Translated and Edited by E. ATKINSON, Ph.D., F.C.S.

ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PHYSICS, Experimental and Applied. With 9 Coloured Plates and Maps, and 1057 Woodcuts, and Appendix of Problems and Examples with Answers. Crown 8vo., 15*s.*

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY FOR GENERAL READERS AND YOUNG PERSONS. With 7 Plates, 624 Woodcuts, and an Appendix of Questions. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

GLAZEBROOK AND SHAW.—PRACTICAL PHYSICS. By R. T. GLAZEBROOK, M.A., F.R.S., and W. N. SHAW, M.A. With 134 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

GUTHRIE.—MOLECULAR PHYSICS AND SOUND. By F. GUTHRIE, Ph.D. With 91 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

HELMHOLTZ.—POPULAR LECTURES ON SCIENTIFIC SUBJECTS. By HERMANN VON HELMHOLTZ. Translated by E. ATKINSON, Ph.D., F.C.S., formerly Professor of Experimental Science, Staff College. With 68 Illustrations. 2 vols., crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.* each.

CONTENTS.—Vol. I.—The Relation of Natural Science to Science in General—Goethe's Scientific Researches—The Physiological Causes of Harmony in Music—Ice and Glaciers—The Interaction of the Natural Forces—The Recent Progress of the Theory of Vision—The Conservation of Force—The Aim and Progress of Physical Science.

CONTENTS.—Vol. II.—Gustav Magnus. In Memoriam—The Origin and Significance of Geometrical Axioms—The Relation of Optics to Painting—The Origin of the Planetary System—Thought in Medicine—Academic Freedom in German Universities—Hermann Von Helmholtz—An Autobiographical Sketch.

HENDERSON.—ELEMENTARY PHYSICS. By JOHN HENDERSON, D.Sc. (Edin.), A.I.E.E., Physics Department, Borough Road Polytechnic. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

MEYER.—THE KINETIC THEORY OF GASES. Elementary Treatise, with Mathematical Appendices. By Dr. OSKAR EMIL MEYER, Professor of Physics at the University of Breslau. Second Revised Edition. Translated by ROBERT E. BAYNES, M.A., Student of Christ Church, Oxford, and Dr. Lee's Reader in Physics. 8vo.

VAN 'T HOFF.—THE ARRANGEMENT OF ATOMS IN SPACE. By J. H. VAN T'HOFF. Second, Revised, and Enlarged Edition. With a Preface by JOHANNES WISLICENUS, Professor of Chemistry at the University of Leipzig; and an Appendix 'Stereo-chemistry among Inorganic Substances,' by ALFRED WERNER, Professor of Chemistry at the University of Zürich. Translated and Edited by ARNOLD EILOART. Crown 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

PHYSICS, ETC.—*Continued.*

WATSON.—ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSICS: a Laboratory Manual for Use in Organised Science Schools. By W. WATSON, B.Sc. Assistant Professor in Physics in the Royal College of Science, London; Assistant Examiner in Physics, Science and Art Department. With 120 Illustrations and 193 Exercises. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

WORTHINGTON.—A FIRST COURSE OF PHYSICAL LABORATORY PRACTICE. Containing 264 Experiments. By A. M. WORTHINGTON, M.A., F.R.S. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

WRIGHT.—ELEMENTARY PHYSICS. By MARK R. WRIGHT, M.A., Professor of Normal Education, Durham College of Science. With 242 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

MECHANICS, DYNAMICS, STATICS, HYDROSTATICS, ETC.

BALL.—A CLASS-BOOK OF MECHANICS. By Sir R. S. BALL, L.L.D. 89 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

GELDARD.—STATICS AND DYNAMICS. By C. GELDARD, M.A., formerly Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo., 5*s.*

GOODEVE.—Works by T. M. GOODEVE, M.A., formerly Professor of Mechanics at the Normal School of Science, and the Royal School of Mines.

THE ELEMENTS OF MECHANISM. With 357 Woodcuts. Crown 8vo., 6*s.*

PRINCIPLES OF MECHANICS. With 253 Woodcuts and numerous Examples. Crown 8vo., 6*s.*

A MANUAL OF MECHANICS: an Elementary Text-Book for Students of Applied Mechanics. With 138 Illustrations and Diagrams, and 188 Examples taken from the Science Department Examination Papers, with Answers. Fcp. 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

GOODMAN.—MECHANICS APPLIED TO ENGINEERING. By JOHN GOODMAN, Wh.Sch., A.M.I.C.E., M.I.M.E., Professor of Engineering in the Yorkshire College, Leeds (Victoria University). With 620 Illustrations and numerous examples. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.* net.

GRIEVE.—LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY MECHANICS. By W. H. GRIEVE, late Engineer, R.N., Science Demonstrator for the London School Board, etc.

Stage 1. With 165 Illustrations and a large number of Examples. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*
Stage 2. With 122 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*
Stage 3. With 103 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.*

MECHANICS, DYNAMICS, STATICS, HYDROSTATICS, ETC.—*Continued.*

MAGNUS.—Works by SIR PHILIP MAGNUS, B.Sc., B.A.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY MECHANICS. Introductory to the study of Physical Science. Designed for the Use of Schools, and of Candidates for the London Matriculation and other Examinations. With numerous Exercises, Examples, Examination Questions, and Solutions, etc., from 1870-1895. With Answers, and 131 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

Key for the use of Teachers only, price 5*s.* 3½*d.*

HYDROSTATICS AND PNEUMATICS. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*; or, with Answers, 2*s.* The Worked Solutions of the Problems, 2*s.*

ROBINSON.—Works by the Rev. J. L. ROBINSON, M.A.

ELEMENTS OF DYNAMICS (Kinetics and Statics). With numerous Exercises. A Text-book for Junior Students. Crown 8vo., 6*s.*

A FIRST BOOK IN STATICS AND DYNAMICS. With numerous Examples and Answers. Crown 8vo, 3*s.* 6*d.*

Sold separately: Statics, 2*s.*; Dynamics, 2*s.*

SMITH.—Works by J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.

ELEMENTARY STATICS. Crown 8vo., 3*s.*

ELEMENTARY HYDROSTATICS. Crown 8vo., 3*s.*

KEY TO STATICS AND HYDROSTATICS. Crown 8vo., 6*s.*

TARLETON.—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF ATTRACTION. By FRANCIS A. TARLETON, LL.D., Sc.D., Fellow of Trinity College, and Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Dublin. Crown 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

TAYLOR.—Works by J. E. TAYLOR, M.A., B.Sc. (Lond.), Head Master of the Central Higher Grade and Science School, Sheffield.

THEORETICAL MECHANICS, including Hydrostatics and Pneumatics. With 175 Diagrams and Illustrations, and 522 Examination Questions and Answers. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

THEORETICAL MECHANICS—SOLIDS. With 163 Illustrations, 120 Worked Examples and over 500 Examples from Examination Papers, etc. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

THEORETICAL MECHANICS.—FLUIDS. With 122 Illustrations, numerous Worked Examples, and about 500 Examples from Examination Papers, etc. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

THORNTON.—THEORETICAL MECHANICS—SOLIDS. Including Kinematics, Statics and Kinetics. By ARTHUR THORNTON, M.A., F.R.A.S. With 200 Illustrations, 130 Worked Examples, and over 900 Examples from Examination Papers, etc. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

MECHANICS, DYNAMICS, STATICS, HYDROSTATICS, ETC.— *Continued.*

TWISDEN.—Works by the Rev. JOHN F. TWISDEN, M.A.

PRACTICAL MECHANICS; an Elementary Introduction to their Study. With 855 Exercises, and 184 Figures and Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

THEORETICAL MECHANICS. With 172 Examples, numerous Exercises, and 154 Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 8*s.* 6*d.*

WILLIAMSON.—INTRODUCTION TO THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF THE STRESS AND STRAIN OF ELASTIC SOLIDS. By BENJAMIN WILLIAMSON, D.Sc., F.R.S. Crown 8vo., 5*s.*

WILLIAMSON AND TARLETON.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON DYNAMICS. Containing Applications to Thermodynamics, with numerous Examples. By BENJAMIN WILLIAMSON, D.Sc., F.R.S., and FRANCIS A. TARLETON, LL.D. Crown 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

WORTHINGTON.—DYNAMICS OF ROTATION: an Elementary Introduction to Rigid Dynamics. By A. M. WORTHINGTON, M.A., F.R.S. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

OPTICS AND PHOTOGRAPHY.

ABNEY.—A TREATISE ON PHOTOGRAPHY. By Captain W. DE WIVELESLIE ABNEY, F.R.S., Director for Science in the Science and Art Department. With 115 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

GLAZEBROOK.—PHYSICAL OPTICS. By R. T. GLAZEBROOK, M.A., F.R.S., Principal of University College, Liverpool. With 183 Woodcuts of Apparatus, etc. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

WRIGHT.—OPTICAL PROJECTION: a Treatise on the Use of the Lantern in Exhibition and Scientific Demonstration. By LEWIS WRIGHT, Author of 'Light: a Course of Experimental Optics'. With 232 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 6*s.*

SOUND, LIGHT, HEAT, AND THERMODYNAMICS.

CUMMING.—HEAT TREATED EXPERIMENTALLY. By LINNÆUS CUMMING, M.A. With 192 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

DAY.—NUMERICAL EXAMPLES IN HEAT. By R. E. DAY, M.A. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

SOUND, LIGHT, HEAT, AND THERMODYNAMICS—*Continued.*

EMTAGE.—LIGHT. By W. T. A. EMTAGE, M.A. With 232 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 6*s.*

HELMHOLTZ.—ON THE SENSATIONS OF TONE AS A PHYSIOLOGICAL BASIS FOR THE THEORY OF MUSIC. By HERMANN VON HELMHOLTZ. Royal 8vo., 28*s.*

MADAN.—AN ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK ON HEAT. For the Use of Schools. By H. G. MADAN, M.A., F.C.S., Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford; late Assistant Master at Eton College. Crown 8vo., 9*s.*

MAXWELL.—THEORY OF HEAT. By J. CLERK MAXWELL, M.A., F.R.SS., L. and E. With Corrections and Additions by Lord RAYLEIGH. With 38 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

SMITH.—THE STUDY OF HEAT. By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A., of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo., 3*s.*

TYNDALL.—Works by JOHN TYNDALL, D.C.L., F.R.S. See p. 28.

WORMELL.—A CLASS-BOOK OF THERMODYNAMICS. By RICHARD WORMELL, B.Sc., M.A. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

WRIGHT.—Works by MARK R. WRIGHT, M.A.

SOUND, LIGHT, AND HEAT. With 160 Diagrams and Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

ADVANCED HEAT. With 136 Diagrams and numerous Examples and Examination Papers. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

STEAM, OIL, AND GAS ENGINES.

BALE.—A HAND-BOOK FOR STEAM USERS; being Rules for Engine Drivers and Boiler Attendants, with Notes on Steam Engine and Boiler Management and Steam Boiler Explosions. By M. POWIS BALE, M.I.M.E., A.M.I.C.E. Fcp. 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

CLERK.—THE GAS AND OIL ENGINE. By DUGALD CLERK, Associate Member of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Fellow of the Chemical Society, Member of the Royal Institution, Fellow of the Institute of Patent Agents. With 228 Illustrations. 8vo., 15*s.*

HOLMES.—THE STEAM ENGINE. By GEORGE C. V. HOLMES, Whitworth Scholar, Secretary of the Institution of Naval Architects. With 212 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

STEAM, OIL, AND GAS ENGINES—*Continued.*

NORRIS.—A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE 'OTTO' CYCLE GAS ENGINE. By WILLIAM NORRIS, M.I.Mech.E. With 207 Illustrations. 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

RIPPER.—Works by WILLIAM RIPPER, Professor of Mechanical Engineering in the Sheffield Technical School.

STEAM. With 142 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

STEAM ENGINE THEORY AND PRACTICE. 8vo.

SENNETT AND ORAM.—THE MARINE STEAM ENGINE: A Treatise for Engineering Students, Young Engineers and Officers of the Royal Navy and Mercantile Marine. By the late RICHARD SENNETT, Engineer-in-Chief of the Navy, etc.; and HENRY J. ORAM, Senior Engineer Inspector at the Admiralty, Inspector of Machinery in H.M. Fleet, etc. With 412 Diagrams. 8vo., 21*s.*

STROMEYER.—MARINE BOILER MANAGEMENT AND CONSTRUCTION. Being a Treatise on Boiler Troubles and Repairs, Corrosion, Fuels, and Heat, on the properties of Iron and Steel, on Boiler Mechanics, Workshop Practices, and Boiler Design. By C. E. STROMEYER, Member of the Institute of Naval Architects, etc. 8vo., 18*s.* net.

BUILDING CONSTRUCTION.

ADVANCED BUILDING CONSTRUCTION. By the Author of 'Rivingtons' Notes on Building Construction'. With 385 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

BURRELL.—BUILDING CONSTRUCTION. By EDWARD J. BURRELL, Second Master of the People's Palace Technical School, London. With 303 Working Drawings. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

SEDDON.—BUILDER'S WORK AND THE BUILDING TRADES. By Col. H. C. SEDDON, R.E., late Superintending Engineer, H.M.'s Dockyard, Portsmouth; Examiner in Building Construction, Science and Art Department, South Kensington. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo., 16*s.*

RIVINGTONS' COURSE OF BUILDING CONSTRUCTION.

NOTES ON BUILDING CONSTRUCTION. Arranged to meet the requirements of the syllabus of the Science and Art Department of the Committee of Council on Education, South Kensington. Medium 8vo.

Part I. Elementary Stage. With 552 Woodcuts, 10*s.* 6*d.*

Part II. Advanced Stage. With 479 Woodcuts, 10*s.* 6*d.*

Part III. Materials. Course for Honours. With 188 Woodcuts, 21*s.*

Part IV. Calculations for Building Structures. Course for Honours. With 597 Woodcuts, 15*s.*

ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM.

CARUS-WILSON.—ELECTRO-DYNAMICS: the Direct-Current Motor. By CHARLES ASHLEY CARUS-WILSON, M.A. Cantab., Professor of Electrical Engineering at McGill University, Montreal. With 71 Diagrams, and a Series of Problems, with Answers. Crown 8vo., *7s. 6d.*

CUMMING.—ELECTRICITY TREATED EXPERIMENTALLY. By LINNÆUS CUMMING, M.A. With 242 Illustrations. Cr. 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

DAY.—EXERCISES IN ELECTRICAL AND MAGNETIC MEASUREMENTS, with Answers. By R. E. DAY. 12mo., *3s. 6d.*

DU BOIS.—THE MAGNETIC CIRCUIT IN THEORY AND PRACTICE. By Dr. H. DU BOIS, Privatdocent in the University of Berlin. Translated by E. ATKINSON, Ph.D. With 94 Illustrations. 8vo., *12s.* net.

EBERT.—MAGNETIC FIELDS OF FORCE. By H. EBERT, Professor of Physics in the University of Kiel. With 93 Illustrations. 8vo., *10s. 6d.* net.

GORE.—THE ART OF ELECTRO-METALLURGY, including all known Processes of Electro-Deposition. By G. GORE, LL.D., F.R.S. With 56 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., *6s.*

HENDERSON.—PRACTICAL ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. By JOHN HENDERSON, D.Sc. (Edin.), A.I.E.E. With 159 Illustrations and Diagrams. Crown 8vo., *6s. 6d.*

JENKIN.—ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. By FLEEMING JENKIN, F.R.S.S., L. and E., M.I.C.E. With 177 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., *3s. 6d.*

JOUBERT.—ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. Founded on JOUBERT'S 'Traité Élémentairé d'Electricité'. By G. C. FOSTER, F.R.S., and E. ATKINSON, Ph.D. With 381 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *7s. 6d.*

JOYCE.—EXAMPLES IN ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING. By SAMUEL JOYCE, A.I.E.E. Crown 8vo., *5s.*

LARDEN.—ELECTRICITY FOR PUBLIC SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By W. LARDEN, M.A. With 215 Illustrations. Cr. 8vo., *6s.*

MERRIFIELD.—MAGNETISM AND DEVIATION OF THE COMPASS. By JOHN MERRIFIELD, LL.D., F.R.A.S., 18mo., *2s. 6d.*

POYSER.—Works by A. W. POYSER, M.A.

MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. With 235 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

ADVANCED ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. With 317 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

SLINGO AND BROOKER.—Works by W. SLINGO and A. BROOKER.

ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING FOR ELECTRIC LIGHT ARTISANS AND STUDENTS. With 359 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *12s.*

PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS IN ELEMENTARY ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. With 67 Illustrations. Cr. 8vo., *2s.*

TYNDALL.—Works by JOHN TYNDALL, D.C.L., F.R.S. See p. 28.

TELEGRAPHY AND THE TELEPHONE.

HOPKINS.—THE TELEPHONE: Outlines of the Development of Transmitters and Receivers. By WILLIAM J. HOPKINS, Professor of Physics in the Drexel Institute, Philadelphia; Author of 'Telephone Lines and their Properties,' etc. With 7 Full-page Illustrations and 39 Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

PREECE AND SIVEWRIGHT.—TELEGRAPHY. By Sir W. H. PREECE, K.C.B., F.R.S., V.P.Inst., C.E., etc., Engineer-in-Chief and Electrician, Post Office Telegraphs; and Sir J. SIVEWRIGHT, K.C.M.G., General Manager, South African Telegraphs. With 267 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

ENGINEERING, STRENGTH OF MATERIALS, ETC.

ANDERSON.—THE STRENGTH OF MATERIALS AND STRUCTURES: the Strength of Materials as depending on their Quality and as ascertained by Testing Apparatus. By Sir J. ANDERSON, C.E., LL.D., F.R.S.E. With 66 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

BARRY.—RAILWAY APPLIANCES: a Description of Details of Railway Construction subsequent to the completion of the Earthworks and Structures. By Sir JOHN WOLFE BARRY, K.C.B., F.R.S., M.I.C.E. With 218 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

GOODMAN.—MECHANICS APPLIED TO ENGINEERING. By JOHN GOODMAN, Wh.Sch., A.M.I.C.E., M.I.M.E., Professor of Engineering in the Yorkshire College, Leeds (Victoria University). With 620 Illustrations and numerous Examples. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.* net.

LOW.—A POCKET-BOOK FOR MECHANICAL ENGINEERS. By DAVID ALLAN LOW (Whitworth Scholar), M.I.Mech.E., Professor of Engineering, East London Technical College (People's Palace), London. With over 1000 specially prepared Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., gilt edges, rounded corners, 7*s.* 6*d.*

SMITH.—GRAPHICS, or the Art of Calculation by Drawing Lines, applied especially to Mechanical Engineering. By ROBERT H. SMITH, Professor of Engineering, Mason College, Birmingham. Part I. With separate Atlas of 29 Plates containing 97 Diagrams. 8vo., 15*s.*

STONEY.—THE THEORY OF STRESSES IN GIRDERS AND SIMILAR STRUCTURES; with Practical Observations on the Strength and other Properties of Materials. By BINDON B. STONEY, LL.D., F.R.S., M.I.C.E. With 5 Plates and 143 Illust. in the Text. Royal 8vo., 36*s.*

UNWIN.—Works by W CAWTHORNE UNWIN, F.R.S., B.S.C.

THE TESTING OF MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION. A Text-book for the Engineering Laboratory and a Collection of the Results of Experiment. With 5 Plates and 188 Illustrations and Diagrams in the Text. 8vo., 16*s.* net.

ON THE DEVELOPMENT AND TRANSMISSION OF POWER FROM CENTRAL STATIONS: being the Howard Lectures delivered at the Society of Arts in 1893. With 81 Diagrams. 8vo., 10*s.* net.

WARREN.—ENGINEERING CONSTRUCTION IN IRON, STEEL, AND TIMBER. By WILLIAM HENRY WARREN, Challis Professor of Civil and Mechanical Engineering, University of Sydney. With 13 Folding Plates and 375 Diagrams. Royal 8vo., 16*s.* net.

LONGMANS' CIVIL ENGINEERING SERIES.

Edited by the Author of 'Notes on Building Construction'.

TIDAL RIVERS: their (1) Hydraulics, (2) Improvement, (3) Navigation. By W. H. WHEELER, M.Inst.C.E. With 75 Illustrations. Medium 8vo., 16*s.* net.

NOTES ON DOCKS AND DOCK CONSTRUCTION. By C. COLSON, M.Inst.C.E., Deputy Civil Engineer-in-Chief, Admiralty. With 365 Illustrations. Medium 8vo., 21*s.* net.

PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF HARBOUR CONSTRUCTION. By WILLIAM SHIELD, F.R.S.E., M.Inst.C.E., and Executive Engineer, National Harbour of Refuge, Peterhead, N.B. With 97 Illustrations. Medium 8vo., 15*s.* net.

CALCULATIONS IN HYDRAULIC ENGINEERING: a Practical Text-Book for the use of Students, Draughtsmen and Engineers. By T. CLAXTON FIDLER, M.Inst.C.E., Professor of Engineering, University College, Dundee.

Part I. Fluid Pressure and the Calculation of its Effects in Engineering Structures. With numerous Illustrations and Examples. 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.* net.

RAILWAY CONSTRUCTION. By W. H. MILLS, M.I.C.E., Engineer-in-Chief of the Great Northern Railway of Ireland. With 516 Illustrations and Diagrams. 8vo., 18*s.* net.

NAVAL ARCHITECTURE.

ATTWOOD.—TEXT-BOOK OF THEORETICAL NAVAL ARCHITECTURE: a Manual for Students of Science Classes and Draughtsmen Engaged in Shipbuilders' and Naval Architects' Drawing Offices. By EDWARD LEWIS ATTWOOD, Assistant Constructor, Royal Navy; Member of the Institution of Naval Architects. With 114 Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

WATSON.—NAVAL ARCHITECTURE: A Manual of Laying-off Iron, Steel and Composite Vessels. By THOMAS H. WATSON, Lecturer on Naval Architecture at the Durham College of Science, Newcastle-upon-Tyne. With numerous Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 15*s.* net.

MACHINE DRAWING AND DESIGN.

LOW.—Works by DAVID ALLAN LOW, Professor of Engineering, East London Technical College (People's Palace).

IMPROVED DRAWING SCALES. 4*d.* in case.

AN INTRODUCTION TO MACHINE DRAWING AND DESIGN. With 153 Illustrations and Diagrams. Crown 8vo, 2*s.* 6*d.*

LOW AND BEVIS.—A MANUAL OF MACHINE DRAWING AND DESIGN. By DAVID ALLAN LOW and ALFRED WILLIAM BEVIS, M.I.Mech.E. With 700 Illustrations. 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

UNWIN.—THE ELEMENTS OF MACHINE DESIGN. By W. CAWTHORNE UNWIN, F.R.S.

Part I. General Principles, Fastenings, and Transmissive Machinery. With 304 Diagrams, etc. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

Part II. Chiefly on Engine Details. With 174 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

WORKSHOP APPLIANCES, ETC.

NORTHCOTT.—LATHES AND TURNING, Simple, Mechanical and Ornamental. By W. H. NORTHCOTT. With 338 Illustrations. 8vo., 18*s.*

SHELLEY.—WORKSHOP APPLIANCES, including Descriptions of some of the Gauging and Measuring Instruments, Hand-cutting Tools, Lathes, Drilling, Planeing, and other Machine Tools used by Engineers. By C. P. B. SHELLEY, M.I.C.E. With an additional Chapter on Milling by R. R. LISTER. With 323 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 5*s.*

MINERALOGY, METALLURGY, ETC.

BAUERMAN.—Works by HILARY BAUERMAN, F.G.S.

SYSTEMATIC MINERALOGY. With 373 Woodcuts and Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

DESCRIPTIVE MINERALOGY. With 236 Woodcuts and Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

GORE.—THE ART OF ELECTRO-METALLURGY, including all known Processes of Electro-Deposition. By G. GORE, LL.D., F.R.S. With 56 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

HUNTINGTON AND M'MILLAN.—METALS: their Properties and Treatment. By A. K. HUNTINGTON, Professor of Metallurgy in King's College, London, and W. G. M'MILLAN, Lecturer on Metallurgy in Mason's College, Birmingham. With 122 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

RHEAD.—METALLURGY. An Elementary Text-Book. By E. C. RHEAD, Lecturer on Metallurgy at the Municipal Technical School, Manchester. With 94 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

RUTLEY.—THE STUDY OF ROCKS: an Elementary Text-book of Petrology. By F. RUTLEY, F.G.S. With 6 Plates and 88 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

ASTRONOMY, NAVIGATION, ETC.

ABBOTT.—ELEMENTARY THEORY OF THE TIDES: the Fundamental Theorems Demonstrated without Mathematics and the Influence on the Length of the Day Discussed. By T. K. ABBOTT, B.D., Fellow and Tutor, Trinity College, Dublin. Crown 8vo., 2*s.*

BALL.—Works by Sir ROBERT S. BALL, LL.D., F.R.S.

ELEMENTS OF ASTRONOMY. With 130 Figures and Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

A CLASS-BOOK OF ASTRONOMY. With 41 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

ASTRONOMY, NAVIGATION, ETC.—*Continued.*

CLERKE.—THE SYSTEM OF THE STARS. By AGNES M. CLERKE. With 6 Plates, and numerous Illustrations. 8vo., 21*s.*

DE CAMPIGNEULLES.—OBSERVATIONS TAKEN AT DUMRAON, BEHAR, INDIA, during the Eclipse of the 22nd January, 1898, by a Party of Jesuit Fathers of the Western Bengal Mission. By the Rev. V. DE CAMPIGNEULLES, S.J. With 14 Plates. 4to., 10*s.* 6*d.* net.

GILL.—TEXT-BOOK ON NAVIGATION AND NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY. By J. GILL, F.R.A.S., Head Master of the Liverpool Corporation Nautical College. 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

HERSCHEL.—OUTLINES OF ASTRONOMY. By Sir JOHN F. W. HERSCHEL, Bart., K.H., etc. With 9 Plates and numerous Diagrams. 8vo., 12*s.*

LOWELL.—MARS. By PERCIVAL LOWELL, Fellow American Academy, Member Royal Asiatic Society, Great Britain and Ireland, etc. With 24 Plates. 8vo., 12*s.* 6*d.*

MARTIN.—NAVIGATION AND NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY. Compiled by Staff Commander W. R. MARTIN, R.N. Royal 8vo., 18*s.*

MERRIFIELD.—A TREATISE ON NAVIGATION. For the Use of Students. By J. MERRIFIELD, LL.D., F.R.A.S., F.M.S. With Charts and Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 5*s*

PARKER.—ELEMENTS OF ASTRONOMY. With Numerous Examples and Examination Papers. By GEORGE W. PARKER, M.A., of Trinity College, Dublin. With 84 Diagrams. 8vo., 5*s.* net.

WEBB.—CELESTIAL OBJECTS FOR COMMON TELESCOPES. By the Rev. T. W. WEBB, M.A., F.R.A.S. Fifth Edition, Revised and greatly Enlarged by the Rev. T. E. ESPIN, M.A., F.R.A.S. (Two Volumes.) Vol. I., with Portrait and a Reminiscence of the Author, 2 Plates, and numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 6*s.* Vol. II., with numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

WORKS BY RICHARD A. PROCTOR.

THE MOON: Her Motions, Aspect, Scenery, and Physical Condition. With many Plates and Charts, Wood Engravings, and 2 Lunar Photographs. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

OTHER WORLDS THAN OURS: the Plurality of Worlds Studied Under the Light of Recent Scientific Researches. With 14 Illustrations; Map, Charts, etc. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

OUR PLACE AMONG INFINITIES: a Series of Essays contrasting our Little Abode in Space and Time with the Infinities around us. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

[OVER.

WORKS BY RICHARD A. PROCTOR—*Continued.*

MYTHS AND MARVELS OF ASTRONOMY. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

LIGHT SCIENCE FOR LEISURE HOURS: Familiar Essays on Scientific Subjects, Natural Phenomena, etc. 3 vols., crown 8vo., 5*s.* each. Vol. I. Cheap Edition. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE ORBS AROUND US; Essays on the Moon and Planets, Meteors and Comets, the Sun and Coloured Pairs of Suns. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE EXPANSE OF HEAVEN: Essays on the Wonders of the Firmament. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

OTHER SUNS THAN OURS: a Series of Essays on Suns—Old, Young, and Dead. With other Science Gleanings. Two Essays on Whist, and Correspondence with Sir John Herschel. With 9 Star-Maps and Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

HALF-HOURS WITH THE TELESCOPE: a Popular Guide to the Use of the Telescope as a means of Amusement and Instruction. With 7 Plates. Fcp. 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

NEW STAR ATLAS FOR THE LIBRARY, the School, and the Observatory, in Twelve Circular Maps (with Two Index-Plates). With an Introduction on the Study of the Stars. Illustrated by 9 Diagrams. Cr. 8vo., 5*s.*

THE SOUTHERN SKIES: a Plain and Easy Guide to the Constellations of the Southern Hemisphere. Showing in 12 Maps the position of the principal Star-Groups night after night throughout the year. With an Introduction and a separate Explanation of each Map. True for every Year. 4to., 5*s.*

HALF-HOURS WITH THE STARS: a Plain and Easy Guide to the Knowledge of the Constellations. Showing in 12 Maps the position of the principal Star-Groups night after night throughout the year. With Introduction and a separate Explanation of each Map. True for every Year. 4to., 3*s.* 6*d.*

LARGER STAR ATLAS FOR OBSERVERS AND STUDENTS. In Twelve Circular Maps, showing 6000 Stars, 1500 Double Stars, Nebulæ, etc. With 2 Index-Plates. Folio, 15*s.*

THE STARS IN THEIR SEASONS: an Easy Guide to a Knowledge of the Star-Groups. In 12 Large Maps. Imperial 8vo., 5*s.*

ROUGH WAYS MADE SMOOTH. Familiar Essays on Scientific Subjects. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

PLEASANT WAYS IN SCIENCE. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

NATURE STUDIES. By R. A. PROCTOR, GRANT ALLEN, A. WILSON, T. FOSTER, and E. CLODD. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

LEISURE READINGS. By R. A. PROCTOR, E. CLODD, A. WILSON, T. FOSTER, and A. C. RANYARD. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

MANUFACTURES, TECHNOLOGY, ETC.

BELL.—JACQUARD WEAVING AND DESIGNING. By F. T. BELL, Medallist in Honours and Certificated Teacher in 'Linen Manufacturing' and in 'Weaving and Pattern Designing,' City and Guilds of London Institute. With 199 Diagrams. 8vo., 12*s.* net.

LUPTON.—MINING. An Elementary Treatise on the Getting of Minerals. By ARNOLD LUPTON, M.I.C.E., F.G.S., etc. With 596 Diagrams and Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 9*s.* net.

MORRIS AND WILKINSON.—THE ELEMENTS OF COTTON SPINNING. By JOHN MORRIS and F. WILKINSON. With a Preface by Sir B. A. DOBSON, C.E., M.I.M.E. With 169 Diagrams and Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.* net.

SHARP.—BICYCLES AND TRICYCLES: an Elementary Treatise on their Design and Construction. With Examples and Tables. By ARCHIBALD SHARP, B.Sc., Whitworth Scholar; Associate Member of the Institution of Civil Engineers. With 565 Illustrations and Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 15*s.*

TAYLOR.—COTTON WEAVING AND DESIGNING. By JOHN T. TAYLOR. With 373 Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.* net.

WATTS.—AN INTRODUCTORY MANUAL FOR SUGAR GROWERS. By FRANCIS WATTS, F.C.S., F.I.C. With 20 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 6*s.*

PHYSIOGRAPHY AND GEOLOGY.

BIRD.—Works by CHARLES BIRD, B.A.

ELEMENTARY GEOLOGY. With Geological Map of the British Isles, and 247 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

ADVANCED GEOLOGY. A Manual for Students in Advanced Classes and for General Readers. With over 300 Illustrations, a Geological Map of the British Isles (coloured), and a set of Questions for Examination. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

GREEN.—PHYSICAL GEOLOGY FOR STUDENTS AND GENERAL READERS. By A. H. GREEN, M.A., F.G.S. With 236 Illustrations. 8vo., 21*s.*

MORGAN.—ELEMENTARY PHYSIOGRAPHY. Treated Experimentally. By ALEX. MORGAN, M.A., D.Sc., F.R.S.E., Lecturer in Mathematics and Science, Church of Scotland Training College, Edinburgh. With 4 Maps and 243 Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

THORNTON.—Works by J. THORNTON, M.A.

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSIOGRAPHY (for Section I. of the New Syllabus of the Science and Art Department). With 215 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

ELEMENTARY PHYSIOGRAPHY: an Introduction to the Study of Nature. With 12 Maps and 247 Illustrations. With Appendix on Astronomical Instruments and Measurements. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

ADVANCED PHYSIOGRAPHY. With 6 Maps and 203 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

HEALTH AND HYGIENE.

ASHBY.—HEALTH IN THE NURSERY. By HENRY ASHBY, M.D., F.R.C.P., Physician to the Manchester Children's Hospital, and Lecturer on the Diseases of Children at the Owens College. With 25 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

BUCKTON. — HEALTH IN THE HOUSE; Twenty-five Lectures on Elementary Physiology. By Mrs. C. M. BUCKTON. With 41 Woodcuts and Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 2*s.*

CORFIELD.—THE LAWS OF HEALTH. By W. H. CORFIELD, M.A., M.D. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

NOTTER AND FIRTH.—Works by J. L. NOTTER, M.A., M.D., and R. H. FIRTH, F.R.C.S.

HYGIENE. With 95 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

PRACTICAL DOMESTIC HYGIENE. With 83 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

POORE.—Works by GEORGE VIVIAN POORE, M.D.

ESSAYS ON RURAL HYGIENE. Crown 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

THE DWELLING-HOUSE. With 36 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

WILSON.—A MANUAL OF HEALTH-SCIENCE: adapted for use in Schools and Colleges. By ANDREW WILSON, F.R.S.E., F.L.S., etc. With 74 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

NATURAL HISTORY.

BEDDARD.—THE STRUCTURE AND CLASSIFICATION OF BIRDS. By FRANK E. BEDDARD, M.A., F.R.S., Prosector and Vice-Secretary of the Zoological Society of London. With 252 Illustrations. 8vo., 21*s.* net.

FURNEAUX.—Works by WILLIAM FURNEAUX, F.R.G.S.

THE OUTDOOR WORLD; or, The Young Collector's Handbook. With 18 Plates, 16 of which are coloured, and 549 Illustrations in the Text. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

LIFE IN PONDS AND STREAMS. With 8 Coloured Plates and 331 Illustrations in the Text. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

BUTTERFLIES AND MOTHS (British). With 12 Coloured Plates and 241 Illustrations in the Text. 7*s.* 6*d.*

HUDSON.—BRITISH BIRDS. By W. H. HUDSON, C.M.Z.S. With 8 Coloured Plates from Original Drawings by A. THORBURN, and 8 Plates and 100 Figures by C. E. LODGE, and 3 Illustrations from Photographs. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

STANLEY.—A FAMILIAR HISTORY OF BIRDS. By E. STANLEY, D.D., formerly Bishop of Norwich. With 160 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 3*s.* 6*d.*

MEDICINE AND SURGERY.

ASHBY.—NOTES ON PHYSIOLOGY FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS PREPARING FOR EXAMINATION. By HENRY ASHBY, M.D. Lond., F.R.C.P., Physician to the General Hospital for Sick Children, Manchester; formerly Demonstrator of Physiology, Liverpool School of Medicine. Sixth Edition, thoroughly Revised. With 141 Illustrations. 18mo., 5*s.*

ASHBY AND WRIGHT.—THE DISEASES OF CHILDREN, MEDICAL AND SURGICAL. By HENRY ASHBY, M.D., Lond., F.R.C.P., Physician to the General Hospital for Sick Children, Manchester; and G. A. WRIGHT, B.A., M.B. Oxon., F.R.C.S., Eng., Assistant-Surgeon to the Manchester Royal Infirmary, and Surgeon to the Children's Hospital. Enlarged and Improved Edition. With 192 Illustrations. 8vo., 25*s.*

BENNETT.—Works by WILLIAM H. BENNETT, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to St. George's Hospital; Member of the Board of Examiners, Royal College of Surgeons of England.

CLINICAL LECTURES ON VARICOSE VEINS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITIES. With 3 Plates. 8vo., 6*s.*

ON VARICOCELE; A PRACTICAL TREATISE. With 4 Tables and a Diagram. 8vo., 5*s.*

CLINICAL LECTURES ON ABDOMINAL HERNIA: chiefly in relation to Treatment, including the Radical Cure. With 12 Diagrams in the Text. 8vo., 8*s.* 6*d.*

ON VARIX, ITS CAUSES AND TREATMENT, WITH ESPECIAL REFERENCE TO THROMBOSIS: an Address delivered at the Inaugural Meeting of the Nottingham Medico-Chirurgical Society, Session 1898-99. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

BENTLEY.—A TEXT-BOOK OF ORGANIC MATERIA MEDICA. Comprising a Description of the Vegetable and Animal Drugs of the British Pharmacopœia, with some others in common use. Arranged Systematically, and Especially Designed for Students. By ROBERT BENTLEY, M.R.C.S. Eng., F.L.S. With 62 Illustrations on Wood. Crown 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

BRODIE.—THE ESSENTIALS OF EXPERIMENTAL PHYSIOLOGY. For the Use of Students. By T. G. BRODIE, M.D., Lecturer on Physiology, St. Thomas's Hospital Medical School. With 2 Plates and 177 Illustrations in the Text. Crown 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

CABOT.—Works by RICHARD C. CABOT, M.D., Physician to Out-patients, Massachusetts General Hospital.

A GUIDE TO THE CLINICAL EXAMINATION OF THE BLOOD FOR DIAGNOSTIC PURPOSES. With 3 Coloured Plates and 28 Illustrations in the Text. 8vo., 16*s.*

THE SERUM DIAGNOSIS OF DISEASE. With 31 Temperature Charts and 9 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

CHEYNE AND BURGHARD.—A MANUAL OF SURGIGAL TREATMENT. By W. WATSON CHEYNE, M.B., F.R.C.S., F.R.S., Professor of Surgery in King's College, London, Surgeon to King's College Hospital, etc.; and F. F. BURGHARD, M.D. and M.S., F.R.C.S., Teacher of Practical Surgery in King's College, London, Surgeon to King's College, Hospital (Lond.), etc. To be published in Six Parts.

Part I. The Treatment of General Surgical Diseases, including Inflammation, Suppuration, Ulceration, Gangrene, Wounds and their Complications, Infective Diseases and Tumours; the Administration of Anæsthetics. With 66 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

MEDICINE AND SURGERY—*Continued.*

CLARKE.—Works by J. JACKSON CLARKE, M.B. Lond., F.R.C.S., Assistant Surgeon at the North-west London and City Orthopædic Hospitals, etc.

SURGICAL PATHOLOGY AND PRINCIPLES. With 194 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

POST-MORTEM EXAMINATIONS IN MEDICO-LEGAL AND ORDINARY CASES. With Special Chapters on the Legal Aspects of Post-mortems, and on Certificates of Death. Fcp. 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

COATS.—A MANUAL OF PATHOLOGY. By JOSEPH COATS, M.D., Professor of Pathology in the University of Glasgow. Third Edition. Revised throughout. With 507 Illustrations. 8vo., 31*s.* 6*d.*

COOKE.—Works by THOMAS COOK, F.R.C.S. Eng., B.A., B.Sc., M.D., Paris, Senior Assistant-Surgeon to the Westminster Hospital.

TABLETS OF ANATOMY. Being a Synopsis of Demonstrations given in the Westminster Hospital Medical School. Eleventh Edition in Three Parts, thoroughly brought up to date, and with over 700 Illustrations from all the best Sources, British and Foreign. Post 4to.

Part I. The Bones. 7*s.* 6*d.* net.

Part II. Limbs, Abdomen, Pelvis. 10*s.* 6*d.* net.

Part III. Head and Neck, Thorax, Brain. 10*s.* 6*d.* net.

APHORISMS IN APPLIED ANATOMY AND OPERATIVE SURGERY. Including 100 Typical *vivâ voce* Questions on Surface Marking, etc. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

DISSECTION GUIDES. Aiming at Extending and Facilitating such Practical work in Anatomy as will be specially useful in connection with an ordinary Hospital Curriculum. 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

DAKIN.—A HANDBOOK OF MIDWIFERY. By WILLIAM RADFORD DAKIN, M.D., F.R.C.P., Obstetric Physician and Lecturer on Midwifery at St. George's Hospital, etc. With 394 Illustrations. Large crown 8vo., 18*s.*

DICKINSON.—Works by W. HOWSHIP DICKINSON, M.D. Cantab., F.R.C.P., Physician to, and Lecturer on Medicine at, St. George's Hospital, Consulting Physician to the Hospital for Sick Children.

ON RENAL AND URINARY AFFECTIONS. With 12 Plates and 122 Woodcuts. Three Parts. 8vo., £3 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE TONGUE AS AN INDICATION OF DISEASE; being the Lumleian Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Physicians in March, 1888. 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

OCCASIONAL PAPERS ON MEDICAL SUBJECTS, 1855-1896. 8vo., 12*s.*

MEDICINE AND SURGERY—*Continued.*

DUCKWORTH.—Works by SIR DYCE DUCKWORTH, M.D., LL.D., Fellow and Treasurer of the Royal College of Physicians, etc.

THE SEQUELS OF DISEASE: being the Lumleian Lectures delivered in the Royal College of Physicians, 1896. Together with Observations on Prognosis in Disease. 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

THE INFLUENCE OF CHARACTER AND RIGHT JUDGMENT IN MEDICINE: the Harveian Oration, delivered before the Royal College of Physicians, 18th October, 1898. Post 4to., 2*s.* 6*d.*

ERICHSEN.—THE SCIENCE AND ART OF SURGERY; a Treatise on Surgical Injuries, Diseases, and Operations. By Sir JOHN ERIC ERICHSEN, Bart., F.R.S., LL.D. Edin., Hon. M.Ch. and F.R.C.S. Ireland, late Surgeon Extraordinary to H.M. the Queen. Illustrated by nearly 1000 Engravings on Wood. 2 vols. Royal 8vo., 48*s.*

FOWLER AND GODLEE.—THE DISEASES OF THE LUNGS. By JAMES KINGSTON FOWLER, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P., Physician to the Middlesex Hospital and to the Hospital for Consumption and Diseases of the Chest, Brompton; late Examiner in Medicine at the University of Cambridge, and on the Conjoint Examining Board in England; and RICKMAN JOHN GODLEE, M.S., F.R.C.S., Fellow and Professor of Clinical Surgery, University College, London; Surgeon to University College Hospital and to the Hospital for Consumption and Diseases of the Chest, Brompton; Surgeon-in-Ordinary to Her Majesty's Household. With 160 Illustrations. 8vo., 25*s.*

GARROD.—Works by SIR ALFRED BARING GARROD, M.D., F.R.S., etc., Physician Extraordinary to H.M. the Queen; Consulting Physician to King's College Hospital; late Vice-President of the Royal College of Physicians.

A TREATISE ON GOUT AND RHEUMATIC GOUT (RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS). Third Edition, thoroughly Revised and Enlarged. With 6 Plates, comprising 21 Figures (14 Coloured), and 27 Illustrations engraved on Wood. 8vo., 21*s.*

THE ESSENTIALS OF MATERIA MEDICA AND THERAPEUTICS. The Thirteenth Edition, Revised and Edited, under the supervision of the Author, by NESTOR TIRARD, M.D. Lond., F.R.C.P., Professor of Materia Medica and Therapeutics in King's College, London, etc. Crown 8vo., 12*s.* 6*d.*

GRAY.—ANATOMY, DESCRIPTIVE AND SURGICAL. By HENRY GRAY, F.R.S., late Lecturer on Anatomy at St. George's Hospital. The Fourteenth Edition, re-edited by T. PICKERING PICK, Surgeon to St. George's Hospital, Inspector of Anatomy in England and Wales, late Member of the Court of Examiners, Royal College of Surgeons of England. With 705 large Woodcut Illustrations, a large proportion of which are Coloured, the Arteries being coloured red, the Veins blue, and the Nerves yellow. The attachments of the muscles to the bones, in the section on Osteology, are also shown in coloured outline. Royal 8vo., 36*s.*

MEDICINE AND SURGERY—*Continued.*

HALLIBURTON.—Works by W. D. HALLIBURTON, M.D., F.R.S., F.R.C.P., Professor of Physiology in King's College, London.

A TEXT-BOOK OF CHEMICAL PHYSIOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY. With 104 Illustrations. 8vo., 28*s.*

ESSENTIALS OF CHEMICAL PHYSIOLOGY. With 77 Illustrations. 8vo., 5*s.*

LANG.—THE METHODICAL EXAMINATION OF THE EYE. Being Part I. of a Guide to the Practice of Ophthalmology for Students and Practitioners. By WILLIAM LANG, F.R.C.S. Eng., Surgeon to the Royal London Ophthalmic Hospital, Moorfields, etc. With 15 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d*

LIVEING.—HANDBOOK ON DISEASES OF THE SKIN. With especial reference to Diagnosis and Treatment. By ROBERT LIVEING, M.A. and M.D., Cantab., F.R.C.P. Lond., etc., Physician to the Department for Diseases of the Skin at the Middlesex Hospital, etc. Fcp. 8vo., 5*s.*

LUFF.—TEXT-BOOK OF FORENSIC MEDICINE AND TOXICOLOGY. By ARTHUR P. LUFF, M.D., B.Sc. (Lond.), Physician in Charge of Out-Patients and Lecturer on Medical Jurisprudence and Toxicology in St. Mary's Hospital. With 13 full-page Plates (1 in colours) and 33 Illustrations in the Text. 2 vols. Crown 8vo., 24*s.*

NEWMAN.—ON THE DISEASES OF THE KIDNEY AMENABLE TO SURGICAL TREATMENT. Lectures to Practitioners. By DAVID NEWMAN, M.D., Surgeon to the Western Infirmary Out-Door Department; Pathologist and Lecturer on Pathology at the Glasgow Royal Infirmary; Examiner in Pathology in the University of Glasgow; Vice-President, Glasgow Pathological and Clinical Society. 8vo., 8*s.*

PICK.—SURGERY: a Treatise for Students and Practitioners. By T. PICKERING PICK, Consulting Surgeon to St. George's Hospital; Senior Surgeon to the Victoria Hospital for Children; H.M. Inspector of Anatomy in England and Wales. With 441 Illustrations. Medium 8vo., 25*s.*

POOLE.—COOKERY FOR THE DIABETIC. By W. H. and Mrs. POOLE. With Preface by Dr. PAVY. Fcap. 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

QUAIN.—A DICTIONARY OF MEDICINE; Including General Pathology, General Therapeutics, Hygiene, and the Diseases of Women and Children. By Various Writers. Edited by RICHARD QUAIN, Bart., M.D. Lond., LL.D. Edin. (Hon.) F.R.S., Physician Extraordinary to H.M. the Queen, etc. Assisted by FREDERICK THOMAS ROBERTS, M.D. Lond., B.Sc., Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians, Fellow of University College, etc.; and J. MITCHELL BRUCE, M.A. Abdn., M.D. Lond., Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians of London, etc. 2 Vols. Medium 8vo., 40*s.* net.

MEDICINE AND SURGERY—*Continued.*

QUAIN.—QUAIN'S (JONES) ELEMENTS OF ANATOMY. The Tenth Edition. Edited by EDWARD ALBERT SCHÄFER, F.R.S., Professor of Physiology in the University of Edinburgh; and GEORGE DANCER THANE, Professor of Anatomy in University College, London.

*** The several parts of this work form COMPLETE TEXT-BOOKS OF THEIR RESPECTIVE SUBJECTS.

VOL. I., PART I. EMBRYOLOGY. By E. A. SCHÄFER, F.R.S. With 200 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 9*s.*

VOL. I., PART II. GENERAL ANATOMY OR HISTOLOGY. By E. A. SCHÄFER, F.R.S. With 291 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. II., PART I. OSTEOLOGY—ARTHROLOGY. By G. D. THANE. With 224 Illus. Royal 8vo., 11*s.*

VOL. II., PART II. MYOLOGY—ANGEIOLOGY. By G. D. THANE. With 199 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 16*s.*

VOL. III., PART I. THE SPINAL CORD AND BRAIN. By E. A. SCHÄFER, F.R.S. With 139 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 12*s.* 6*d.*

VOL. III., PART II. THE NERVES. By G. D. THANE. With 102 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 9*s.*

VOL. III., PART III. THE ORGANS OF THE SENSES. By E. A. SCHÄFER, F.R.S. With 178 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 9*s.*

VOL. III., PART IV. SPLANCHNOLOGY. By E. A. SCHÄFER, F.R.S., and JOHNSON SYMINGTON, M.D. With 337 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 16*s.*

APPENDIX. SUPERFICIAL AND SURGICAL ANATOMY. By Professor G. D. THANE and Professor R. J. GODLEE, M.S. With 29 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

SCHÄFER.—THE ESSENTIALS OF HISTOLOGY. Descriptive and Practical. For the Use of Students. By E. A. SCHÄFER, F.R.S., Professor of Physiology in the University of Edinburgh; Editor of the Histological Portion of Quain's 'Anatomy'. Illustrated by nearly 400 Figures. Fifth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 8vo., 8*s.* (Interleaved, 10*s.* 6*d.*)

SCHENK.—MANUAL OF BACTERIOLOGY. For Practitioners and Students. With especial reference to Practical Methods. By Dr. S. L. SCHENK, Professor (Extraordinary) in the University of Vienna. Translated from the German, with an Appendix, by W. R. DAWSON, B.A., M.D., Univ. Dub.; late University Travelling Prizeman in Medicine. With 100 Illustrations, some of which are coloured. 8vo., 10*s.* net.

SMALE AND COLYER. DISEASES AND INJURIES OF THE TEETH, including Pathology and Treatment: a Manual of Practical Dentistry for Students and Practitioners. By MORTON SMALE, M.R.C.S., L.S.A., L.D.S., Dental Surgeon to St. Mary's Hospital, Dean of the School, Dental Hospital of London, etc.; and J. F. COLYER, L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S., L.D.S., Assistant Dental Surgeon to Charing Cross Hospital, and Assistant Dental Surgeon to the Dental Hospital of London. With 334 Illustrations. Large crown 8vo., 15*s.*

SMITH (H. F.). THE HANDBOOK FOR MIDWIVES. By HENRY FLY SMITH, B.A., M.B. Oxon., M.R.C.S. 41 Woodcuts. Cr. 8vo., 5*s.*

STEVENSON.—WOUNDS IN WAR: the Mechanism of their Production and their Treatment. By Surgeon-Colonel W. F. STEVENSON (Army Medical Staff), A.B., M.B., M.Ch. Dublin University, Professor of Military Surgery, Army Medical School, Netley. With 86 Illustrations. 8vo., 18*s.*

TAPPEINER. — INTRODUCTION TO CHEMICAL METHODS OF CLINICAL DIAGNOSIS. By Dr. H. TAPPEINER, Professor of Pharmacology and Principal of the Pharmacological Institute of the University of Munich. Translated by EDMOND J. MCWEENEY, M.A., M.D. (Royal Univ. of Ireland), L.R.C.P.I., etc. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

MEDICINE AND SURGERY—*Continued.*

TIRARD.—DIPHTHERIA AND ANTITOXIN. By NESTOR TIRARD, M.D. Lond., Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians; Fellow of King's College, London; Professor of Materia Medica and Therapeutics at King's College; Physician to King's College Hospital; and Senior Physician to the Evelina Hospital for Sick Children. 8vo., *7s. 6d.*

WALLER.—Works by AUGUSTUS D. WALLER, M.D., Lecturer on Physiology at St. Mary's Hospital Medical School, London; late External Examiner at the Victorian University.

AN INTRODUCTION TO HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. Third Edition, Revised. With 314 Illustrations. 8vo., *18s.*

LECTURES ON PHYSIOLOGY. First Series. On Animal Electricity. 8vo., *5s.* net.

EXERCISES IN PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGY. Part I. Elementary Physiological Chemistry. By AUGUSTUS D. WALLER and W. LEGGE SYMES. 8vo., *1s.* net. Part II. in the press. Part III. Physiology of the Nervous System; Electro-Physiology. 8vo., *2s. 6d.* net.

WEICHSELBAUM.—THE ELEMENTS OF PATHOLOGICAL HISTOLOGY. With Special Reference to Practical Methods. By Dr. ANTON WEICHSELBAUM, Professor of Pathology in the University of Vienna. Translated by W. R. DAWSON, M.D. (Dub.), Demonstrator of Pathology in the Royal College of Surgeons, Ireland, late Medical Travelling Prizeman of Dublin University, etc. With 221 Figures, partly in Colours, a Cromo-lithographic Plate, and 7 Photographic Plates. Royal 8vo., *21s.* net.

WILKS AND MOXON.—LECTURES ON PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY. By Sir SAMUEL WILKS, Bart., M.D., F.R.S., President of the Royal College of Physicians, and Physician Extraordinary to H.M. the Queen, and the late WALTER MOXON, M.D., F.R.C.P., Physician to, and some time Lecturer on Pathology at, Guy's Hospital. Third Edition, thoroughly Revised. By Sir SAMUEL WILKS, Bart., M.D., LL.D., F.R.S. 8vo., *18s.*

VETERINARY MEDICINE, ETC.

STEEL.—Works by JOHN HENRY STEEL, F.R.C.V.S., F.Z.S., A.V.D., late Professor of Veterinary Science and Principal of Bombay Veterinary College.

A TREATISE ON THE DISEASES OF THE DOG; being a Manual of Canine Pathology. Especially adapted for the use of Veterinary Practitioners and Students. With 88 Illustrations. 8vo., *10s 6d.*

A TREATISE ON THE DISEASES OF THE OX; being a Manual of Bovine Pathology. Especially adapted for the use of Veterinary Practitioners and Students. With 2 Plates and 117 Woodcuts. 8vo. *15s.*

A TREATISE ON THE DISEASES OF THE SHEEP; being a Manual of Ovine Pathology for the use of Veterinary Practitioners and Students. With Coloured Plate and 99 Woodcuts. 8vo., *12s.*

OUTLINES OF EQUINE ANATOMY; a Manual for the use of Veterinary Students in the Dissecting Room. Crown 8vo., *7s. 6d.*

FITZWYGRAM.—HORSES AND STABLES. By Major-General Sir F. FITZWYGRAM, Bart. With 56 pages of Illustrations. 8vo., *2s. 6d.* net.

VETERINARY MEDICINE, ETC.—*Continued.*

SCHREINER.—THE ANGORA GOAT (published under the auspices of the South African Angora Goat Breeders' Association), and a Paper on the Ostrich (reprinted from the *Zoologist* for March, 1897). By S. C. CRONWRIGHT SCHREINER. With 26 Illustrations. 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

'*STONEHENGE.*'—THE DOG IN HEALTH AND DISEASE. By 'STONEHENGE'. With 78 Wood Engravings. 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

YOUATT.—Works by WILLIAM YOUATT.

THE HORSE. Revised and Enlarged by W. WATSON, M.R.C.V.S. With 52 Wood Engravings. 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE DOG. Revised and Enlarged. With 33 Wood Engravings. 8vo., 6*s.*

PHYSIOLOGY, BIOLOGY, BACTERIOLOGY, AND ZOOLOGY.

(And see *MEDICINE AND SURGERY.*)

ASHBY.—NOTES ON PHYSIOLOGY. By HENRY ASHBY, M.D. With 141 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 5*s.*

BARNETT.—THE MAKING OF THE BODY: a Children's Book on Anatomy and Physiology. By Mrs. S. A. BARNETT. With 113 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 1*s.* 9*d.*

BEDDARD.—Works by FRANK E. BEDDARD, M.A. Oxon. F.R.S.; Prosector to the Zoological Society of London: Lecturer on Biology at Guy's Hospital; Examiner in Zoology and Comparative Anatomy in the University of London; lately Examiner in the Honours School of Morphology in the University of Oxford.

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL ZOOLOGY. With 93 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

THE STRUCTURE AND CLASSIFICATION OF BIRDS. With 252 Illustrations. 8vo., 21*s.* net.

BIDGOOD.—A COURSE OF PRACTICAL ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY. By JOHN BIDGOOD, B.Sc., F.L.S. With 226 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

BRAY.—PHYSIOLOGY AND THE LAWS OF HEALTH, in Easy Lessons for Schools. By Mrs. CHARLES BRAY. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.*

BRODIE.—THE ESSENTIALS OF EXPERIMENTAL PHYSIOLOGY. For the Use of Students. By T. G. BRODIE, M.D., Lecturer on Physiology, St. Thomas's Hospital Medical School. With 2 Plates and 177 Illustrations in the Text. Crown 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

FRANKLAND.—MICRO-ORGANISMS IN WATER. Together with an Account of the Bacteriological Methods involved in their Investigation. Specially designed for the use of those connected with the Sanitary Aspects of Water-Supply. By PERCY FRANKLAND, Ph.D., B.Sc. (Lond.), F.R.S., and Mrs. PERCY FRANKLAND. With 2 Plates and Numerous Diagrams. 8vo., 16*s.* net.

FURNEAUX.—HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. By W. FURNEAUX, F R G.S. With 218 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

PHYSIOLOGY, BIOLOGY, BACTERIOLOGY, AND ZOOLOGY—*Cont.*

HUDSON AND GOSSE.—THE ROTIFERA, or 'WHEEL-ANIMACULES'. By C. T. HUDSON, LL.D., and P. H. GOSSE, F.R.S. With 30 Coloured and 4 Uncoloured Plates. In 6 Parts. 4to., 10*s.* 6*d.* each. Supplement 12*s.* 6*d.* Complete in 2 vols., with Supplement, 4to., £4 4*s.*

LEUMANN.—NOTES ON MICRO-ORGANISMS PATHOGENIC TO MAN. By Surgeon-Captain B. H. S. LEUMANN, M.B., Indian Medical Service. 8vo., 3*s.*

MACALISTER.—Works by ALEXANDER MACALISTER, M.D.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SYSTEMATIC ZOOLOGY AND MORPHOLOGY OF VERTEBRATE ANIMALS. With 41 Diagrams. 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.*

ZOOLOGY OF THE INVERTEBRATE ANIMALS. With 59 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

ZOOLOGY OF THE VERTEBRATE ANIMALS. With 77 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

MOORE.—ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY. By BENJAMIN MOORE, M.A., late Sharpey Research Scholar and Assistant Professor of Physiology at University College, London. With 125 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

MORGAN.—ANIMAL BIOLOGY: an Elementary Text-Book. By C. LLOYD MORGAN, F.R.S., Principal of University College, Bristol. With 103 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 8*s.* 6*d.*

SCHENK.—MANUAL OF BACTERIOLOGY, for Practitioners and Students, with Especial Reference to Practical Methods. By Dr. S. L. SCHENK. With 100 Illustrations, some Coloured. 8vo., 10*s.* net.

THORNTON.—HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. By JOHN THORNTON, M.A. With 267 Illustrations, some Coloured. Crown 8vo., 6*s.*

BOTANY.

AITKEN.—ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK OF BOTANY. By EDITH AITKEN, late Scholar of Girton College. With 400 Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

BENNETT AND MURRAY.—HANDBOOK OF CRYPTOGAMIC BOTANY. By ALFRED W. BENNETT, M.A., B.Sc., F.L.S., Lecturer on Botany at St. Thomas's Hospital; and GEORGE MURRAY, F.L.S., Keeper of Botany, British Museum. With 378 Illustrations. 8vo., 16*s.*

CROSS AND BEVAN.—CELLULOSE: an Outline of the Chemistry of the Structural Elements of Plants. With Reference to their Natural History and Industrial Uses. By CROSS and BEVAN (C. F. Cross, E. J. Bevan, and C. Beadle). With 14 Plates. Crown 8vo., 12*s.* net.

CURTIS.—A TEXT-BOOK OF GENERAL BOTANY. By CARLTON C. CURTIS, A.M., Ph.D., Tutor in Botany in Columbia University, U.S.A. With 87 Illustrations. 8vo., 12*s.* net.

DE TABLEY.—THE FLORA OF CHESHIRE. By the late LORD DE TABLEY (Hon. J. BYRNE LEICESTER WARREN, M.A.). Edited by SPENCER MOORE. With a Biographical Notice of the Author by Sir MOUNTSTUART GRANT DUFF. With a Map of Cheshire and a Photogravure Portrait. Crown 8vo., 10*s.* 6*d.* net.

BOTANY—*Continued.*

EDMONDS.—Works by HENRY EDMONDS, B.Sc., London.

ELEMENTARY BOTANY. With 319 Illustrations. Cr. 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

BOTANY FOR BEGINNERS. With 85 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., *1s. 6d.*

FARMER.—A PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF BOTANY: Flowering Plants. By J. BRETLAND FARMER, M.A., Professor of Botany in the Royal College of Science, London; formerly Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. With 121 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

KITCHENER.—A YEAR'S BOTANY. Adapted to Home and School Use. By FRANCES A. KITCHENER. With 195 Illustrations. Cr. 8vo., *5s.*

LINDLEY AND MOORE.—THE TREASURY OF BOTANY. Edited by J. LINDLEY, M.D., F.R.S., and T. MOORE, F.L.S. With 20 Steel Plates and numerous Woodcuts. Two parts. Fcp. 8vo., *12s.*

McNAB.—CLASS-BOOK OF BOTANY. By W. R. McNAB.

MORPHOLOGY AND PHYSIOLOGY. With 42 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., *1s. 6d.*

CLASSIFICATION OF PLANTS. With 118 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., *1s. 6d.*

SORAUER.—A POPULAR TREATISE ON THE PHYSIOLOGY OF PLANTS. By Dr. PAUL SORAUER. Translated by F. E. WEISS, B.Sc., F.L.S. With 33 Illustrations. 8vo., *9s.* net.

THOMÉ AND BENNETT.—STRUCTURAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL BOTANY. By OTTO WILHELM THOMÉ and by ALFRED W. BENNETT, B.Sc., F.L.S. With Coloured Map and 600 Woodcuts. Fcp. 8vo., *6s.*

TUBEUF.—DISEASES OF PLANTS INDUCED BY CRYPTOGAMIC PARASITES. Introduction to the Study of Pathogenic Fungi, Slime Fungi, Bacteria and Algæ. By Dr. KARL FREIHERR VON TUBEUF, Privatdocent in the University of Munich. English Edition by WILLIAM G. SMITH, B.Sc., Ph.D., Lecturer on Plant Physiology, University of Edinburgh. With 330 Illustrations. Royal 8vo., *18s.* net.

WATTS.—A SCHOOL FLORA. For the use of Elementary Botanical Classes. By W. MARSHALL WATTS, D.Sc. Lond. Cr, 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

AGRICULTURE.

ADDYMAN.—AGRICULTURAL ANALYSIS. A Manual of Quantitative Analysis for Students of Agriculture. By FRANK T. ADDYMAN, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C. With 49 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *5s.* net.

COLEMAN AND ADDYMAN.—PRACTICAL AGRICULTURAL CHEMISTRY. By J. BERNARD COLEMAN, A.R.C.Sc., F.I.C., and FRANK T. ADDYMAN, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C. With 24 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *1s 6d.* net.

COOKE.—THE FOUNDATIONS OF SCIENTIFIC AGRICULTURE. By SAMUEL COOKE, A.M., A.M.I.C.E., F.I.C., F.G.S., Cor. M.R.H.S. With 85 Illustrations and Examination Questions. Cr. 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

WEBB.—Works by HENRY J. WEBB, Ph.D., B.Sc. (Lond.).

ELEMENTARY AGRICULTURE. A Text-Book specially adapted to the requirements of the Science and Art Department, the Junior Examination of the Royal Agricultural Society, and other Elementary Examinations. With 34 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

AGRICULTURE. A Manual for Advanced Science Students. With 100 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *7s. 6d.* net.

WORKS BY JOHN TYNDALL, D.C.L., LL.D., F.R.S.

FRAGMENTS OF SCIENCE: a Series of Detached Essays, Addresses, and Reviews. 2 vols. Crown 8vo., 16*s*.

Vol. I.—The Constitution of Nature—Radiation—On Radiant Heat in Relation to the Colour and Chemical Constitution of Bodies—New Chemical Reactions produced by Light—On Dust and Disease—Voyage to Algeria to observe the Eclipse—Niagara—The Parallel Roads of Glen Roy—Alpine Sculpture—Recent Experiments on Fog-Signals—On the Study of Physics—On Crystalline and Slaty Cleavage—On Paramagnetic and Diamagnetic Forces—Physical Basis of Solar Chemistry—Elementary Magnetism—On Force—Contributions to Molecular Physics—Life and Letters of FARADAY—The Copley Medallist of 187*c*—The Copley Medallist of 1871—Death by Lightning—Science and the Spirits.

Vol. II.—Reflections on Prayer and Natural Law—Miracles and Special Providences—On Prayer as a Form of Physical Energy—Vitality—Matter and Force—Scientific Materialism—An Address to Students—Scientific Use of the Imagination—The Belfast Address—Apology for the Belfast Address—The Rev. JAMES MARTINEAU and the Belfast Address—Fermentation, and its Bearings on Surgery and Medicine—Spontaneous Generation—Science and Man—Professor VIRCHOW and Evolution—The Electric Light.

NEW FRAGMENTS. Crown 8vo., 10*s*. 6*d*.

CONTENTS.—The Sabbath—Goethe's 'Farbenlehre'—Atoms, Molecules, and Ether Waves—Count Rumford—Louis Pasteur, his Life and Labours—The Rainbow and its Congeners—Address delivered at the Birkbeck Institution on October 22, 1884—Thomas Young—Life in the Alps—About Common Water—Personal Recollections of Thomas Carlyle—On Unveiling the Statue of Thomas Carlyle—On the Origin, Propagation, and Prevention of Phthisis—Old Alpine Jottings—A Morning on Alp Lusgen.

LECTURES ON SOUND. With Frontispiece of Fog-Syren, and 203 other Woodcuts and Diagrams in the Text. Crown 8vo., 10*s*. 6*d*.

HEAT, A MODE OF MOTION. With 125 Woodcuts and Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 12*s*.

LECTURES ON LIGHT DELIVERED IN THE UNITED STATES IN 1872 AND 1873. With Portrait, Lithographic Plate, and 59 Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 5*s*.

ESSAYS ON THE FLOATING MATTER OF THE AIR IN RELATION TO PUTREFACTION AND INFECTION. With 24 Woodcuts. Crown 8vo., 7*s*. 6*d*.

RESEARCHES ON DIAMAGNETISM AND MAGNECRYSTALLIC ACTION; including the Question of Diamagnetic Polarity. Crown 8vo., 12*s*.

NOTES OF A COURSE OF NINE LECTURES ON LIGHT. delivered at the Royal Institution of Great Britain, 1869. Crown 8vo., 1*s*. 6*d*.

NOTES OF A COURSE OF SEVEN LECTURES ON ELECTRICAL PHENOMENA AND THEORIES, delivered at the Royal Institution of Great Britain, 1870. Crown 8vo., 1*s*. 6*d*.

LESSONS IN ELECTRICITY AT THE ROYAL INSTITUTION 1875-1876. With 58 Woodcuts and Diagrams. Crown 8vo., 2*s*. 6*d*.

THE GLACIERS OF THE ALPS: being a Narrative of Excursions and Ascents. An Account of the Origin and Phenomena of Glaciers, and an Exposition of the Physical Principles to which they are related. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 6*s*. 6*d*. net.

HOURS OF EXERCISE IN THE ALPS. With 7 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 6*s*. 6*d*. net.

FARADAY AS A DISCOVERER. Crown 8vo., 3*s*. 6*d*.

TEXT-BOOKS OF SCIENCE.

PHOTOGRAPHY. By Captain W. DE WIVELESLIE ABNEY, C.B., F.R.S. With 105 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE STRENGTH OF MATERIAL AND STRUCTURES. By Sir J. ANDERSON, C.E. With 66 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

RAILWAY APPLIANCES. By Sir JOHN WOLFE BARRY, K.C.B., F.R.S., M.I.C.E. With 218 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By WILLIAM ALLEN MILLER, M.D., LL.D., F.R.S. With 72 Illustrations. 3*s.* 6*d.*

QUANTITATIVE CHEMICAL ANALYSIS. By T. E. THORPE, F.R.S., Ph.D. With 88 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

QUALITATIVE ANALYSIS AND LABORATORY PRACTICE. By T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., F.R.S., and M. M. PATTISON MUIR, M.A. and F.R.S.E. With Plate of Spectra and 57 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF CHEMICAL PHILOSOPHY. By WILLIAM A. TILDEN, D.Sc., London, F.R.S. With 5 Illustrations. With or without Answers to Problems. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d*

ELEMENTS OF ASTRONOMY. By Sir R. S. BALL, LL.D., F.R.S. With 130 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.* 6*d.*

SYSTEMATIC MINERALOGY. By HILARY BAUERMAN, F.G.S. With 373 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

DESCRIPTIVE MINERALOGY. By HILARY BAUERMAN, F.G.S., etc. With 236 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

METALS: THEIR PROPERTIES AND TREATMENT. By A. K. HUNTINGTON and W. G. MCMILLAN. With 122 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

THEORY OF HEAT. By J. CLERK MAXWELL, M.A., LL.D., Edin., F.R.SS., L. & E. With 38 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

PRACTICAL PHYSICS. By R. T. GLAZEBROOK, M.A., F.R.S., and W. N. SHAW, M.A. With 134 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

PRELIMINARY SURVEY AND ESTIMATES. By THEODORE GRAHAM GRIBBLE, Civil Engineer. Including Elementary Astronomy, Route Surveying, Tacheometry, Curve-ranging, Graphic Mensuration, Estimates, Hydrography and Instruments. With 133 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 7*s.* 6*d.*

ALGEBRA AND TRIGONOMETRY. By WILLIAM NATHANIEL GRIFFIN, B.D. 3*s.* 6*d.* Notes on, with Solutions of the more difficult Questions. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE STEAM ENGINE. By GEORGE C. V. HOLMES, Secretary of the Institution of Naval Architects. With 212 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. By FLEEMING JENKIN, F.R.SS., L. & E. With 177 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE ART OF ELECTRO-METALLURGY. By G. GORE, LL.D., F.R.S. With 56 Illus. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

TELEGRAPHY. By Sir W. H. PREECE, K.C.B., F.R.S., M.I.C.E., and Sir J. SIVEWRIGHT, M.A., K.C.M.G. With 267 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

PHYSICAL OPTICS. By R. T. GLAZEBROOK, M.A., F.R.S. With 183 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

TECHNICAL ARITHMETIC AND MENSURATION. By CHARLES W. MERRIEFIELD, F.R.S. 3*s.* 6*d.* Key, by the Rev. JOHN HUNTER, M.A. Fcp. 8vo., 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE STUDY OF ROCKS. By FRANK RUTLEY, F.G.S. With 6 Plates and 88 Illustrations Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

WORKSHOP APPLIANCES, including Descriptions of some of the Machine Tools used by Engineers. By C. P. B. SHELLEY, M.I.C.E. With 323 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 5*s.*

ELEMENTS OF MACHINE DESIGN. By W. CAWTHORNE UNWIN, F.R.S., B.Sc., M.I.C.E.

PART I. General Principles, Fastenings and Transmissive Machinery. With 304 Illustrations. 6*s.*

PART II. Chiefly on Engine Details. With 174 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 4*s.* 6*d.*

STRUCTURAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL BOTANY. By OTTO WILHELM THOMÉ, and A. W. BENNETT, M.A., B.Sc., F.L.S. With 600 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 6*s.*

PLANE AND SOLID GEOMETRY. By H. W. WATSON, M.A. Fcp. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

ADVANCED SCIENCE MANUALS.

BUILDING CONSTRUCTION. By the Author of 'Rivington's Notes on Building Construction'. With 385 Illustrations and an Appendix of Examination Questions. Crown 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

THEORETICAL MECHANICS. Solids, including Kinematics, Statics, and Kinetics. By A. THORNTON, M.A., F.R.A.S. With 220 Illustrations, 130 Worked Examples, and over 900 Examples from Examination Papers, etc. Crown 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

HEAT. By MARK R. WRIGHT, Hon. Inter. B.Sc. (Lond.). With 136 Illustrations and numerous Examples and Examination Papers. Crown 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

LIGHT. By W. J. A. EMTAGE, M.A. With 232 Illustrations. Cr. 8vo., *6s.*

MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. By ARTHUR WILLIAM POYSER, M.A. With 317 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

INORGANIC CHEMISTRY, THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL. A Manual for Students in Advanced Classes of the Science and Art Department. By WILLIAM JAGO, F.C.S., F.I.C. With Plate of Spectra and 78 Woodcuts. Crown 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

GEOLOGY: a Manual for Students in Advanced Classes and for General Readers. By CHARLES BIRD, B.A. (Lond.), F.G.S. With over 300 Illustrations, a Geological Map of the British Isles (coloured), and a set of Questions for Examination. Crown 8vo., *7s. 6d.*

HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY: a Manual for Students in advanced Classes of the Science and Art Department. By JOHN THORNTON, M.A. With 268 Illustrations, some of which are Coloured, and a set of Questions for Examination. Crown 8vo., *6s.*

PHYSIOGRAPHY. By JOHN THORNTON, M.A. With 6 Maps, 203 Illustrations, and Coloured Plate of Spectra. Crown 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

AGRICULTURE. By HENRY J. WEBB, Ph.D., B.Sc. With 100 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *7s. 6d.* net.

HYGIENE. By J. LANE NOTTER, M.A., M.D., Professor of Hygiene in the Army Medical School, Netley, Surgeon-Colonel, Army Medical Staff; and R. H. FIRTH, F.R.C.S., Assistant Professor of Hygiene in the Army Medical School, Netley, Surgeon-Major, Army Medical Staff. With 95 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *3s. 6d.*

ELEMENTARY SCIENCE MANUALS.

*** *Written specially to meet the requirements of the ELEMENTARY STAGE OF SCIENCE SUBJECTS as laid down in the Syllabus of the Directory of the SCIENCE AND ART DEPARTMENT.*

PRACTICAL, PLANE, AND SOLID GEOMETRY, including Graphic Arithmetic. By I. H. MORRIS. Fully Illustrated with Drawings. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

GEOMETRICAL DRAWING FOR ART STUDENTS. Embracing Plane Geometry and its Applications, the Use of Scales, and the Plans and Elevations of Solids, as required for the Examinations of the Science and Art Department. By I. H. MCRRIS. Crown 8vo., *1s. 6d.*

TEXT-BOOK ON PRACTICAL, SOLID, OR DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY. By DAVID ALLAN LOW (Whitworth Scholar). Part I. Crown. 8vo., *2s.* Part II. Crown 8vo., *3s.*

AN INTRODUCTION TO MACHINE DRAWING AND DESIGN. By DAVID ALLAN LOW. With 153 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

ELEMENTARY SCIENCE MANUALS—*Continued.*

BUILDING CONSTRUCTION AND DRAWING. By EDWARD J. BURRELL. With 308 Illustrations and Working Drawings. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

AN ELEMENTARY COURSE OF MATHEMATICS. Containing Arithmetic; Euclid (Book I., with Deductions and Exercises); and Algebra. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

THEORETICAL MECHANICS. Including Hydrostatics and Pneumatics. By J. E. TAYLOR, M.A., B.Sc. With numerous Examples and Answers, and 175 Diagrams and Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

THEORETICAL MECHANICS—SOLIDS. By J. E. TAYLOR, M.A., B.Sc. (Lond.). With 163 Illustrations, 120 Worked Examples, and over 500 Examples from Examination Papers, etc. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

THEORETICAL MECHANICS—FLUIDS. By J. E. TAYLOR, M.A., B.Sc. (Lond.). With 122 Illustrations, numerous Worked Examples, and about 500 Examples from Examination Papers, etc. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

A MANUAL OF MECHANICS. With 138 Illustrations and Diagrams, and 188 Examples taken from Examination Papers, with Answers. By T. M. GOODEVE, M.A. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

SOUND, LIGHT, AND HEAT. By MARK R. WRIGHT, M.A. With 160 Diagrams and Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

METALLURGY: an Elementary Text-Book. By E. L. RHEAD. With 94 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *3s. 6d.*

PHYSICS. Alternative Course. By MARK R. WRIGHT, M.A. With 242 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. By A. W. POYSER, M.A. With 235 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY: the Fatty Compounds. By R. LLOYD WHITELEY, F.I.C., F.C.S. With 45 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *3s. 6d.*

INORGANIC CHEMISTRY, THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL. By WILLIAM JAGO, F.C.S., F.I.C. With 63 Illustrations and numerous Questions and Exercises. Fcp. 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

AN INTRODUCTION TO PRACTICAL INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By WILLIAM JAGO, F.C.S., F.I.C. Crown 8vo., *1s. 6d.*

PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY: the Principles of Qualitative Analysis. By WILLIAM A. TILDEN, D.Sc. Fcp. 8vo., *1s. 6d.*

ELEMENTARY INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By WILLIAM FURNEAUX, F.R.G.S. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

ELEMENTARY GEOLOGY. By CHARLES BIRD, B.A., F.G.S. With Coloured Geological Map of the British Islands, and 247 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. By WILLIAM FURNEAUX, F.R.G.S. With 218 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

A COURSE OF PRACTICAL ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY. By J. BIDGOOD, B.Sc. With 226 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *4s. 6d.*

ELEMENTARY BOTANY, THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL. By HENRY EDMONDS, B.Sc. With 342 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

STEAM. By WILLIAM RIPPER, Member of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers. With 142 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

ELEMENTARY PHYSIOGRAPHY. By J. THORNTON, M.A. With 12 Maps and 249 Illustrations. With Appendix on Astronomical Instruments and Measurements. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

AGRICULTURE. By HENRY J. WEBB, Ph.D. With 34 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

THE LONDON SCIENCE CLASS-BOOKS.

Edited by G. CAREY FOSTER, F.R.S., and by Sir PHILIP MAGNUS, B.Sc., B.A. of the City and Guilds of London Institute.

ASTRONOMY. By Sir ROBERT STAWELL BALL, LL.D., F.R.S. With 41 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

MECHANICS. By SIR ROBERT STAWELL BALL, LL.D., F.R.S. With 89 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

THE LAWS OF HEALTH. By W. H. CORFIELD, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P. With 22 Illustrations. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

MOLECULAR PHYSICS AND SOUND. By FREDERICK GUTHRIE, F.R.S. With 91 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

GEOMETRY, CONGRUENT FIGURES. By O. HENRICI, Ph.D., F.R.S. With 141 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

ZOOLOGY OF THE INVERTEBRATE ANIMALS. By ALEXANDER MACALISTER, M.D. With 59 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

ZOOLOGY OF THE VERTEBRATE ANIMALS. By ALEXANDER MACALISTER, M.D. With 77 Diagrams Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

HYDROSTATICS AND PNEUMATICS. By Sir PHILIP MAGNUS, B.Sc., B.A. With 79 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.* (To be had also *with Answers*, 2*s.*) The Worked Solutions of the Problems. 2*s.*

BOTANY. Outlines of the Classification of Plants. By W. R. MCNAB, M.D. With 118 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

BOTANY. Outlines of Morphology and Physiology. By W. R. MCNAB, M.D. With 42 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

THERMODYNAMICS. By RICHARD WORMELL, M.A., D.Sc. With 41 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo., 1*s.* 6*d.*

PRACTICAL ELEMENTARY SCIENCE SERIES.

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSIOGRAPHY. (Section I.) By JOHN THORNTON, M.A., Head Master of the Central Higher Grade School, Bolton. With 215 Illustrations and a Coloured Spectrum. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

PRACTICAL DOMESTIC HYGIENE. By J. LANE NOTTER, M.A., M.D., Professor of Hygiene in the Army Medical School, Netley, etc.; and R. H. FIRTH, F.R.C.S., Assistant Professor of Hygiene in the Army Medical School, Netley, etc. With 83 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

A PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF BOTANY: Flowering Plants. By J. BRETLAND FARMER, M.A., Professor of Botany in the Royal College of Science, London; formerly Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. With 121 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 2*s.* 6*d.*

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. By G. S. NEWTH, F.I.C., F.C.S., Demonstrator in the Royal College of Science, London, etc. With 108 Illustrations and 254 Experiments. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSICS. By W. WATSON, B.Sc., Assistant Professor in Physics in the Royal College of Science, London, etc. With 120 Illustrations and 193 Exercises. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL ZOOLOGY. By FRANK E. BEDDARD, M.A. Oxon., F.R.S., Prosector to the Zoological Society of London; Lecturer on Biology at Guy's Hospital. With 93 Illustrations. Crown 8vo., 2*s.* 6*d.*

OTHER VOLUMES IN PREPARATION.

10,000/9/99.

3 2044 074 428 806

3 2044 074 428 806